⚠ IMPORTANT SAFETY NOTICES

PREVENTION OF PHYSICAL INJURY

1. Before disassembling or assembling parts of the printer and peripherals, make sure that the printer power cord is unplugged.
2. The wall outlet should be near the printer and easily accessible.
3. Note that some components of the printer are supplied with electrical voltage even if the main switch is turned off.
4. If any adjustment or operation check has to be made with exterior covers off or open while the main switch is turned on, keep hands away from electrified or mechanically driven components.

HEALTH SAFETY CONDITIONS

1. If you get ink in your eyes by accident, try to remove it with eye drops or flush with water as first aid. If unsuccessful, get medical attention.
2. If you ingest ink by accident, induce vomiting by sticking a finger down your throat or by giving soapy or strong salty water to drink.

OBSERVANCE OF ELECTRICAL SAFETY STANDARDS

1. The printer and its peripherals must be installed and maintained by a customer service representative who has completed the training course on those models.
2. The RAM board has a lithium battery which can explode if handled incorrectly. Replace only with the same type of RAM board. Do not recharge or burn this battery. Used RAM boards must be handled in accordance with local regulations.

SAFETY AND ECOLOGICAL NOTES FOR DISPOSAL

1. Dispose of replaced parts in accordance with local regulations.
2. Used ink and masters should be disposed of in an envionmentally safe manner and in accordance with local regulations.
3. When keeping used lithium batteries (from the main control boards) in order to dispose of them later, do not store more than 100 batteries (from the main control boards) per sealed box. Storing larger numbers or not sealing them apart may lead to chemical reactions and heat build-up.

General Remarks

Each model code used in this manual represents the following models.

Model Code	RICOH Model	NRG Model	A.B.Dick Model	SAVIN Model
C207	SS955	1170/5270		
C208	SS935	1160/5230		
C210	VT3500	CP375/1280/5375	6720	
C211	VT2100/ 30/50	CP310/CP315/1240/1241/1242/ 5310/5315/5320		
C212	VT2300	CP320/CP330/1260/5330		
C213	VT2500			
C215	VT2005	5323		
C216	VT2105	CP325/1250/5325		
C224	VT2200	CP327/1252/5327	6530	3200DNP
C226	VT2250/40	CP329(L)/1254(L)/5329(L)	6560	3250DNP

SECTION 1

OVERALL MACHINE INFORMATION

1. SPECIFICATIONS

1.1 C226

Configuration:	Desktop
Master processing:	Digital
Printing process:	Full automatic one-drum stencil system
Original type:	Sheet/Book
Platen mode:	Document Size: Smaller than 257 x 364 mm [10.2" x 14.4"] Thickness: Less than 30 mm Weight: Less than 5 kg
ADF mode:	Document Size Length: 105 - 364 mm [4.1" - 16.5"] Width: 148 - 364 mm [5.8" - 16.5"] Thickness: 0.05 to 0.2 mm [2 to 8 mils] (equivalent to 50 - 90 g/m^2) 0.04 to 0.4 mm [1.6 to 16 mils], manually assisted (equivalent to 40 - 120 g/m^2) Document Feed Automatic feed, face up ADF Capacity 30 sheets (using 20 lb paper)
Scanning method:	Contact image sensor, with xenon lamp
Maximum scan width	256 mm [10.1"] ± 0.25%

Reproduction ratios:

	U.S.A. Version	Other Versions
Full Size	100%	100%
Reduction	65%	71%
	74%	82%
	77%	87%
	93%	93%
Enlargement	121%	115%
	129%	122%
	155%	141%

Image mode: Letter, Photo, Letter/Photo

Color printing: Drum unit replacement system

Master feed/eject: Roll master automatic feed/eject

Printing area: Maximum: 250 mm x 355 mm (9.8" x 14.0") at 20°C/ 65 % RH.
(210 mm x 288 mm for the A4 drum model)

Leading edge margin: 5 ± 3 mm at the "0" position

Print paper size: Minimum: 90 mm x 148 mm (3.6" x 5.9")
Maximum: 297 mm x 432 mm (11.6" x 17.0")

Print paper weight: 47.1 g/m^2 to 209.3 g/m^2 (12.5 lb to 55.6 lb)

Printing speed: 60, 75, 90, 105, 120 sheets/minute (5 steps)

First copy time:
Platen mode:
Less than 26 seconds (B4 paper)
Less than 25 seconds (A4 paper)
ADF mode:
Less than 29 seconds (B4 paper)
Less than 28 seconds (A4 paper)

Second copy time:
Platen mode:
Less than 28 seconds (B4 paper)
Less than 27 seconds (A4 paper)
ADF mode:
Less than 32 seconds (B4 paper)
Less than 31 seconds (A4 paper)

Paper feed table capacity: 1000 sheets (66.3 g/m^2 /17.6 lb)

Paper delivery table capacity: 1000 sheets (66.3 g/m^2/17.6 lb)
(800 sheets when the small guide plates are used.)

Power source:	110/120 V, 60 Hz	4.5 A
	220/240 V, 50/60 Hz	2.7 A
Maximum power consumption:	110/120 V version: 325 W 220/240 V version: 340 W	
Weight:	95 kg (209.4 lb)	
Dimensions: (W x D x H)	Trays closed: 685 mm x 625 mm x 620 mm (27.0" x 24.6" x 24.4") With ADF: 685 mm x 625 mm x 670 mm (27.0" x 24.6" x 26.4") Trays open: 1285 mm x 625 mm x 620 mm (50.6" x 24.6" x 24.4") With ADF: (1285 mm x 625 mm x 670 mm (50.6" x 24.6" x 26.4")	
Pixel density:	300 dots/inch	
Master eject box capacity:	70 masters (Normal conditions) 60 masters (10°C/30%RH)	
Paper feeding:	Friction roller/center separation system	
Feed table side plate width settings:	88 mm to 330 mm (3.46" to 12.99")	
Paper feed roller pressure:	Normal position	300 g
	Thick paper position	400 g
Separation roller pressure:	Normal position	180 g
	Weak position	70 g
Side registration:	± 10 mm (manual)	
Vertical registration:	± 20 mm (mechanical)	
Ink supply:	Automatic ink supply system	
Press roller pressure:	10 ± 0.3 kg	
Paper delivery:	Air knife/vacuum delivery	

Delivery side plate width settings:	90 mm to 320 mm (3.54" to 12.6")
Print counter:	7 digits
Master counter:	6 digits (Option)

Supplies:

Master for B4 model

Thermal master	280 mm width
Master roll	257 masters/roll
Roll diameter	130 mm
Max run length	2,000 prints

Master for A4 model

Thermal master	240 mm width
Master roll	290 masters/roll
Roll diameter	130 mm
Max run length	2,000 prints

Ink colors:	Black, Red, Blue, Green, Brown
(600 ml/pack)	Yellow, Purple, Navy, Maroon, Orange, Teal

1.2 C224

Configuration:	Desktop
Master processing:	Digital
Printing process:	Full automatic one-drum stencil system
Original type:	Sheet
Original size:	Maximum 307 mm x 432 mm (12.0" x 17.0") Minimum 90 mm x 140 mm (3.6" x 5.5")

Reproduction ratios:

	VT Version	A4 Version
Full Size	100%	100%
Reduction	93%	93%
	75%	82%
	64%	71%

Image mode:	Line/Photo
Color printing:	Drum unit replacement system
Master feed/eject:	Roll master automatic feed/eject
Printing area:	Maximum: 250 mm x 355 mm (9.8" x 13.9") at 20°C/ 65 % RH.
Leading edge margin:	5 ± 3 mm at the "0" position
Print paper size:	Minimum: 90 mm x 148 mm (3.6" x 5.8") Maximum: 325 mm x 447 mm (12.7" x 17.5")
Print paper weight:	47.1 g/m^2 to 209.3 g/m^2 (12.5 lb to 55.6 lb)
Printing speed:	60, 75, 90, 105, 120 sheets/minute (5 steps)
First copy time:	Less than 35 seconds (B4) Less than 32 seconds (A4)
Second copy time:	Less than 38 seconds (B4) Less than 35 seconds (A4)
Paper feed table capacity:	1,000 sheets (66.3 g/m^2 /17.6 lb)
Paper delivery table capacity:	500 sheets (66.3 g/m^2 / 17.6 lb)

Power source:	110/120 V, 60 Hz	4.5 A
	220/240 V, 50/60 Hz	2.7 A

Maximum power consumption:	110/120 V version: 280 W 220/240 V version: 280 W
Weight:	97kg (213.6 lb)
Dimensions: (W x D x H)	Trays closed: 735 mm x 607 mm x 577 mm (28.9" x 23.9" x 22.7") Trays open: 1279 mm x 607 mm x 656 mm (50.4" x 23.9" x 25.9")
ADF original capacity:	20 sheets (66 g/m^2) or 1.8 mm height
Original guide width settings:	98 mm to 316 mm (38.6" to 12.44")
Original scanning time:	2.5 ms/line
Original thickness:	0.05 mm to 0.8 mm
Original feed speed:	21.2 mm/second (When master processing) 33.9 mm/second (When not master processing)
Pixel density:	300 dots/inch
Master eject box capacity:	70 masters (Normal condition) 60 masters (10°C/30% RH Condition)
Paper feeding:	Friction roller/center separation system
Feed table side plate width settings:	88 mm to 330 mm (3.46" to 12.99")
Paper feed roller pressure:	Normal position 300 g Thick paper position 400 g
Separation roller pressure:	Normal position 180 g Weak position 70 g
Side registration:	± 10 mm (manual)
Vertical registration:	± 20 mm (mechanical)
Ink supply:	Automatic ink supply system
Press roller pressure:	10 ± 0.3 kg
Paper delivery:	Air knife/vacuum delivery
Delivery side plate width settings:	90 mm to 320 mm (3.54" to 12.6")
Print counter:	7 digits

Master counter:	6 digits	
Supplies:		
Master:	Thermal master	280 mm width
	Master roll	257 masters/roll
	Roll diameter	130 mm
	Master length	480 mm/master
	Max run length	2000 prints
Ink colors: (600 ml/pack)	Black, Red, Blue, Green, Brown Yellow, Purple, Navy, Maroon	

1.3 C215/C216

Configuration:	Desktop
Master processing:	Digital
Printing process:	Full automatic one drum stencil system
Original type:	Sheet
Original size:	Maximum 307 mm x 432 mm (12.0" x 17.0") Minimum 90 mm x 140 mm (3.6" x 5.5")

Reproduction ratios:

	LT Version	A4 Version
Full Size	100%	100%
Reduction	93%	93%
	75%	82%
	64%	71%

Image mode:	Line/Photo
Color printing:	Drum Unit replacement system
Master feed/eject:	Roll master automatic feed/eject
Printing area:	Maximum: 250 mm x 355 mm (9.8" x 13.9") at 20°C/ 65 % RH.
Leading edge margin:	5 ± 3 mm at "0" position
Print paper size:	Minimum: 90 mm x 148 mm (3.6" x 5.8") Maximum: 325 mm x 447 mm (12.8" x 17.6")
Print paper weight:	50 g/m^2 to 215 g/m^2
Printing speed:	60, 75, 90, 105, 120 sheets/minute (5 steps)
First print time:	42 ± 3 seconds (B4 size)
Paper feed table capacity:	1,000 sheets (66.3 g/m^2 /17.6 lb)
Paper delivery table capacity:	500 sheets (66.3 g/m^2 / 17.6 lb)

Power source:

120 V, 60 Hz	3.0 A
220/240 V, 50/60 Hz	1.8 A

Maximum Power consumption:	120 V version: 300 W 220/240 V version: 300 W
Weight:	C216–120 V version: 99 kg (217.8 lb) C216–220/240 V version: 104 kg (228.8 lb) C215–120 V version: 98 kg (215.6 lb) C215–220/240 V version: 103 kg (226.6 lb)
Dimensions: (W x D x H)	C216 Stored: 735 mm x 607 mm x 577 mm (29.0" x 23.9" x 22.8") C215 Stored: 735 mm x 607 mm x 569 mm (29.0" x 23.9 " x 22.5") Set up: 1279 mm x 607 mm x 656 mm (50.4" x 23.9" x 25.9")
ADF original capacity: (C216)	20 sheets (66 g/m^2) or 1.8 mm height
Original guide width settings:	98 mm to 316 mm (38.6" to 12.44")
Original scanning time:	5 ms/1 line
Original thickness:	0.05 mm to 0.8 mm
Original feed speed:	16.9 mm/second (When master processing) 33.9 mm/second (When not master processing)
Pixel density:	300 dots/inch
Master eject box capacity:	30 masters (Normal condition) 25 masters (10°C/30% RH Condition)
Paper feeding:	Friction roller/center separation system
Feed table side plate width settings:	88 mm to 330 mm (3.46" to 12.99")
Paper feed roller pressure:	Normal position 250 g Thick paper position 550 g
Separation roller pressure:	Normal position 180 g Weak position 70 g
Side registration:	± 10 mm (manual)
Vertical registration:	± 20 mm (mechanical)
Ink supply:	Automatic ink supply system
Press roller pressure:	10 ± 0.3 kg
Paper delivery:	Air knife/vacuum delivery

Delivery side plate width settings:	90 mm to 320 mm (3.54" to 12.6")	
Print counter:	7 digits	
Master counter:	6 digits	
Supplies:		
Master:	Thermal master	280 mm width
	Master roll	250 masters/1 roll
	Roll diameter	130 mm
	Master length	480 mm/1 master
	Max run length	2,000 prints
Ink colors: (600 cc/pack)	Black, Red, Blue, Green, Brown	

1.4 C212/C213

Configuration:	Desktop
Master processing:	Digital
Printing process:	Full automatic one drum stencil system
Original type:	Sheet
Original size:	Maximum 307 mm x 432 mm (12.0" x 17.0") Minimum 90 mm x 140 mm (3.6" x 5.5")
Reproduction ratios:	3 Enlargement and 3 Reduction

	LT Version	A4 Version
Enlargement	141%	141%
	127%	122%
	115%	115%
Full Size	100%	100%
Reduction	93%	93%
	75%	82%
	64%	71%

Image mode:	Line/Photo
Color Printing:	Drum Unit replacement system
Master feed/eject:	Roll master automatic feed/eject
Printing area:	Maximum: 250 mm x 350 mm (9.8" x 13.7") at 20°C/ 65 % RH.
Leading edge margin:	10 ± 3 mm at "0" position
Print paper size:	Minimum: 90 mm x 148 mm (3.6" x 5.8") Maximum: 325 mm x 447 mm (12.8" x 17.6")
Print paper weight:	50 g/m^2 to 215 g/m^2
Printing speed:	60, 75, 90, 105, 120 sheets/minute (5 steps)

First print time:	34.5 seconds (B4 size) 31.5 seconds (A4 Size)
Paper feed table capacity:	1000 sheets (66.3 g/m^2 /17.6 lb)
Paper delivery table capacity:	500 sheets (66.3 g/m^2 / 17.6 lb)
Power source:	110V, 60 Hz..... 6.0A 120 V, 60 Hz ..... 5.5 A 220/240 V, 50/60 Hz..... 2.7 A
Power consumption:	110/120 V version: 430 W 220/240 V version: 470 W
Weight:	120 V version: 102 kg (224.8 lb) 220/240 V version: 107 kg (235.8 lb) Optional Table: 26 kg (57.3 lb)
Dimensions: (W x D x H)	Stored: 735 mm x 607 mm x 577 mm (29.0" x 23.9" x 22.8") Set up: 1279 mm x 607 mm x 656 mm (50.4" x 23.9" x 25.9") Table: 640 mm x 570 mm x 455 mm (25.2" x 22.4" x 17.9")
ADF original capacity:	20 sheets (66 g/m^2) or 1.8 mm height
Original guide width settings:	98 mm to 316 mm (38.6" to 12.44")
Original scanning time:	3 ms/1 line
Original thickness:	0.05 mm to 0.8 mm
Original feed speed:	20.8 mm/second (When master processing) 41.7 mm/second (When not master processing)
Pixel density:	16 dots/mm
Master eject box capacity:	25 masters (Normal condition) 20 masters (10°C/30% RH Condition)
Paper feeding:	Friction roller/center separation system

Feed table side plate width settings:	88 mm to 330 mm (3.46" to 12.99")	
Paper feed roller pressure:	Normal position	250 g
	Thick paper position	550 g
Separation roller pressure:	Normal position	180 g
	Weak position	70 g
Side registration:	± 10 mm (manual)	
Vertical registration:	± 20 mm (mechanical)	
Ink Supply:	Automatic ink supply system	
Press roller pressure:	10 ± 0.3 kg	
Paper Delivery:	Air knife/vacuum delivery	
Delivery side plate width settings:	80 mm to 320 mm (3.15" to 12.6")	
Print counter:	7 digits	
Master counter:	6 digits	

Supplies:

Master	Thermal master	280 mm width
	Master roll	250 masters/1 roll
	Roll diameter	130 mm
	Master length	480 mm/1 master
	Max run length	2,000 prints
Ink Colors: (600 cc/pack)	Black, Red, Blue, Green, Brown	

1.5 C211

Configuration:	Desk top
Master processing:	Digital
Printing process:	Full automatic one drum stencil system
Original type:	Sheet
Original size:	Maximum 307 mm x 432 mm (12.0" x 17.0")
Reproduction ratios:	LT version: 100 %, 93 %, 75 %, 64 % A4 version: 100 %, 93 %, 82 %, 71 %
Image mode:	Line/Photo
Color printing:	Drum unit replacement system
Master feed/eject:	Roll master automatic feed/eject
Master processing area:	B4 model: Maximum 256 mm x 354 mm (10.1" x 13.9") LG model: Maximum 216 mm x 354 mm (8.5" x 13.9") A4 model: Maximum 216 mm x 287 mm (8.5" x 11.3")
Printing area:	B4 model: Maximum 250 mm x 350 mm (9.8" x 13.7") at 20°C/65 % RH LG model: Maximum 210 mm x 350 mm (8.3" x 13.7") at 20°C/65% RH A4 model: Maximum 210 mm x 283 mm (8.3" x 11.1") at 20°C/65% RH
Leading edge margin:	10 mm
Print paper size:	Minimum 90 mm x 148 mm (3.6" x 5.8") Maximum 297 mm x 442 mm (11.6" X 17.4")
Print paper weight:	50 g/m^2 to 215 g/m^2
Print speed:	60, 75, 90, 105, 120 sheets/minute (5 steps)
First print time:	B4 model: 35 seconds (B4 size) LG model: 35 seconds (LG size) A4 model: 31 Seconds (A4 size)
Paper feed table capacity	1000 sheets (66.3 g/m^2 / 17.6 lb)
Paper delivery table capacity:	500 sheets (66.3 g/m^2 / 17.6 lb)

Power source:	220/240V, 50/60 Hz..... 2.7 A 120V, 60 Hz..... 5.5 A 110V, 60 Hz..... 6.0 A
Power consumption:	110/120 V version: 430 W 220/240 V version: 470 W
Weight:	110/120 V version: 100 kg (220.4 lb) 220/240 V version 105 kg (233.7 lb) Optional table: 26 kg (57.3 lb)
Dimensions: (W x D x H)	When stored: 735 mm x 607 mm x 569 mm (29.0" x 23.9" x 22.4") When set up: 1279 mm x 607 mm x 656 mm (50.4" x 23.9" x 25.9") Table only: 640 mm x 570 mm x 455 mm (25.2" x 22.4 x 17.9")
Original guide width-settings:	98 mm to 316 mm (38.6" to 12.44")
Original scanning time:	3 ms/1 line
Original thickness:	0.06 mm to 0.5 mm
Original feed speed:	20.8 mm/second
Pixel density:	16 dots/mm
Master eject box capacity:	25 masters (at normal conditions) 20 masters (at 10°C/30 % RH)
Paper feeding:	Friction roller/center separation system
Feed table side plate width settings:	88 mm to 317 mm (3.46" to 12.48")
Paper feed roller pressure:	Normal position ..... 250 g Thick paper position ..... 550 g
Separation roller pressure:	Normal position ..... 180 g Weak position..... 70 g
Side registration:	±10 mm (manual)
Vertical registration:	±20 mm (mechanical)
Paper table raising / lowering speed:	22 mm/second (50 Hz) 26 mm/second (60 Hz)
Ink supply:	Automatic ink supply system
Pressure roller pressure:	10 ± 0.3 kg

Paper delivery:	Air knife/vacuum delivery
Delivery side plate width settings:	80 mm to 320 mm (3.15" to 12.6")
Print counter:	7 digits
Master counter:	6 digits

Supplies:

Master for B4 model:

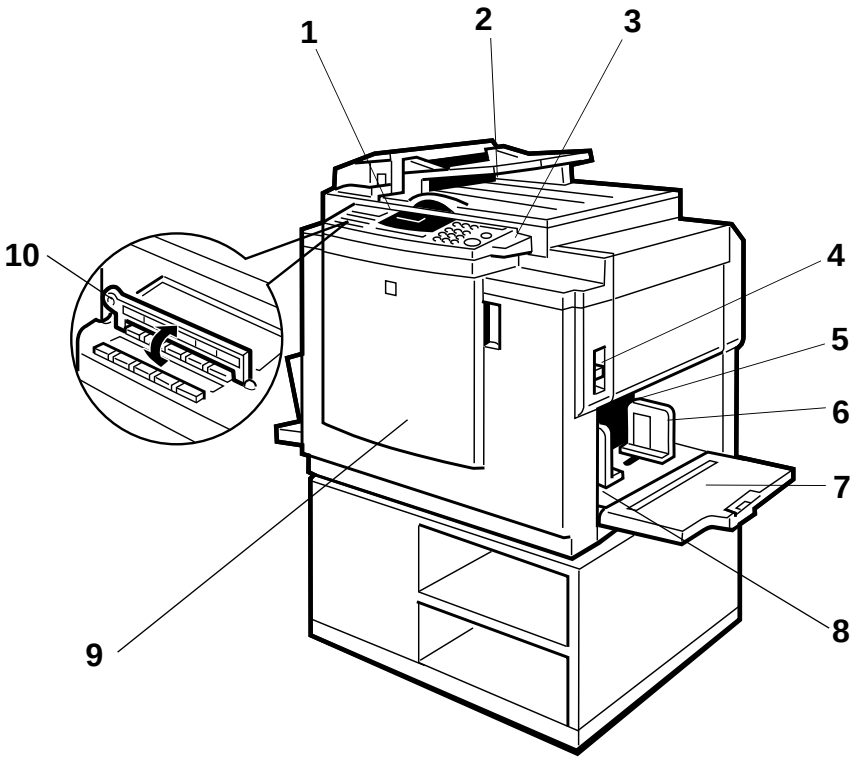
	Thermal master	280 mm width
	Master roll	250 masters/1 roll
	Master length	480 mm/1 master
	Max run length	2000 prints

Master for A4/LG model:

	Thermal master	240 mm width
	Max run length	2000 prints
LG model:	Master roll	250 masters/1 roll
	Master length	480 mm/1 master
A4 model:	Master roll	300 masters/1 roll
	Master length	413 mm/1 master
Ink:	600 cc ink pack	
Colors:	Black, Red, Blue, Green, Brown	

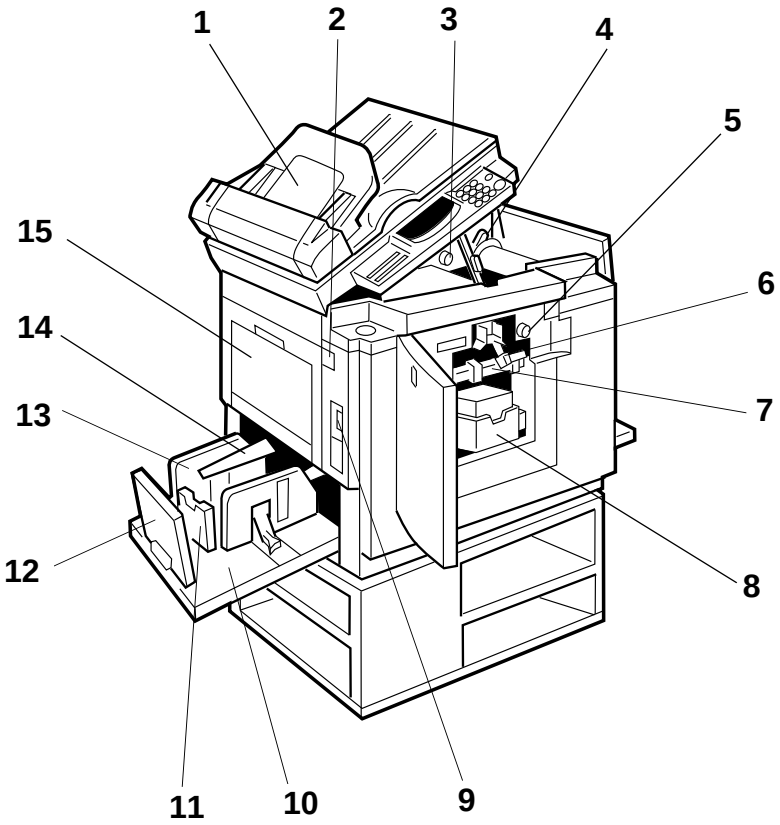
2. GUIDE TO COMPONENTS AND THEIR FUNCTION: C226

2.1 Machine Exterior



1. Operation panel	Operator controls and indicators are located here.
2. Platen cover	Lower this cover over an original before printing.
3. Original table release lever	Use to open the original table unit when installing the master.
4. Feed roller pressure lever	Use to adjust the contact pressure of the paper feed roller according to paper thickness.
5. Separation roller pressure lever	Use to adjust the separation roller pressure to prevent double feed.
6. Paper feed side plates	Use to prevent paper skew.
7. Paper feed table	Set paper on this table for printing.
8. Side plate fine adjusting dial	Use to shift the paper feed table sideways.
9. Front cover	Open to access to the inside of the machine.
10. Plate	Flip over when you use One Touch Class function.

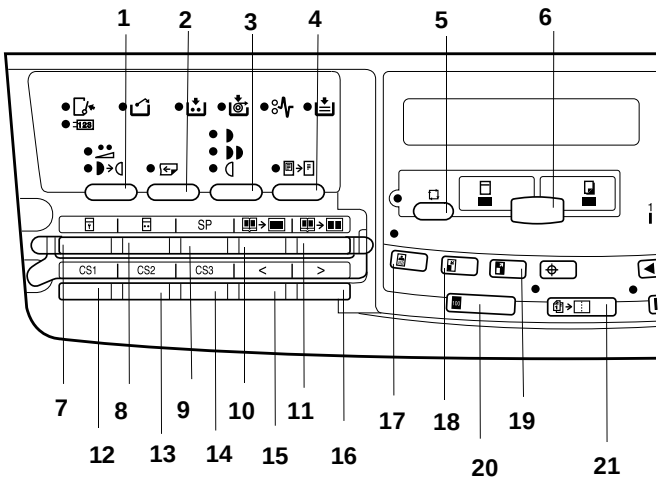
2.2 Machine Interior



1. Document feeder (Option)	Original inserted into the document feeder are individually and automatically fed onto and removed from the exposure glass.
2. Master eject unit open button	Press to remove misfed paper or a misfed master.
3. Master cut button	Press this button to cut the master leading edge after installing a new master roll.
4. Pressure release lever	Use to install the master roll.
5. Drum rotation button	Press to rotate the drum unit.
6. Drum unit lock lever	Lift to unlock and pull out the drum unit.
7. Drum unit	The master is wrapped around this unit.
8. Ink holder	Set the ink cartridge in this holder.
9. Main switch	Use to turn the power on or off.
10. Paper delivery table	Completed prints are delivered here.
11. Small size paper delivery end plate	Use to align the leading edge of prints that are A4, 8 1/2" x 11" or smaller.
12. Paper delivery end plate	Use to align the leading edge of prints larger than A4, 8 1/2" x 11".
13. Paper delivery side plate	Use to align the prints on the paper delivery table.
14. Wing guides	When printing on thin or small size paper, lift these guides.
15. Master eject container cover	Open when removing the master eject box.

3. OPERATION PANEL: C226

3.1 Keys



1. Economy/Tint key

2. Skip Feed key

3. Image Density key

4. Paste Shadow Erase key

5. Auto Cycle key

6. Master Making/Print key
Press to select Master Making or Print mode.

7. Security key

8. Quality Start key

9. SP mode key

10. Edge Erase key

11. Edge Erase/Center Erase key

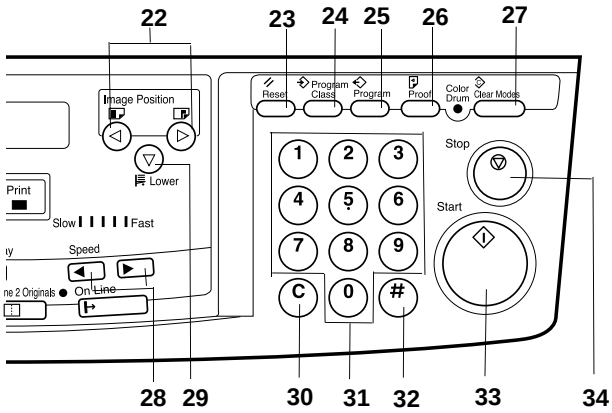
12. 13. 14. CS mode keys

15. 16. Scroll keys
Press to select size and direction of paper or original in Edge Erase/Center Erase and Edge Erase function.
Press to select the mode in Service Program mode.

17. Type of Original key

18. Reduce key

19. Enlarge key



20. Full Size key
Press to make full size prints.

21. Combine 2 Originals key

22. Image Position keys

23. Reset key
Press to reset the error indicators.

24. Program Class key

25. Program key

26. Proof key
Press to make proof prints.

27. Clear Modes key
Press to cancel all previously entered settings.

28. Speed keys

29. Lower key
Press to lower the paper feed table.

30. Clear key
Press to change the number set.

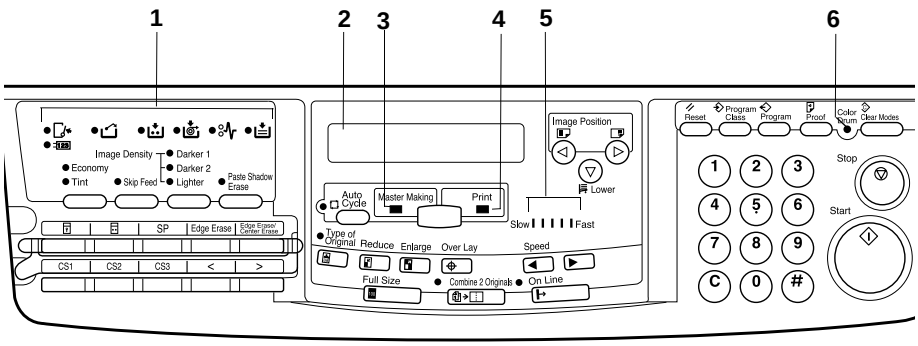
31. Number keys
Press to enter the number of prints and data.

32. Enter key
Press to input data into memory.

33. Start key
Press to start making of a master or printing.

34. Stop key
Press to stop the machine operation.

3.2 Indicators



1. Error indicators
These indicators are lit when a non-standard condition occurs within the machine.

2. Guidance Display
Press to stop the machine operation.

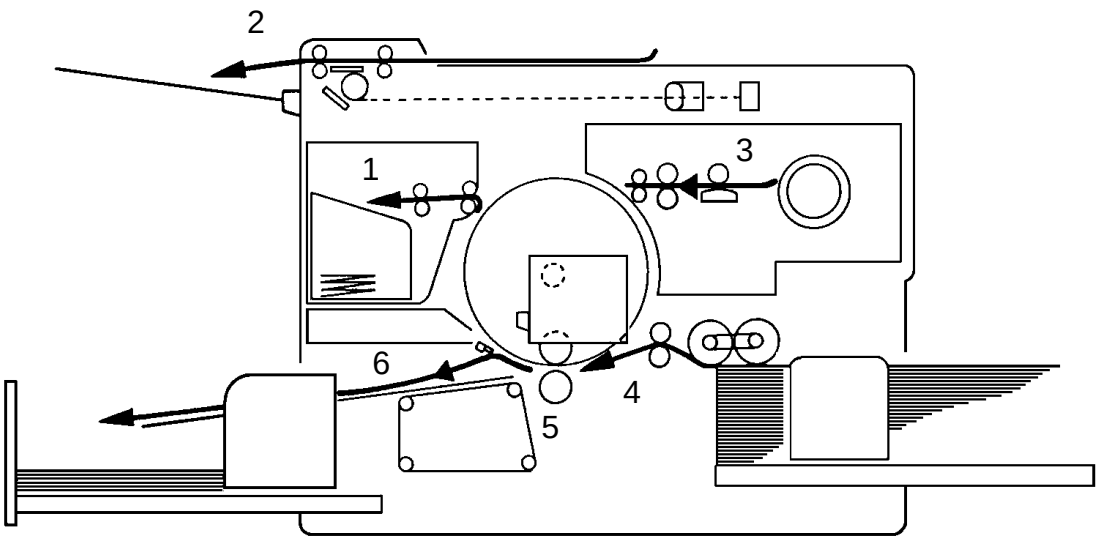
3. Master Making indicator
This indicator is lit when Master Making mode is selected.

4. Print indicator
This indicator is lit when Print mode is selected.

5. Speed indicators
These indicators show the printing speed that is selected.

6. Color Drum indicator
This indicator is lit when the optional color drum unit is set.

4. PRINTING PROCESS

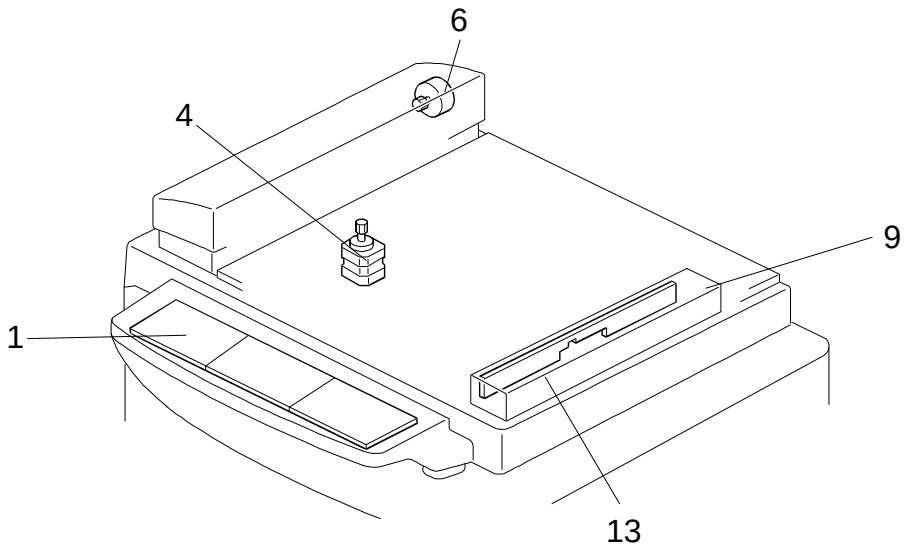


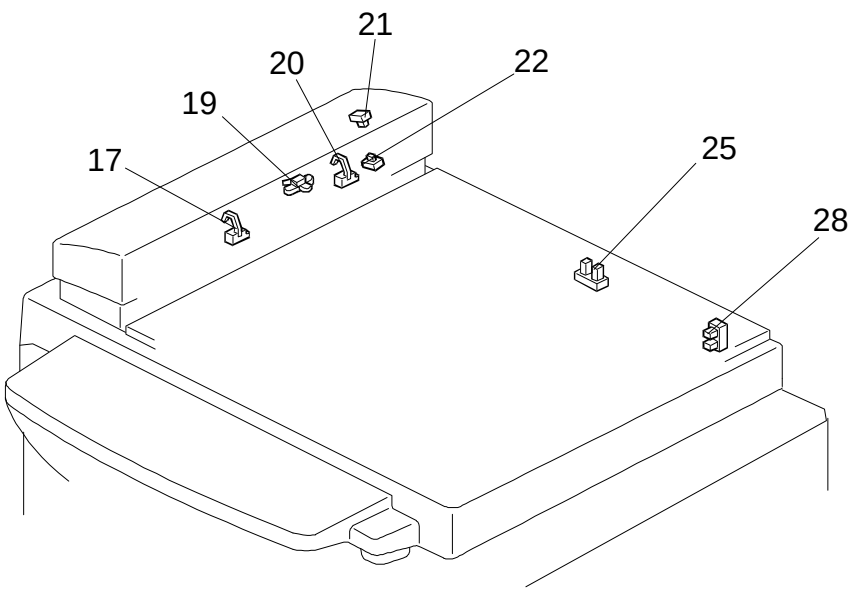
1. Master Ejecting: Eject the used master wrapped around the drum into the master eject box.
2. Scanning: Scan the original image by CCD through the mirror and the lens while feeding the original.
3. Master Feeding: Convert the image signal read by CCD into the digital signal and send it to the thermal head to make holes on the surface of the master and then, set the master around the drum.
4. Paper Feeding: Send paper to the drum section by using center separation system consisting of the separation plate and separation roller.
5. Printing: Press the paper fed from the paper feed section to the drum to transfer the ink through drum screen and the master.
6. Paper Delivering: Peel the printed paper with the Exit Pawl and Air knife and eject the paper onto the paper delivery table.

5. ELECTRICAL COMPONENTS LAYOUT

5.1 C226

5.1.1 ADF and Scaner

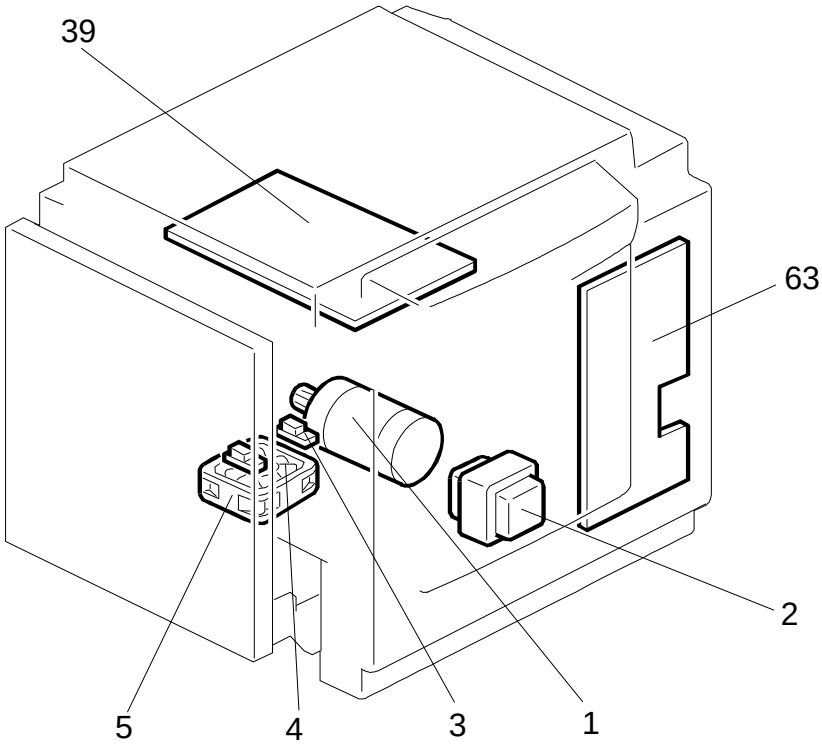


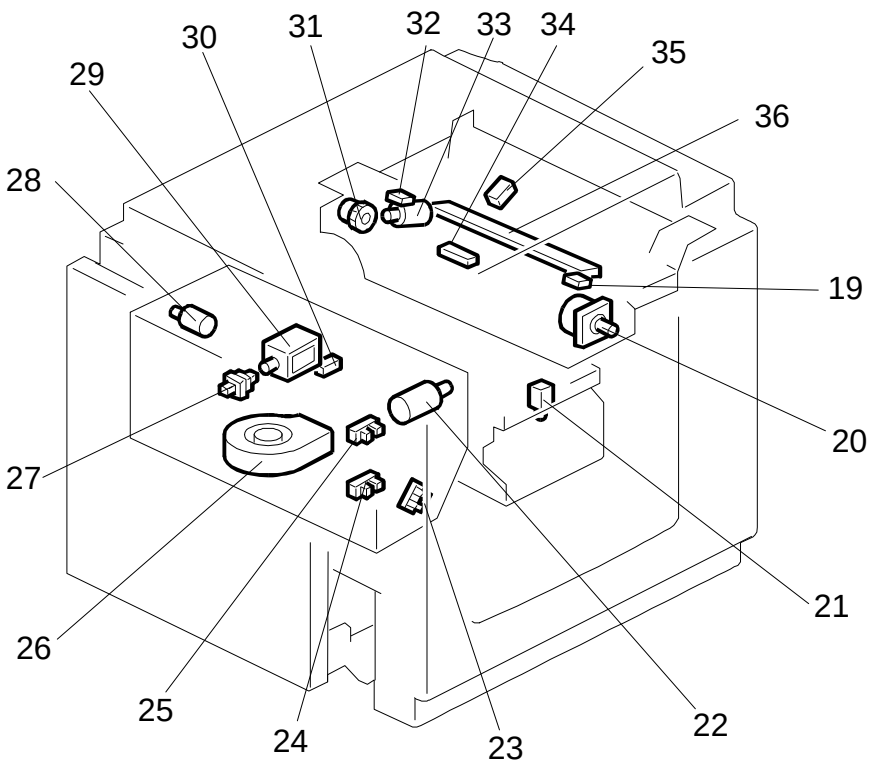


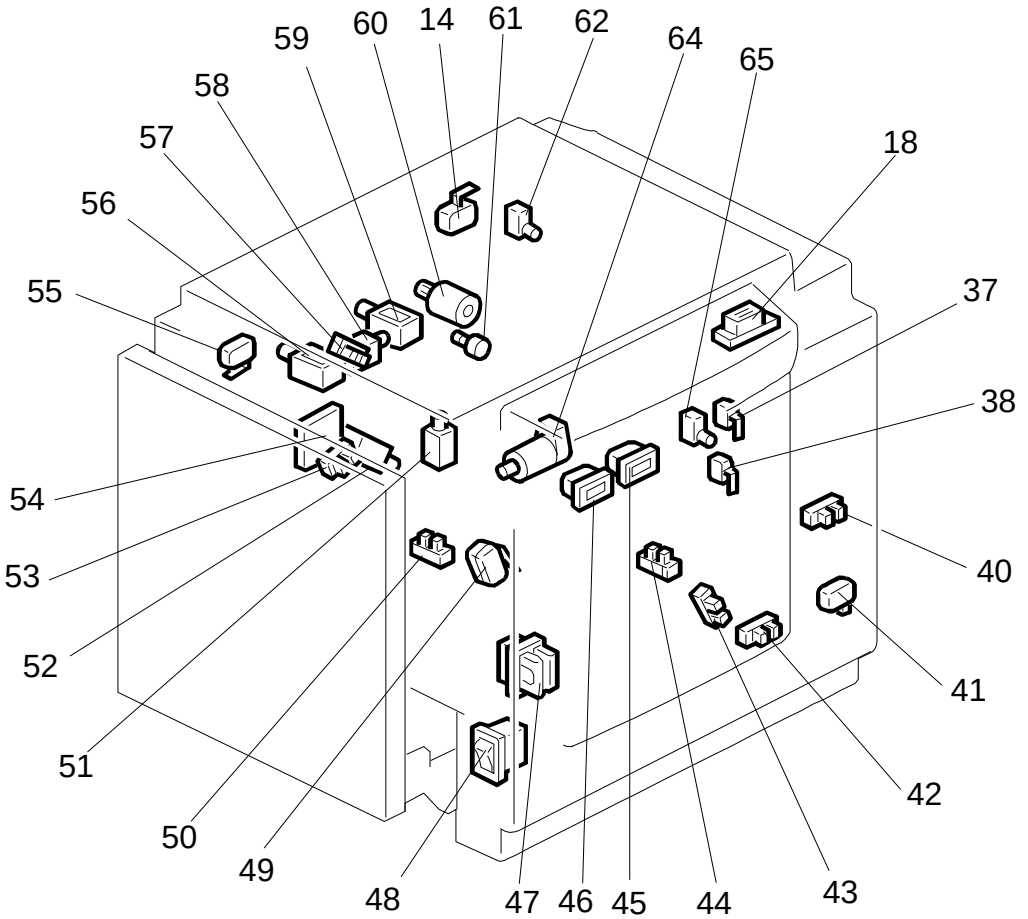
Table

INDEX NO.	NAME	FUNCTION
Printed Circuit Board		
1	OPU (Operation Panel Unit)	This board controls the operation panel.
9	Contact Image Sensor and Xenon Lamp	This sensor reads and converts the light reflected from the document into an analog video signal. It uses an RMLA (Roof Mirror Lens Array) sensor unit. The xenon lamp which illuminates the document is contained in this unit.
Motors		
6	ADF Motor	This stepper motor drives the scanner.
4	Scanner Motor	This stepper motor drives the book scanner.
Sensors and Switches		
17	Document Sensor	This detects the presence of a document in the feeder.
19	Scan Line Sensor	This detects when a page is approaching the auto shading position.
20	Not used	
21	ADF Cover Switch	This detects whether the ADF cover is open or closed.
28	Scanner Home Position Sensor	This detects when the image sensor is at home position.
25	Platen Cover Sensor	This detects whether the platen cover is open or closed.
22	ADF Switch	This detects whether the ADF unit is open or closed.
Others		
13	Lamp Stabilizer	This supplies power to the xenon lamp.

5.1.2 Main Body






59
60
14
61
62
64
65
58
57
18
56
55
37
38
54
53
40
52
41
51
42
50
49
48
47
46
45
44
43

Table

INDEX No.	NAME	FUNCTION
Motors		
1	Main Motor	Drives paper feed, drum, printing and paper delivery unit components.
4	Vacuum Motor	Provides suction so that paper is held firmly on the transport belt.
20	Master Feed Motor	Feeds the master to the drum.
22	Pressure Plate Motor	Raises and lowers the pressure plate.
26	Air Knife Motor	Rotates the fan to provide air to separate the paper leading edge from the drum.
28	Master Eject Motor	Sends used masters into the master eject box.
33	Cutter Motor	Cuts the master.
60	Image Shift Motor	Changes the timing between the paper feed roller and the drum to adjust the vertical image position.
64	Paper Table Drive Motor	Raises and lowers the paper table.
Solenoids		
21	Ink Supply Solenoid	Releases the spring clutch to activate the ink supply pump.
29	Master Eject Solenoid	Opens the master clamp to eject the master.
51	Paper Feed Solenoid	Releases the paper feed sector gear to rotate the paper feed roller.
52	Printing Pressure Solenoid	Moves the press roller against the drum.
56	Master Eject Clamper Solenoid	Opens the master clamp to eject the master.
58	Drum Lock Solenoid	Prevents removal of the drum unit when the drum is not at the home position.
59	Master Feed Clamper Solenoid	Opens the master clamp to eject the master.
Switches		
14	Scanner Unit Safety Switch	Check whether the scanner unit is set correctly or not.
18	Plotter Cover Safety Switch	Check whether the cover on the plotter unit is closed correctly or not.
19	Left Cutter Switch	Detects when the cutter position is at the far left.
27	Master Eject Box Switch	Checks whether the master eject box is installed correctly or not.
32	Right Cutter Switch	Detects when the cutter position is at the far right.
37	Front Door Safety Switch	Checks whether the front door is set correctly or not.
38	Drum Safety Switch	Checks whether the drum unit is set correctly or not.
41	Paper Table Safety Switch	Checks whether the paper table is opened or not.

INDEX No.	NAME	FUNCTION
47	Test Switch	Releases the cover safety functions. (NOTE:)
48	Main Switch	Turns the power on or off.
49	Master Eject Unit Safety Switch (220V machines only)	Checks whether the master eject unit is closed correctly or not. Cuts the ac power.
55	Master Eject Unit Safety Switch (115V machines only)	
62	Master Cutter Switch	Informs the CPU to cut the master paper leading edge.
65	Drum Rotation Switch	Informs the CPU to rotate the main motor at 10 rpm.
Sensors		
3	1st Paper Exit Sensor	Detects misfeeds.
5	2nd Paper Exit Sensor	Detects misfeeds.
23	Lower Pressure Plate Sensor	Informs the CPU if the pressure plate is at the lower limit position.
24	Full Master Box Sensor	Informs the CPU if the master eject box is full of used masters.
25	Upper Pressure Plate Sensor	Informs the CPU if the pressure plate is at the upper limit position.
30	Master Eject Sensor	Detects master eject jams.
34	Master Buckle Sensor	Detects master buckling.
35	Master End Sensor	Informs the CPU when the plotter unit runs out of master roll.
40	Paper Table Height Sensor	Detects when the paper table reaches the paper feed position.
42	Paper Table Lower Limit Sensor	Detects when the paper table reaches the lowest position.
43	Printing Pressure Sensor	Informs the CPU when printing pressure is applied.
44	Paper End Sensor	Informs the CPU when the paper table runs out of paper.
50	Drum Rotation Sensor	Supplies timing pulses to the main board.
53	2nd Drum Position Sensor	Checks the position of the drum.
57	1st Drum Position Sensor	Checks the position of the drum.
Printed Circuit Board		
39	Main Control PCB	Controls all machine functions both directly and through other boards.

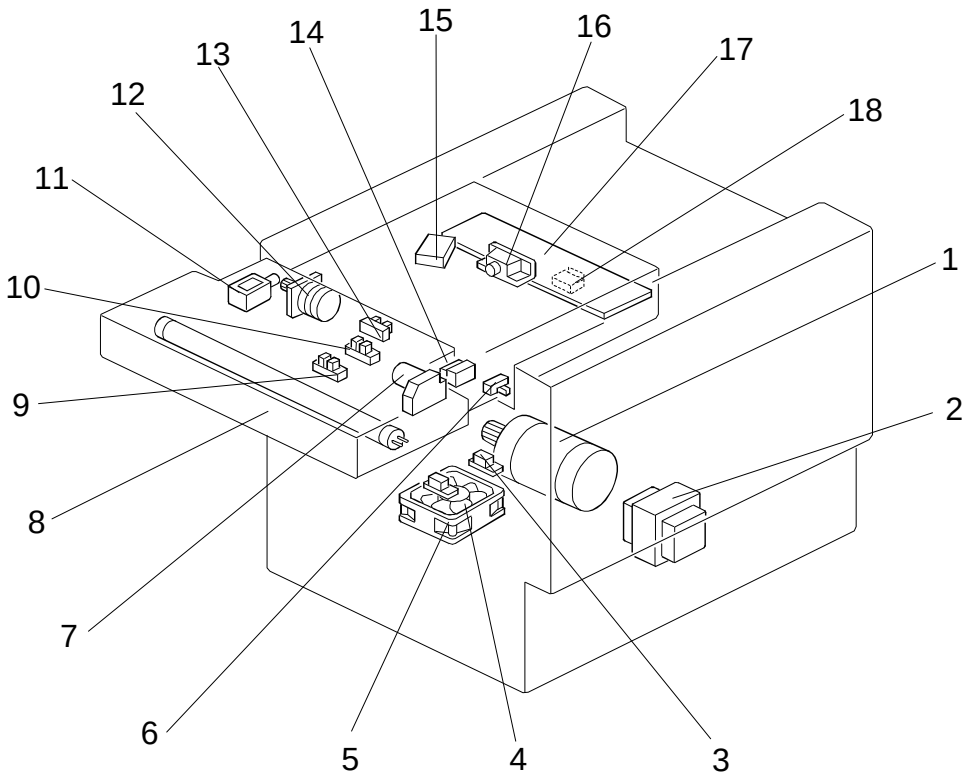
INDEX No.	NAME	FUNCTION
54	Ink Detection PCB	Checks if the ink is present in the drum.
63	Power Supply PCB	Rectifies 100 V ac input and supplies dc voltage.
Counters		
45	Copy Counter	Keeps track of the total number of copies made.
46	Master Counter	Keeps track of the total number of masters made.
Others		
2	Transformer	Steps down the wall voltage.
31	Reverse Roller Clutch	Transfers master feed motor rotation to the reverse roller at proper timing.
36	Thermal Head	Burns the image onto the master.
61	Encoder	Converts 16 image positions to 4 bit data.

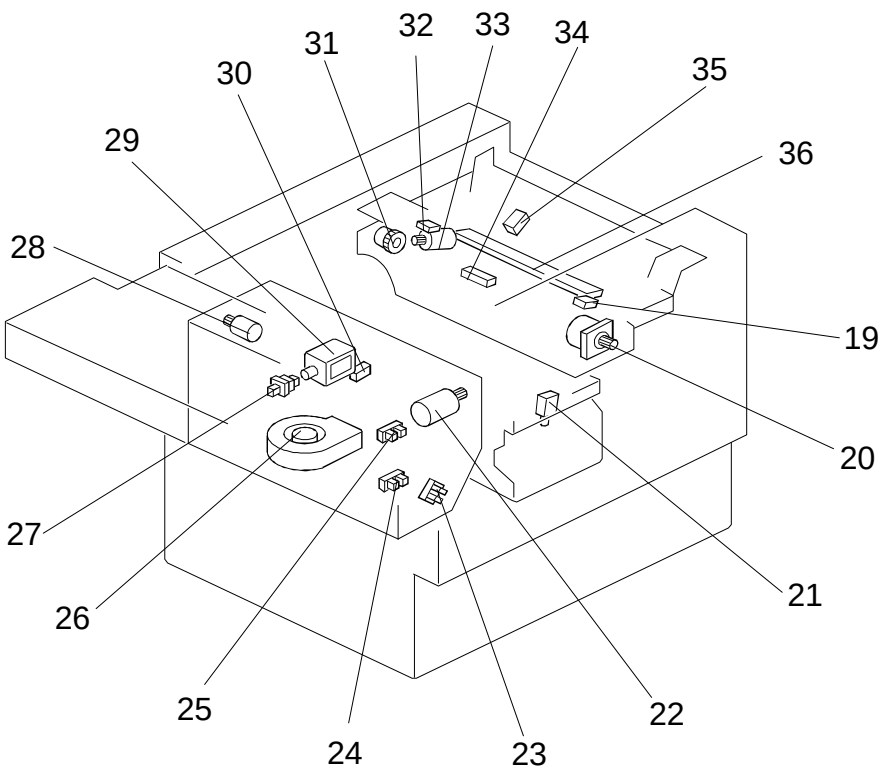
NOTE: 1) The Master Eject Unit Safety Switch in the 220 V machines cannot be disabled by this test switch.

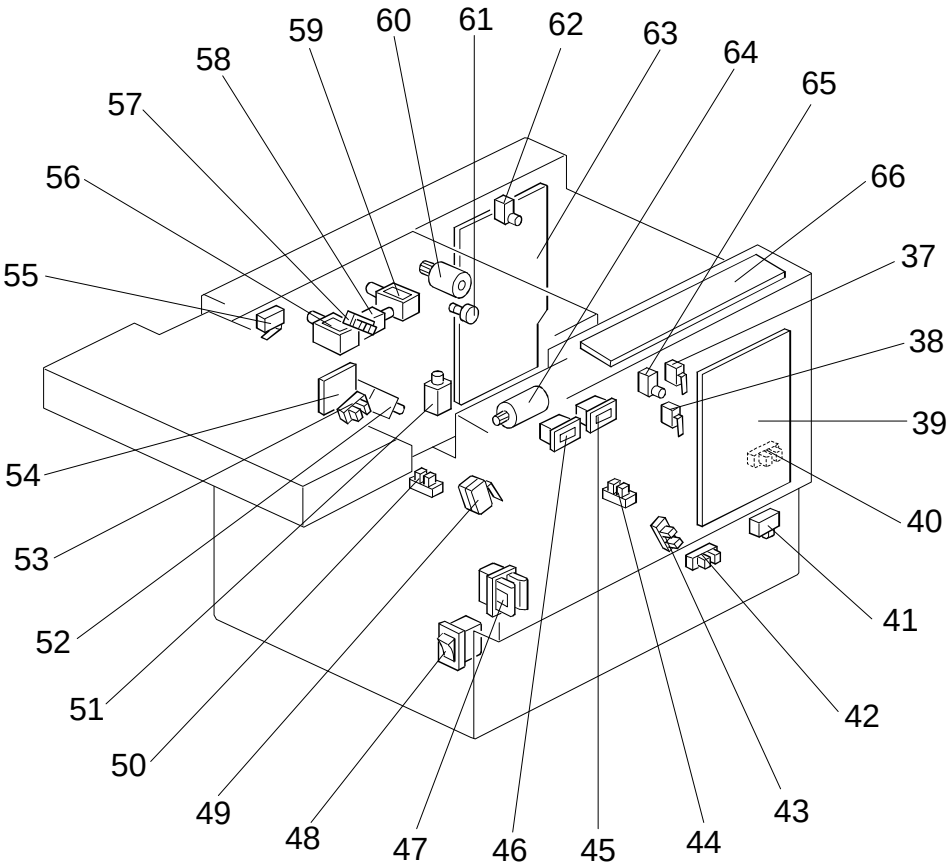
2) When you use this test switch, be sure to return it to home position after servicing in order to recover the cover safety functions.

5.2 C224

Electrical Component Layout






59
60
61
62
63
64
65
58
57
56
66
55
37
38
39
54
40
53
41
52
42
51
50
49
48
47
46
45
44
43

Table

INDEX No.	NAME	FUNCTION
Motors		
1	Main Motor	Drives paper feed, drum, printing and paper delivery unit components.
4	Vacuum Motor	Provides suction so that paper is held firmly on the transport belt.
7	ADF Drive Motor	Feeds the original to the original transport section.
12	Original Transport Motor	Transports the original to the scanner section.
20	Master Feed Motor	Feeds the master to the drum.
22	Pressure Plate Motor	Raises and lowers the pressure plate.
26	Air Knife Motor	Rotates the fan to provide air to separate the paper leading edge from the drum.
28	Master Eject Motor	Sends used masters into the master eject box.
33	Cutter Motor	Cuts the master.
60	Image Shift Motor	Changes the timing between the paper feed roller and the drum to adjust the vertical image position.
64	Paper Table Drive Motor	Raises and lowers the paper table.
Solenoids		
11	Original Pressure Solenoid	Presses the original pressure plate down on the originals.
21	Ink Supply Solenoid	Releases the spring clutch to activate the ink supply pump.
29	Master Eject Solenoid	Opens the master clamp to eject the master.
51	Paper Feed Solenoid	Releases the paper feed sector gear to rotate the paper feed roller.
52	Printing Pressure Solenoid	Moves the press roller against the drum.
56	Master Eject Clamper Solenoid	Opens the master clamp to eject the master.
58	Drum Lock Solenoid	Prevents removal of the drum unit when the drum is not at the home position.
59	Master Feed Clamper Solenoid	Opens the master clamp to eject the master.
Switches		
6	Printing Density Switch	Use to select the printing density corresponding to the type and quality of the original.
14	ADF Safety Switch	Check whether the ADF unit is set correctly or not.
18	Fluorescent Lamp Safety Switch	Cuts the power for the fluorescent lamp when the scanner is opened.
19	Left Cutter Switch	Detects when the cutter position is at the far left.
27	Master Eject Box Switch	Checks whether the master eject box is installed correctly or not.
32	Right Cutter Switch	Detects when the cutter position is at the far right.

INDEX No.	NAME	FUNCTION
37	Front Door Safety Switch	Checks whether the front door is set correctly or not.
38	Drum Safety Switch	Checks whether the drum unit is set correctly or not.
41	Paper Table Safety Switch	Checks whether the paper table is opened or not.
47	Test Switch	Releases the cover safety functions. (NOTE:)
48	Main Switch	Turns the power on or off.
49	Master Eject Unit Safety Switch (220V machines only)	Checks whether the master eject unit is closed correctly or not. Cuts the ac power.
55	Master Eject Unit Safety Switch (115V machines only)	
62	Master Cutter Switch	Informs the CPU to cut the master paper leading edge.
65	Drum Rotation Switch	Informs the CPU to rotate the main motor at 10 rpm.
Sensors		
3	1st Paper Exit Sensor	Detects misfeeds.
5	2nd Paper Exit Sensor	Detects misfeeds.
9	Original Registration Sensor	Detects misfeeds in the ADF, and synchronizes master feed with original feed.
10	2nd Original Sensor	Detects when the original comes to the feed position.
13	1st Original Sensor	Detects when the original is set in the ADF mode.
23	Lower Pressure Plate Sensor	Informs the CPU if the pressure plate is at the lower limit position.
24	Full Master Box Sensor	Informs the CPU if the master eject box is full of used masters.
25	Upper Pressure Plate Sensor	Informs the CPU if the pressure plate is at the upper limit position.
30	Master Eject Sensor	Detects master eject jams.
34	Master Buckle Sensor	Detects master buckling.
35	Master End Sensor	Informs the CPU when the plotter unit runs out of master roll.
40	Paper Table Height Sensor	Detects when the paper table reaches the paper feed position.
42	Paper Table Lower Limit Sensor	Detects when the paper table reaches the lowest position.
43	Printing Pressure Sensor	Informs the CPU when printing pressure is applied.
44	Paper End Sensor	Informs the CPU when the paper table runs out of paper.
50	Drum Rotation Sensor	Supplies timing pulses to the main board.
53	2nd Drum Position Sensor	Checks the position of the drum.
57	1st Drum Position Sensor	Checks the position of the drum.
Printed Circuit Board		
16	CCD PCB	Converts light into an electrical signal.
17	A/D Conversion PCB	Converts analog signals into digital signals.

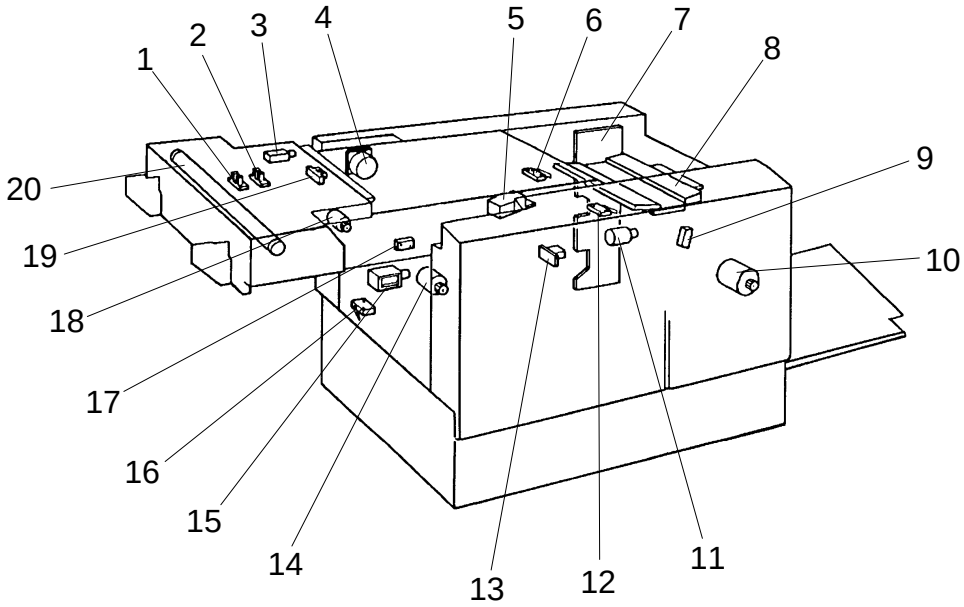
INDEX No.	NAME	FUNCTION
39	Main Control PCB	Controls all machine functions both directly and through other boards.
54	Ink Detection PCB	Checks if the ink is present in the drum.
63	Power Supply PCB	Rectifies 100 V ac input and supplies dc voltage.
Counters		
45	Copy Counter	Keeps track of the total number of copies made.
46	Master Counter	Keeps track of the total number of masters made.
Others		
2	Transformer	Steps down the wall voltage.
8	Fluorescent Lamp	Exposes the original.
15	Fluorescent Lamp Stabilizer	Controls the exposure lamp.
31	Reverse Roller Clutch	Transfers master feed motor rotation to the reverse roller at proper timing.
36	Thermal Head	Burns the image onto the master.
61	Encoder	Converts 16 image positions to 4 bit data.
66	Operation Panel	Interfaces the CPU and the operator.

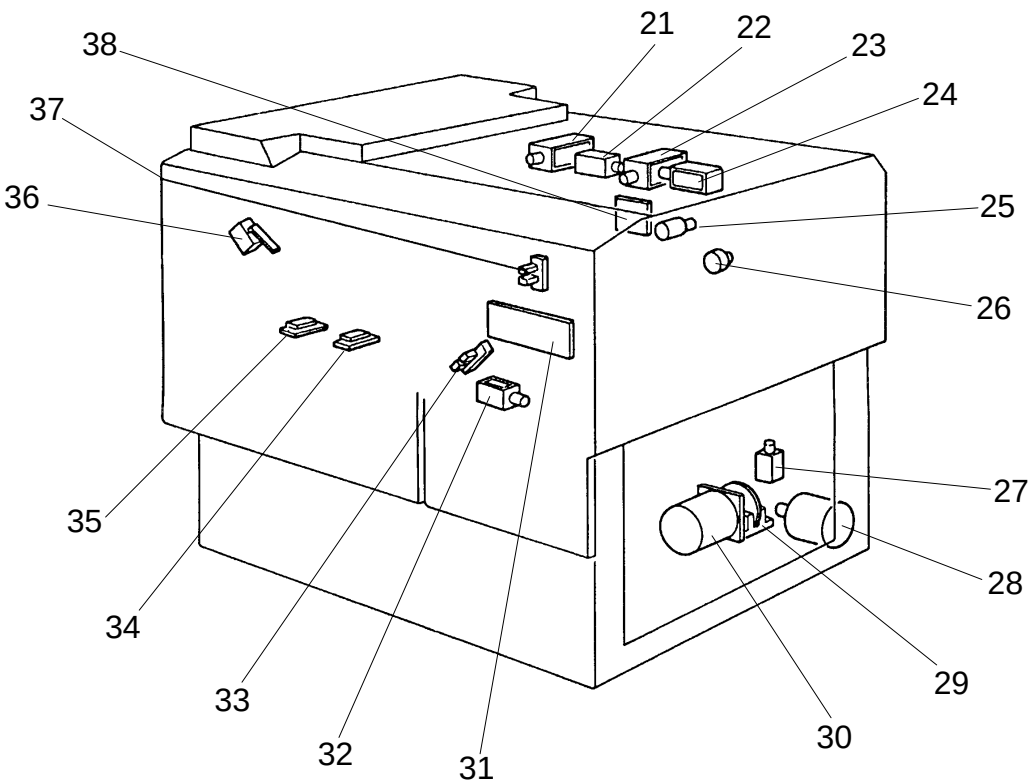
NOTE: 1) The Master Eject Unit Safety Switch in the 220 V machines cannot be disabled by this test switch.

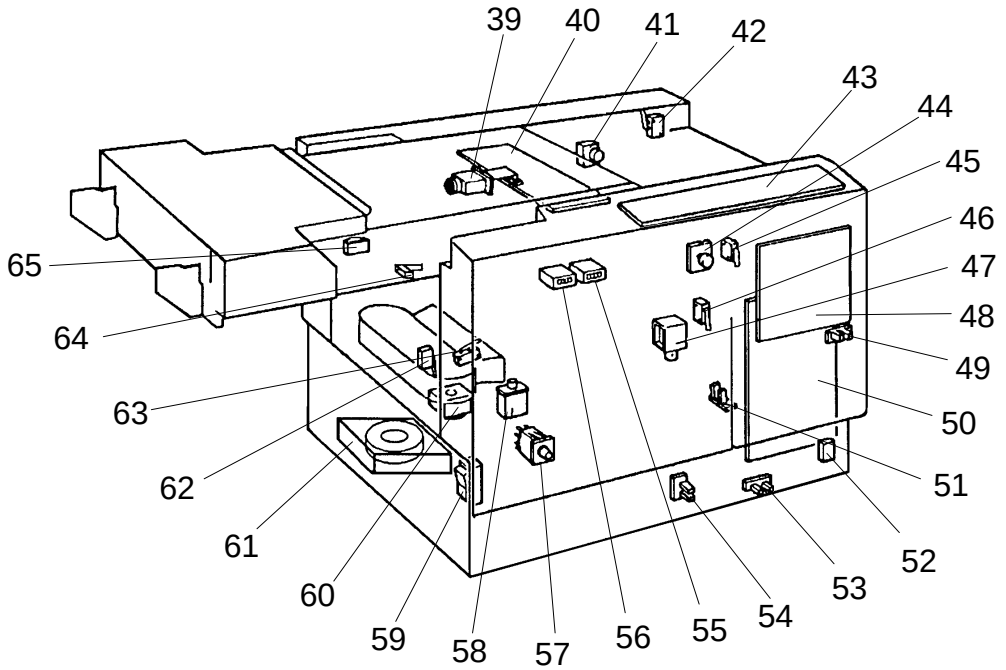
2) When you use this test switch, be sure to return it to home position after servicing in order to recover the cover safety functions.

5.3 C215/C216

Electrical Component Layout






39
40
41
42
43
44
45
46
47
48
49
50
51
52
53
54
55
56
57
58
59
60
61
62
63
64
65

Table

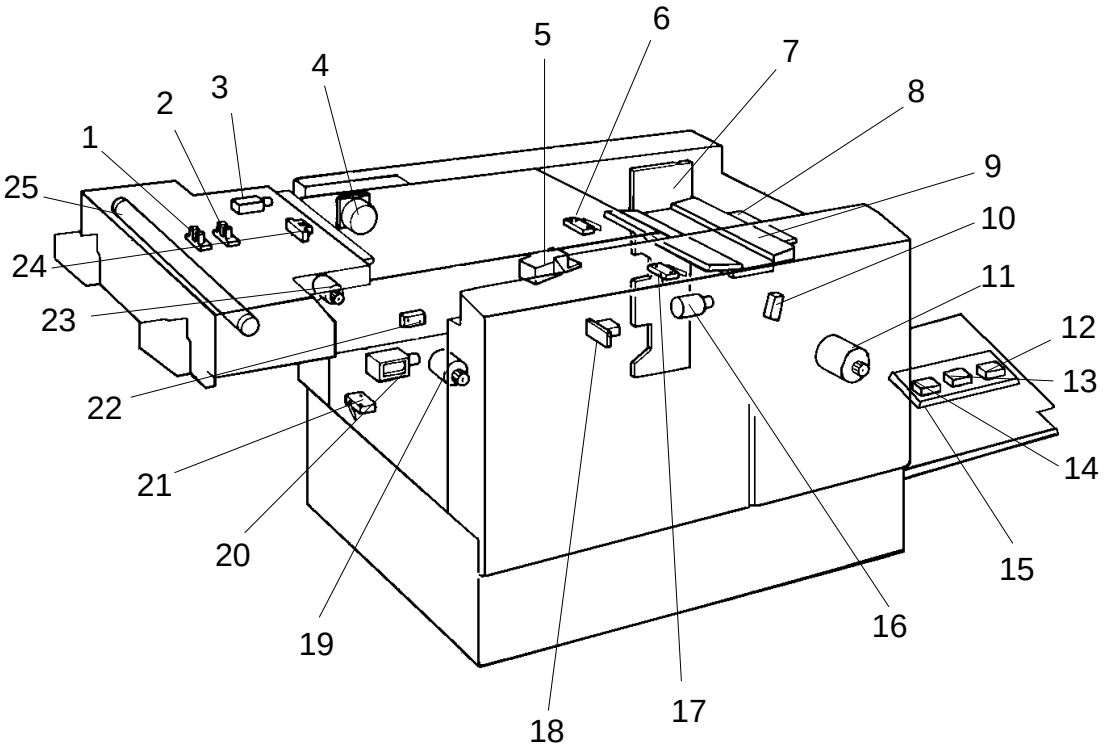
INDEX No.	NAME	FUNCTION
Motors		
4	Original Transport Motor	Transports the original to the scanner section.
10	Master Feed Motor	Feeds the master to the drum.
11	Cutter Motor	Cuts the master.
14	Master Eject Motor	Sends used master into the master eject box.
18	ADF Drive Motor (C216)	Feeds the original to the scanner section.
25	Image Shift Motor	Changes the timing between the paper feed roller and the drum to adjust the vertical image position.
28	Paper Table Drive Motor	Raises and lowers the paper table.
30	Main Motor	Drives paper feed, drum, printing and paper delivery unit components.
60	Air Knife Motor	Rotates the fan to separate the paper leading edge from the drum.
61	Vacuum Motor	Provides suction so paper is held firmly on the transport belt.
Solenoids		
3	Original Pressure Solenoid (C216)	Presses the original pressure plate down on the originals.
15	Master Eject Solenoid	Moves the master eject roller to contact the drum surface.
21	Master Eject Clamper Solenoid	Opens the master clamp to eject the master.
22	Drum Lock Solenoid	Prevents removal of the drum unit unless the drum is at the original stop position
23	Master Feed Clamper Solenoid	Opens the master clamp to clamp the master.
24	Reverse Roller Solenoid	Releases the clutch to rotate the reverse roller.
27	Paper Feed Solenoid	Releases the paper feed sector gear to rotate the paper feed roller.
32	Printing Pressure Solenoid	Moves the press roller against the drum.
47	Ink Supply Solenoid	Releases the spring clutch to activate the ink supply pump.
Switches		
6	Right Cutter Switch	Detects when the cutter position is at the far right.
12	Left Cutter Switch	Detects when the cutter position is at the far left.
16	Master Box Switch	Checks whether the master eject box is installed correctly or not.
36	Master Eject Unit Safety Switch	Checks whether the Master Eject Unit is closed correctly or not.
41	Master Cut Switch	Informs the CPU to cut the master paper leading edge.

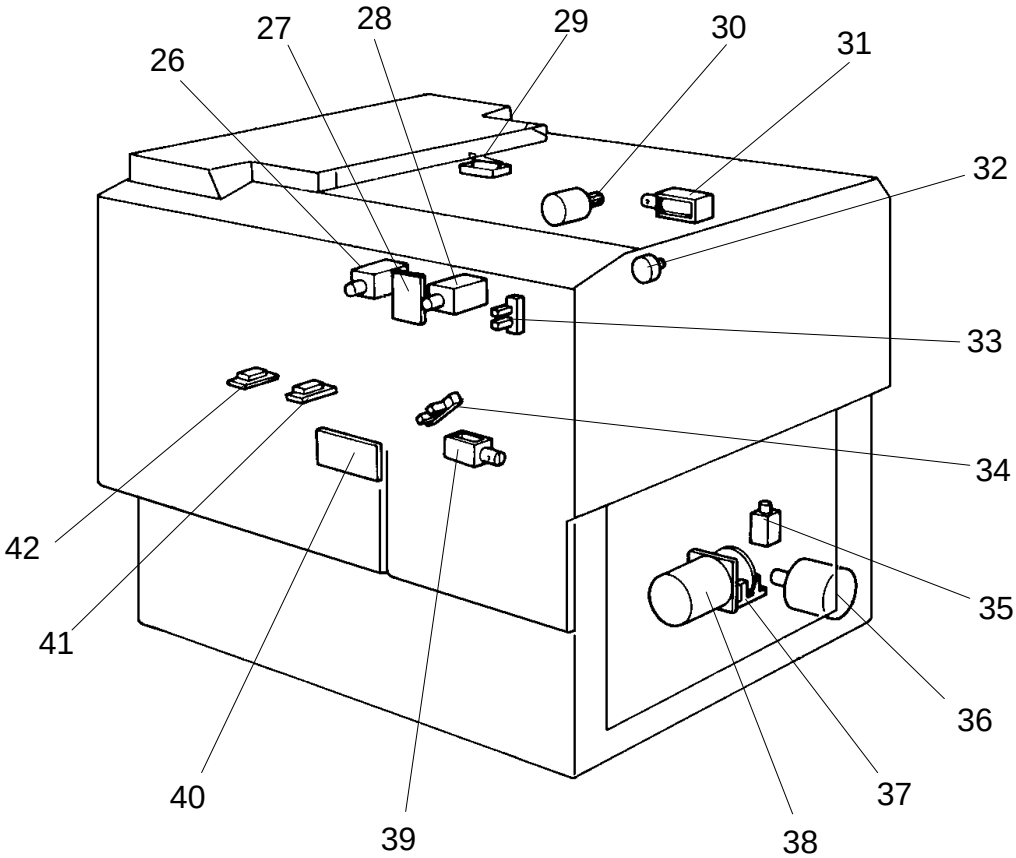
INDEX No.	NAME	FUNCTION
42	Scanner Safety Switch	Checks whether the scanner unit is closed correctly or not.
44	Drum Rotation Switch	Informs the CPU to rotate the main motor at 10 rpm.
45	Front Door Safety Switch	Checks whether the Front Door is set correctly or not.
46	Drum Safety Switch	Checks whether the drum unit is set correctly or not.
52	Paper Table Safety Switch	Checks whether the paper table is opened correctly or not.
57	Interlock Switch	Releases the cover safety functions.
59	Main Switch	Turns the power on or off.
62	Full Master Detecting Switch	Informs the CPU when the master eject box is full of masters.
63	Pressure Plate Position Switch	Informs the CPU when the pressure plate has reached the home position.
64	Printing Density Switch	Use to select the printing density according to the type and quality of the original.
65	ADF Safety Switch (C216)	Check whether the ADF unit is set correctly or not.
Sensors		
1	Original Registration Sensor	Informs the CPU when the original leading edge reaches the exposure glass.
2	2nd Original Sensor	Detects when the original is set.
9	Master End Sensor	Informs the CPU when the plotter unit runs out of master roll.
13	Master Buckle Sensor	Detects master buckles.
17	Master Eject Sensor	Detects when the used master is sent into the master eject box.
19	1st Original Sensor (C216)	Detects when the original is set in the ADF mode.
29	Drum Rotation Sensor	Supplies timing pulses to the main board.
33	2nd Drum Position Sensor	Checks the position of the drum.
34	1st Paper Exit Sensor	Detects misfeed.
35	2nd Paper Exit Sensor	Detects misfeed.
37	1st Drum Position Sensor	Checks the position of the drum.
49	Paper Table Height Sensor	Detects when the paper table reaches the paper feed position.
51	Paper End Sensor	Informs the CPU when the paper table runs out of paper.
53	Paper Table Lower Limit Sensor	Detects when the paper table reaches the lowest position.
54	Printing Pressure Sensor	Informs the CPU when the printing pressure is applied.
Printed Circuit Board		
7	Power Supply PCB	Rectifies 100V AC input and supplies DC voltage.

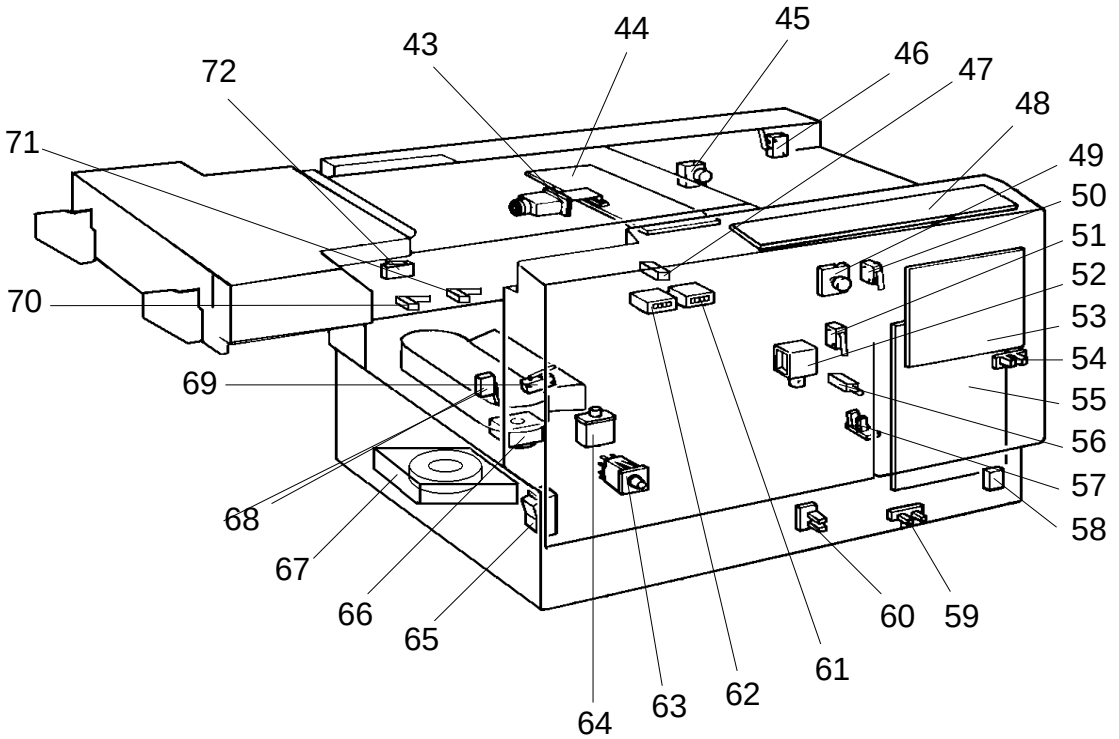
INDEX No.	NAME	FUNCTION
31	AC Drive PCB	Controls the AC component by relays.
38	Ink Detection PCB	Control the ink supply.
39	CCD PCB	Converts the light intensity into the electrical signal.
40	A/D Conversion PCB	Converts the analogue signal into the digital signal.
43	Operation Panel	Controls the LED performance and monitors the key operation.
48	Main Control PCB	Controls all machine functions both directly and through other boards.
50	Image Processing PCB	Controls the master processing performance.
Counters		
55	Copy Counter	Keeps track of the total number of copies made.
56	Master Counter	Keeps track of the total number of masters made.
Others		
5	Fluorescent Lamp Stabilizer	Stabilizes the power supplement to the fluorescent lamp.
8	Thermal Head	Burns the image on to the master.
20	Fluorescent Lamp	Exposes the original.
26	Encoder	Converts 16 image positions to 4 bit data.
58	Circuit Breaker	Cuts the ac line.

5.4 C211/C212/C213

Electrical Component Layout




26
27
28
29
30
31
32
33
34
35
36
37
38
39
40
41
42


43
44
45
46
47
48
49
50
51
52
53
54
55
56
57
58
59
60
61
62
63
64
65
66
67
68
69
70
71
72

Table

INDEX No.	NAME	FUNCTION
Motors		
4	Original Transport Motor	Transports the original to the scanner section.
11	Master Feed Motor	Feeds the master to the drum.
16	Cutter Motor	Cut the master.
19	Master Eject Motor	Sends used master into the master eject box.
23	ADF Drive Motor (C212/C213 only)	Feeds the original to the scanner section.
30	Image shift Motor	Changes the timing between the paper feed roller and the drum to adjust vertical image position.
36	Paper Table Drive Motor	Raises and lowers the paper table.
38	Main Motor	Drives paper feed, drum, printing and paper delivery unit components.
66	Air Knife Motor	Rotates the fan to separate the paper leading edge from the drum.
67	Vacuum Motor	Provides suction so paper is held firmly on the transport belt.
Solenoids		
3	Original Pressure Solenoid (C212/C213 only)	Presses the original pressure plate down on the originals.
20	Master Eject Solenoid	Moves the master eject roller to contact the drum surface.
26	Master Eject Clamper Solenoid	Opens the master clamp to eject the master.
28	Master Feed Clamper Solenoid	Opens the master clamp to clamp the master.
31	Reverse Roller Solenoid	Releases the clutch to rotate the reverse roller.
35	Paper Feed Solenoid	Releases the paper feed sector gear to rotate the paper feed roller.
39	Printing Pressure Solenoid	Moves the press roller against the drum.
52	Ink Supply Solenoid	Releases the spring clutch to activate the ink supply pump.
56	Drum Lock Solenoid	Prevents removal of the drum unit unless the drum is at the original stop position (This solenoid can be used on the C212/C213).
Switches		
6	Right Cutter Switch	Detects when the cutter position is far right.
17	Left Cutter Switch	Detects when the cutter position is far left.
21	Master Box Switch	Checks whether the master eject box is installed correctly or not.

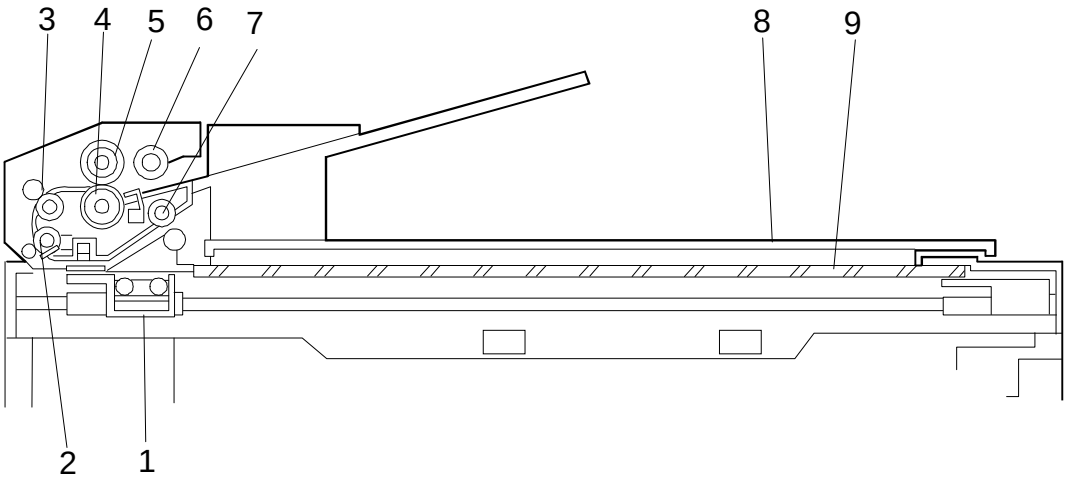
INDEX No.	NAME	FUNCTION
29	Master Eject Unit Safety Switch	Checks whether the Master Eject Unit is closed correctly or not.
45	Master Cut Switch	Informs the CPU to cut the master paper leading edge.
46	Scanner Safety Switch	Checks whether the scanner unit is closed correctly or not.
49	Drum Rotation Switch	Informs the CPU to rotate the main motor at 10 rpm.
50	Front Door Safety Switch	Checks whether the Front Door is set correctly or not.
51	Drum Safety Switch	Checks whether the drum unit is set correctly or not.
58	Paper Table Safety Switch	Checks whether the paper table is opened correctly or not.
63	Interlock Switch	Releases the cover safety functions.
65	Main Switch	Turns the power on or off.
68	Full Master Detecting Switch	Informs the CPU when the master eject box is full of masters.
69	Pressure Plate Position Switch	Informs the CPU when the pressure plate has reached the home position.
70	Memory/Class Switch (C212/C213 only)	Selects Memory or Class mode.
71	Skip Paper Feed Switch (C212/C213) Printing Density Switch (C211)	Adjusts paper feed interval to allow time for user to remove prints. Use to select the printing density according to the type and quality of the original.
72	ADF Safety Switch (C212/C213 only)	Check whether the ADF unit is set correctly or not.
Sensors		
1	Original Registration Sensor	Informs the CPU when the original leading edge reaches the exposure glass.
2	2nd Original Sensor	Detects when the original is set.
10	Master End Sensor	Informs the CPU when the plotter unit runs out of master roll.
12	Paper Size Detection Sensor 3 (C212/C213 only)	Detects the size of the paper set on the paper table.
13	Paper Size Detection Sensor 2 (C212/C213 only)	Detects the size of the paper set on the paper table.
14	Paper Size Detection Sensor 1 (C212/C213 only)	Detects the size of the paper set on the paper table.
18	Master Buckle Sensor	Detects the master buckle existence.
22	Master Eject Sensor	Detects when the used master is sent into the master eject box.

INDEX No.	NAME	FUNCTION
24	1st Original Sensor (C212/C213 only)	Detects when the original is set in the ADF mode.
33	1st Drum Position Sensor	Checks the position of the drum.
34	2nd Drum Position Sensor	Checks the position of the drum.
37	Drum Rotation Sensor	Supplies timing pulses to the main board.
41	1st Paper Exit Sensor	Misfeed detector.
42	2nd Paper Exit Sensor	Misfeed detector.
47	Drum Master Detection Sensor (C212/C213 only)	Checks whether the master is on the drum.
54	Paper Table Height Sensor	Detects when the paper table reaches the paper feed position.
57	Paper End Sensor	Informs the CPU when the paper table runs out of paper.
59	Paper Table Lower Limit Sensor	Detects when the paper table reaches the lowest position.
69	Printing Pressure Sensor	Informs the CPU when the printing pressure is applied.
Printed Circuit Board		
7	Power Supply PCB	Rectifies 100V AC input and supplies DC voltage.
8	Thermal Head Drive Control PCB	Supplies the power to the Thermal Head according to the signal from the scanner section.
27	Ink Detection PCB	Control the ink supply.
40	AC Drive PCB	Controls the AC component by relays.
43	CCD PCB	Converts the light intensity into the electrical signal.
44	A/D Conversion PCB	Converts the analogue signal into the digital signal.
48	Operation Panel	Controls the LED performance and monitors the key operation.
53	Main Control PCB	Controls all machine functions both directly and through other boards.
55	Image Processing PCB	Controls the master processing performance.
Printed Circuit Board		
15	Paper Size Detection Board (C212/C213 only)	Detects the size of the paper set on the table.
Counters		
61	Copy Counter	Keeps track of the total number of copies made.
62	Master Counter	Keeps track of the total number of masters made.

INDEX No.	NAME	FUNCTION
Others		
5	Fluorescent Lamp Stabilizer	Stabilizes the power supplement to the Fluorescent Lamp.
9	Thermal Head	Plots the master with heat.
25	Fluorescent Lamp	Applies light to the original for exposure.
32	Encoder	Converts 16 image positions to 4 bit data.
64	Circuit Breaker	Cuts the ac line off.

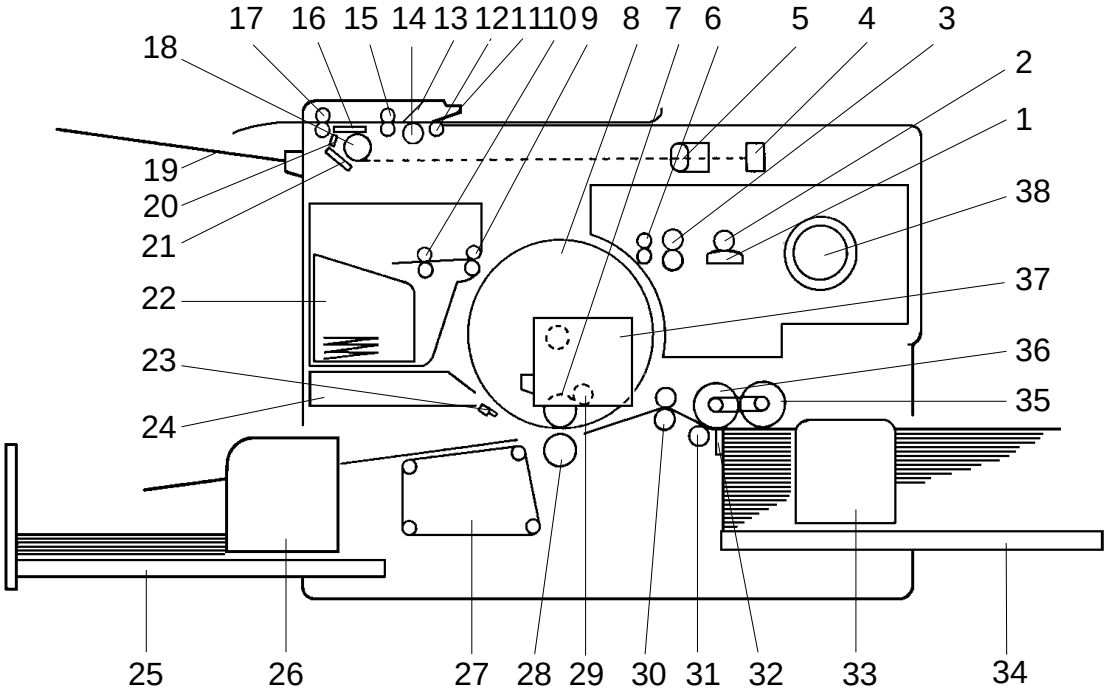
6. MECHANICAL COMPONENT LAYOUT

6.1 ADF AND SCANNER: C226 ONLY



No.	Name	Description
1	Scanner	Contains a contact image sensor and a xenon lamp driver.
2	R1 Roller	Feeds the document through the scanner.
3	R0 Roller	Feeds the document into the scanner.
4	Separation roller	Prevents more than one sheet from feeding into the scanner.
5	Document Feed Roller	Feeds the document into the scanner.
6	Pick-up Roller	Picks up pages of the document from the document table one at a time.
7	R2 Roller	Feeds the document through the scanner.
8	Platen Cover	This covers the original which was placed on the exposure glass.
9	Exposure Glass	Book scanner reads the original on it.

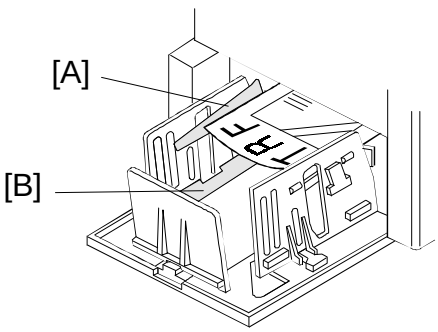
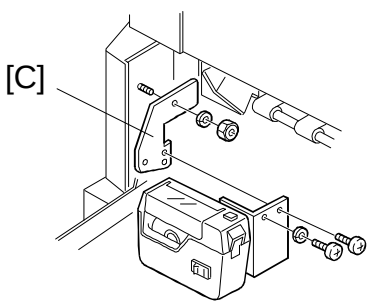
6.2 MECHANICAL COMPONENT LAYOUT



1. Thermal Head
2. Platen Roller
3. Master Feed Roller
4. CCD (Except for C226)
5. Lens (Except for C226)
6. Reverse Roller
7. Ink Roller
8. Drum Unit
9. 1st Eject Roller
10. 2nd Eject Roller
11. Original Pressure Plate (C212/C213/C216/C224)
12. Pull-out Roller (C212/C213/C216/C224)
13. Separation Blade (C212/C213/C216/C224)
14. Original Feed Roller (C212/C213/C216/C224)
15. 1st Original Transport Roller (Except for C226)
16. Exposure Grass (Except for C226)
17. 2nd Original Transport Roller (Except for C226)
18. Fluorescent Lamp (Except for C226)
19. Original Exit Tray (Except for C226)
20. Feed Sub Mirror (Except for C226)
21. Mirror
22. Master Eject Box
23. Exit Pawl
24. Air Knife
25. Delivery Table
26. Delivery Guide Plate
27. Vacuum Unit
28. Press Roller
29. Doctor Roller
30. 2nd Feed Roller
31. Lower Separation Roller
32. Separation Plate
33. Paper Feed Side Plate
34. Paper Feed Table
35. Paper Feed Roller
36. Upper Separation Roller
37. Ink Holder
38. Master Spool

7. DIFFERENCES BETWEEN MODELS

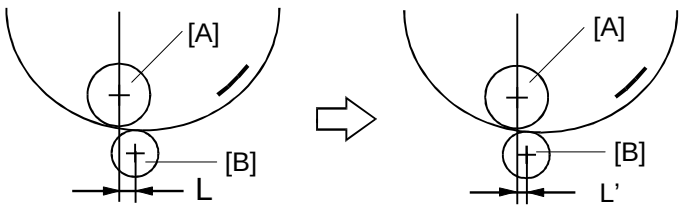
7.1 C226 AND C224

No.	Item	Remarks
1.	ADF, Scanner, and Operation Panel	These units are commonly used in our facsimile products. The C226 model uses a book type scanner. The C224 model does not have this feature. The contact image sensor removes the necessity of complicated adjustments needed for a CCD scanner. A half-tone processor is used for image processing. This processor is similar to those in higher level models. It produces better copy quality half-tone images in Photo and Letter/Photo modes.
2.	Paper Delivery Table	 The C226 model uses a new paper delivery table. This table has newly added small guide plates [A] on each front and rear side fence. The guide plates stack the prints more evenly. The small guide plates [B], on the bottom of each side fence keep the prints aligned in the center of the table while the copies are stacked. Also, the paper stack capacity has been increased from 500 sheets to 1000 sheets.  Due to the the new paper delivery table design, a new auxiliary bracket [C] has been added for optional TAPE MAKER installation. For details, refer to the "Tape Maker Installation" section.

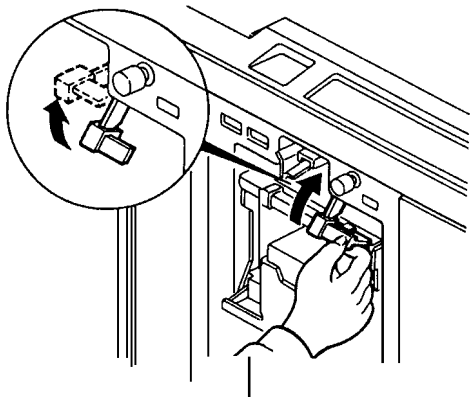
No.	Item	Remarks
		NOTE: 1) The small upper guide platesare needed when thin or normal paper (80g/m^2 or 20 lb. and thinner paper) is used. The guide plate is not needed for thicker paper. If the paper is too thick, it may be caught by the upper guide plates. (Thick paper can be stacked evenly without the upper guide plates.) 2) When the small upper guide plates are used, the paper delivery table's stack capacity reduces to about 750 sheets (depending on paper type). Close the guide plates to achieve the maximum paper stack capacity. 3) The optional TAPE MAKER works with up to 500 sheets (depending on paper type).
3.	Main Control PCB	The C224 model's A/D Conversion PCB is not used. The function is now included in the Main Control PCB, which is located beneath the scanner unit. Since the Main Control PCB was moved from the operational side, the Power Supply PCB was also moved from the non-operation side of the machine to where the Main Control PCB was located in the C224 model.

No.	Item	Remarks
4.	New Functions in Operation	The following functions were not used in the C224 model: – CS Mode – SP Mode (User Accessible) – Paste Shadow Erase Mode (Unique to the C226 model) – One Touch Class Mode (Unique to the C226 model) – Tint Mode (Unique to the C226 model) – Program Mode – Letter/Photo Mode (In addition to the Letter and Photo modes.) – Quality Start Mode: See NOTE 1 – Edge Erase Mode: See NOTE 2 – Edge Erase / Center Erase Mode: See NOTE 2 **NOTE:** 1) In the Quality Start mode, after the master making process, one extra print (this can be set by the operator from 0 to 3 prints) is made at the lowest printing speed (20 cpm). The trial print is made in the same way as other models. As the default setting, two extra prints are made in the Quality Start mode. The Quality Start mode is also used in some other models, however, this method is unique to the C226 model. 2) In other models which use a book type scanner, shadows near the edges and the center of prints (with the platen cover open) can be removed. In the C226, a similar function is available as the Edge Erase/Center Erase mode. Before using this function, the print paper size must be selected manually by the operator. Also. the erasable margin widths for the edges and center adjustable with a user accessible SP mode. The Edge Erase mode is the same as the Margin Erase mode used in some other models that have a book type scanner.

7.2 BETWEEN C224 AND C211/C212/C213

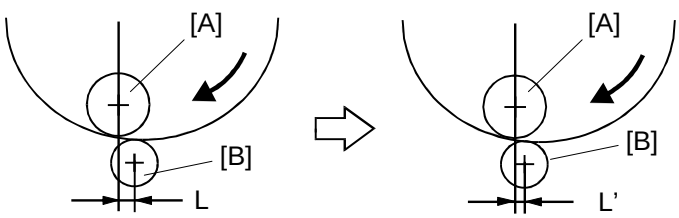
<table>
<tr><th>No.</th><th>Item</th><th>Remarks</th></tr>
<tr><td>1.</td><td>CCD</td><td>A CCD which corresponds to 300 dpi pixel density is used.
<table>
<tr><td>Number of Effective Pixels:</td><td>3648 pixels</td></tr>
<tr><td>Reading Length:</td><td>309 mm</td></tr>
<tr><td>Photo Signal Storage:</td><td>2.5 ms</td></tr>
</table></td></tr>
<tr><td>2.</td><td>Thermal Head</td><td>The thermal head and thermal head drive circuit have been changed corresponding to the 300 dpi pixel density and the increased master feed speed.
<table>
<tr><td>Density of thermal heating elements</td><td>300 dots/inch</td></tr>
<tr><td>Number of thermal heating elements</td><td>3072 dots</td></tr>
<tr><td>Memory length</td><td>256 mm</td></tr>
</table></td></tr>
<tr><td>3.</td><td>Drum Ink Roller Layout</td><td>To ensure paper separation from the drum, the ink roller has been shifted towards the paper feed table.
The distance L has been changed from 5.0 mm to 3.5 mm (same as the C216 model).
C211 model C224 model
 

L = 5.0 mm L' = 3.5 mm
NOTE: The optional color drum for the C224 model is commonly used for the C211 model. (The distance L for the color drum is 4.5 mm.)</td></tr>
</table>

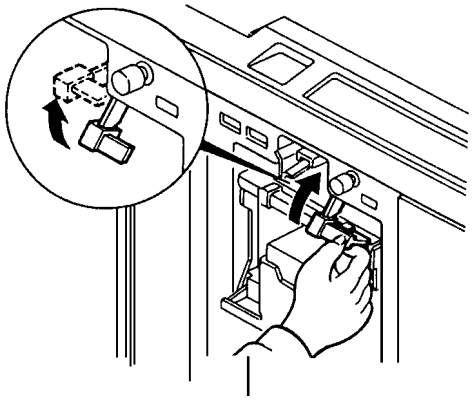
No.	Item	Remarks
4.	Drum Connector	To ensure drum connection, a drum lock lever has been added inside the front door. To remove the drum from the machine, the drum release lever must be pulled up to disconnect the drum connector. (Same as the C216 model.) 
5.	Ink Detection Board	The location of the ink detection board has been changed from the upper side to the right side of the drum shaft. The ink type switch (SW901), which was not used (always set at oil type), has been removed. (Same as the C216 model.)
6.	Drum Shaft	To supply ink to the ink roller evenly, the second ink supply hole (count from the front side) of the drum shaft is covered with a strip of tape. (Same as the C216 model.)
7.	Exit Pawl Air Pump	To ensure paper separation from the drum, the exit pawl air pump system is standardized. (Same as the C216 model.) (The pump system can optionally be installed in models of the C211 series.)
8.	Main Board and Image Processing Board	The main board and the image processing board have been combined into one board.
9.	Thermal Head Drive	The thermal head drive board has been removed. The function of the board has been moved to the main board. The thermal head voltage is directly applied from the power supply unit. The main board applies the signal to the PSU to supply thermal head voltage only during the master making process. (Same as the C216 model.)
12.	Paper Table Drive Motor	The paper table drive motor has been changed from an ac motor to a dc motor.
13.	Air Knife Motor	The air knife motor has been changed from an ac motor to a dc motor.
14.	Pressure Plate Position Sensors	The pressure plate position switch and the full master detecting switch have been eliminated. Three photo-interrupters, upper and lower pressure plate sensors and full master box sensor are used instead.

No.	Item	Remarks
15.	Pressure Plate Motor	The master eject motor which had two functions: (one is to drive the exit rollers, the other is to drive the pressure plate) has been replaced by two motors; the master eject motor and pressure plate motor. Due to this modification, the master box capacity has been increased.
16	Skip Feed	A user can select from 2 to 9 rotations of the drum while one sheet of paper is fed.
17.	Economy Function (New Function)	If "Economy mode" is selected on the operation panel, a lower thermal head energy is applied when a master is made. As a result, the image will be lighter than normal and ink consumption will be less.
18.	Security Mode (New Function)	"Secret mode" can be selected by changing DIP SW103-6. If this mode is selected, the Print key is disabled after turning the main switch off and on. (Only the "Master making key" is available.)

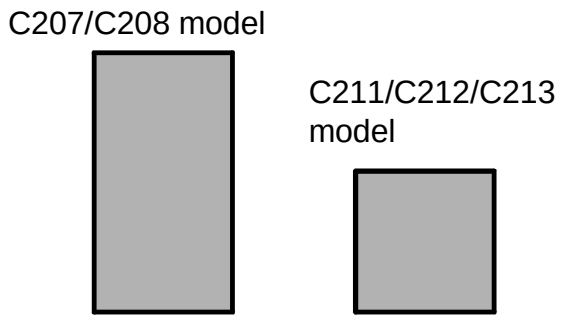
7.3 BETWEEN C215/C216 AND C211/C212/C213

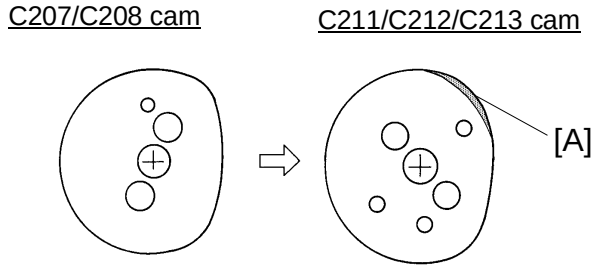
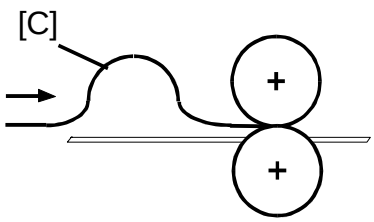
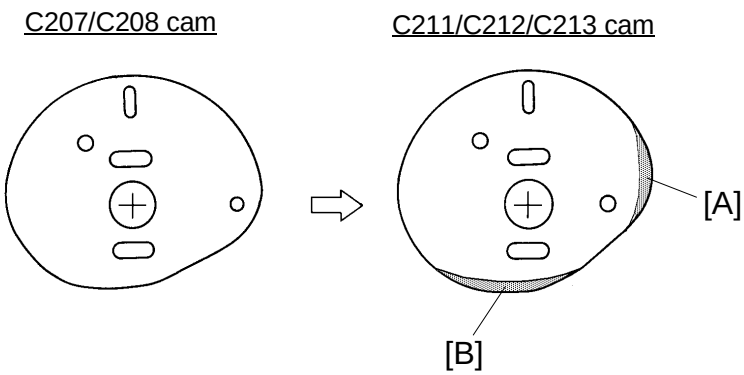
<table>
<tr><th>No.</th><th>Iter</th><th>Remarks</th></tr>
<tr><td>1.</td><td>CCD</td><td>The pixel density of the C215/C216 model is 300 dots/inch. Corresponding to this, the CCD used on the C215/C216 model is the same as the one used on the C201 model.
<table>
<tr><td>Number of effective Pixels:</td><td>3648pixels</td></tr>
<tr><td>Reading Length:</td><td>309 mm</td></tr>
<tr><td>Photo Signal Storage:</td><td>5 ms</td></tr>
</table></td></tr>
<tr><td>2.</td><td>Thermal Head</td><td>Due to pixel density change, the thermal head has been changed.
<table>
<tr><td>Density of thermal heating elements</td><td>300 dots/inch</td></tr>
<tr><td>Number of thermal heating elements</td><td>3072 dots</td></tr>
<tr><td>Memory length</td><td>256 mm</td></tr>
<tr><td>Applied voltage</td><td>19~24 V</td></tr>
</table></td></tr>
<tr><td>3.</td><td>Drum Ink Roller Layout</td><td>To ensure paper separation from the drum, the ink roller has been shifted forward the paper feed table.
The distance L has been changed from 5.0 mm to 3.5 mm.
C211 model C215/C216 model
 

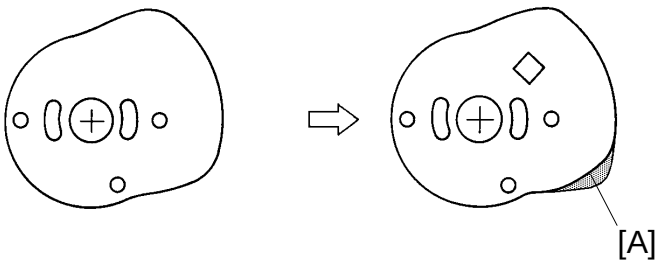
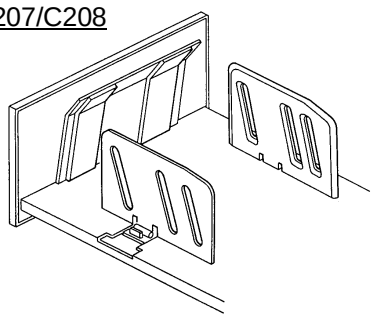
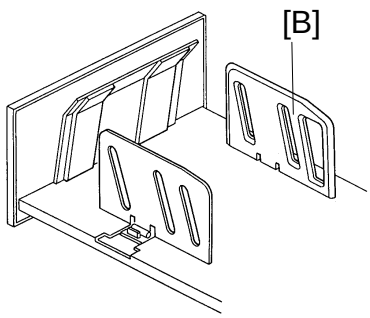
L = 5.0 mm L' = 3.5 mm
NOTE: The optional color drum for the C215/C216 model is commonly used for the C211 model. (The distance L of the color drum is 4.5 mm)</td></tr>
</table>

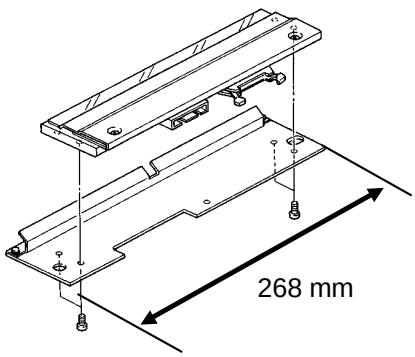
4.	Drum Connector	To ensure drum connection, a drum lock lever is added inside the front door. To remove the drum from the machine, the drum release lever must be pulled up to disconnect the drum connector. 
5.	Ink Detection Board	The location of the ink detection board has been changed from the upper side to the right side of the drum shaft. The ink type switch (SW901), which was not used (always set at oil type), has been removed.
6.	Drum Shaft	To supply ink to the ink roller evenly, the second ink supply hole (count from the front side) of the drum shaft is covered with a strip of tape.
7.	Exit Pawl Air Pump	To ensure paper separation from the drum, the exit pawl air pump system is standardized. (The pump system can optionally be installed on the C211/C212/C213 models.)
8.	Thermal Head Drive	The thermal head drive board has been removed. The function of the board has been moved to the image processing board and the main board. The thermal head voltage is directly applied from the power supply unit. The main board applies signal to the PSU to supply thermal head voltage only during the master making process.

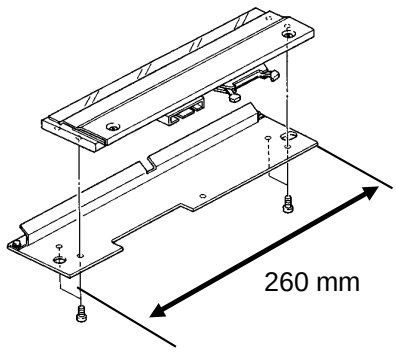
7.4 BETWEEN C207/C208 AND C211/C212/C213

No.	Item	Remarks
1	Thermal Head	The heating elements used in the C211/C212/C213 thermal head are smaller than those used on the C207/C208 models. This reduces ink set-off on the back sides of copies. 
2	Thermal Head Drive Board	The thermal head drive voltage has been decreased from 24V to 16V because the smaller heating elements in the thermal head require less power.
3	Power Supply Board	The power supply board has been modified to output 16V to drive the thermal head. An ON/OFF switching circuit for the thermal head drive voltage (VHD) has been added to the power supply board.
4	Exterior	The design of the front cover and the model name printed on the cover have been changed. This was done for marketing reasons and to ensure that the users do not confuse the C211/C212/C213 models with the C207/C208 models and use the wrong master type. (The new master is more sensitive.)
5	Image Processing Board	The C213 make-up control board has been eliminated because the C213 image processing board performs the Make-up function.
6	Main Harness	A VHD ON/OFF line has been added to the main harness.
7	Drum Master Sensor	The drum master sensor has been changed to stabilize the sensor sensitivity.

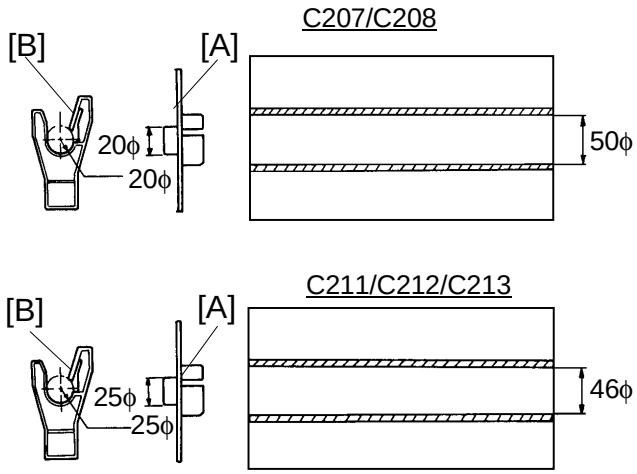
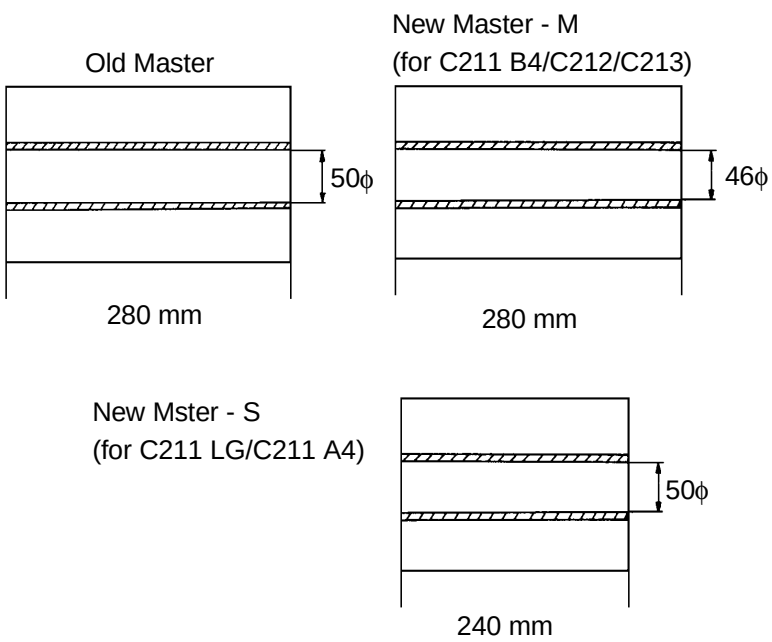
No.	Item	Remarks
8	Paper Feed Roller Cam	The paper feed roller cam has been slightly modified as shown to reduce the paper speed to 55% that of the C207/C208 models. (Extended outward at point [A].) This reduces the noise caused when the paper leading edge strikes the second feed roller. 
9	Second Feed Roller Cam	The second feed cam has been modified slightly as shown to reduce the speed of the second feed roller to 40% that of the C207/C208 models. (Extended outward at point [A], moved in at point [B].) This reduces the noise caused when the second feed rollers turn and the paper [C] snaps as it is pulled taut.  

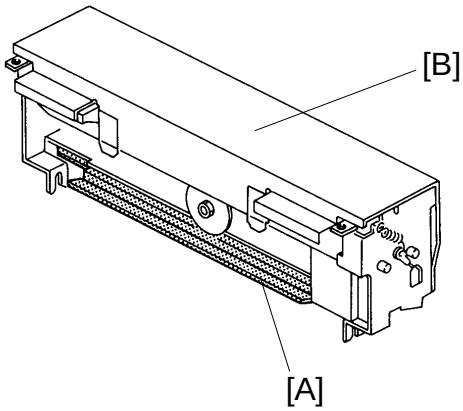
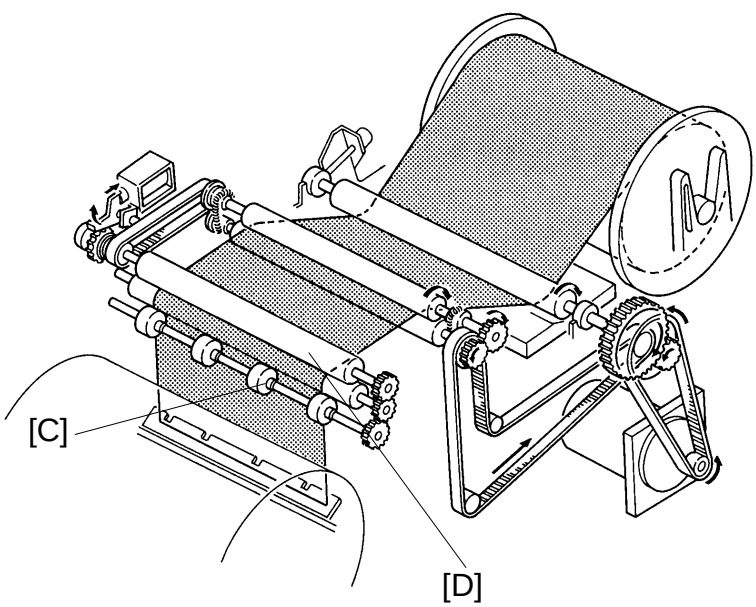
No.	Item	Remarks
10	Pressure Cam	The shape of the C211/C212/C213 pressure cam has been modified slightly as shown to decrease the pressure roller speed to 70% that of the C207/C208 models. (A portion at point [A] has been shaved off.) This reduces the noise caused when the pressure roller moves against the drum. C207/C208 cam C211/C212/C213 cam 
11	Rear Paper Delivery Side Plate	One of the air slots [B] cut in the rear paper delivery side plate has been enlarged so that tape strips from the optional tape dispenser can be inserted through it. C207/C208  C211/C212/C213 
12	Main Control Board	An ON/OFF control circuit for the thermal head drive voltage (VHD) has been added to the main control board. The drum master detection circuit on the main control board has been modified to accommodate the new drum master sensor.

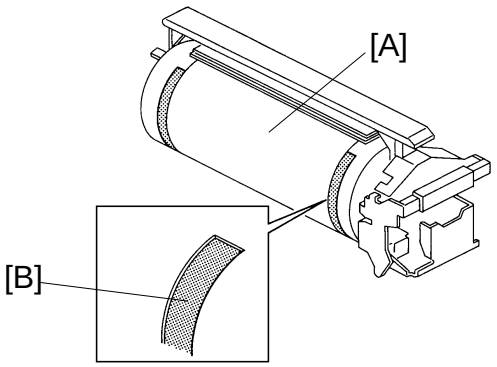
<table>
<tr><th>No.</th><th>Item</th><th>Remarks</th></tr>
<tr><td>13</td><td>Printing Speed</td><td>
The 40 cpm print speed at each step has been eliminated on the C211/C212/C213 models. This reduces ink set-off, which is most likely to occur at low printing speeds.
<table>
<tr><td></td><td>C207/C208</td><td>C211/C212/C213</td></tr>
<tr><td>Step 1:</td><td>40 sheets/min.</td><td>60 sheets/min.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Step 2:</td><td>60 sheets/min.</td><td>75 sheets/min.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Step 3:</td><td>80 sheets/min.</td><td>90 sheets/min.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Step 4:</td><td>100 sheets/min.</td><td>105 sheets/min.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Step 5:</td><td>120 sheets/min.</td><td>120 sheets/min.</td></tr>
</table>
When the Master Making key is pressed, the print speed gradually increases until it reaches the set speed.
<table>
<tr><th></th><th>Trial Print</th><th>1st Print</th><th>2nd Print</th><th>3rd Print</th></tr>
<tr><td>C207/C208</td><td>10 rpm</td><td>40 xrpm</td><td>60 rpm</td><td>80 rpm</td></tr>
<tr><td>C211/C212/ C213</td><td>10 rpm</td><td>60 rpm</td><td>75 rpm</td><td>90 rpm</td></tr>
</table>
</td></tr>
<tr><td>14</td><td>Thermal Head Mounting Plate</td><td>
To prevent service personnel from mistakenly installing the C207/C208 thermal head on C211/C212/C213 models and vice versa, the distance between the screw holes on each mounting plate is different.
<u>C207/C208</u>


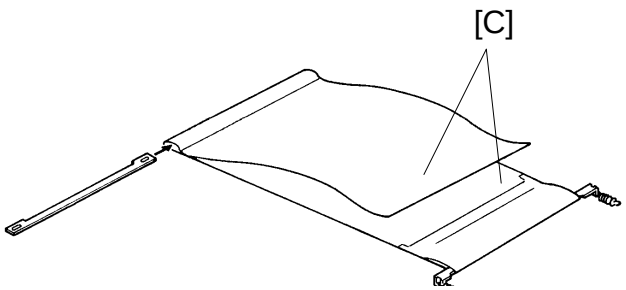
<u>C211/C212/C213</u>


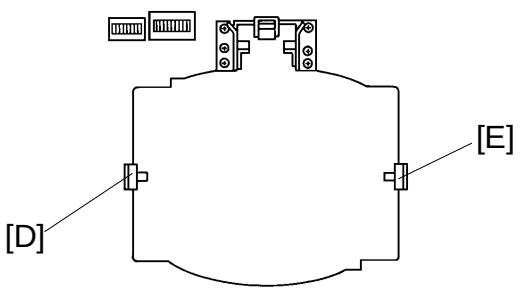
</td></tr>
</table>

No.	Item	Remarks
15	Master Spool/ Holder	To prevent users from installing old masters on C211/C212/C213 modes, the diameter of each master spool [A] and master spool holder [B] has been changed as follows:  **NOTE:** The C211 LG or C211 A4 model's spool is the same diameter as the C207/C208 spool; however, the old master is too wide to fit on the C211 LG or C211 A4 model's spool holder. 

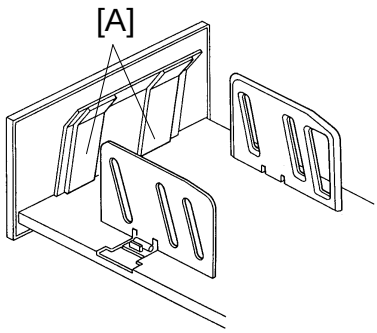
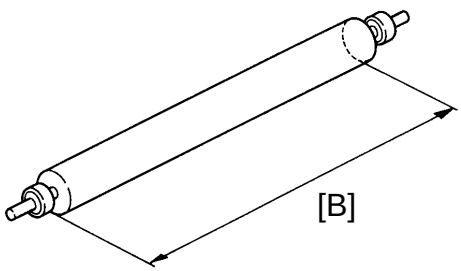
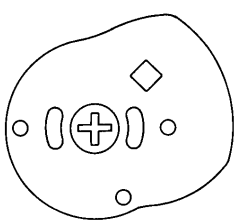
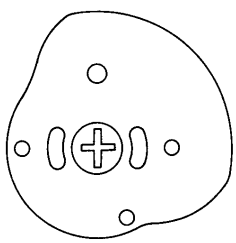
No.	Item	Remarks
16	Cutter Section	A guard [A] has been mounted on the cutter unit [B] to prevent contact with the cutter edge (sharp) during cutter unit removal or installation. 
17	Master Feed Unit	Counter rollers [C] have been added to prevent new masters from creasing as they are being fed through the master reverse section. Also, the reverse roller [D] has been modified as shown. 

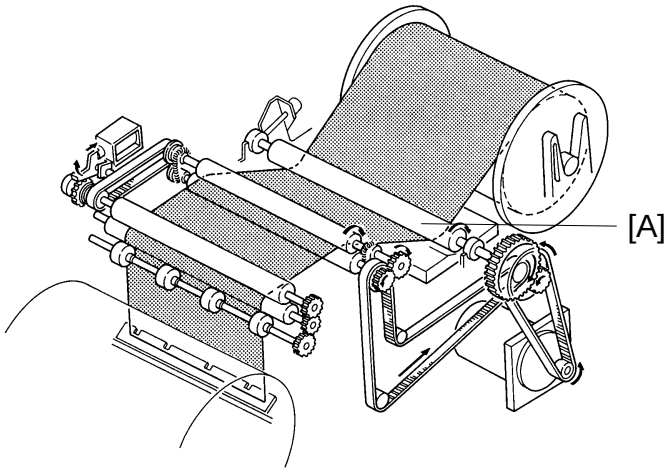
<table>
<tr><th>No.</th><th>Item</th><th>Remarks</th></tr>
<tr><td>18</td><td>Drum Unit</td><td>
Both ends of the metal screen [A] pass through a half etching process. The half etch area [B] is thinner than the other areas. This improves the outer portion of the copy image.


The outer drum screen consists of two tetron screens[C] that reduce ink set-off.


The diameter of the left drum lock pin [D] and the right drum lock pin [E] is different for each drum type as follows:


<table>
<tr><th>Color Drum</th><th>Left [D]</th><th>Right [E]</th></tr>
<tr><td>M: (B4 Size)</td><td>8ϕ</td><td>8ϕ</td></tr>
<tr><td>S: (A4 Size)</td><td>10ϕ</td><td>7.6f</td></tr>
<tr><td>LG: (LG Size)</td><td>10ϕ</td><td>7.6ϕ</td></tr>
</table>
</td></tr>
</table>

No.	Item	Remarks
19	Paper Delivery End Plate	The sponge cushions [A] that were affixed to the paper delivery end plate have been removed to prevent paper sheets from bouncing back when they strike the paper delivery end plate. 
20	Pressure Roller	Two different sizes of pressure rollers are used because the printing area in the horizontal direction [B] on the C211 LG or C211 A4 model is narrower. B4 size: 292 mm A4/LG size: 226 mm 
21	Pressure Cam	Two different types of pressure cams are used because the printing area (feed direction) of A4 copies on the C211 A4 model is smaller. B4/LG Size Pressure Cam  A4 Size Pressure Cam 

No.	Item	Remarks
22	Platen Roller	The platen roller [A] has been changed to an electrically conductive type to prevent the master from wrapping around the platen roller. 

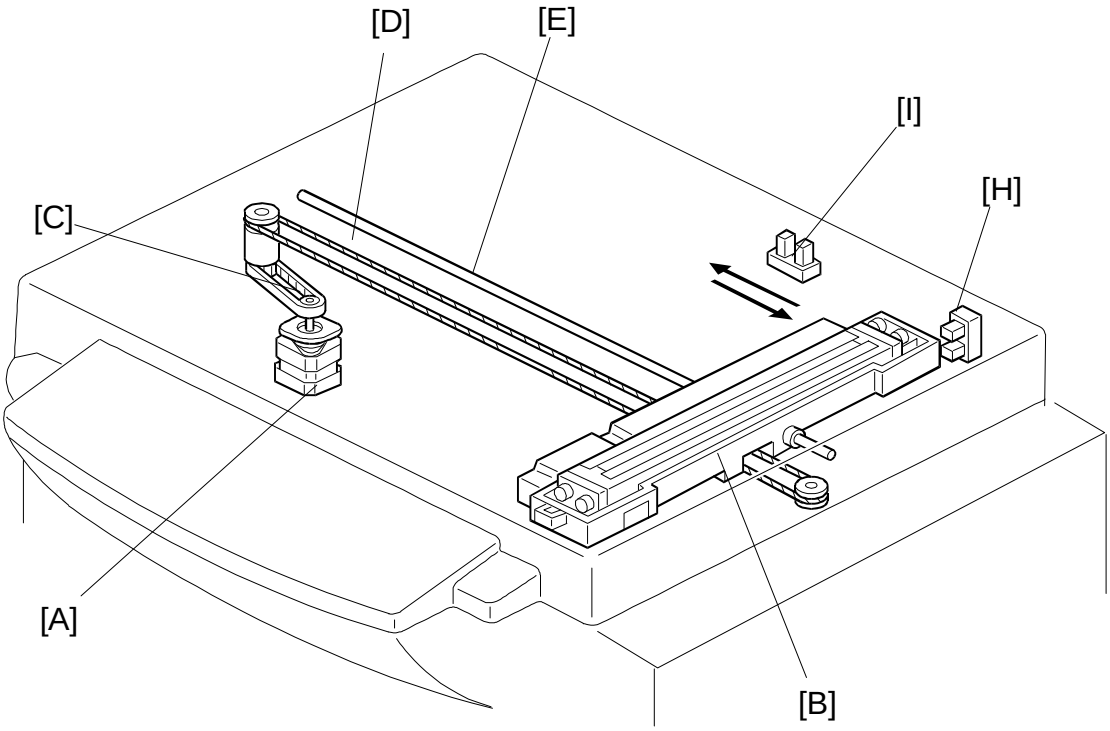
SECTION 2

SECTIONAL DESCRIPTION

1. ORIGINAL FEED SECTION

1.1 ADF AND SCANNER: C226 ONLY

1.1.1 Book Scanner Overview



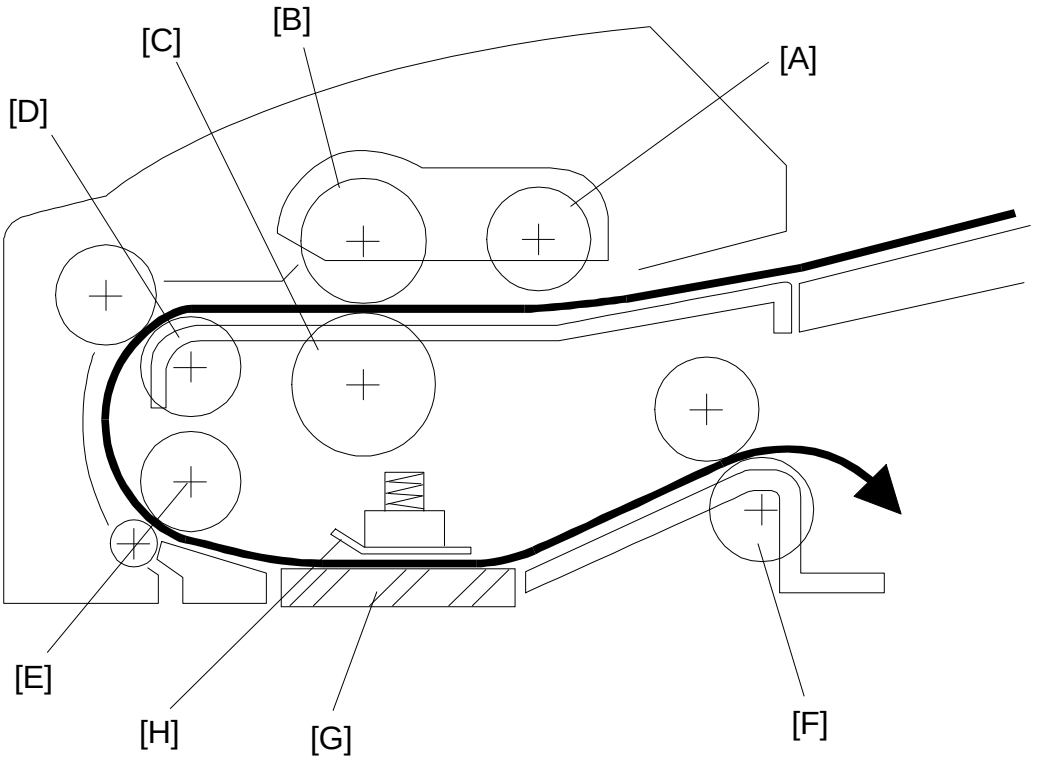
The scanner motor [A] drives the scanner [B] through the timing belt [C] and drive wire [D]. The shaft [E] guides scanner movement in the sub-scan direction. Inside the scanner [B] are a contact image sensor (containing a sensor element and xenon lamp) and a xenon lamp driver.

The scanner [B] consists of a contact image sensor and a xenon lamp driver.

The scanner home position sensor [H] allows the scanner return to the same position after scanning.

The platen cover switch [I] detects if the cover is opened or not.

1.1.2 ADF Overview

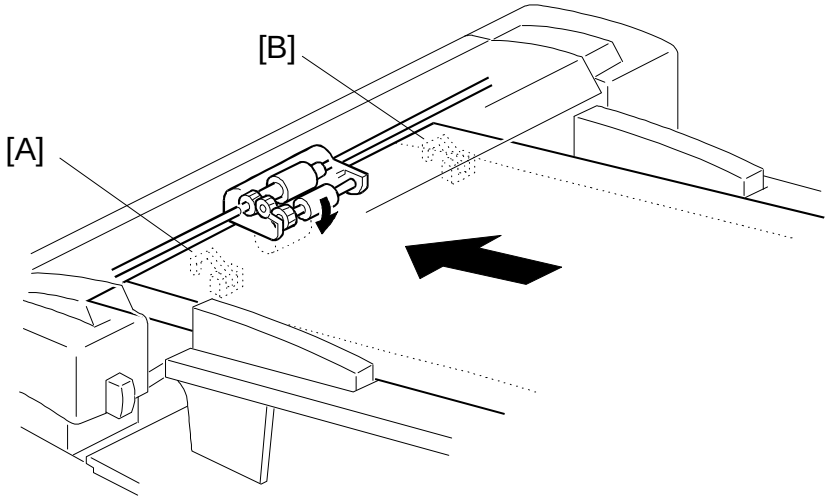


The sheet through type ADF feeds the document from the top page of the document stack on the table.

The pick-up [A] and feed roller [B] feed the original into the scanner, and the separation roller [C] helps to feed one sheet at a time. Then, the R0 [D], R1 [E], and R2 [F] rollers feed the document through the scanner.

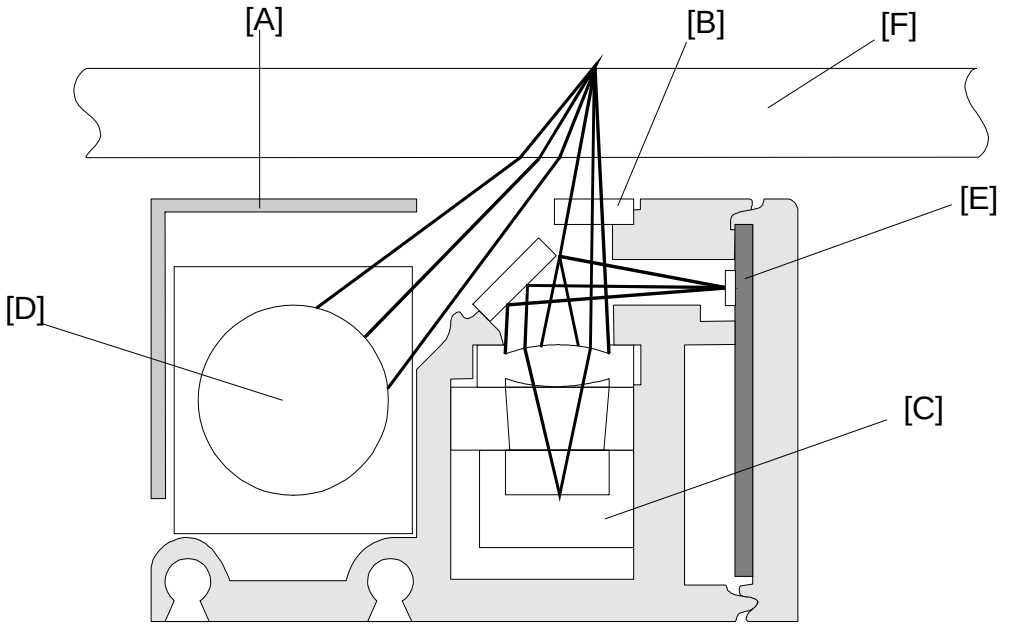
At the time of scanning the document, the scanner moves down to the scanning position under the exposure glass [G]. The shading plate [H] pushes the document to the exposure glass at the scan line, so that the document is within the image sensor’s range of focus.

After scanning, the ADF feeds out the document onto the platen cover, and the scanner moves back to its home position at the right end of the scanner.



The document sensor [A] detects documents when they are set in the ADF. The sensor [B] is not used although it exists to use this unit for another product commonly.

1.1.3 Contact Image Sensor



The contact image sensor (CIS) assembly [A] consists of an exposure glass [B], a roof mirror lens array [C], a xenon lamp [D], and an image sensor [E]. The CIS moves under the exposure glass when scanning a book original, or stays at the ADF scan line when scanning a sheet original using the ADF.

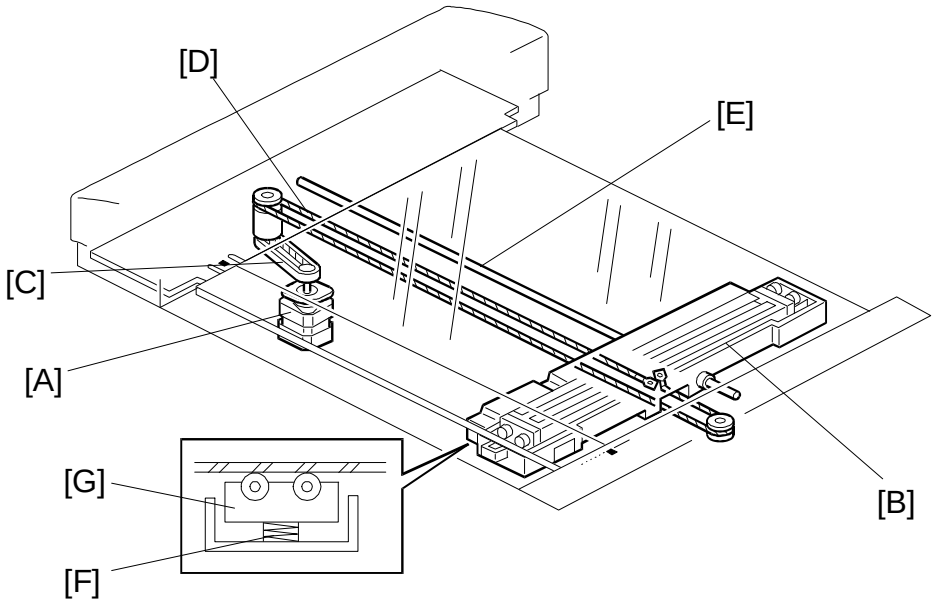
The image sensor is a row of 4096 photosensitive elements (B4 width x 16 dots/mm). The roof mirror lens array focuses the light reflected from the document onto the image sensor.

Because of the short optical path inside the CIS, the focal depth is much shorter than for a CCD type scanner. Because of this, two springs at each end of the CIS push it against the exposure glass [F], so that the distance from the original is kept the same all the time. However in book scanning mode, if the original is out of the CIS's focal range, the scanned image may get darker.

Because the analog output signal is a sawtooth waveform, data sampling timing should be adjusted whenever a new CIS is installed in the machine.

1.1.4 Drive Mechanism

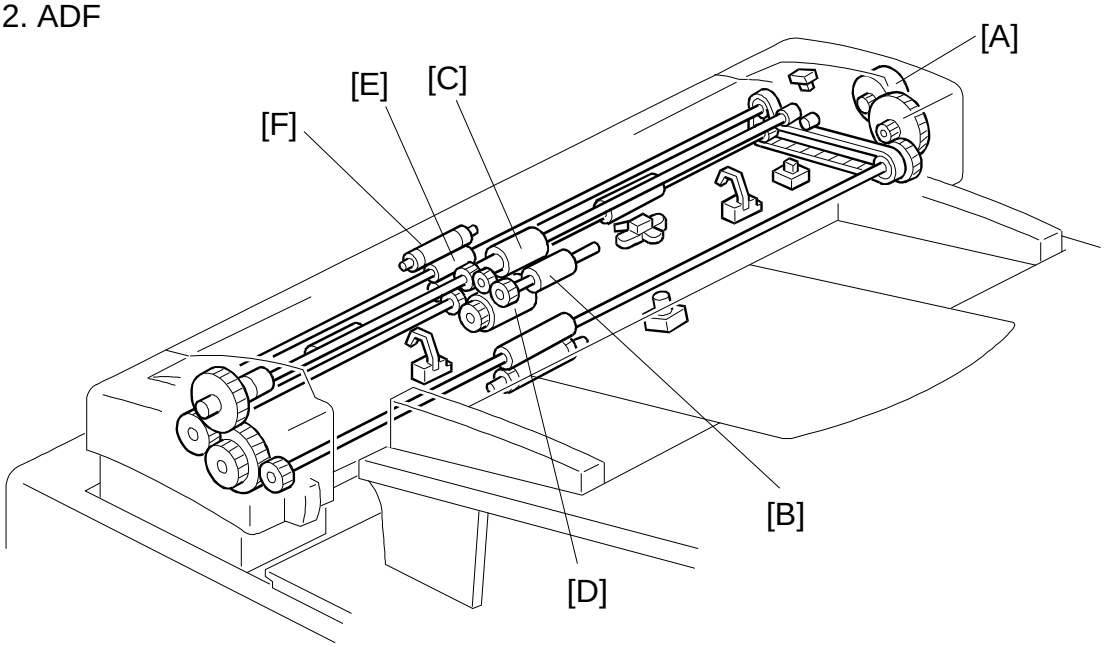
1. Book Scanner



The book scanner motor [A] drives the scanner [B] through the timing belt [C] and drive wire [D]. The scanner moves along the guide shaft [E].

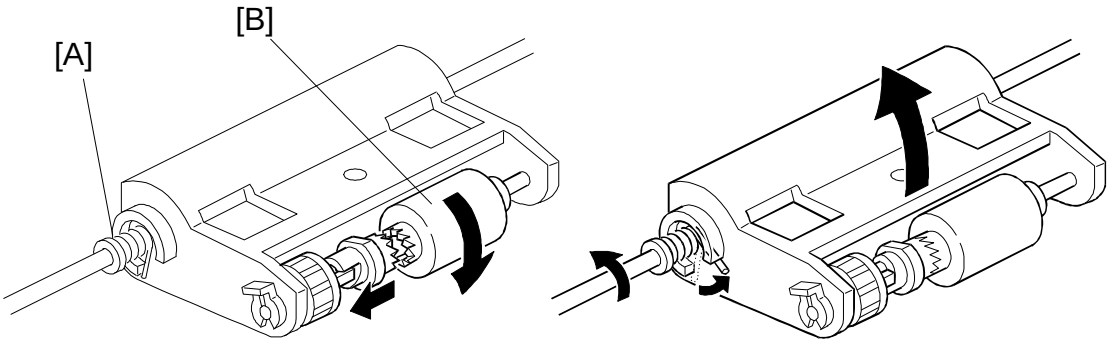
The spring [F] pushes up the contact image sensor [G] to the exposure glass, so that the distance from the image sensor to the exposure glass surface is constant during scanning.

2. ADF



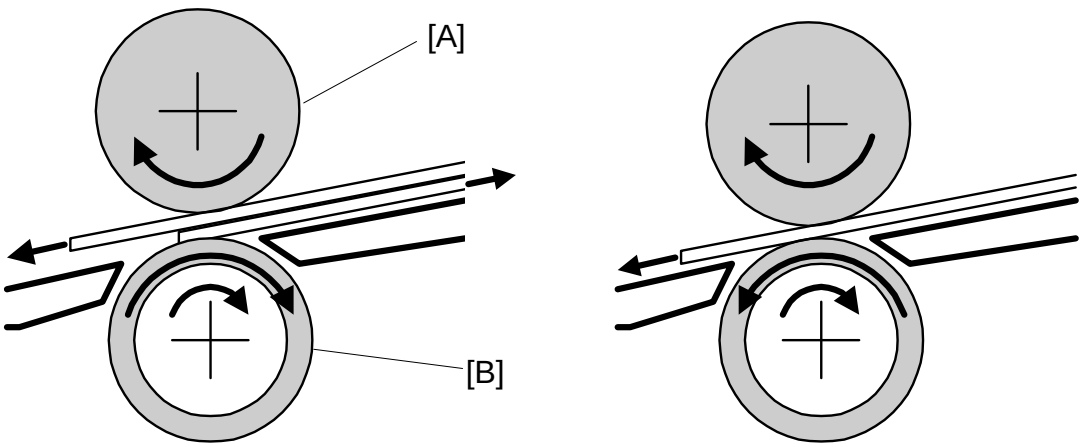
The ADF motor [A] drives the pick-up roller [B], the feed roller [C], the R0 roller [D], the R1 roller [E], and the R2 roller [F].

1.1.5 Pick-up and Feed (ADF)



When the ADF motor starts, the mechanical clutch [A] moves the pick-up roller [B] down to the document. Then, the machine feeds the top page of the document. After the last page is scanned, the ADF motor reverses briefly to move the pick-up roller back to the standby position.

1.1.6 Separation Mechanism (ADF)



The feed roller [A] and the separation roller [B] prevent more than one sheet of paper from feeding into the scanner at once.

When the feed roller feeds a sheet of paper, both the feed and the separation rollers rotate in the feed-in direction. However, if two or more sheets are between these rollers, the separation roller rotates in the feed-out direction to prevent the lower sheet from being fed into the scanner.

1.1.7 Error Conditions

1. Book Scanner

The main cpu detects an error (Error Code E-13 is displayed) if one of the following conditions occurs.

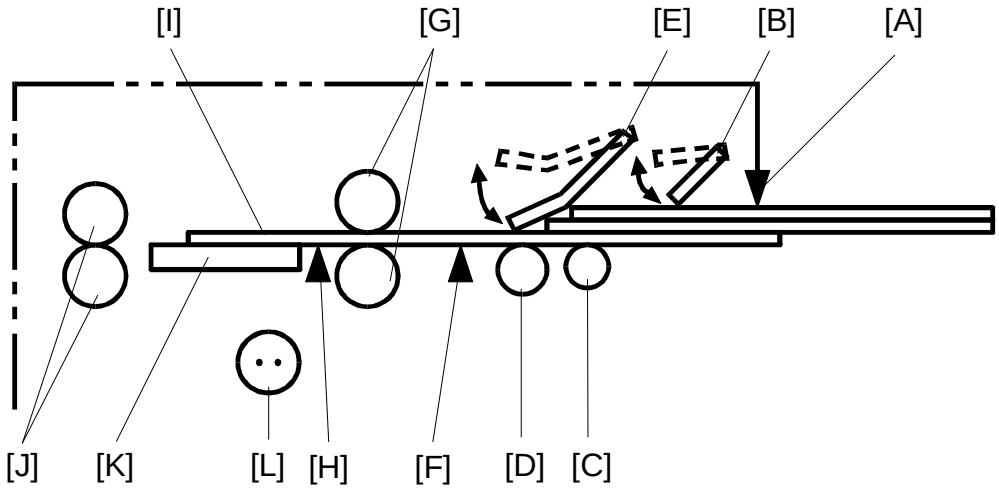
Condition	Description	Error Code
Incorrect home position sensor condition	The scanner home position sensor did not turn on after the motor moved for more than 7 seconds back to the home position after scanning.	E-13
	The scanner could not leave the home position within 4 seconds of power on. Otherwise, when the scanner could not return to the home position within 2 seconds of leaving.	

2. ADF

"Paper feed jam" is displayed if one of the following conditions occurs.

Jam Condition	Description
Non-feed	The scan line sensor does not switch on within 5 seconds of the ADF motor starting.
Misfeed 1	The scan line sensor does not turn off after turning on even when the trial print is made (when the printing pressure sensor is actuated).
Misfeed 2	When the final page of the document has been fed out of the scanner, or when a jammed document has been removed, the ADF motor reverses. The message is displayed if the document sensor stays on at this time.

1.2 OVERALL: C212/C213/C216/C224



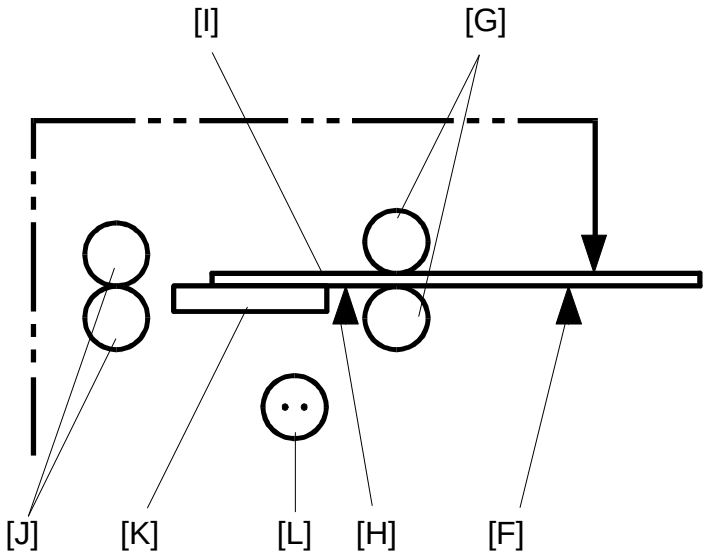
[J]: 2nd Original Transport Rollers
[K]: Exposure Glass
[L]: Fluorescent Lamp

There are two original feed modes in this model.

ADF Mode: The originals [I] set on the original table are detected by the 1st original sensor [A]. When the Master Making key is pressed, the original pressure plate [B] presses the originals down. The pull-out roller [C] starts moving the lowest original forward at the same time. The lowest original is separated from the other originals by the original feed roller [D] and the separation blade [E]. When the 2nd original sensor [F] detects the original, the 1st original transport rollers [G] start rotating. The rollers stop after the original activates the original registration sensor [H]. The 1st original transport rollers start rotating again after the drum section completes the preparation for the master making.

SADF Mode: The separation blade [E] is released in the SADF mode. The original on the original table is fed to the starting position when the 2nd original sensor [F] detects the original.

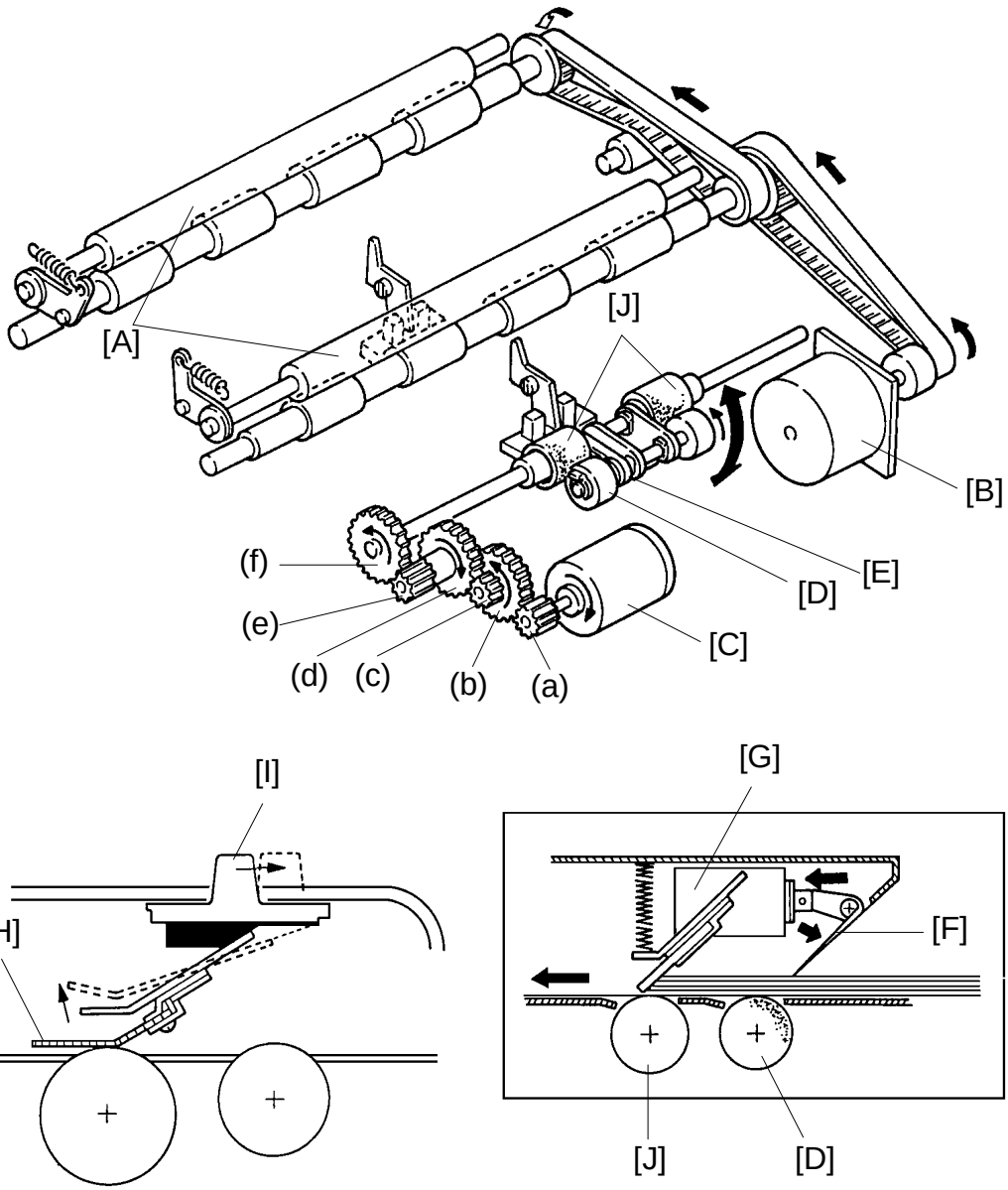
1.3 OVERALL: C211/C215



[J]: 2nd Original Transport Rollers
[K]: Exposure Glass
[L]: Fluorescent Lamp
[H]: Original Registration Sensor

The original [I] set on the original table is detected by the 2nd original sensor [F]. At the same time, the 1st original transport rollers [G] and 2nd original transport rollers [J] start rotating and feed the original to the original start position where is 12 mm far from the guide plate. The original transport rollers start rotating again after the drum section completes the preparation for the master making.

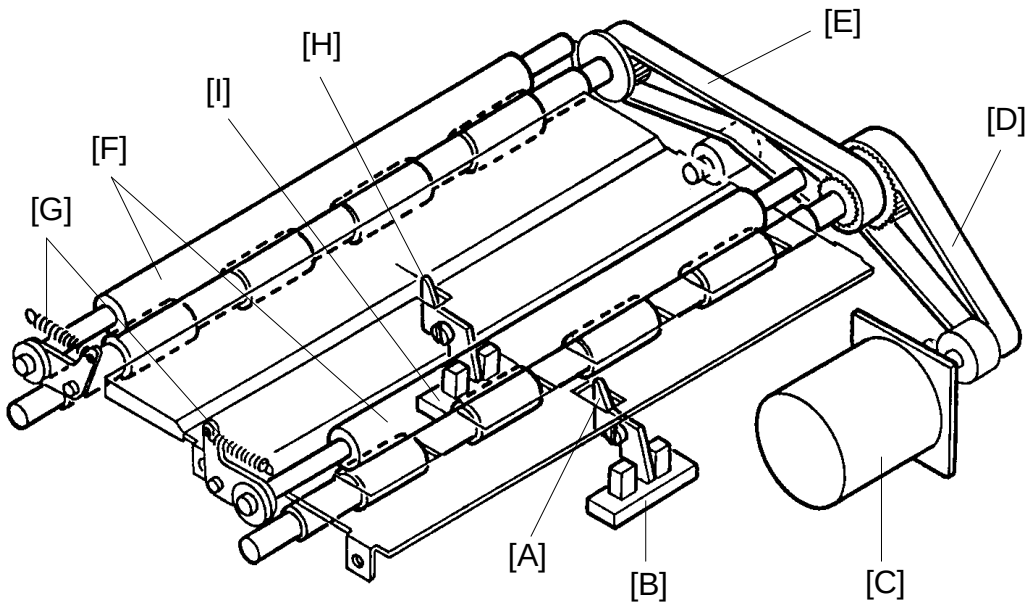
1.4 ORIGINAL FEED DRIVE MECHANISM: C212/C213/C216/C224



The original transport rollers [A] are driven by the original transport motor [B], which is a stepper motor. The original feed rollers [J] are driven by the ADF drive motor [C] through a series of gears [(a) to (f)]. The ADF drive motor is a dc motor. The pull-out rollers [D] are driven by the ADF motor through a drive belt [E].

The original pressure plate [F] is pressed down on the originals by the original pressure solenoid [G]. The separation blade [H] is moved up and down by the ADF ON/OFF select switch [I].

1.5 ORIGINAL FEED DRIVE MECHANISM: C211/C215



When the actuator [A] is pressed down by the original, the 2nd original sensor [B] is activated and the original transport motor [C] starts rotating. The rotation of the original transport motor is transmitted to belts [D] and [E] to turn the lower first original transport roller and lower second original transport roller. At the same time, both the upper original transport rollers [F] contact the first and second lower original transport rollers due to pressure from the springs [G]. The rollers rotate and the original is fed.

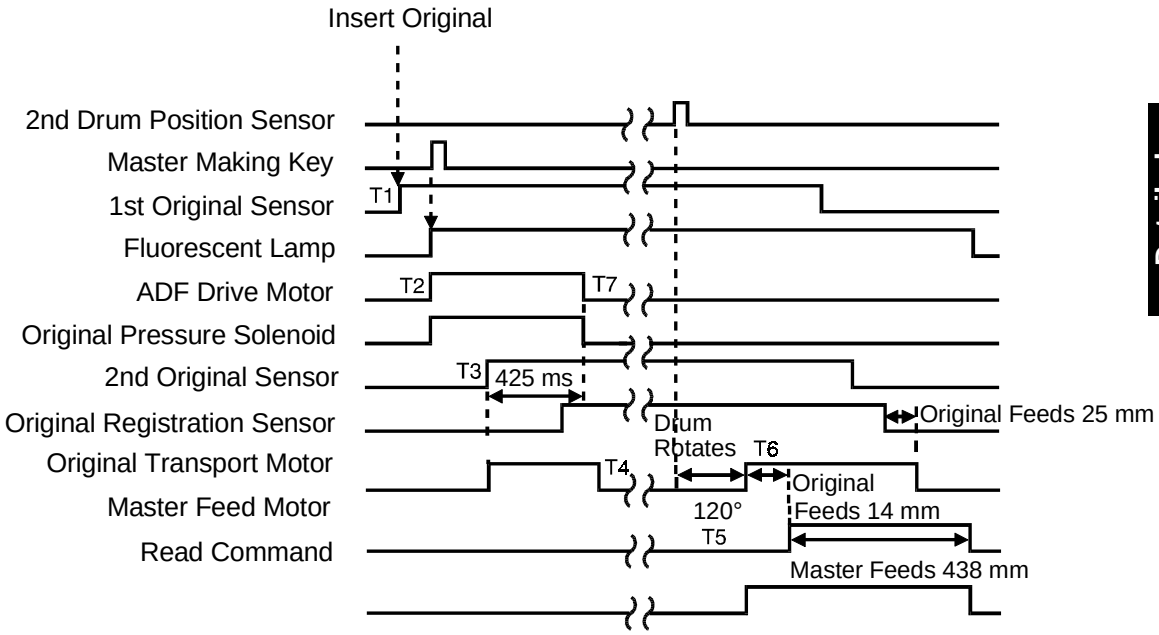
When the actuator [H] is pressed down by the original, the original registration sensor [I] is activated and the original transport motor stops.

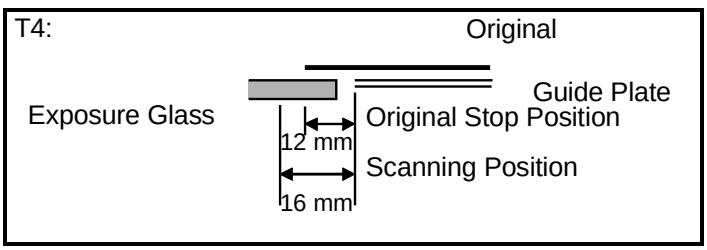
When the Master Making key is pressed, the original transport motor rotates to read the original after the master eject process is finished.

The distance between the sensors is 50 millimeters. If the original registration sensor is not activated within five seconds, "A" and ⚠ indications blink.

1.6 ELECTRICAL TIMING: C212/C213/C216/C224

(One Original):





T1: When originals are inserted in the ADF unit, the 1st original sensor is activated.

T2: When the Master Making key is pressed, the ADF drive motor starts rotating and the pull-out roller and original feed roller feed the 1st original. At the same time, the original pressure solenoid is energized and the pressure plate presses the originals against the pull-out rollers.

T3: When the 2nd original sensor detects the original, which is separated by the separation blade and the original feed roller, the original transport motor starts rotating and the transport rollers start rotating.

T4: One original is fed and when the original registration sensor detects the original, the original transport motor stops the original position is then as shown above.

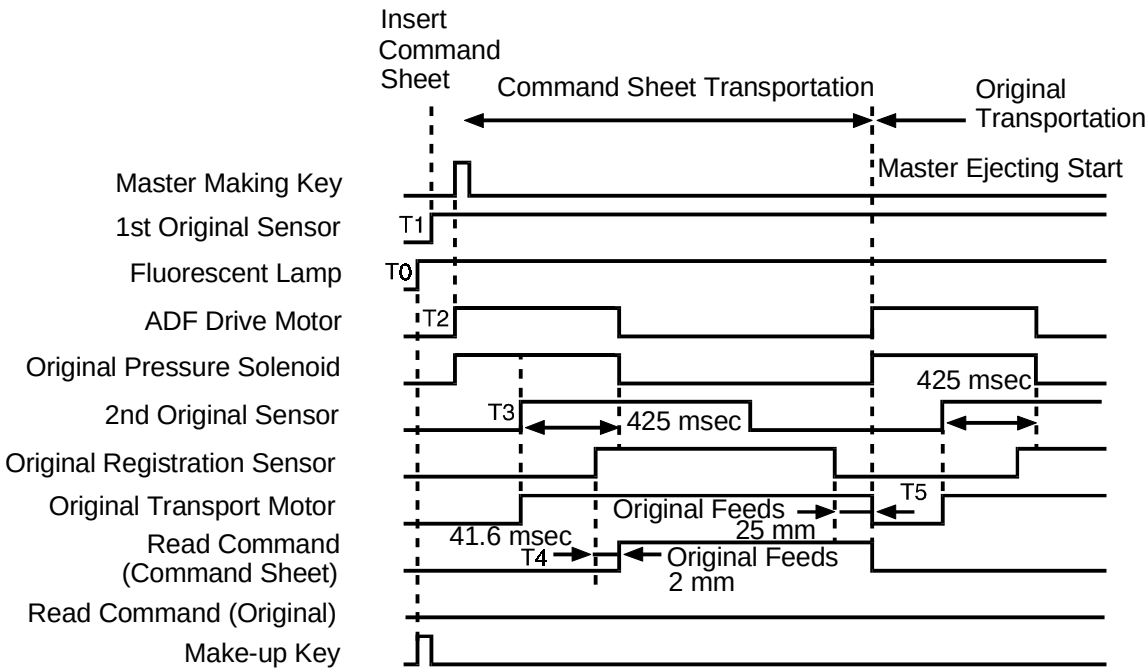
T5: After the master eject process is finished and the second drum position sensor is activated, the drum rotates 120 degrees more and then the original transport motor turns on.

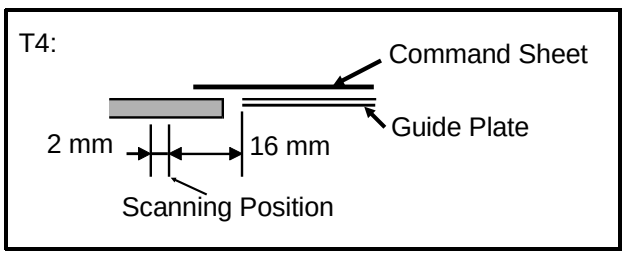
T6: After the original is fed 14 millimeters, master feeding and master making start.

T7: The ADF drive motor and the original pressure solenoid are turned off 425 mseconds after the 2nd original sensor detects the original.

If 2nd original sensor is not activated within 2.3 seconds after pressing the Master Making key, the Original Misfeed indicator (A +) will start blinking.

(Make-up mode): C213 only





T0: When the Make-up key is pressed, the fluorescent lamp turns on.

T1: When the original is inserted with a command sheet, the 1st original sensor is activated.

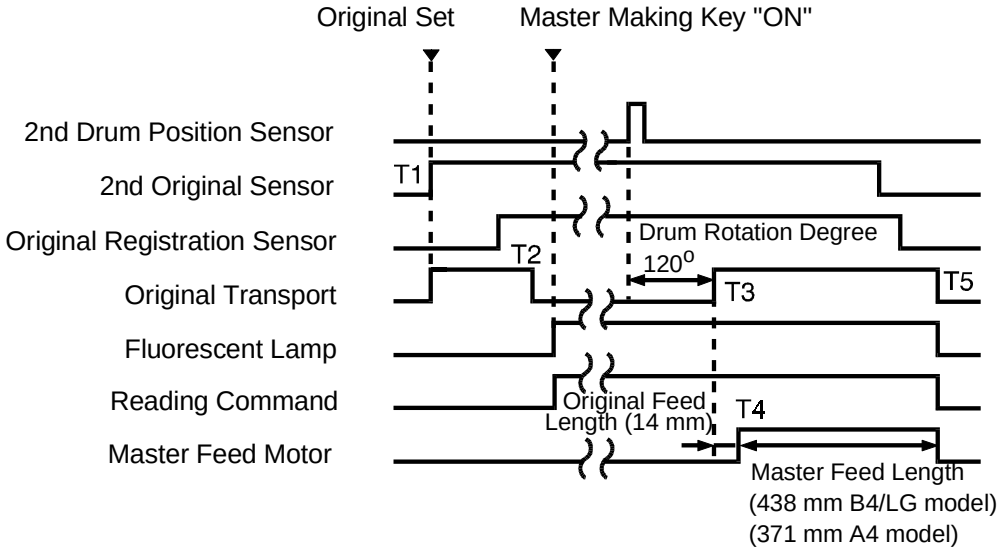
T2: When the Master Making key is pressed, the ADF drive motor turns on and the command sheet is fed by the pull-out rollers and the original transport rollers. At the same time, the original pressure solenoid is energized and the original pressure plate presses down on the original and the command sheets.

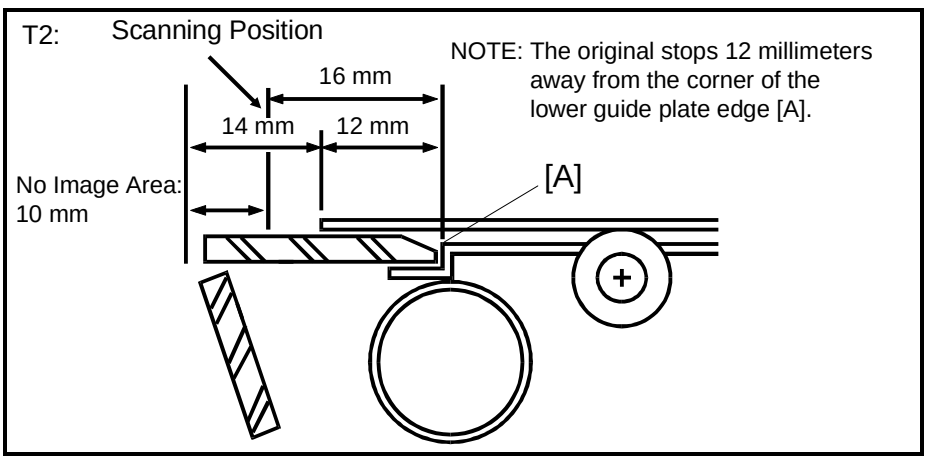
T3: The original transport motor starts rotating when the 2nd original sensor is activated by the command sheet.

T4: The reading command is output when the command sheet is fed 2mm past the scanning position.

T5: The original transport motor stops rotating when the command sheet is fed 25 mm past the original registration sensor. At the same time, the reading command turns off. The ADF drive motor and the original pressure solenoid turn on at the same time and the original is fed.

1.7 ELECTRICAL TIMING: C211/C215





T1: When the 2nd original sensor detects the original, the original transport motor starts rotating.

T2: One original is fed and when the original registration sensor detects the original, the original transport motor stops the original position is then as shown above.

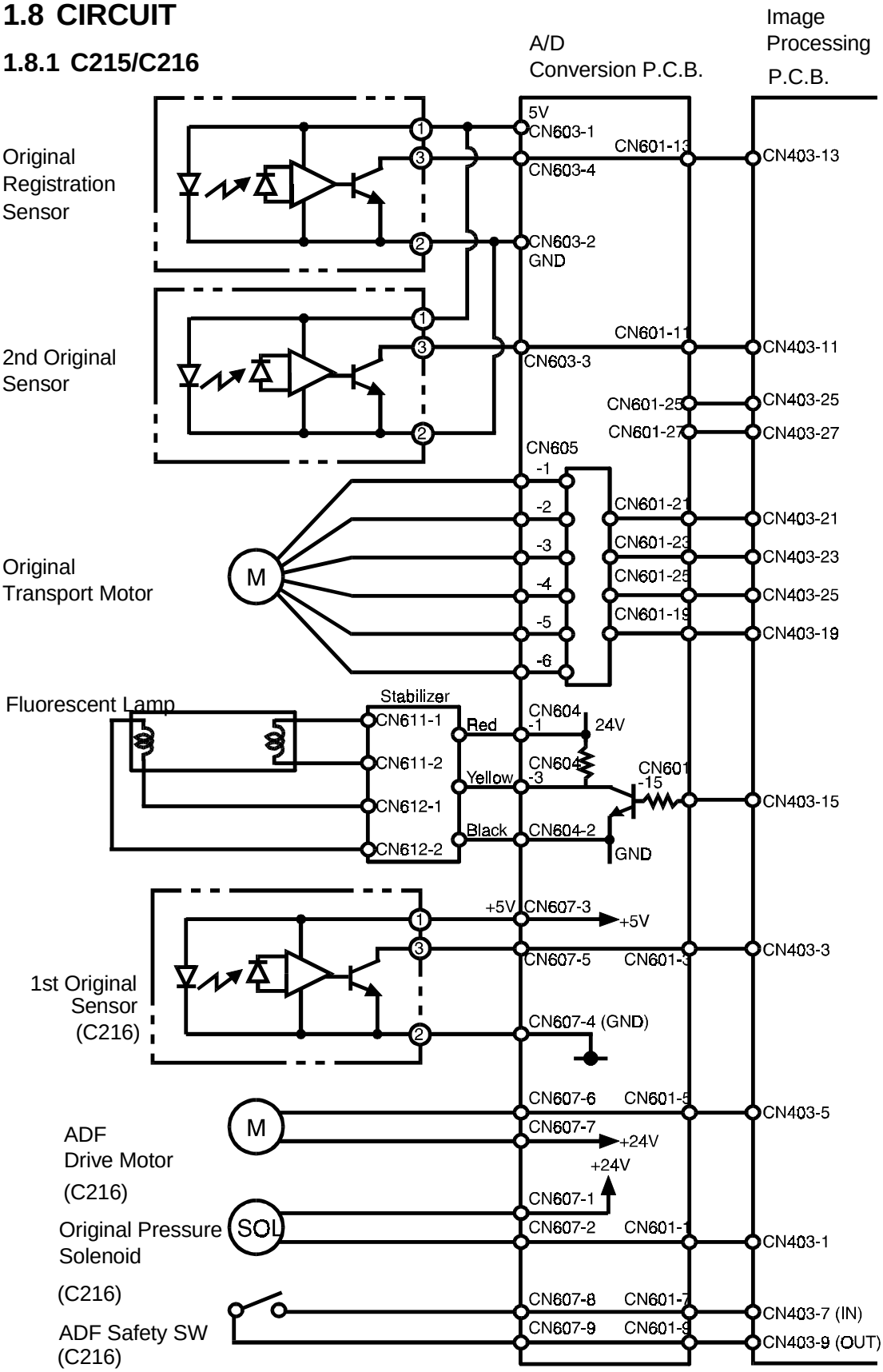
T3: After the master eject process is finished and the second drum position sensor is activated, the drum rotates 120 degrees more and then the original transport motor turns on.

T4: After the original is fed 14 millimeters, master feeding and master making start.

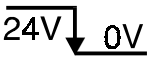
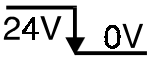
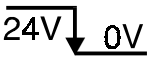
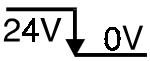
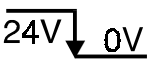
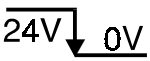
T5: The master feed motor stays on until it feeds the master 437 mm. The original transport motor stops when the master feeding stops. At that time the fluorescent lamp also turns off.

1.8 CIRCUIT

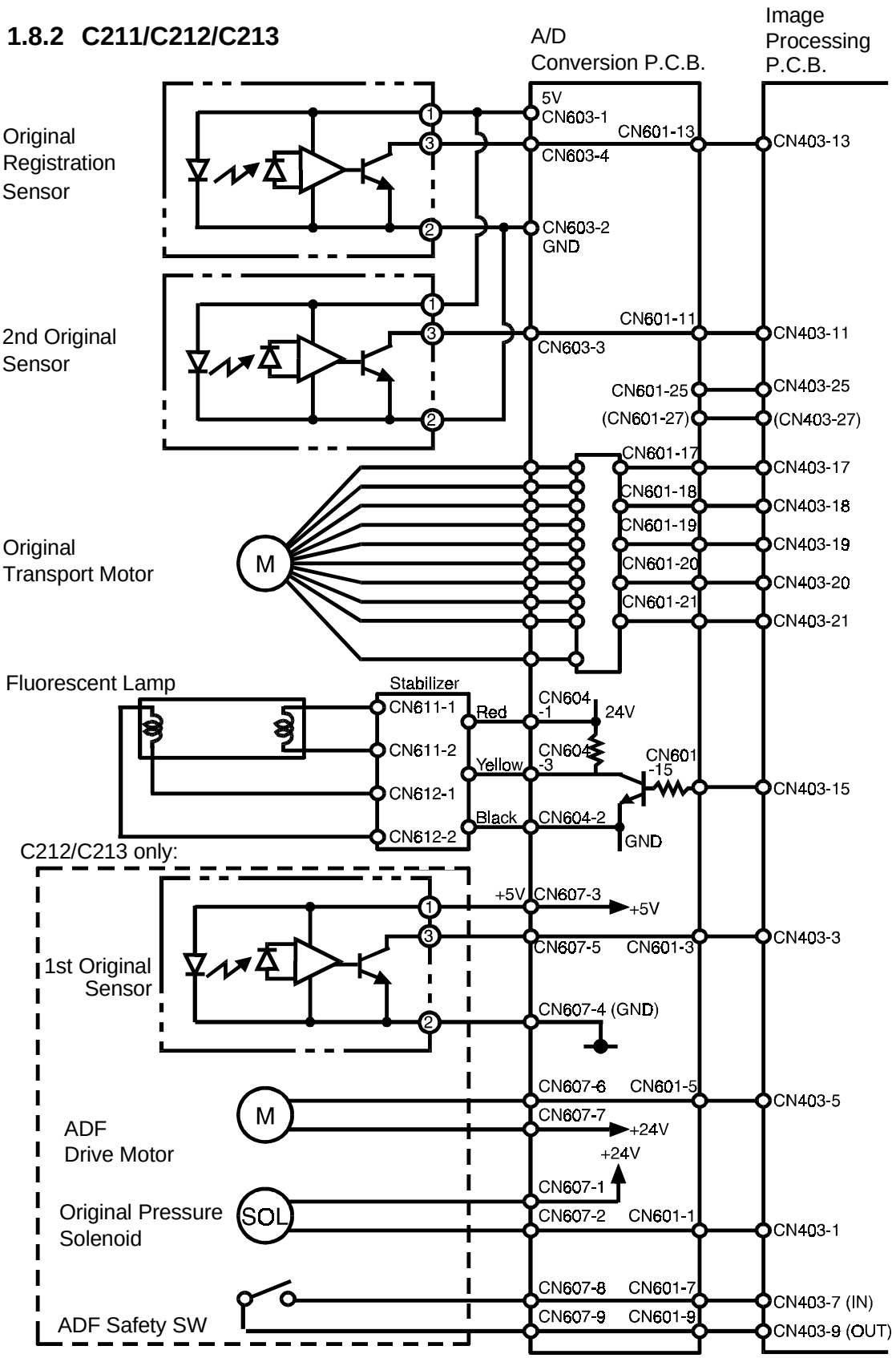
1.8.1 C215/C216



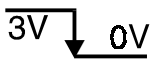
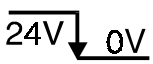
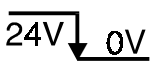
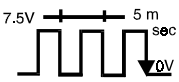
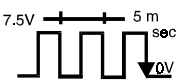
OUTPUTS

Component Name	I/O	ID Conversion Board		Description
		CN No		
Fluorescent Lamp	O	604-3		When the fluorescent lamp turns ON, the CN604-3 goes to 0 V.
ADF Drive Motor	O	607-6		When the ADF drive motor starts rotating CN607-6 goes to 0 V.
Original Pressure Solenoid	O	607-2		When the original pressure solenoid is energized, CN607-2 goes to 0 V.
Original Registration Sensor	I	603-4		When the original registration sensor is activated, CN603-4 goes to 0 V.
2nd Original Sensor	I	603-3		When the 2nd original sensor is activated, CN603-3 goes to 0 V.
1st Original Sensor	I	607-5		When the 1st original sensor is activated, CN607-5 goes to 0 V.

1.8.2 C211/C212/C213



OUTPUTS

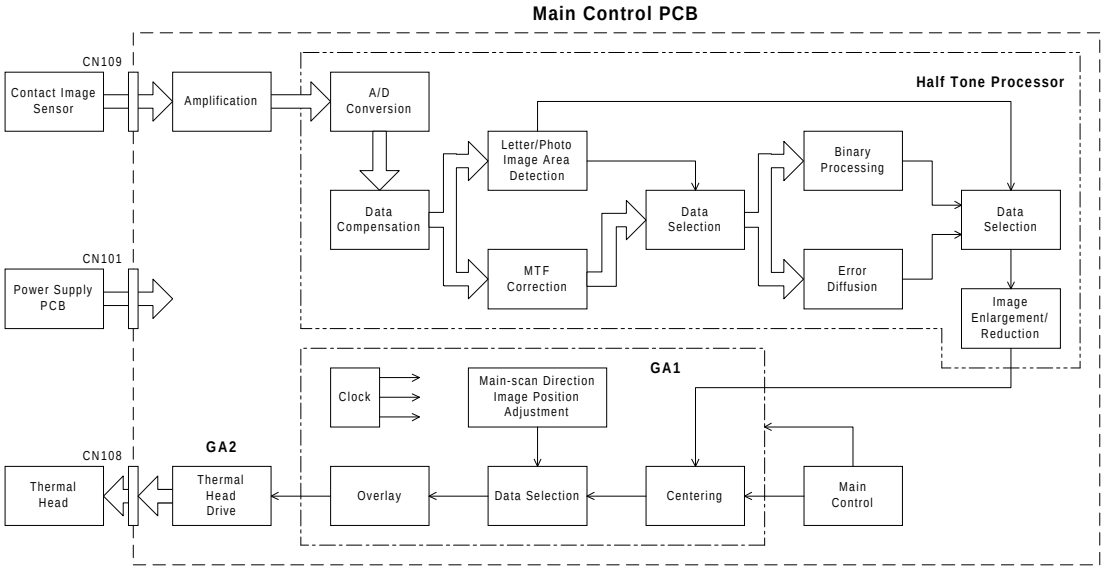
Signal Name	I/O	A/D Conversion Board		Description
		CN No.	Level	
Fluorescent Lamp	O	CN601-15		When the fluorescent lamp turns on, the voltage of the CN601-15 is 3 V.
Reading Command	I	CN601-25 (CN601-27)		When the CCD reads the original the voltage of CN601-25 (CN601-27) is 0 V.
ADF Drive Motor (C212/C213)	I	(CN607-6)		When the ADF drive motor starts rotating, the voltage of CN607-6 is 0 V.
Original Pressure SOL (C212/C213)	O	(CN607-2)		When the original pressure solenoid is energized, the voltage of CN607-2 is 0 V.
Original Registration Sensor	O	CN603-4		When the original registration sensor is activated, the voltage of CN603-4 is 0 V.
2nd Original Sensor	I	CN603-3		When the 2nd original sensor is activated, the voltage of CN603-3 is 0 V.
1st Original Sensor (C212/C213)	I	(CN607-5)		When the 1st original sensor is activated the voltage of CN607-5 is 5 V.

( ): C212/C213 model

2. OPTICS/IMAGE PROCESSING

2.1 OPTICS/IMAGE PROCESSING: C226 ONLY

2.1.1 Overview



This model uses a contact image sensor instead of a CCD. This removes the necessity of the complicated adjustments needed for a CCD scanner.

There are 3 main chips on the main control board as shown. This model uses a new type of halftone processing chip. The new halftone processor enables the use of Letter/Photo mode in addition to Letter and Photo modes as the Type of Original selection. In Letter/Photo and Photo modes, error diffusion processing is used. This produces better copy quality halftone images.

The new halftone processor also includes the A/D conversion function, not only the image processing functions. The thermal head drive function is built into a chip (GA2) on the main control board. Therefore, this model does not have a A/D conversion board and thermal head board.

2.1.2 A/D Conversion Processing

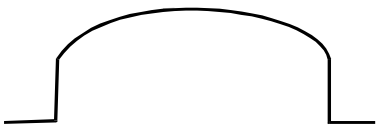
The analog signal from the contact image sensor is converted into a digital signal that represents 64 grayscale steps. This process is just like in the other models, however it is carried out in the halftone processing chip while the other models use a separate A/D conversion board.

Shading Distortion Correction

The image data from one main scan line does not exactly represent the line from the original image, because of the following reasons:

1) Loss of brightness towards the ends of the exposure lamp.
2) Variations in sensitivity among elements of the contact image sensor
3) Distortions of the light path

Ideal CCD output when the white plate is scanned



Actual CCD output when the white plate is scanned

Such distortions in the image data are corrected when they are converted into digital data.

Before scanning the document, the scanner reads the white plate on the back of the original scale. The output of each contact image sensor element is changed to a 6-bit digital value and stored in the shading distortion memory.

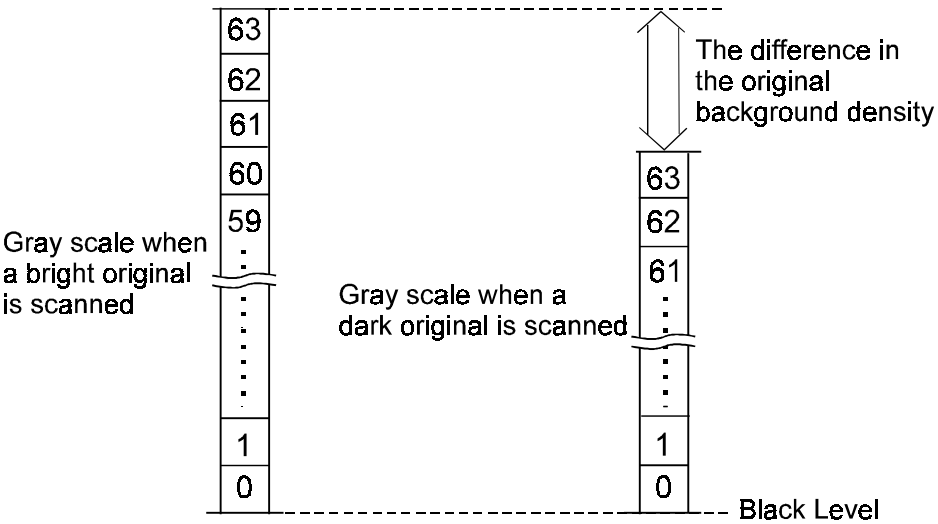
To change the analog shading distortion signals to digital data, a scale of 64 steps is made between the whitest level when the white plate is scanned and 50% of the whitest level. Using this scale, the analog signal is changed to 6-bit digital data.

While an original is scanned, the 6-bit shading distortion value for each pixel is sent in series from memory to the D/A converter, synchronizing with the image signal being sent to the A/D converter. The D/A converter changes the distortion value to an electrical current. The current is converted to the voltage to be used as high reference data for A/D conversion. In this way, the high reference voltage for A/D conversion is changed sequentially for each pixel depending on the shading distortion data for that pixel.

Original Background Correction

When an original is scanned, the whitest level of the original background is stored, and that level is used as the white peak level for A/D conversion. The grayscale is made based on the white peak level of the original. As a result, dark background does not appear on the printout.

If the original background correction is disabled, the whitest level when the white plate is scanned is used for the high reference voltage.



Peak Hold

The peak hold circuit holds the voltage for the white peak level. Before scanning an original, it holds the white peak voltage from the white plate to make shading distortion data. When the original is scanned, it stores the white peak level of the original for the original background correction.

NOTE: The white peak level is checked 5 mm from the leading edge of the original set on the exposure glass (and from the central 147 mm width). If the original leading edge is not flush with the original scale and the platen cover stays open, insufficient voltage will be input as the white peak level. If insufficient voltage is detected, a fixed voltage is used as the white peak level to avoid a faint image copy.

2.1.3 Binary Processing

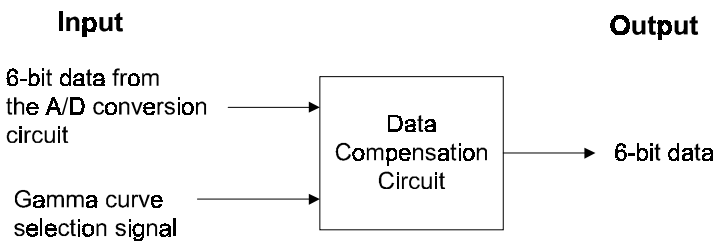
In the halftone processing chip, the 6-bit digital signal data is generated in the A/D conversion circuit and is sent to the binary processing circuit. At that time the data is inverted to match the binary processing circuit. Therefore, the white peak level becomes 0, and the black level becomes 63.

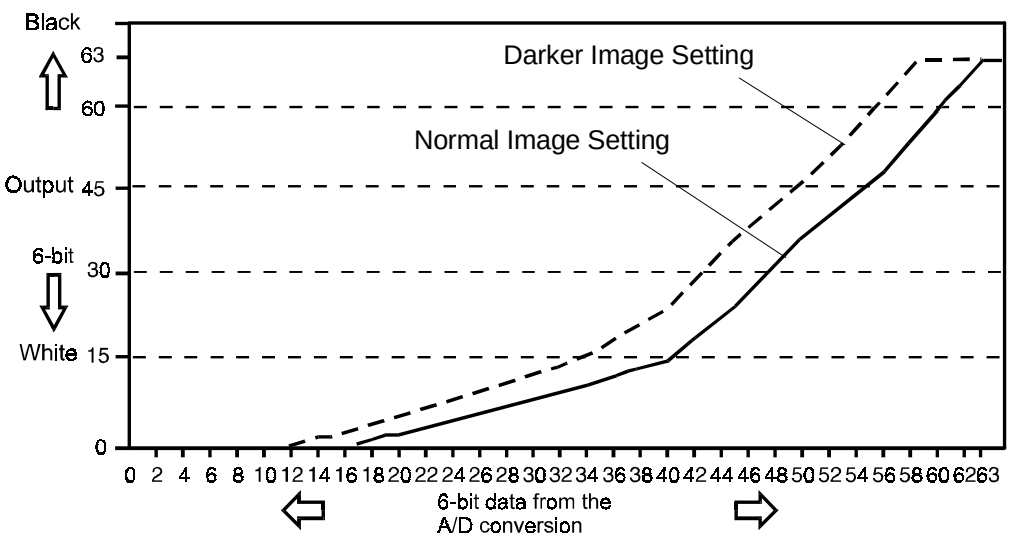
In the binary processing circuit, the 6-bit data is converted into 1-bit data for black or white pixels. The binary process for the letter mode is different from that for the photo mode and the letter/photo mode as follows:

Letter Mode: MTF (Modulation Transfer Function) Correction
Photo Mode: Error Diffusion Processing

Data Compensation Processing

In this process, the 6-bit data are converted based on a compensation curve (γ curve) which corresponds to selected image settings. For example, if a darker image is selected, a compensation curve which converts each pixel value to a higher number is selected. The output data is also 6-bit.





MTF Correction

When the original image is converted to electrical signals by the contact image sensor, the contrast is reduced. This is because neighboring black and white parts of the image influence each other. This symptom is typical when the width and spacing between black and white areas are narrow. MTF correction counters this symptom and emphasizes image detail. The value of a target pixel is modified depending on the value of surrounding pixels. The modified data are compared with a threshold level. This determines if the pixel is to be black or white.

The value [E] of the target pixel [e] is calculated with the following formula:

$$E = e + 2\left(e - \frac{a+b+c+d+f+g+h+i}{8} \right)$$

a	b	c
d	e	f
g	h	i

After the MTF correction is done, the corrected data are compared with the black or white threshold level. If a pixel value is above the threshold level, it is set to black. If the pixel value is equal or below the threshold level, it is set to white. The threshold level depends on the selected density setting.

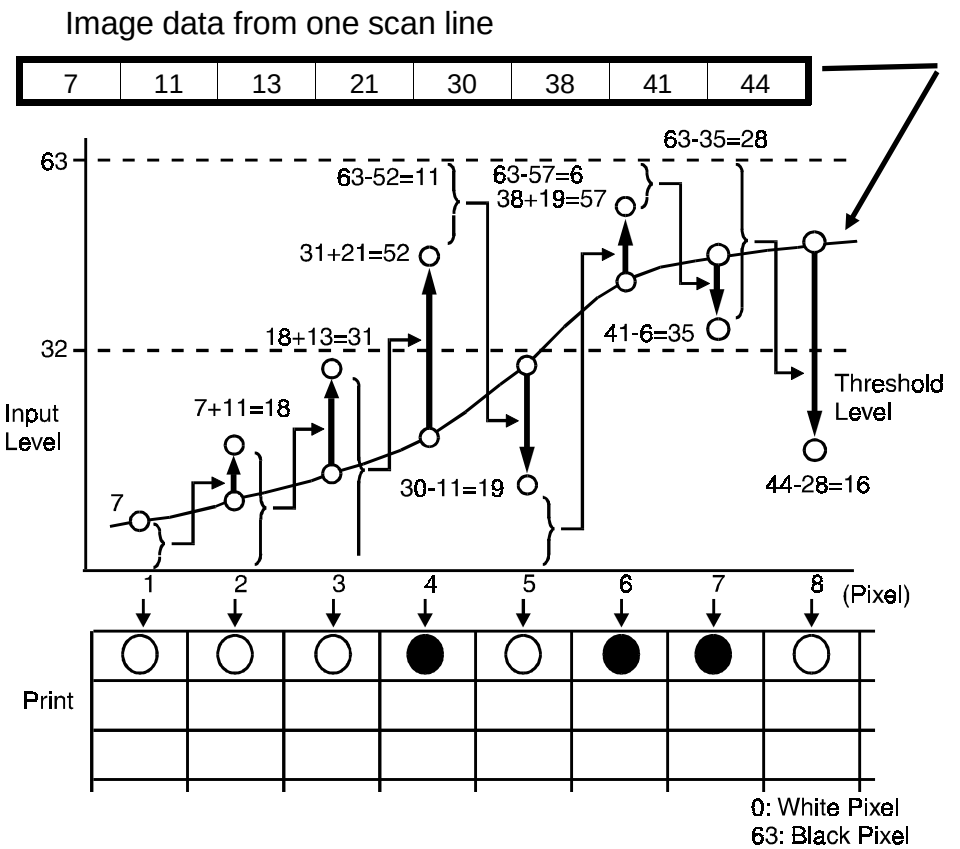
Image Density Setting	Threshold Level for Line Mode	Threshold Level for Line Areas in Line/Photo Mode
Lighter	28	35
Normal	35	40
Darker 1	38	42
Darker 2	42	44

Error Diffusion

Error Diffusion is used to reproduce halftone images in Photo mode.

Before a 6-bit image signal is converted into a single-bit signal based on the threshold level, there is a difference between the image signal value and the complete black value (63 for a 6-bit signal) or white value (0). With the Error Diffusion process, the difference is distributed among the surrounding pixels. (The MTF process simply erases these differences.)

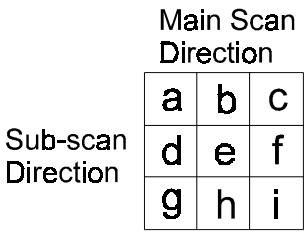
When considering Error Diffusion in one dimension only (across the page), the 6-bit data shown in the example below produces white and black data output as shown below. In practice, this one-dimensional Error Diffusion is done in all directions on each pixel (across the page, down the page, etc.).



In each dimension, the difference between the pixel value and the nearest extreme (0 or 63) is transferred to the next pixel. The 1st pixel in the row becomes either black or white, whichever is closest. Then, for the 1st pixel above, the difference between 7 and 0 is added to the 2nd pixel. The value of the 2nd pixel, which is now 18, is then added to the 3rd pixel. The 4th pixel becomes 52, which is closer to 63 than 0. In such cases, the difference is subtracted (not added) to get the next pixel value. In this example, the difference is 63-52=11, and the next pixel value (30-11) becomes 19.

Binary Processing in Letter/Photo Mode

In the Letter/Photo mode, the machine checks each pixel of the original to see if the pixel is in a line area or in a photo area. To recognize a line area in a photo original, the CPU does the following calculation on the 6-bit pixel data.



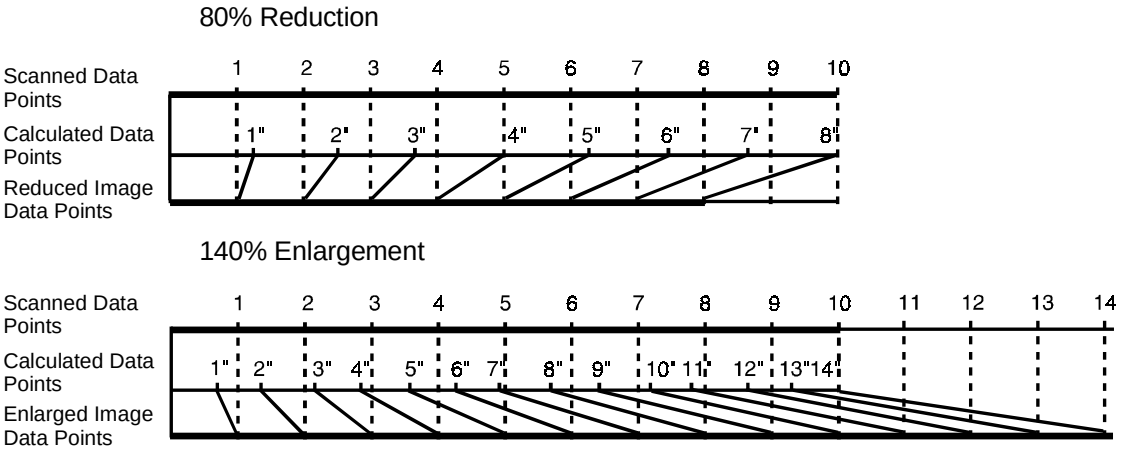
$x = | (c + f + i) - (a + d + g) |$
$y = | (g + h + i) - (a + b + c) |$

If x or y is greater than 10, the machine recognizes that pixel e is in a letter area of the image and uses the MTF process to convert the 6-bit value to 1-bit.

If the calculated number is 10 or less, the pixel is converted to 1-bit using Error Diffusion.

To emphasize characters in a photo original when using Letter/Photo mode, a data compensation curve (γ curve) is used to make a darker image.

Main Scan Magnification



Reduction and enlargement in the sub-scanning direction is done by changing the original transport motor speed. Reduction and enlargement in the main scanning direction is handled by the magnification and image shift processing.

Pixels for scanning and master making are generated at fixed intervals (the contact image sensor and thermal head element intervals). The image is scanned at the contact image sensor element interval. If pixels on the master are made at the same interval (by the thermal head elements) then the master image is the same size as the original.

80 % Reduction
For example, data for 10 pixels in a main scan line are scanned by the contact image sensor. Those data are compressed into data for 8 pixels by the magnification processor. As a result, the image is reduced to 80 %.

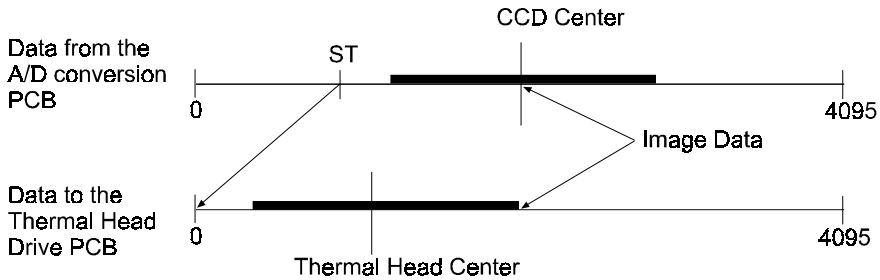
140 % Enlargement
Data for 10 pixels of a main scan line are expanded into data for 14 pixels. As a result the image is enlarged with a 140 % magnification ratio.

When actual pixels are divided in accordance with a magnification ratio, the values of the imaginary points that would correspond to new pixels are calculated by the magnification processor. The proper value for each imaginary point is calculated based on the image data of the surrounding pixel values.

Image Position Adjustment in the Main Scan Direction

To adjust the image position of the original across the printout, the image can be shifted ± 1.9 mm in the main scan direction using SP mode No. 31 (platen mode) or No. 37 (ADF mode).

The image shift in the main scan direction is done by changing the relationship between the original scanning start timing and the master making start timing. Data for one main scan line are stored in a line memory. When the data is output from memory, the output timing is changed to shift the image.



Paste Shadow Erase Mode

Due to the characteristics of the contact image sensor, shadows of a paste-up original tend to appear on copies. To counter this, the paste shadow erase mode can be used by pressing a key on the operation panel.

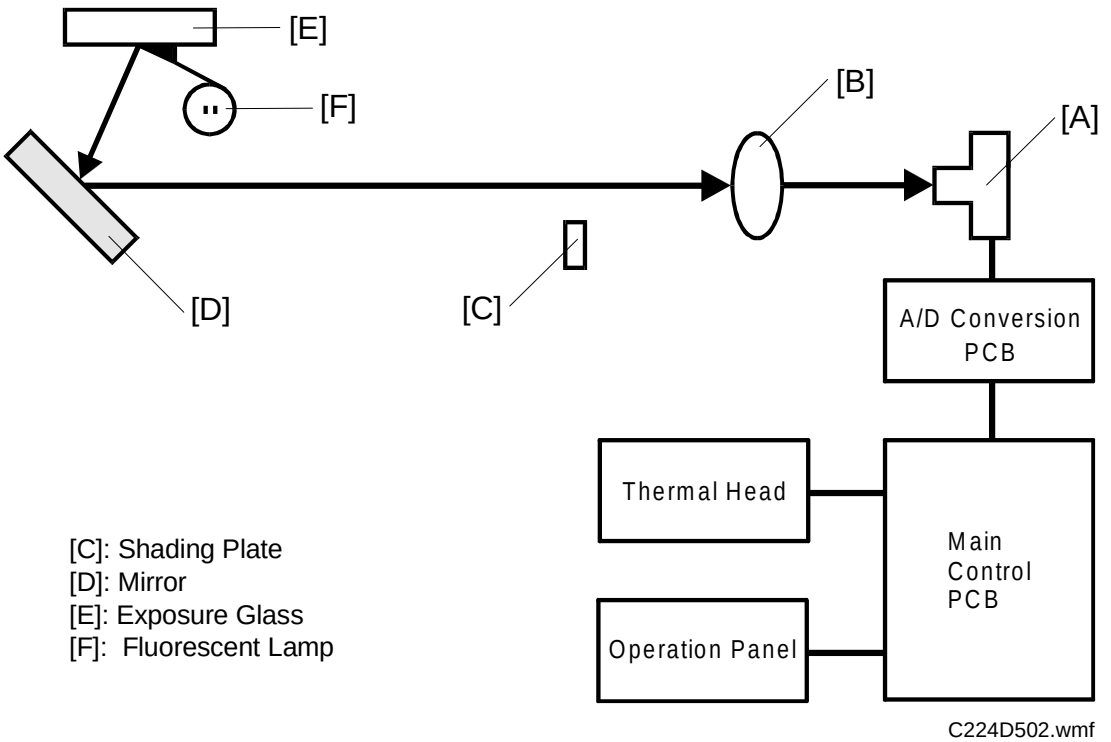
When this mode is selected, the black or white threshold level is slightly lowered. At the same time, the emphasis in the sub-scan direction in the MTF correction process is weakened to make the shadows inconspicuous.

2.2 OVERALL: C211/C212/C213/C215/C216/C224

2.2.1 C224

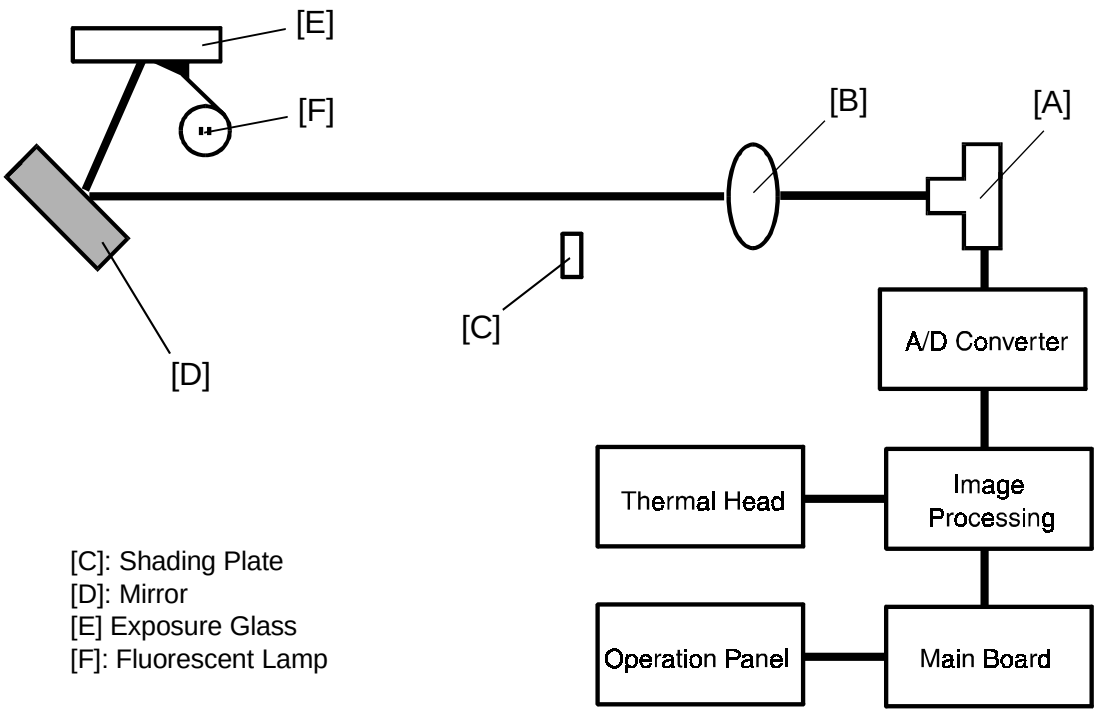
The CCD [A] which corresponds to a 300 dpi pixel density is used for the C224 model.

Light reflected from the original goes to the CCD through a lens.
The CCD changes the light into an analog electrical signal which is changed to 4-bit digital data in the A/D conversion PCB. The main control PCB changes the 4-bit data into 1-bit data to drive the thermal head.



2.2.2 C215/C216

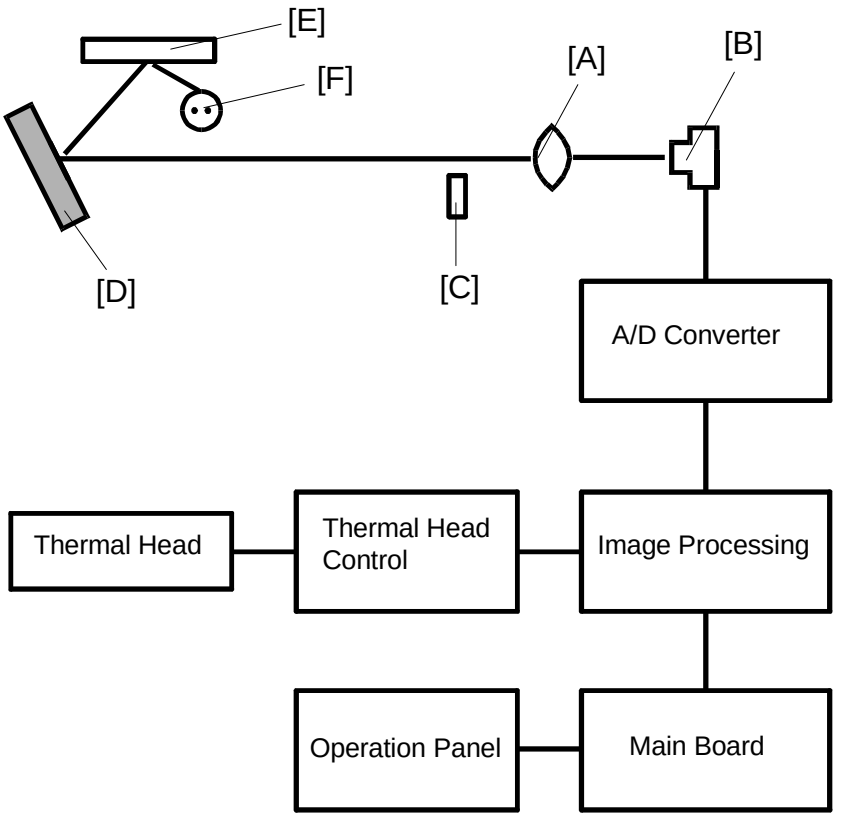
The CCD [A] used on the C215/C216 is commonly used on the C201 model series. Due to the pixel density difference between those models (300 dots/inch and 12 dots/mm), the reduction ratio (lens [B] position) of the C215/C216 model is different from the C201 model.



[C]: Shading Plate
[D]: Mirror
[E] Exposure Glass
[F]: Fluorescent Lamp

The thermal head drive board has been removed. The function of this board has been moved to the image processing board and the main board.

2.2.3 C211/C212/C213



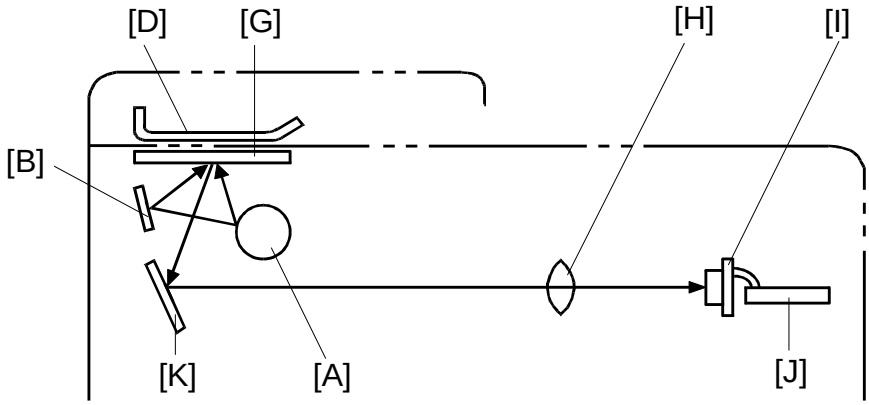
[C]: Shading Plate
[D]: Mirror
[E]: Exposure Glass
[F]: Fluorescent Lamp

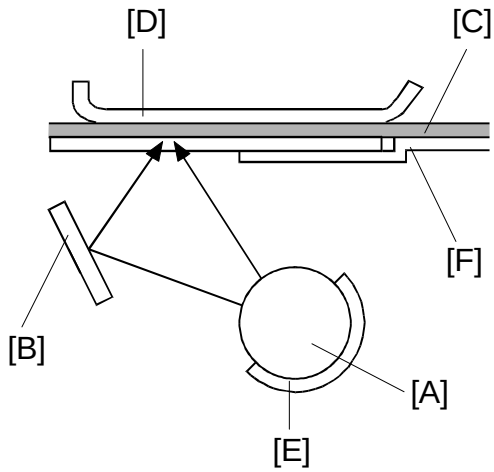
The light reflected from the original goes through the lens [A] and is changed to an electrical signal in the CCD [B].

The electrical signal from the CCD is converted from an analog signal to a digital signal in the A/D converter.

The converted digital image data is modulated and edited (C213 model) and is sent to the thermal head control PCB.

2.3 LIGHT SOURCE: C211/C212/C213/C215/C216/C224





[G]: Exposure Glass
[H]: Lens
[I]: CCD
[J]: A/D Converter
[K]: Mirror

The high frequency fluorescent lamp [A] is used as a light source for the high speed reading of 16 pixels/mm. The light exposes at two angles using a sub mirror [B] to prevent the shades at the edges of paste-ups on the original [C]. The original guide plate [F] blocks part of the direct light from the fluorescent lamp to make the light intensity of both direct and reflected light the same. A heater [E] is wrapped around the fluorescent lamp. It prevents light intensity reduction due to low temperature.

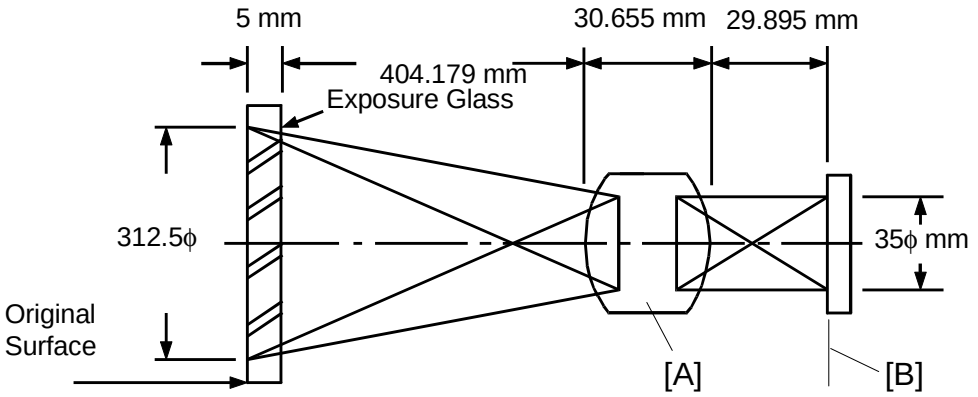
<Fluorescent Lamp>

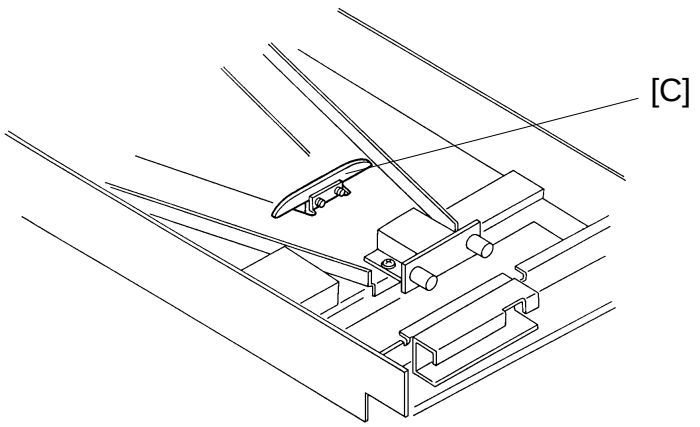
Form: 15.5 f x 436 mm
Lamp Voltage : 59 ± 6 V

— Platen Cover —

The platen cover [D] is used as a standard white level reference to correct for shading distortion.

2.4 LENS: C211/C212/C213/C215/C216/C224





This consists of 6 lenses, to transfer the image, correctly oriented, to the photoelectric elements of the CCD. It is possible to adjust the focus by moving the lens assembly [A].

<Lens>

Focal distance: 43 mm (43.05 ± 0.32 mm)
F No.: F4.5

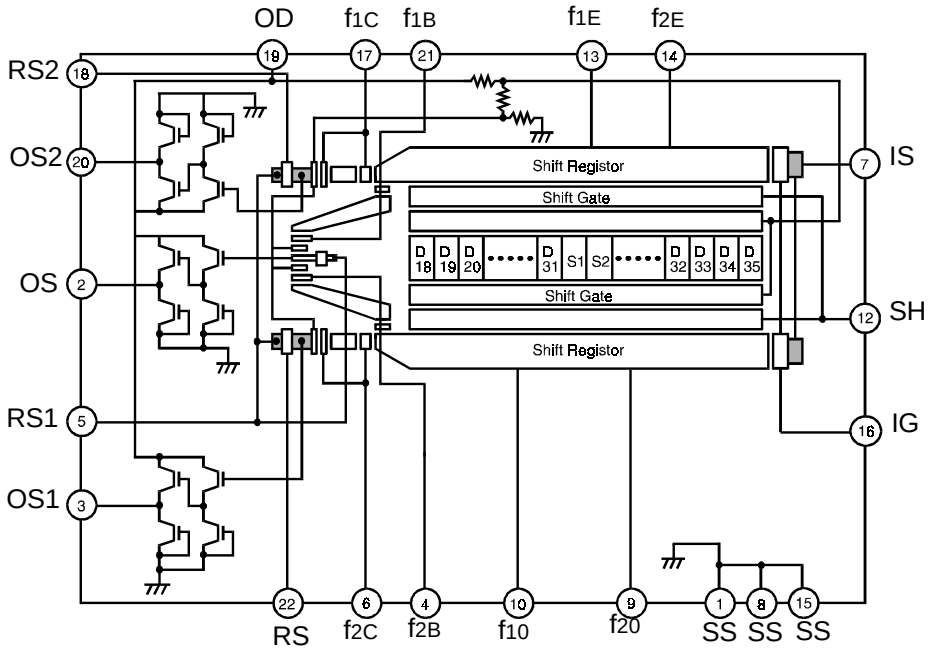
The above illustration shows the layout to transfer the image from an A3 original (297 millimeter width) to the CCD [B].

<CCD>

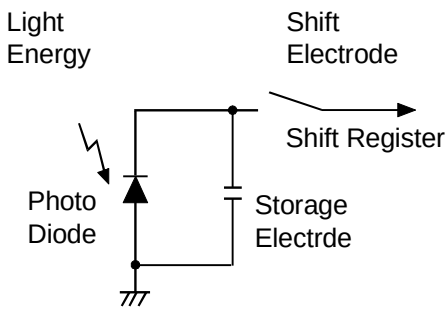
Number of effective pixels:	5,000 pixels
Reading length:	312.5 mm
Photo signal storage time:	3 msec.

The shading plate [C] corrects light intensity distortion. The light intensity is low at the both ends of the lamp and is also low at the edge of the lens. Therefore, the center light is cut to make the light intensity uniform.

2.5 CCD (Charge Coupled Device): C211/C212/C213/C215/ C216/C224



CCD (16 dots/mm)



ϕ1E, ϕ2E Clock (Phase 1)
ϕ10, ϕ20 Clock (Phase 2)

01B	:	Final Clock (Phase 1)
02B	:	Final Clock (Phase 2)
SH	:	Shift Gate
RS	:	Reset Gate
OS	:	Output Transistor source
OD	:	Output Transistor Drain
SS	:	Sub-straight (Ground)
IS	:	Input Source (Test Pin)
IG	:	Input Gate (Test Pin)

This is a solid-state device similar to a photodiode array, but unlike a photodiode array, a CCD can read one complete scan line at a time. The CCD produces an analog signal which is converted into a digital signal for image processing.

2.5.1 Function

The principle circuit of each pixel in the CCD is shown above. The light reflected from the original is absorbed in the photodiode and the capacitor stores the charge corresponding to the light intensity.

The CCD is composed of many such pixel elements in series. The image signal of each pixel element is stored in the shift register as a charge.

When the SH signal is input, the image signal stored in the shift register, is output in serial as the OS signal.

SH : Shift Gate
The storage electrode charge in the exposure section is transmitted to the shift register by the shift gate pulse.

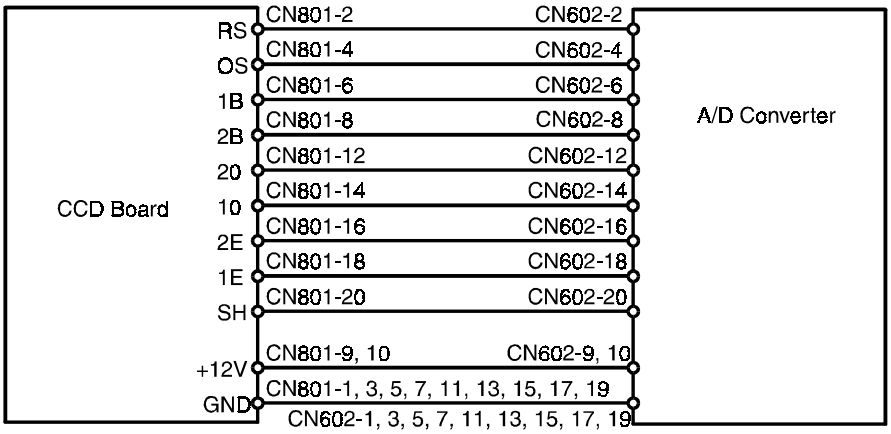
f1E, ϕ2E Clock (Phase 1)
This is the transmission clock for analog shift register 2 (even pixels).

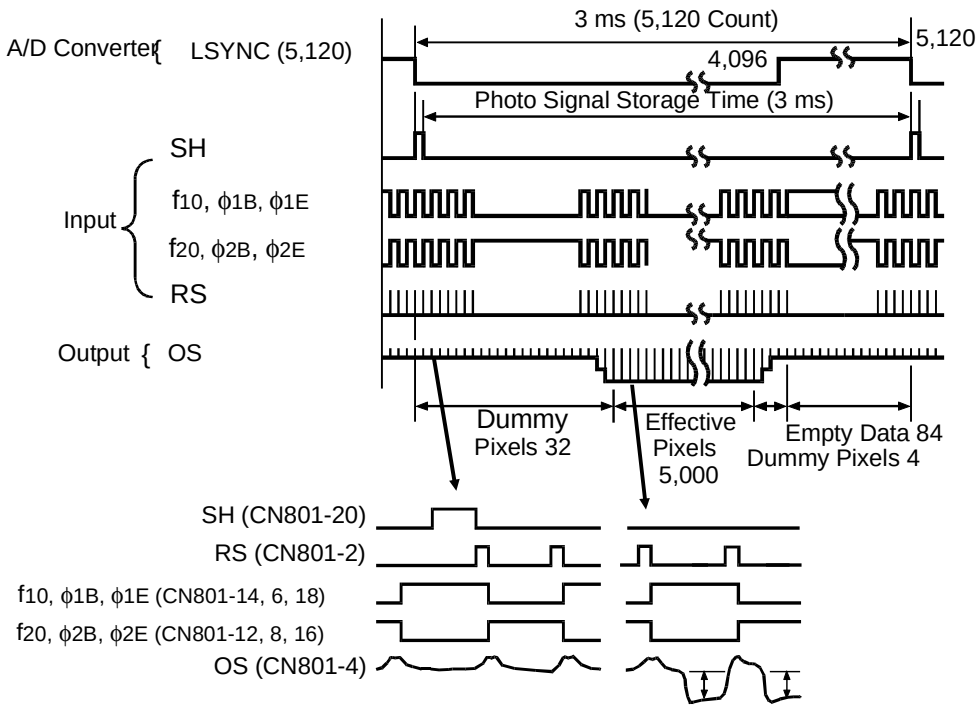
f10, ϕ20 Clock (Phase 2)
This is the transmission clock for analog shift register 1 (odd pixels).

The shift gate signal transmits the electrical charge in parallel to either analog shift register 1 or 2 (odd or even pixels). At the same time, the photo signal storage of the next scan line starts in the exposure section.

The transmission clocks serially shift the electric charge transmitted to the shift register, which outputs it from the OS (output signal) terminal.

2.5.2 The Image Signal:





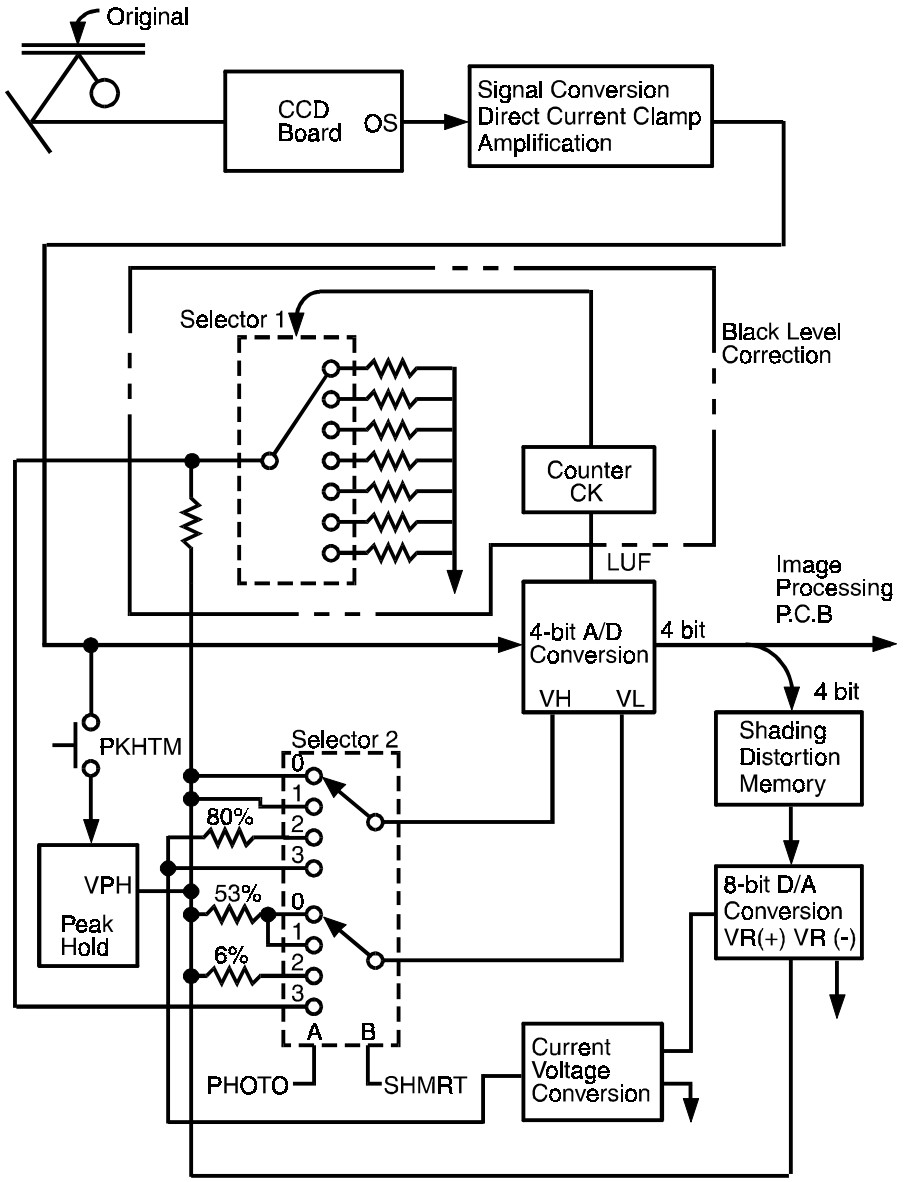
Dummy Pixels: The dummy pixels generated by the area covered with aluminum film. The dummy pixels are used as the standard black level.

The first 32 pixels read (D0 to D31) are dummy pixels. Pixels D32 to D5,032 are the effective pixels (S1 to S5,000). After that there are four more dummy pixels. Therefore, the total pixel count from the CCD, including the dummy pixels, is 5,036.

As the image signal captured by the CCD is clocked out by the shift gate every 3 ms (scan line period), there remains time for 84 transmission clock pulses after all the image data from the CCD has been output. These clock pulses, after all valid data have been clocked out, constitute empty data. During this period, subscanning occurs.

2.6 A/D CONVERSION BOARD: C211/C212/C213/C215/ C216/C224

Outline: C211 Circuit



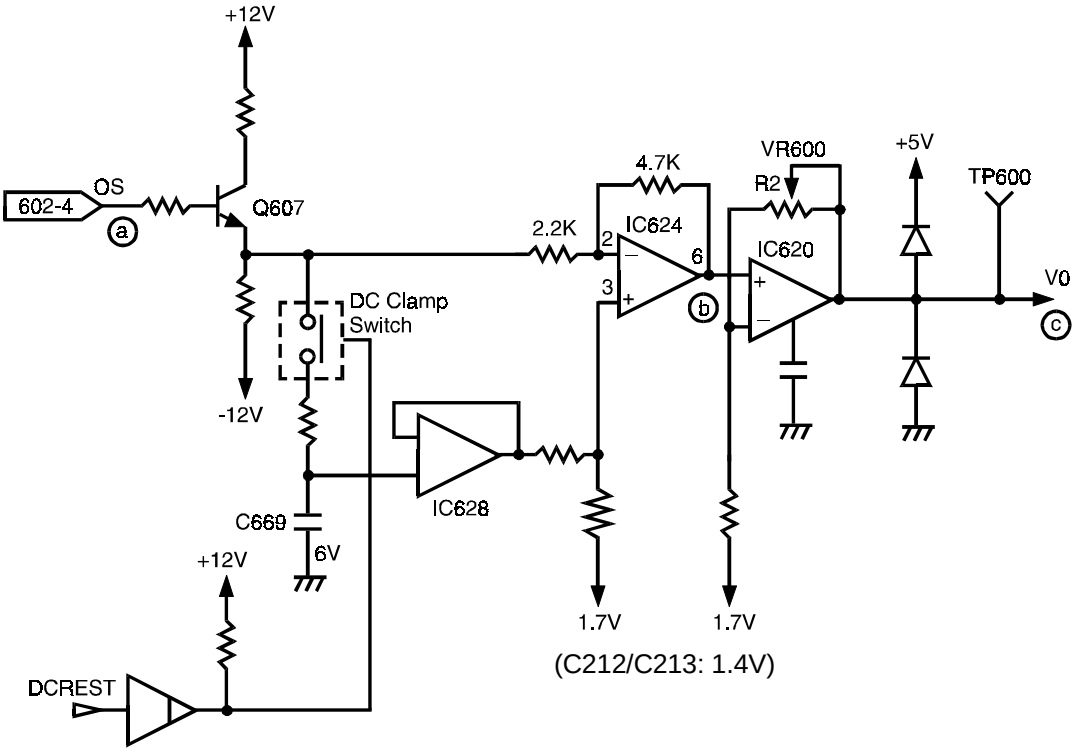
Selector 2

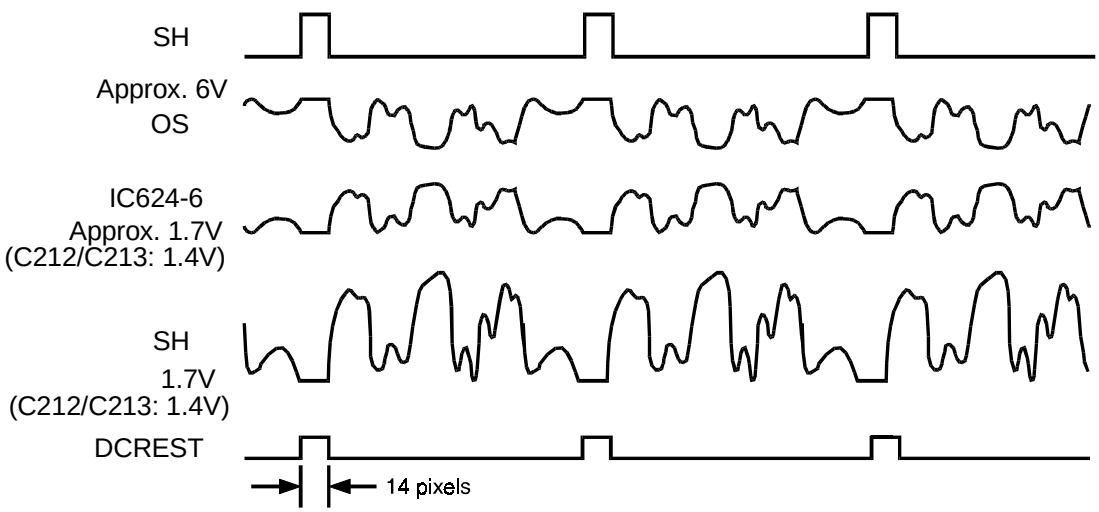
0: Shading Distortion Correction in Photo mode
1: Shading Distortion Correction in Line mode
2: Line mode
3: Photo mode

The CCD reads the light of the fluorescent lamp reflected from the original. The CCD and A/D conversion boards convert the analog signals into digital signals which are transmitted to the image processing board.

2.6.1 CCD Output Signal Conversion, DC Clamping, Amplification:

C211 Circuit:





1) Signal Conversion

The CCD output (OS) varies according to the reflected light intensity and is clipped at 6 volts. The output signal is then buffered, inverted and amplified.

2) DC Clamping

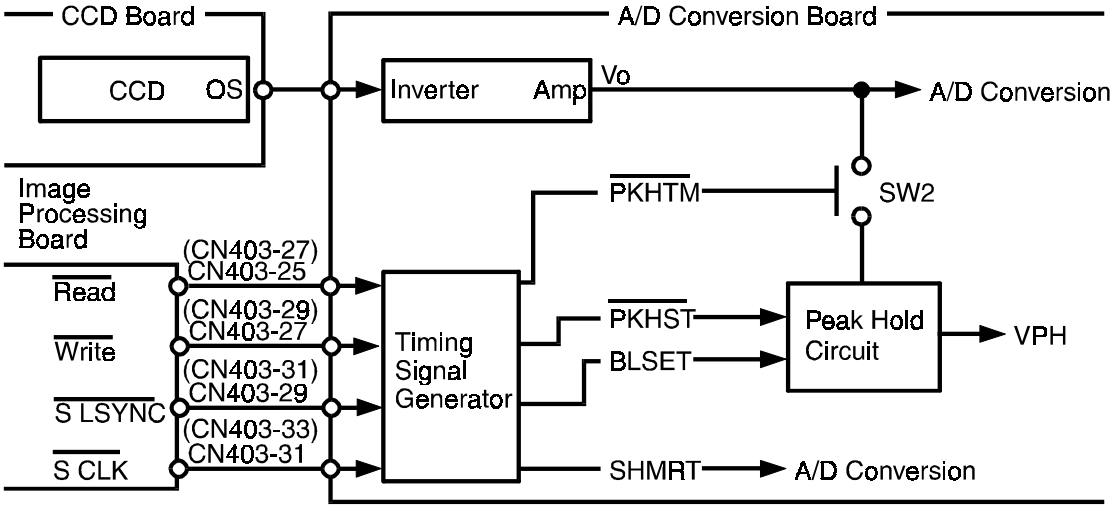
The OS signal is amplified by Q607. The dc clamping switch is turned ON/OFF by the DCREST signal. The switch turns on when the CCD produces black level (empty data) at the end of scanning and is off during image scanning.

When the switch turns on, the black level signal is stored in capacitor C669. When the switch turns off, the black level signal is input to IC624 pin 3 while the image signal is input to the IC624 pin 2.

The difference between the image signal and the black level signal is amplified and output from the IC624.

This output signal from IC624 is amplified again in IC620. The signal then goes in the A/D converter.

2.6.2 Peak Hold:



This circuit holds, at different stages of image processing, the peak white levels for both the original and the platen cover (standard white). The peak white, or maximum, level is stored as charge on a capacitor. The peak hold circuit is cleared by discharging the capacitor.

1) Platen Cover Peak Hold (Standard White)

The platen cover peak hold is used as standard white when processing data to create the shading distortion data, which is later stored in memory. This data is used to correct such distortions as bright or dull spots on the lamp or variations in the CCD output. To create the platen cover peak hold (standard white), the peak hold circuit stores the maximum level from five scan lines of the platen cover.

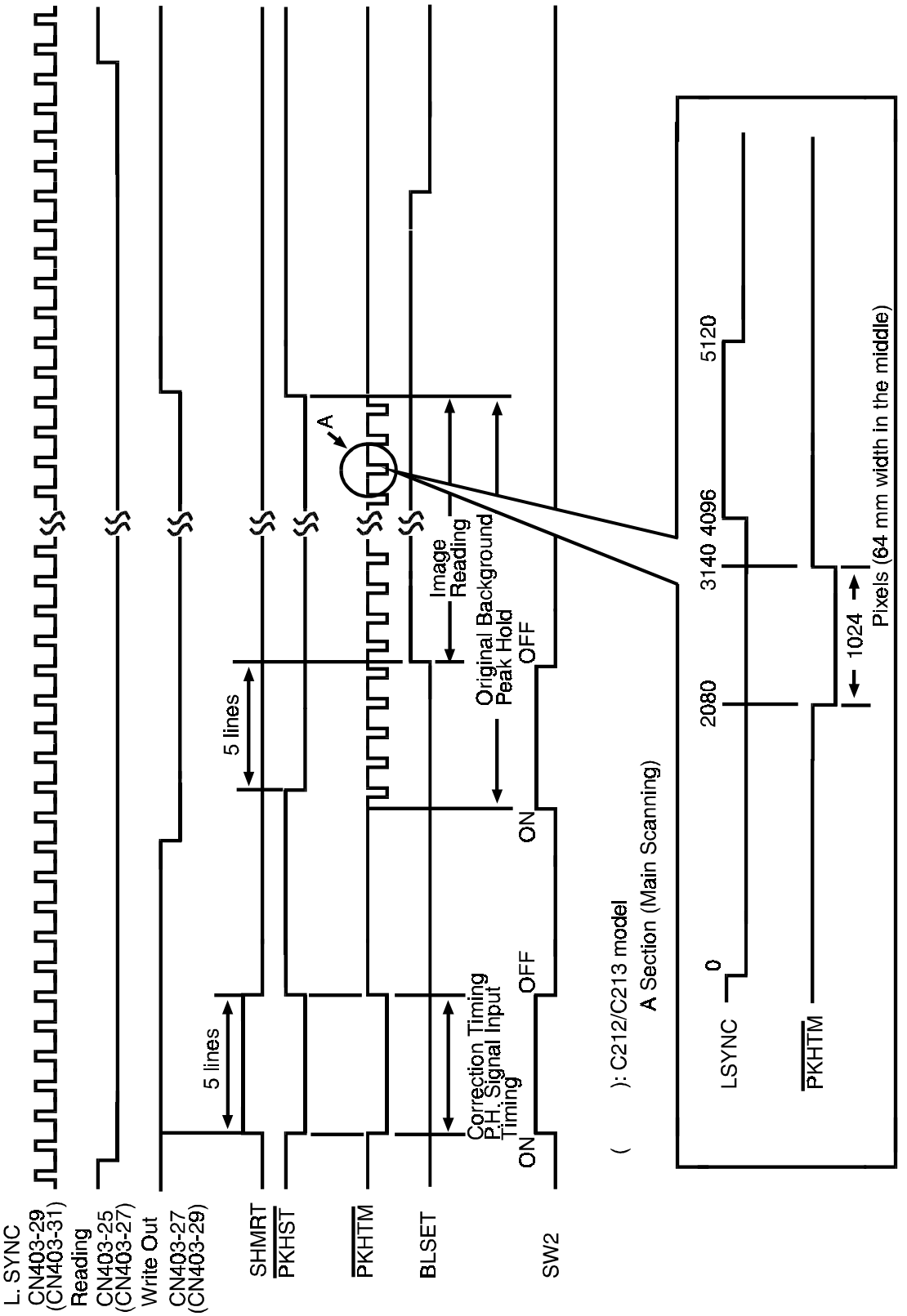
2) Original Background Peak Hold

The maximum white level of the original, stored in the peak hold circuit, is used to shift the threshold voltage of the D/A converter to match the original background. An area of the original, 64 mm wide (from S2,048 to S3,072), is read. This corresponds to a small size original.

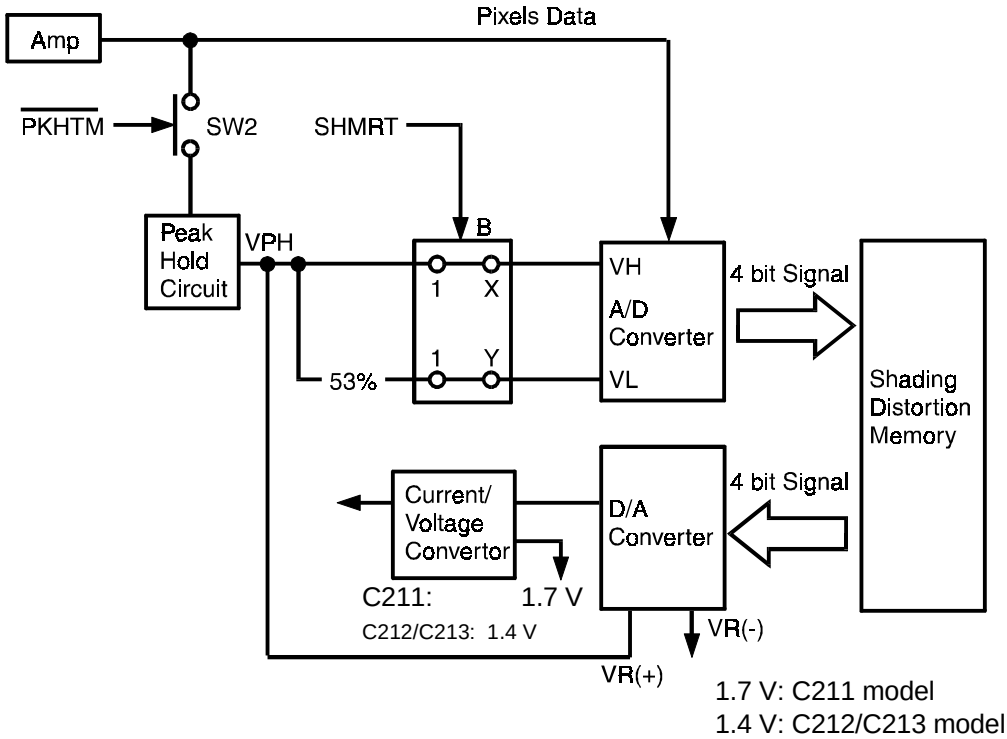
3) Peak Hold Set Signal

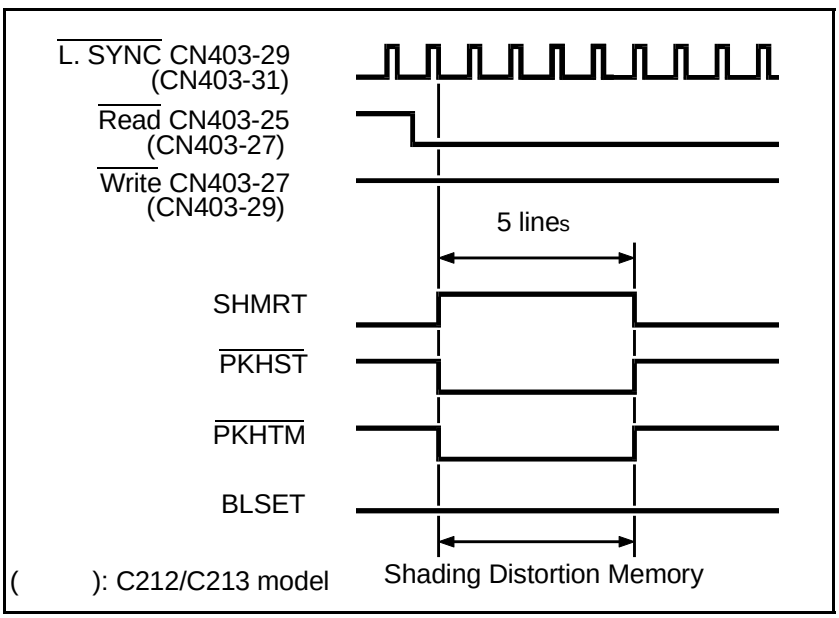
The peak hold set signal (PKHST) clears the peak hold circuit. The peak hold timing signal (PKHTM) turns on the analog switch (SW2) allowing the image signal to be applied to the peak hold circuit.

4) Peak Hold Signal Timing:



2.6.3 Shading Distortion Correction:

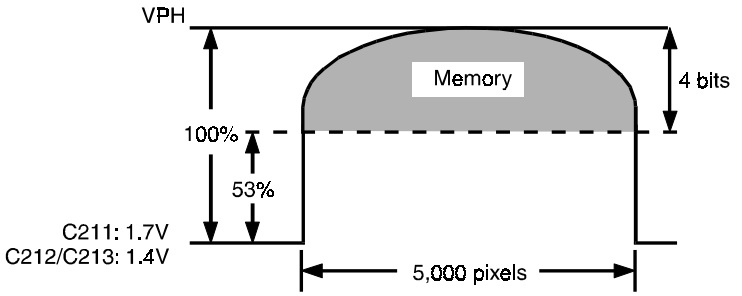




Since the output of the CCD varies according to both the CCD and the intensity of the fluorescent lamp, shading distortion is corrected electrically as well as mechanically (shading plate).

1) Shading Distortion Memory

White Peak Hold of Platen Cover

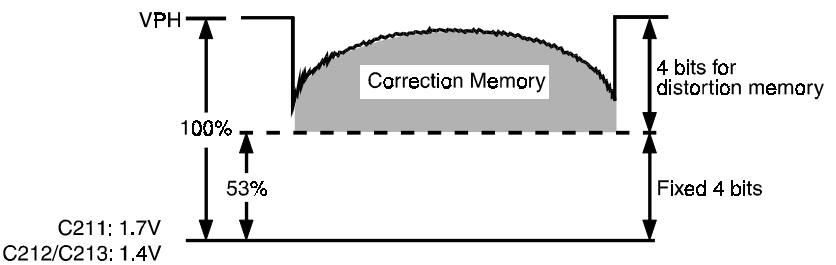


When reading the white level of the platen cover, the peak hold (standard white) is determined using the five scan lines.
The shading distortion data is stored in memory during the fifth scan line .

The potential difference between the output of each pixel and the 53% level of the peak hold is converted by an A/D converter into 4-bit data. This data is stored in a memory location corresponding to the pixel.

2) Shading Distortion Correction

White Peak Hold of Original Background



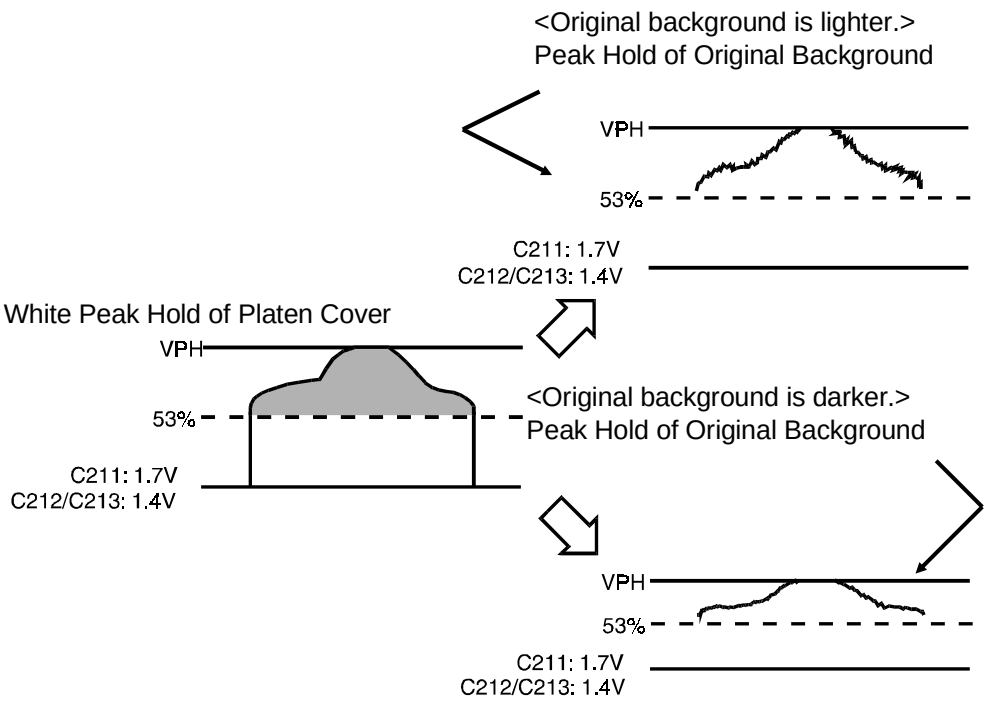
When reading the original, the distortion data corresponding (stored in memory) to each pixel is converted from digital to analog, using the D/A converter, and used as the reference voltage (V_H) of the A/D converter.

The D/A converter is an 8-bit converter with 4 of its 8 bits fixed. This ensures that the output of the D/A converter is always greater than 53% of the reference voltage (VR+).

The reference (VR+) of the D/A converter is set to the peak hold of the original background. Distortion correction is obtained by using the output voltage of the D/A converter as the reference voltage (V_H) of the A/D converter; therefore, distortion correction also corrects for the original background level.

For Example: If the light intensity at a certain pixel is very high, then a high voltage level will be stored in the distortion memory location for that pixel. When reading a document, that high voltage level is used as the reference level (V_H) of the A/D converter. Therefore, during conversion, the input level from the pixel is compared to a high voltage by the A/D. This negates any errors caused by the high light intensity at that pixel.

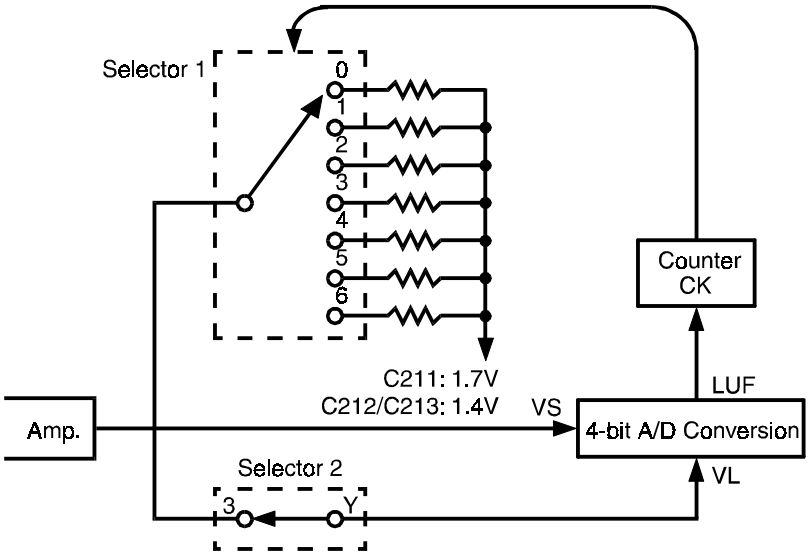
2.6.4 Original Background Correction



As the white peak hold of the original background is used as the reference (VR+) of the D/A converter, the overall shading distortion correction level is adjusted for the original background at the output of the D/A converter.

For Example, if the background level of the original is low, the reference level (V_H) of the D/A converter is low, causing the overall distortion correction level to be low. Therefore, even though the light level from the original background is low, it is being compared to a low reference level (V_H) which causes it to be detected as background, not image.

2.6.5 Black Level Correction (Line mode only)



The black level correction compensates for the image density. Black level correction is used only when in line mode.
The lower threshold level (V_L) of the A/D converter is set according to a high density original or a low density original.

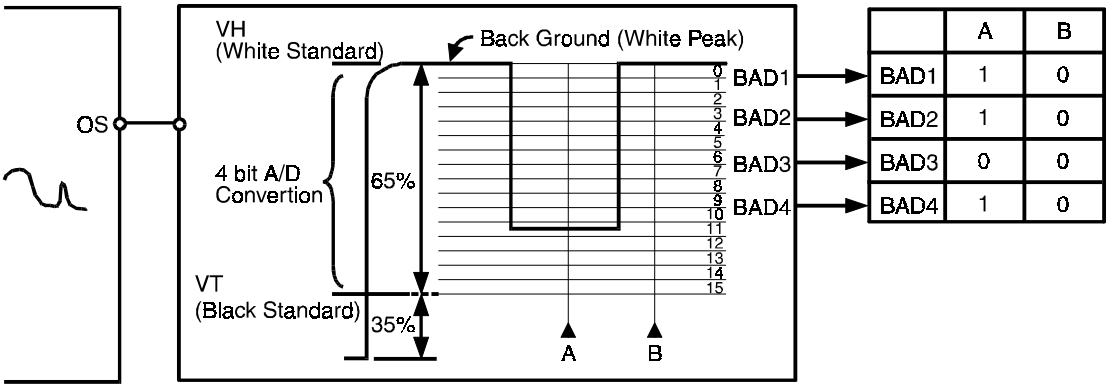
At first, the black level reference of the A/D converter is set to 35% of the original peak hold white level (P_H) because the analog switch of selector-1 is set to the "0" position.
If while reading the original image the black level of the image is lower than V_L (P_H x 35%), the A/D converter outputs the LUF signal.

The LUF signal is applied to selector 1 as a clock pulse. The LUF signal increments the counter of selector 1 from 0 to 1. This changes the V_L to 30% of P_H. If the LUF signal is again applied to the counter of selector 1, incrementing it from 1 to 2, the analog switch of selector 1 changes from 0 to 1.

The following table shows the number of clock pulses needed to increment the analog switch of selector 1.

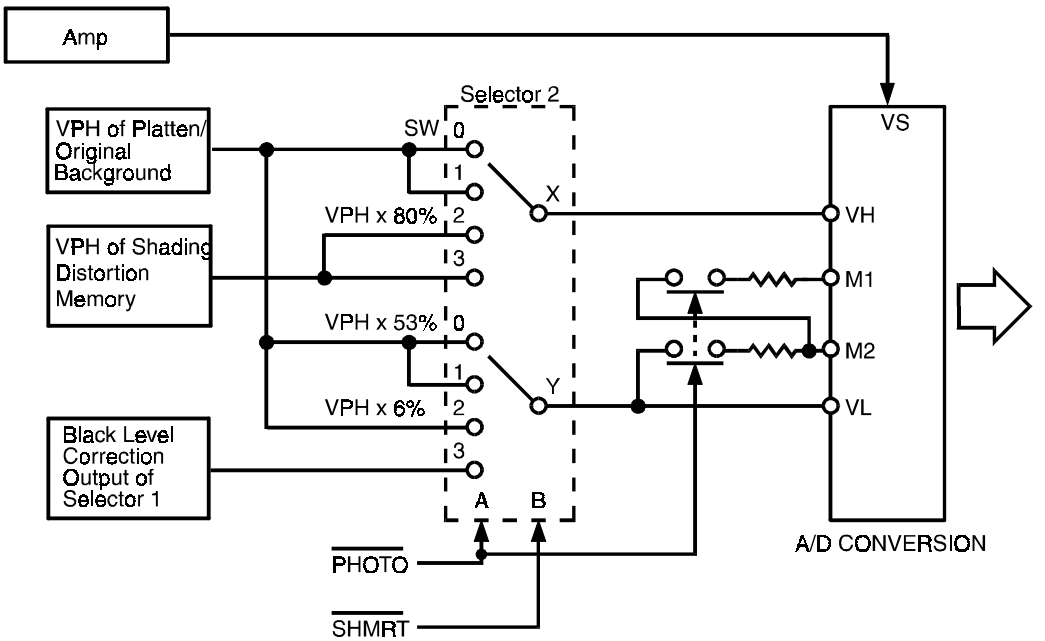
Counter (4 bit)	Selector 1 Switching	V_L
0.1	SW 0	P_H x 35%
2.3	SW 1	P_H x 30%
4.5	SW 2	P_H x 25%
6.7	SW 3	P_H x 20%
8.9	SW 4	P_H x 15%
A.B	SW 5	P_H x 10%
C.D	SW 6	P_H x 5%
E.F	SW 7	P_H x 0% (Black Level)

2.6.6 A/D Conversion



	A	B
BAD1	1	0
BAD2	1	0
BAD3	0	0
BAD4	1	0

C211 Circuit:

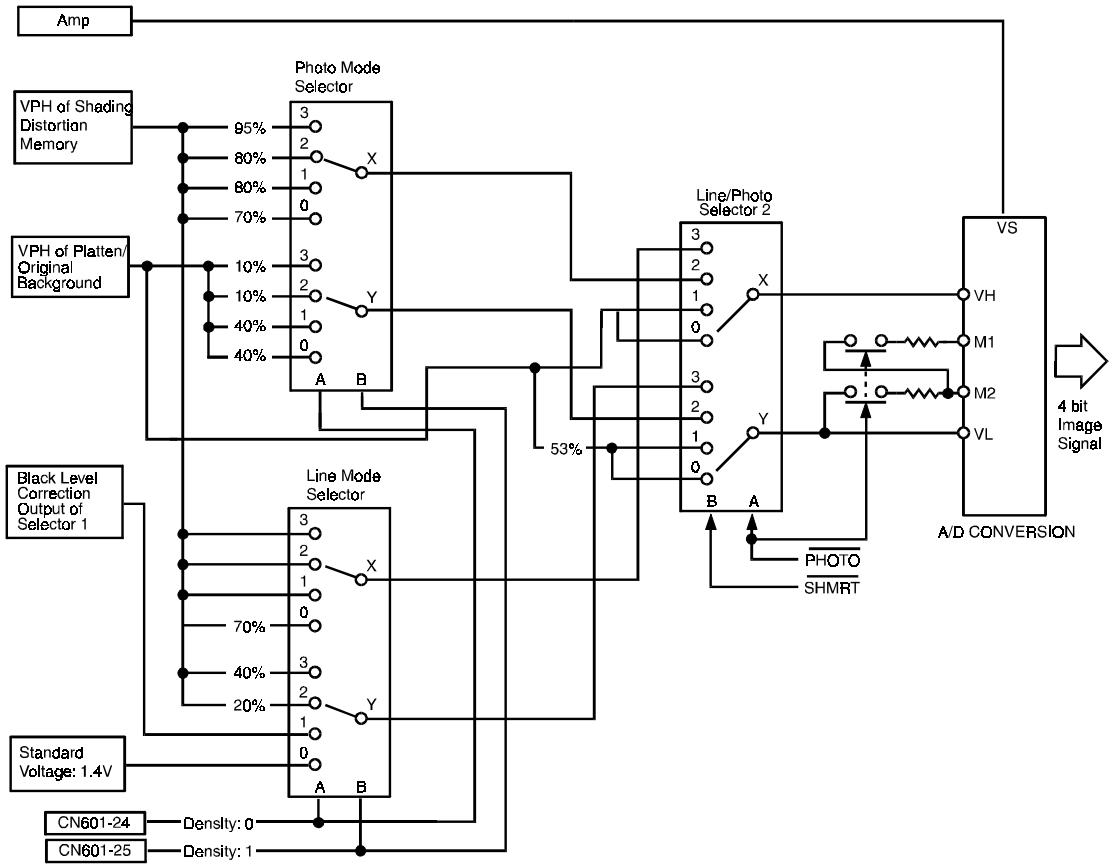


	$\overline{\text{PHOTO}}$	$\overline{\text{SHMRT}}$	Selector 2 (X, Y)
Shading Distortion Correction (Photo Mode)	L	L	SW0 ON
Shading Distortion Correction (Line Mode)	H	L	SW1 ON
Photo Mode	L	H	SW2 ON
Line Mode	H	H	SW3 ON

This circuit converts the analog input signal (V_S) to a 4-bit digital signal using both the white level reference (V_H) and the black level reference (V_L).

In each mode, the settings of the "X" and "Y" switches in Selector 2 are automatically determined by the $\overline{\text{PHOTO}}$ and $\overline{\text{SHMRT}}$ signals as shown in the above table.

C212/C213 Circuit:

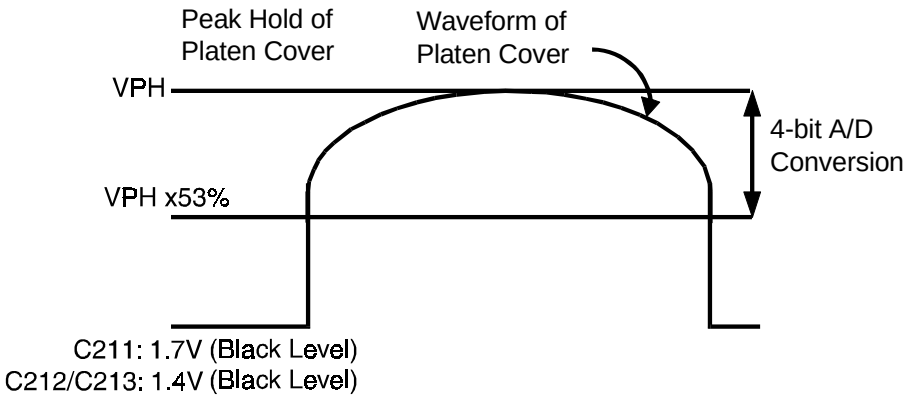


	$\overline{\text{PHOTO}}$	$\overline{\text{SHMRT}}$	Line/Photo Selector 2 (X, Y)
Shading Distortion Correction (Photo Mode)	L	L	SW0 ON
Shading Distortion Correction (Line Mode)	H	L	SW1 ON
Photo Mode	L	H	SW2 ON
Line Mode	H	H	SW3 ON

This circuit converts the analog input signal (V_S) to a 4-bit digital signal using both the white level reference (V_H) and the black level reference (V_L).

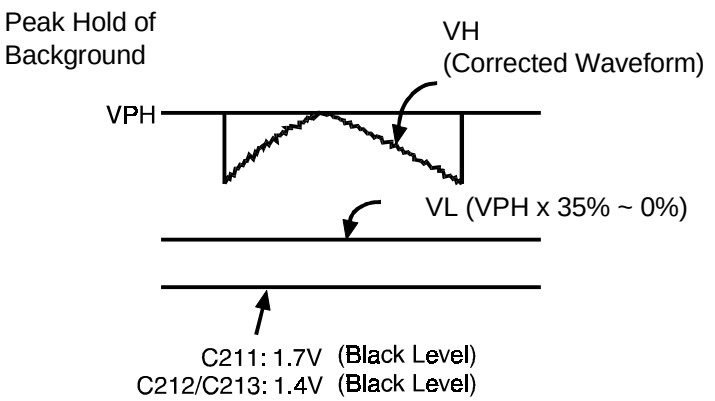
In each mode, the settings of the "X" and "Y" switches in Selector 2 are automatically determined by the $\overline{\text{PHOTO}}$ and $\overline{\text{SHMRT}}$ signals as shown in the above table.

1) Shading Distortion Correction – (Selector 2 Switch 1 ON)



When reading the platen cover to establish the shading distortion data, the high reference voltage (V_H) of the A/D converter is set to the peak hold level and the low reference voltage (V_L) is set to 53% of the peak hold level. Therefore, the potential difference between the output of each pixel and the 53% level of the peak hold is converted by the A/D converter into 4-bit data. The shading distortion data for each pixel is stored in a memory location corresponding to that pixel.

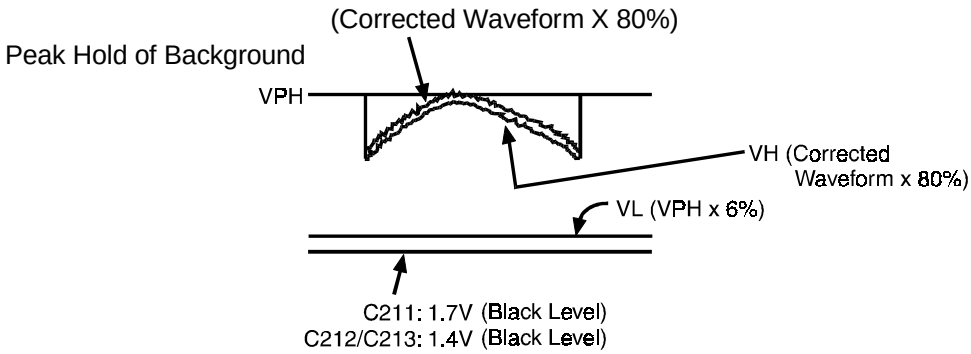
2)Original Reading



a) Line Mode – (Selector 2 Switch 3 ON)

The reference voltage (V_H) of the A/D converter is set to the output of the D/A converter (converted shading distortion data) for each pixel being read. Because the reference level of the D/A converter is set to the original peak hold level, this corrects for shading distortion as well as matching the output level to the original background.

Also, as described in "Black Level Correction", V_L is set from 0% to 35% of the potential difference between 1.7 volts (C212/C213 model: 1.4 volts) and the peak hold of the original background. Black level correction varies according to the original image density.



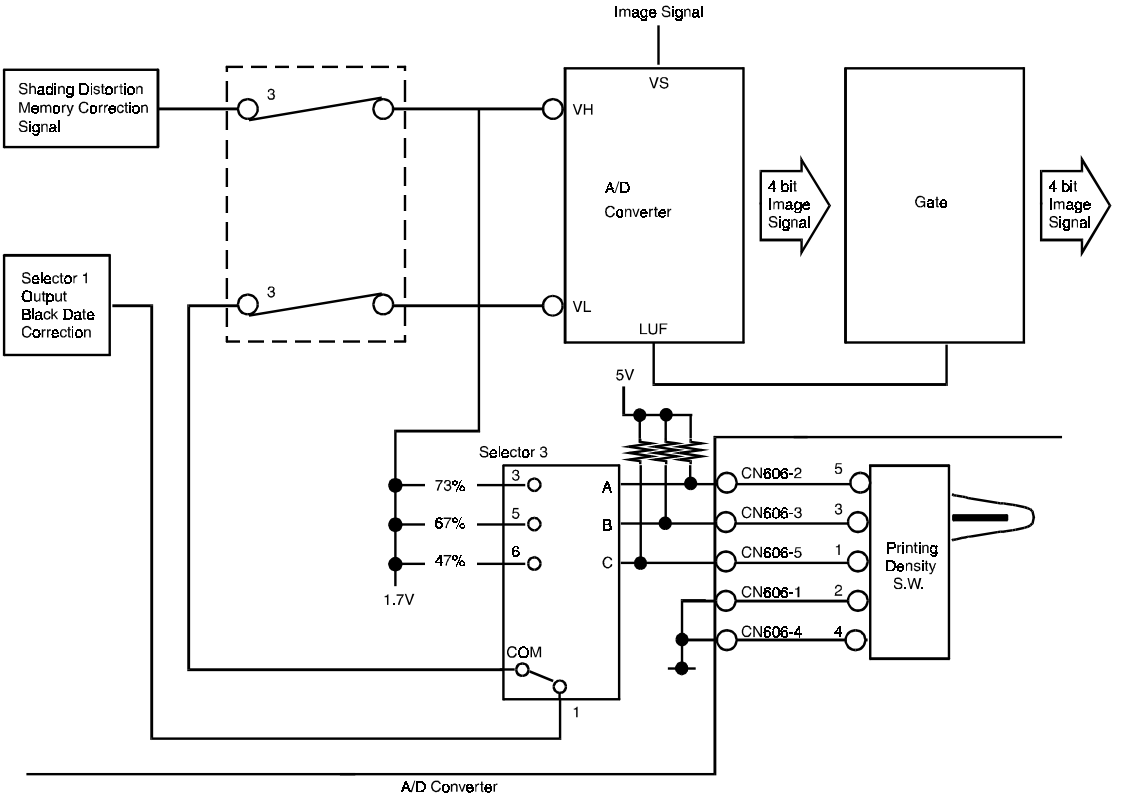
b) Photo Mode – (Selector 2 Switch 2 ON)

The V_H of the A/D converter is set to 80% of the potential difference between 1.7 volts (C212/C213 model: 1.4 volts) and the output from the D/A converter (converted shading distortion data). This corrects for shading distortion as well as matching the output level to the original background because the reference level of the D/A converter is set to the original peak hold level.

Also, V_L is set to 6% of the potential difference between 1.7 volts (C212/C213 model: 1.4 volts) and the peak hold level of the original.

2.6.7 Printing Density Change

C211 Circuit in Line mode:



	SW ON (Terminal No.)	CN606			Selector 3
		-2	-3	-5	
MANUAL 1	1-2	H	H	L	COM–3
MANUAL 2	2-3	H	L	H	COM–5
Standard	—	H	H	H	COM–1
MANUAL 3	4-5	L	H	H	COM–6

The printing density can be changed by the printing density switch when in the line mode. This switch changes the threshold level to 47%, 67%, or 73% of the white level.

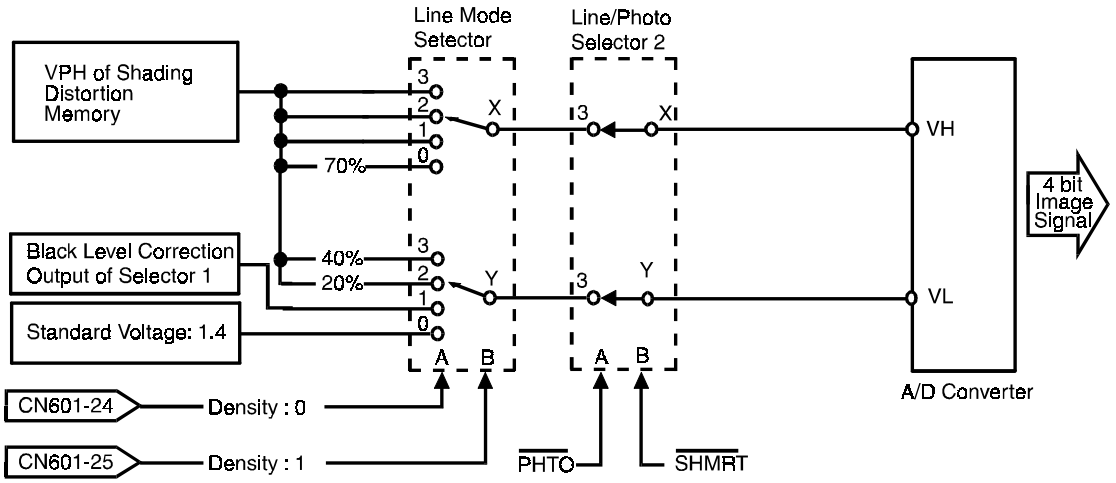
The selected threshold level enters port V_L while the shading distortion corrected image signal enters port V_H of the A/D converter.

In manual printing density mode (Dark, Darker, and Lighter), the A/D converter outputs either all "H" BAD signals (4 bit) or all "L" BAD signals (4 bit). This is determined by the LUF signal

When the image signal is lower than the threshold level, the LUF signal is output from the A/D converter to make all BAD signals "H". Then the image signal is output as a black.

When the image signal is higher than threshold level, LUF signal is not output. Then the BAD signals are all "L".

C212/C213 Circuit in Line Mode:



The printing density (i.e. image density) can be changed with the Printing Density key on the operation panel.

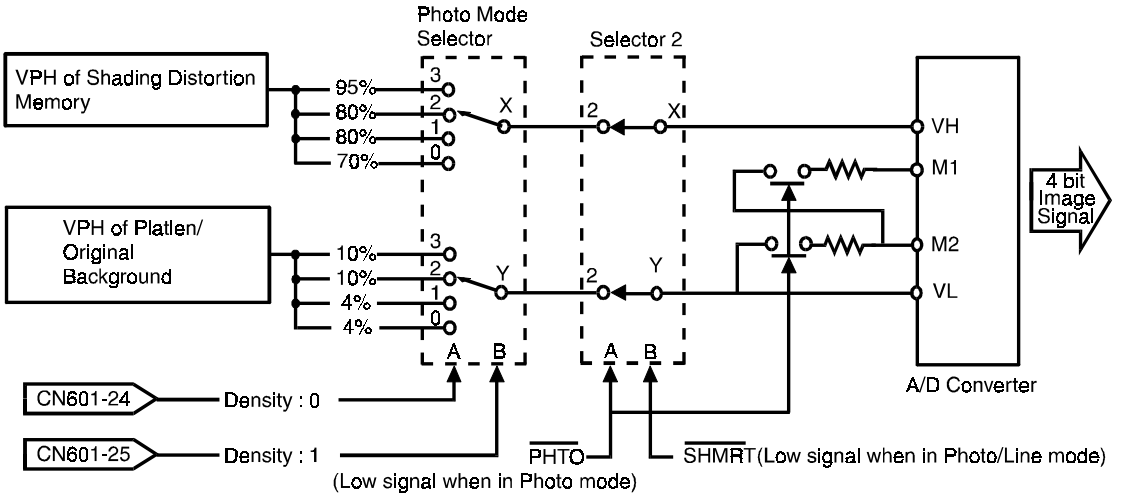
Line Mode Selector changes the threshold level of VH (White level reference) and VL (Black level reference) according to the density signals from CN 601-24 and CN 601-25.

The A/D converter converts the analog input signal to a 4-bit digital signal using both the white reference level (VH) and the black reference level (VL).

The following table shows the VH and VL levels that vary according to the combination of the density signals in Line mode.

Printing Density	Density Signal 0 (CN601-24)	Density Signal 1 (CN601-25)	Line Mode Selector ON Channel.	A/D Converter	
				VH	VL
Darker 2	H	H	0X, 0Y	100%	40%
Darker 1	L	H	1X, 1Y	100%	20%
Standard	H	L	2X, 2Y	100%	0 ~ 35%
Lighter	L	L	3X, 3Y	70%	0%

C212/C213 Circuit in Photo Mode:



The printing density (i.e. image density) can be changed with the Printing Density key on the operation panel. This adjustment can also be done in Photo mode to increase the image quality of photo originals.

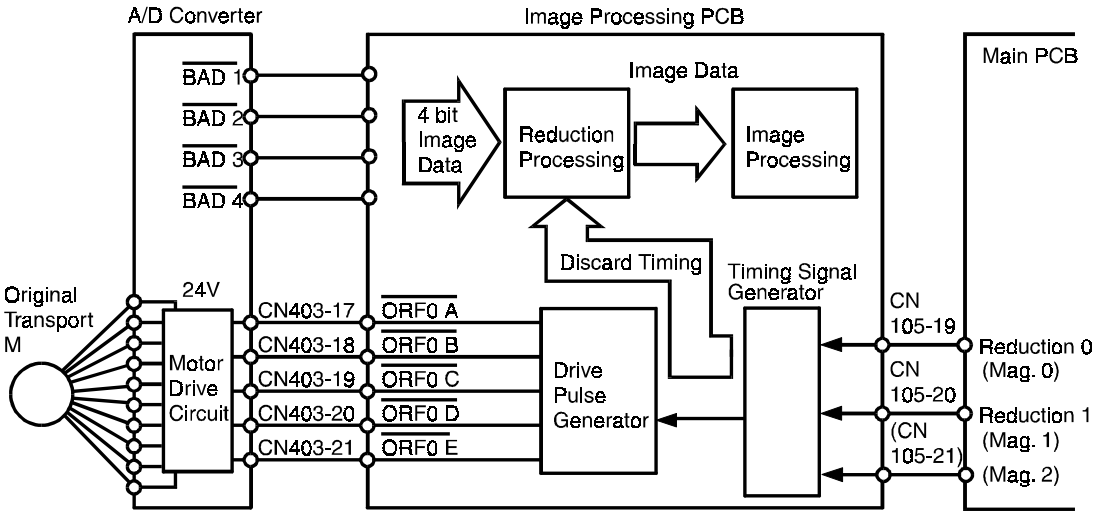
Photo ode Selector changes the threshold level of VH (White level reference) and VL (Black level reference) according to the density signals from CN 601-24 and CN 601-25.

The A/D converter converts the analog input signal to a 4-bit digital signal using both the white reference level (VH) and the black reference level (VL).

The following table shows the VH and VL levels that vary according to the combination of the density signals in Photo mode.

Printing Density	Density Signal 0 (CN601-24)	Density Signal 1 (CN601-25)	Photo Mode Selector ON Channel.	A/D Converter	
				VH	VL
Darker 2	H	H	0X, 0Y	95%	10%
Darker 1	L	H	1X, 1Y	80%	10%
Standard	H	L	2X, 2Y	80%	4%
Lighter	L	L	3X, 3Y	70%	4%

2.7 REDUCTION PROCESSING: C211/C212/C213/C215/ C216/C224



( ): **C212/C213 mode**

CN-NO	Signal	I/O	FROM	100%	93%	82% [75%]	71% [64%]
105-19	Reduction 0 (Magnification 0)	I	Main PCB	H	L	H	L
105-20	Reduction 1 (Magnification 1)	I	Main PCB	H	H	L	L
(105-21)	(Magnification 2)	(I)	(Main PCB)	(H)	(H)	(H)	(H)

( ): **C212/C213 mode**

Reduction in the main scanning direction is performed by systematically discarding the pixels and the reduction in the sub-scanning direction is performed by changing the transportation speed of the original.

2.7.1 Main Scanning Reduction:

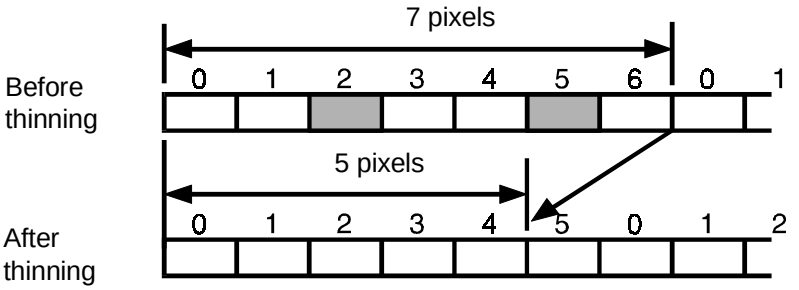
Reduction Mode	Discarded Pixels	Remaining Pixels
100%	0 Pixels	All Pixels
93%	1/14 Pixels	13/14 Pixels (0.929)
82% (A4 version)	3/11 Pixels	9/11 Pixels (0.818)
75% (LT version)	1/4 Pixels	3/4 Pixels (0.75)
71% (A4 version)	2/7 Pixels	5/7 Pixels (0.714)
64% (LT version)	5/14 Pixels	9/14 Pixels (0.642)

When the reduction command is sent from the main board, the timing signal generator sends the thinning timing control signal to the reduction processing circuit. Some of the 4-bit image data from the A/D converter is discarded according to the thinning timing control signal.

2.7.2 Movement:

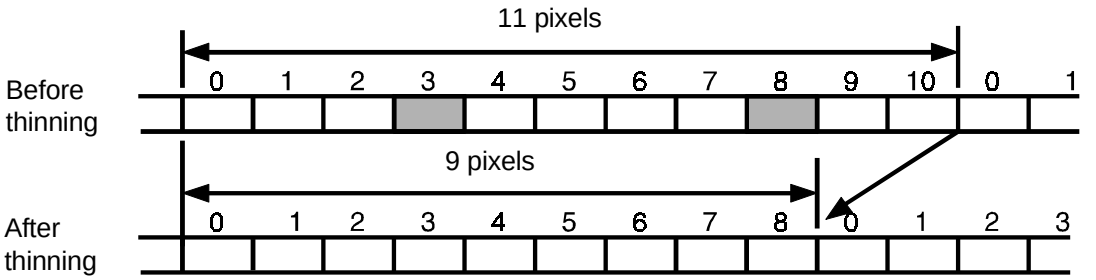
Main scan direction: Examples (A4 version)

During the 71% reduction mode, 5 out of 7 pixels are used; 1 pixel is discarded each cycle.



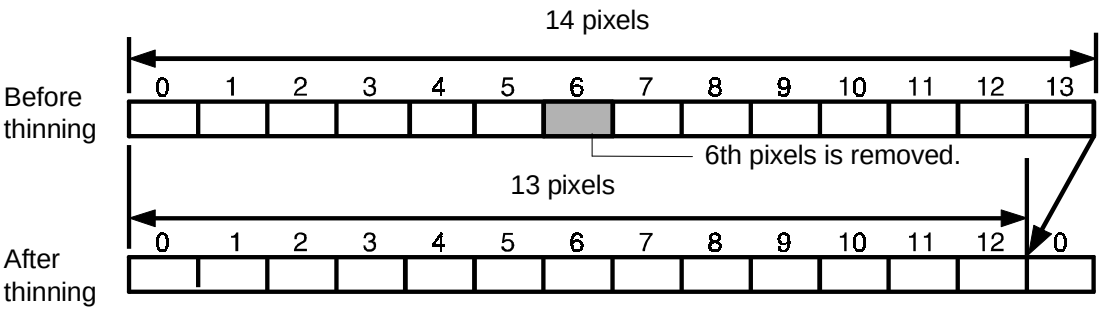
(2nd and 5th pixels are removed.)

During the 82% reduction mode, 9 out of 11 pixels are used; 2 pixels are discarded each cycle.

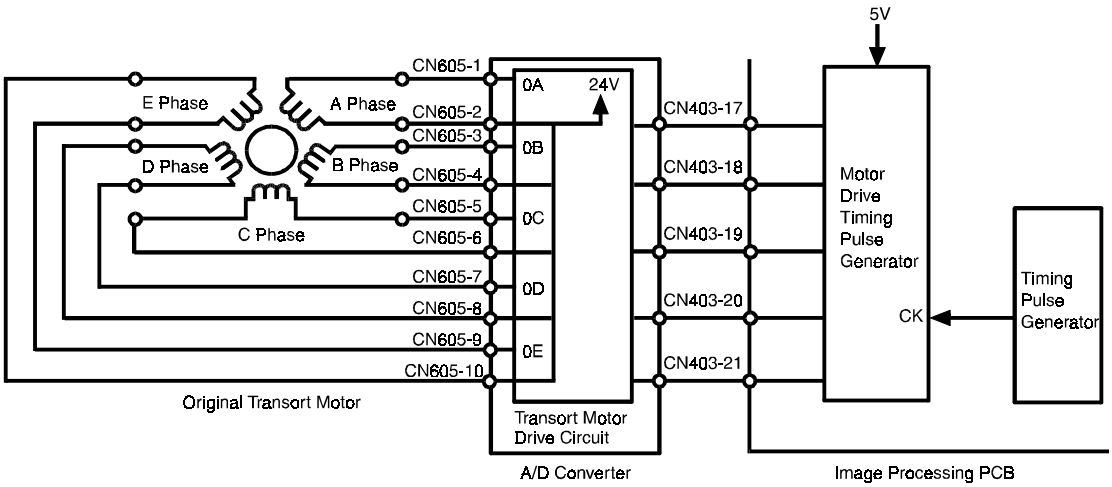


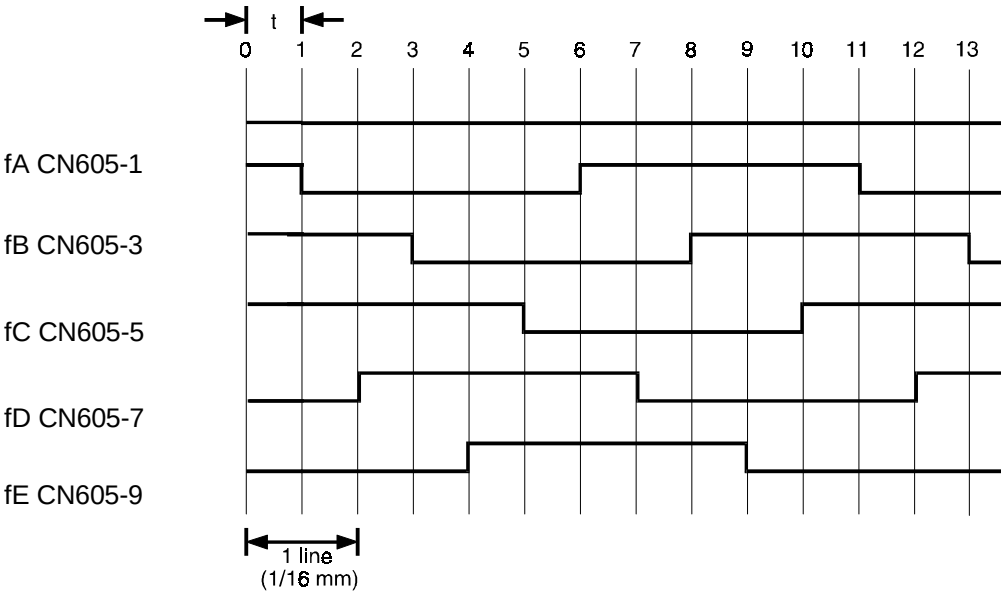
(3rd and 8th pixels are removed.)

During the 93% reduction mode, 13 out of 14 pixels are used; 1 pixel is discarded each cycle.



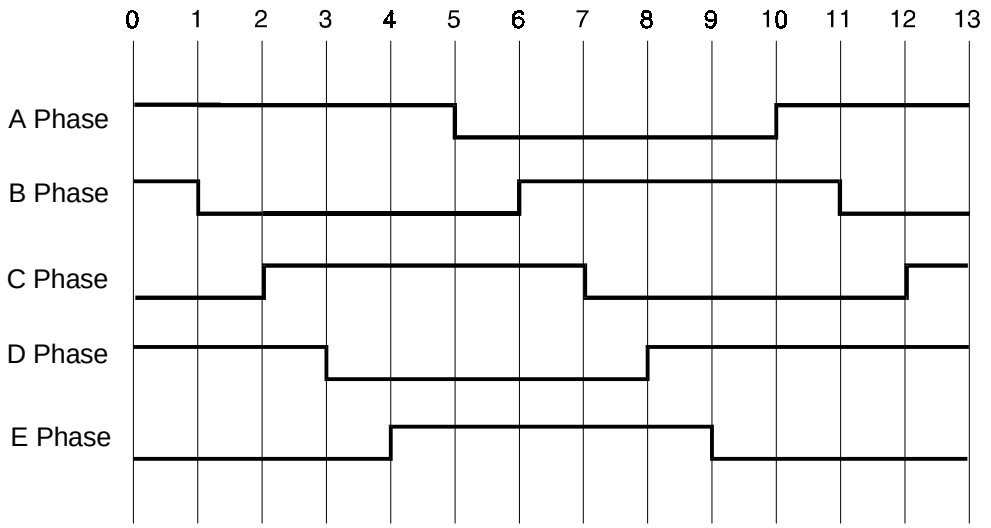
2.7.3 Sub-scanning Reduction:





NOTE: The reduction ratio change is performed by changing the pulse width "t".

Reduction Ratio	Original Transportation			Command Sheet Transportation		
	Pulse Width	PPS		Pulse Width	PPS	
100%	1.484 ms	674	—	0.742 ms	1348	—
93%	1.378 ms	726	$\frac{674}{726} = 0.928$	0.689 ms	1451	$\frac{1348}{1451} = 0.928$
82%	1.214 ms	824	$\frac{674}{824} = 0.818$	0.607 ms	1648	$\frac{1348}{1648} = 0.818$
75%	1.112 ms	899	$\frac{674}{899} = 0.74$	0.556 ms	1798	$\frac{1348}{1798} = 0.749$
71%	1.060 ms	944	$\frac{674}{944} = 0.714$	0.530 ms	1888	$\frac{1348}{1838} = 0.714$
64%	0.950 ms	1053	$\frac{674}{1053} = 0.64$	0.475 ms	2106	$\frac{1348}{2106} = 0.640$



When the reduction command is sent from the main board, the frequency of the pulses from the pulse generator increases. The drive pulse generator then increases the frequency of the motor drive pulses to increase the motor rotation speed.

2.8 ENLARGEMENT PROCESSING: C212/C213 ONLY

In reduction processing, pixels are discarded according to the selected reduction ratio. In enlargement processing, pixels are added.

Enlargement processing requires main scanning enlargement and sub-scanning enlargement.

Main Scanning: Main scanning is performed by systematically adding pixels according to the enlargement ratio.

Sub-Scanning: Sub-scanning is performed by changing the original transportation speed according to the enlargement ratio.

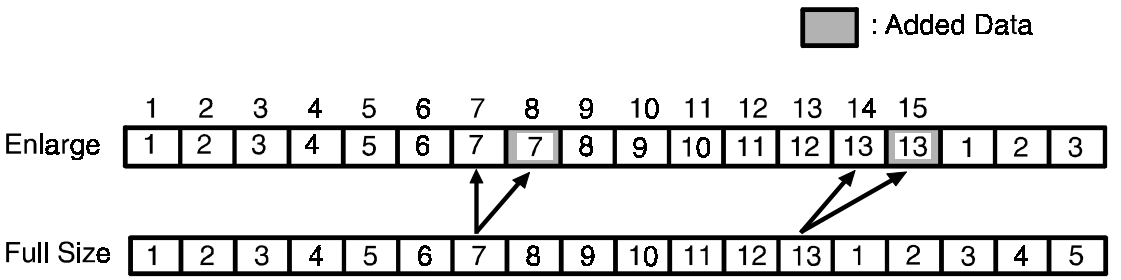
2.8.1 Main Scanning Enlargement

When the magnification command is sent from the main control board (CN402-19, 20, 21), the timing signal generator in the image processing board sends the adding timing control signal. Pixels are added to the 4-bit image data from the A/D converter according to the adding timing control signal.

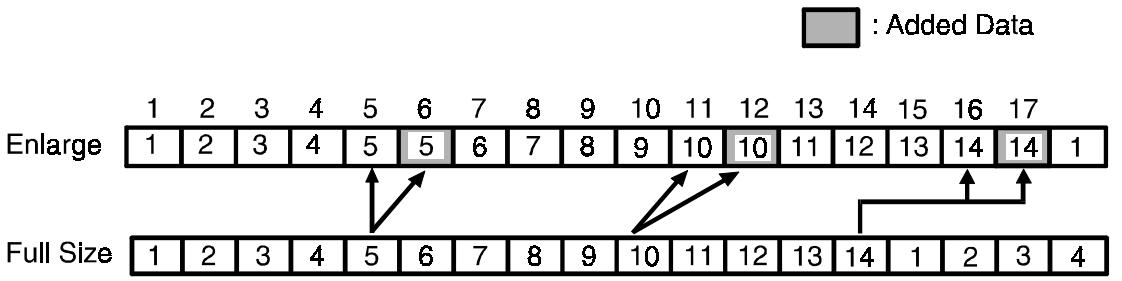
Enlarge Mode	Added Pixels	Pixel Ratio
115% (LT/A4 Version)	2 Pixels	15/13 Pixels (1.154)
122% (A4 Version)	3 Pixels	17/14 Pixels (1.214)
127% (LT Version)	3 Pixels	14/11 Pixels (1.273)
141% (LT/A4 Version)	9 Pixels	31/22 Pixels (1.409)

Examples:

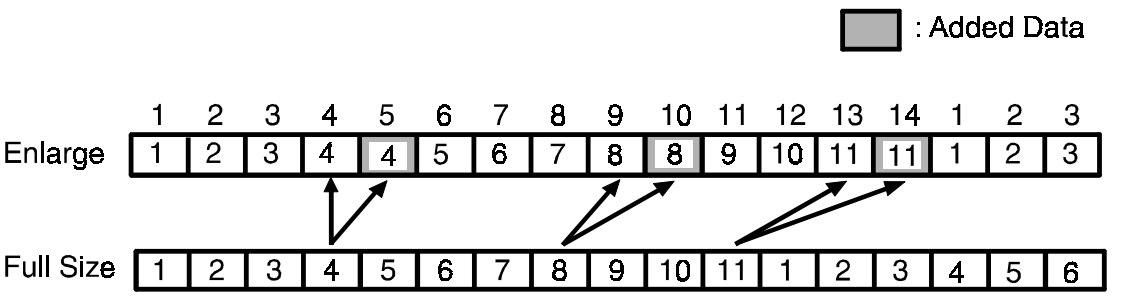
In 115% enlarge mode, the 7th pixel and the 13th pixel data are doubled to produce 15 pixels. This is repeated each main scan cycle.



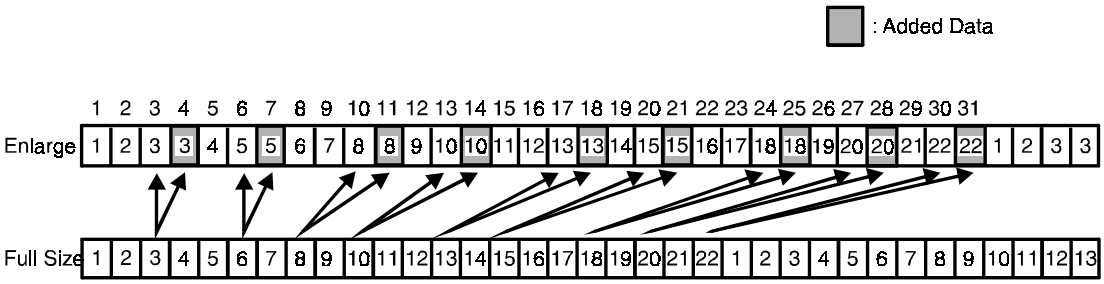
In 122% enlarge mode, the 5th, 10th, and 14th pixels are doubled to produce 17 pixels. This is repeated each cycle.



In 127% enlarge mode, the 4th, 8th and 11th pixels are doubled to produce 14 pixels. This is repeated each cycle.



In 141% enlarge mode, the 3rd, 5th, 8th, 10th, 13th, 15th, 18th, 20th, and 22nd pixels are doubled to produce 31 pixels.
This is repeated each cycle.



2.8.2 Sub-scanning Enlargement

Enlargement in the sub-scanning direction is performed by decreasing the original transportation speed.

When the enlargement signal is sent from the main control board, the frequency of the pulses from the pulse generator decreases. (The pulse length increases.) The drive pulse generator then decreases the frequency of the motor drive pulses to decrease the motor rotation speed.

2.9 IMAGE SIGNAL PROCESSING (BINARY CIRCUIT): C211/ C212/C213/C215/C216/C224

The binary circuit produces 1-bit data (white or black) from the output of the A/D converter (four-bit data) and sends it to the thermal head board.

2.9.1 Function

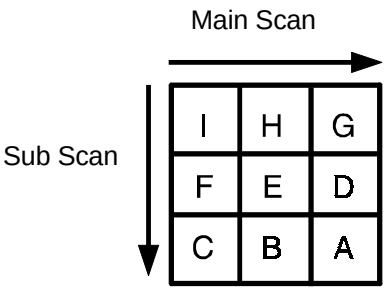
1) Line Mode:
MTF (Modulation Transfer Function) Correction Processing

2) Photo Mode:
Dither Processing (Graduation Processing) - 16 graduations
Edge Emphasis Processing (Selection of either MTF or Dither processing)

2.9.2 Outline

1) MTF Correction Processing

This is used to emphasize image signal data compared with surrounding pixels. Emphasis data which varies according to the surrounding pixels is compared to a fixed threshold level to determine if the pixel is white or black.



When the surrounding pixels are whiter than the pixel being processed E, the pixel data E is converted to appear darker than the real pixel data. This converted data is termed the emphasis data.
Conversely, when the surrounding pixels are darker than the pixel being processed E, the pixel data E is converted to appear whiter than the real pixel data.

$E_2 = 2E – 1/2(D + F)$ ------ Main Scan Emphasis Data
$E_1 = 2E – 1/2(B + H)$ ------ Sub Scan Emphasis Data

The emphasis data is compared to a threshold level to determine if the pixel is black or white.

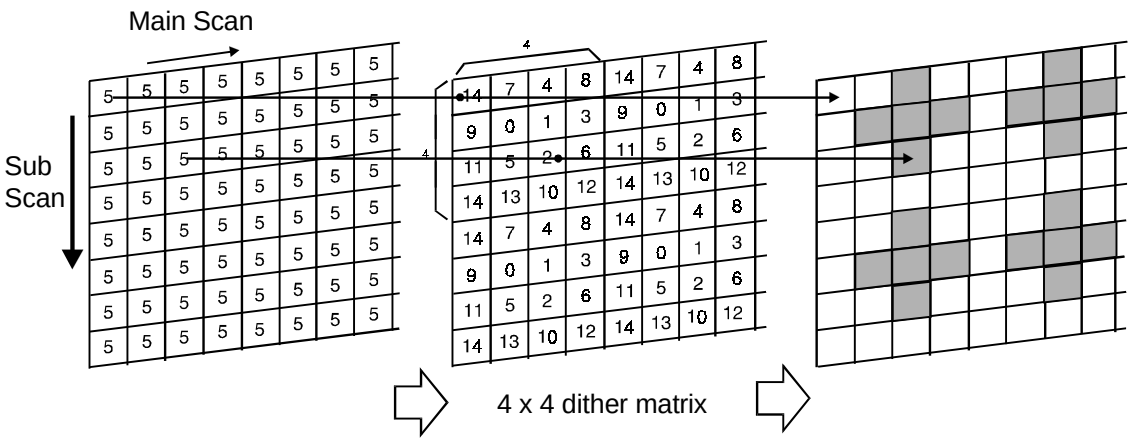
Emphasis Data E_2 or $E_1 \geq 7.5$ ----- Black
Emphasis Data E_2 or $E_1 < 7.5$ ----- White

2) Dither Processing

This is part of the artificial graduation system. As each pixel can only be expressed by either black or white at print time, the dither process is used to transform a graduated original into 4 x 4 arrays containing only black and white pixels. Each pixel of the original corresponds to a location in the 4 x 4 dither matrix. During dither processing, the value of each four-bit data signal from the A/D converter is compared to the corresponding fixed threshold level (V_{TH}) in the dither matrix and is converted to either black or white. This introduces graduations by changing the ratio of black pixels to white pixels. The 4 x 4 dither matrix is stored in the image processing ROM.

NOTE: The C212/C213 model uses a 6 x 6 dither matrix that improves the image quality in Photo mode.
(The C211 model uses a 4 x 4 dither matrix.)

$E > V_{TH}$ ..... Black
$E \leq V_{TH}$ ..... White



Pixels 4-bit data to be read
Example: All pixels are at 5.

Threshold level of the dither matrix (Number shows each VTH).

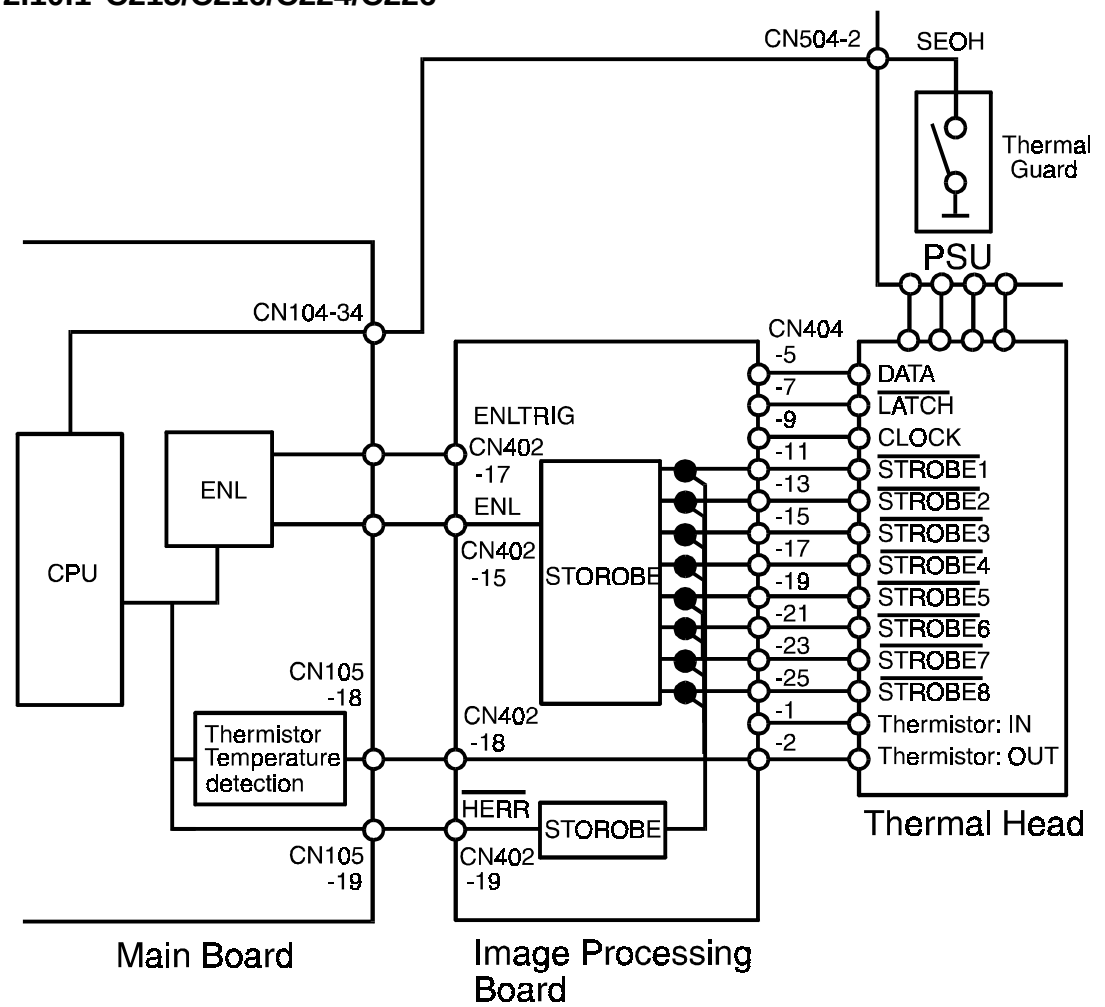
Image reappearance
(Shaded pixels are black.)

3) Selection of Dither Processing or MTF Correction During Photo Mode (Edge Emphasis)

If characters are processed using the dither method, they will be disjointed and difficult to read due to the distorting nature of the dither process. Therefore, when the density difference between a pixel and the surrounding pixels is greater than the specified level, the data is processed using MTF instead of the dither method.

2.10 THERMAL HEAD PULSE GENERATOR

2.10.1 C215/C216/C224/C226



(1) Specification

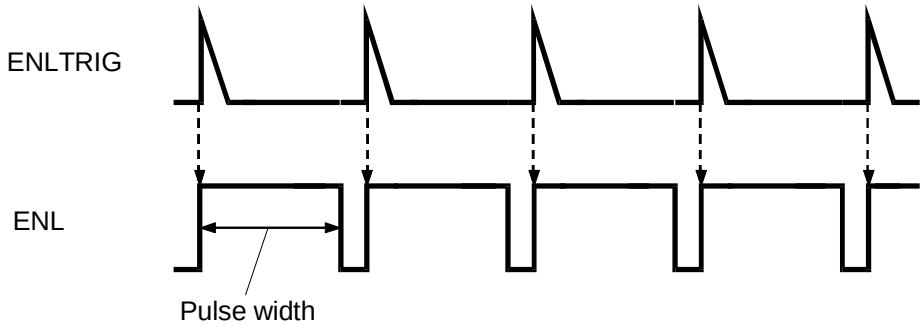
The C215/C216/C224/C226 model uses a 300 DPI thermal head.

Thermal head

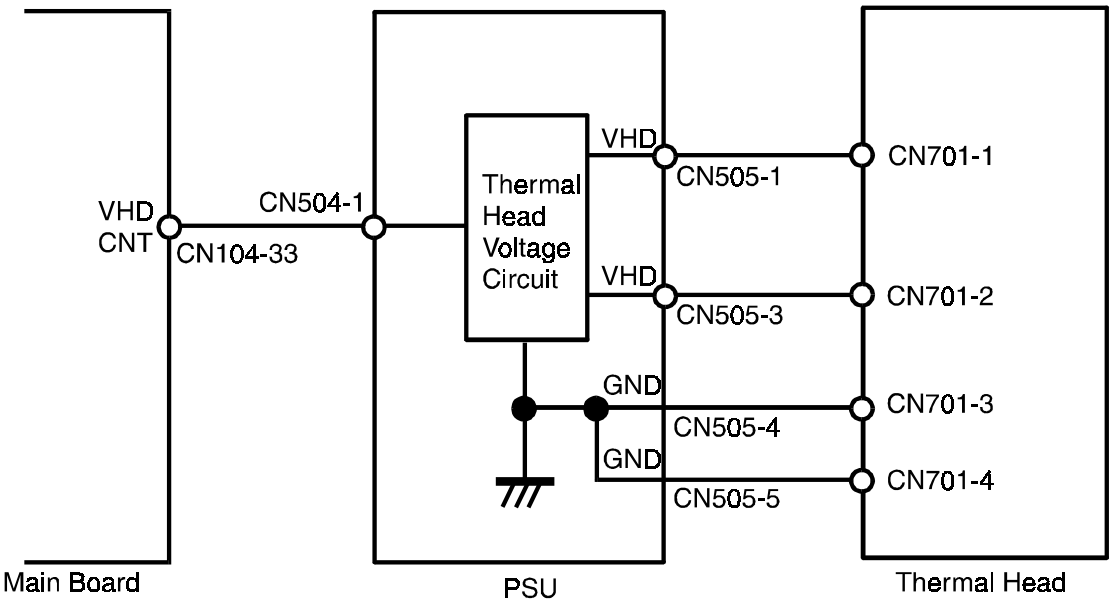
- Memory lergth 256 mm
- Number of thermal head elements3072 dots
- Density of thermal head elements300 DPI
- Applied voltage 19 ~ 24 V

(2) Thermal Head Control

The thermal head drive board has been removed. The function of this board has been moved to the image processing board and the main board.



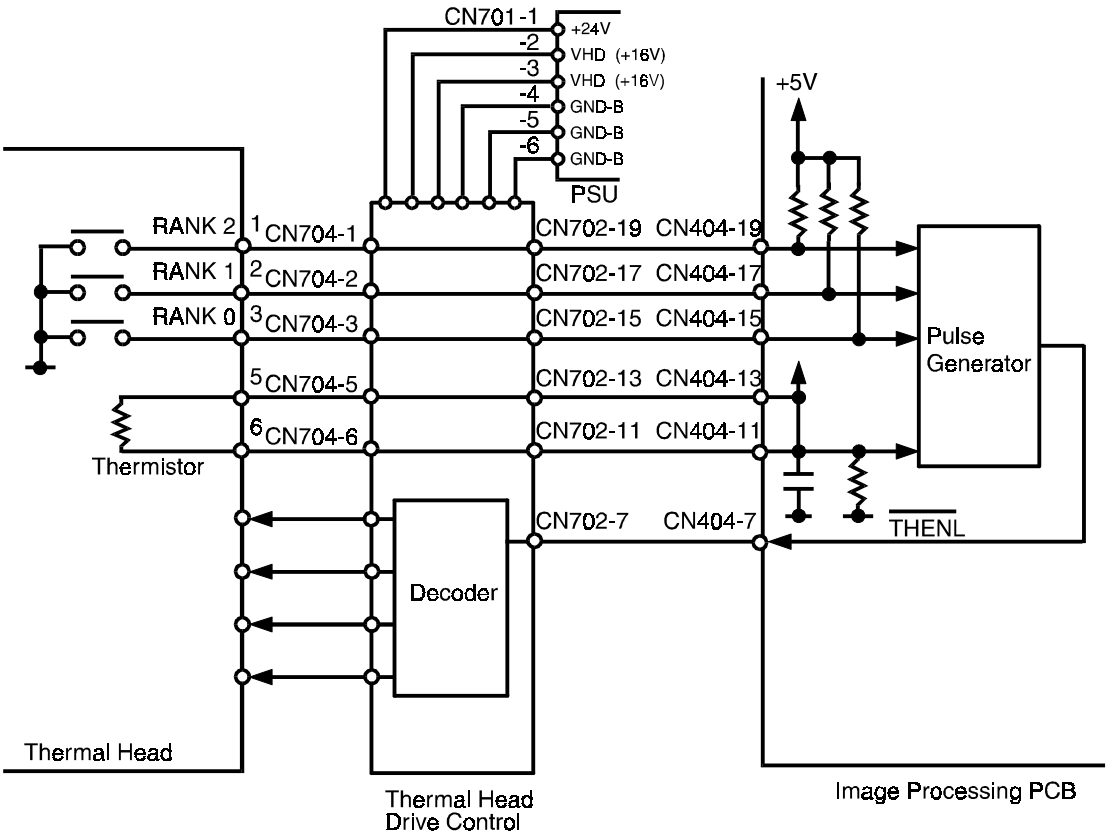
The thermal head energy is controled by changing pulse width.
The pulse is controlled by the ENL signal from the main board corresponding to ENLTRIG from the image processing board.

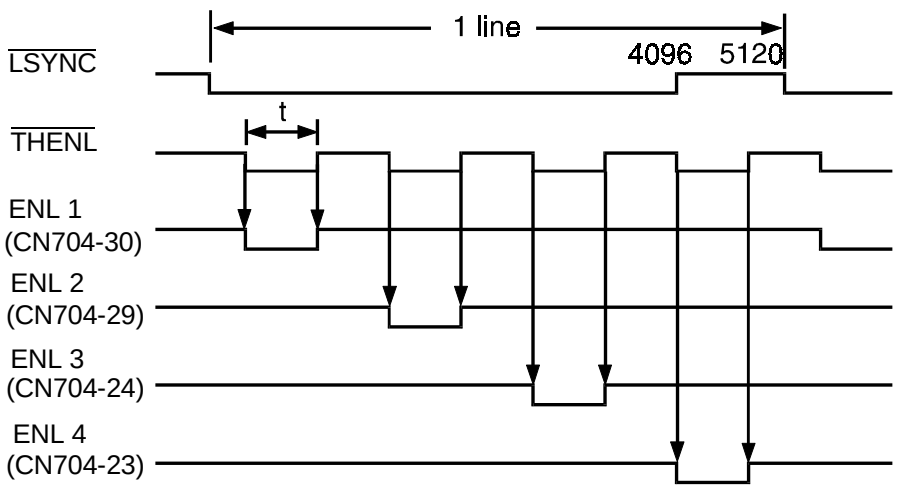


Thermal head voltage (VHD: 19 V ~ 24 V) is applied from PSU only during the master making process. This is controlled by the VHDCNT signal (CN104-33) from the main board.

VHDCNT (CN104-33)	VHD (CN505-1) (CN505-3)
0 V	19 ~ 24 V
5 V	0 V

2.10.2 C211/C212/C213





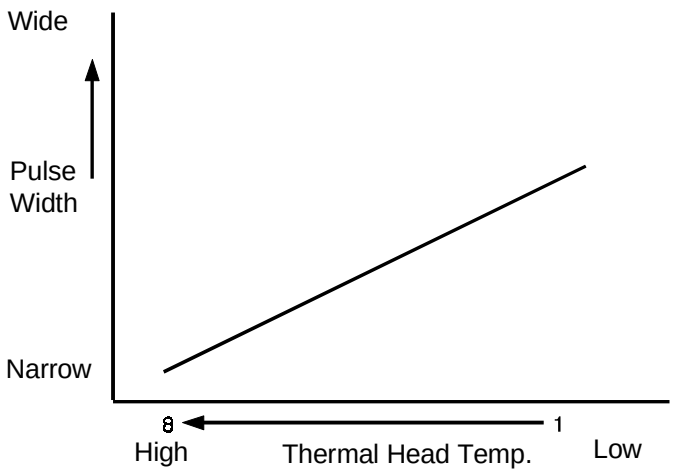
Voltage to the thermal head is applied in 16 V pulses. The energy applied to the thermal head is changed by changing the pulse width according to the thermal head temperature and its resistance.

1) Thermal Head Resistance
The resistance of the thermal head varies from one head to the another. Therefore, after installing a new thermal head, always recalibrate the power supply unit according to the VHD ratings on the thermal head cover.

2) Head Temperature
The thermal head contains a thermistor, which it detects the thermal head temperature.
The detected temperature is sent to the pulse generator by a divided rank signal.

Rank	**1**	**2**	**3**	**4**	**5**	**6**	**7**
Head Temp.	~ 8.5°C	~ 12°C	~15.5°C	~19°C	~ 22.5°C	~ 26°C	~ 29.5°C
	8	**9**	**10**	**11**	**12**	**13**	**14**
	~ 33°C	~ 36.5°C	~ 40°C	~ 43.5°C	~ 47°C	~ 50.5°C	~ 54°C

3) The pulse generator controls the pulse width based on the above thermal head resistance information and the head temperature information.



2.11 THERMAL HEAD DRIVE

2.11.1 Function/Specification

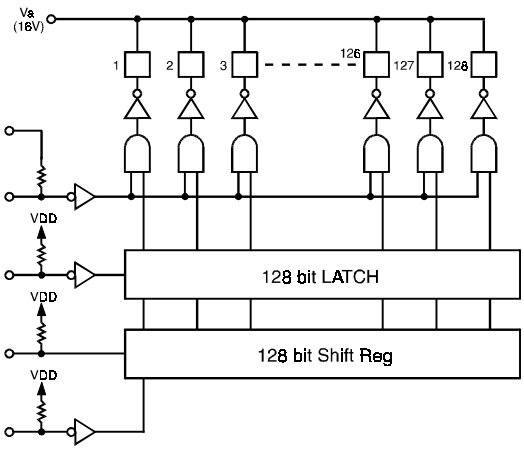
The C211/ A4 or C211 LG model uses the A4 size (216 mm width) thermal head and the C211 B4, C212, or C213 model uses the B4 size (256 mm width) thermal head.

Thermal head	• Memory length	256 mm (B4) 216 mm (A4/LG)
	• Number of thermal heating elements	4,096 dots (B4) 3,456 dots (A4/LG)
	• Density of thermal heating elements	16 dots/mm
	• Applied Voltage	16 V (14 V ~ 18 V)

2.11.2 Thermal Head Outline

A thin-film type thermal element is used in the thermal head. The drive circuit has a 1-line buffer for serial input. Each thermal element has direct drive due to switching elements.

S1 (S11—S18): White/Black pixel data
CK (CK1—CK4): To latch the shift register data
ENL: Record control
Va: Applied voltage (16V)
VDD: Power source (5V)



2.11.3 Power Lines

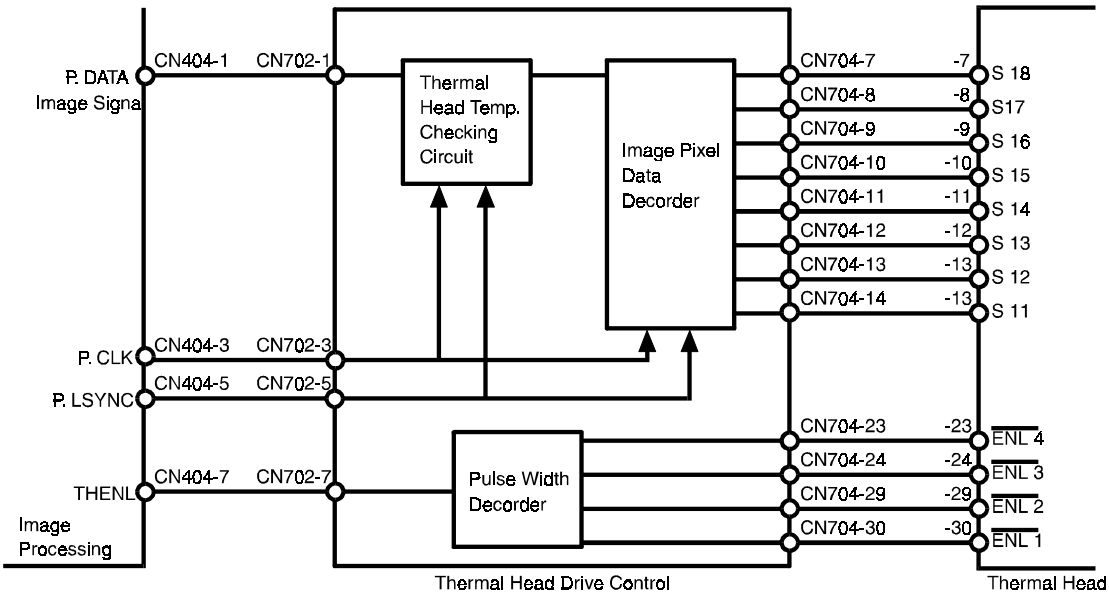
VCC/VHD/GND .... Applied voltage

VHD: As the resistance of the thermal elements varies depending on the thermal head, it is necessary to adjust the applied voltage according to the average resistance of the thermal head.
The thermal rating of each head is documented on the thermal head cover. Therefore, after installing a new thermal head, always recalibrate the power supply unit according to the VHD ratings on the thermal head cover. Adjust VHD using VR201 on the power supply unit.

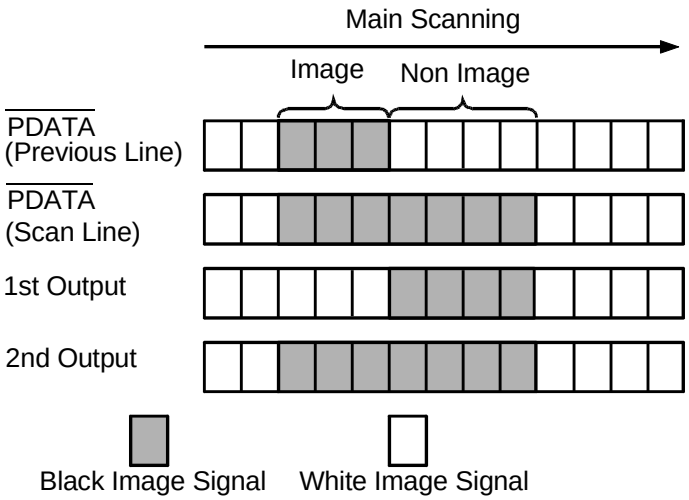
The drive circuit (LSIC) consists of the following: 32 x 128-bit shift registers, 32 x 128-bit latches, logic gates, drive transistors, and 4096 heating elements. The thermal head is made up of 32 drive circuits arranged in two rows of 16 elements.

NOTE: The thermal element used on the C211 A4 or LG model is narrower than the B4 thermal head. Therefore, the shift registers, latches, logic gates, and drive transistors located on both ends have been deleted from the thermal head.

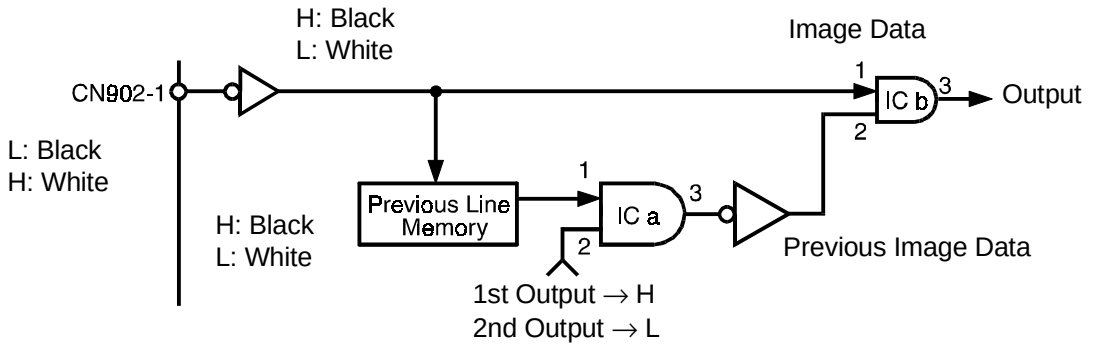
2.11.4 Movement



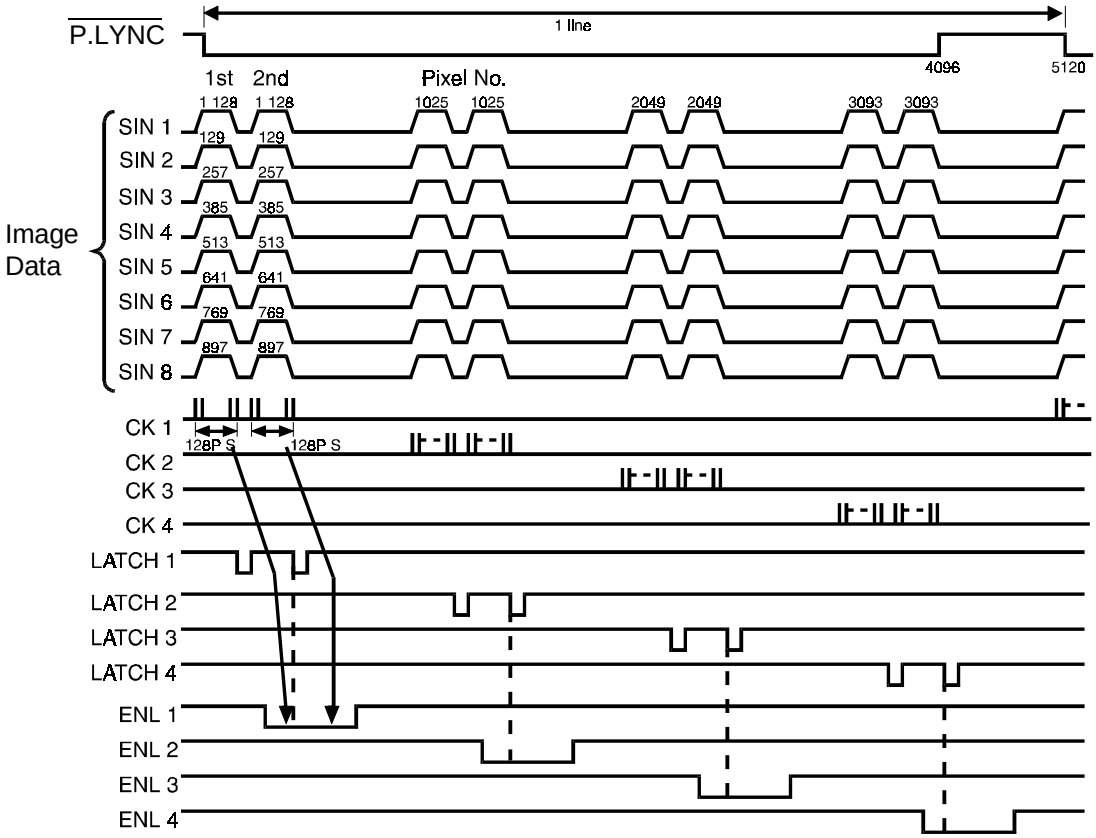
The temperature of the thermal head increases excessively when there is consecutive black image data in the sub scanning direction. Conversely, the temperature of the thermal head does not reach the proper point when there is consecutive white image data before a solid fill.



- White image in previous scanning.
- The same black image signal is output twice.
  The first is for preheating.
- Black image in previous scanning.
- A white image signal is output first to reduce the thermal head temperature.



The image data (P-DATA) of 1 scanning sent to the thermal head drive control board is stored in the line memory. When the image data of the next scanning is stored in the line memory, the previous stored line memory data is output and processed with the image data of the next scanning at ICb.



1. When the clock signals (CK1 – 4) enter the thermal head drive control board, the 1,024 pixels of image data are input into the shift register. When the latch signal enters to the control board, the image data is sent from the shift register to the latch in parallel.
2. Above operation is performed again.
3. The image processing operation is performed when the ENL signal is low. The image data of the (1,024 pixels each) main scan line is divided into 4 blocks.
4. The image signal for the preheat is sent to the thermal control twice. The first image signal responds to the first half of ENL low signal , and the second image signal responds to the later half of ENL low signal.

2.11.5 Temperature Rise Detection of Thermal Head/Power Supply:

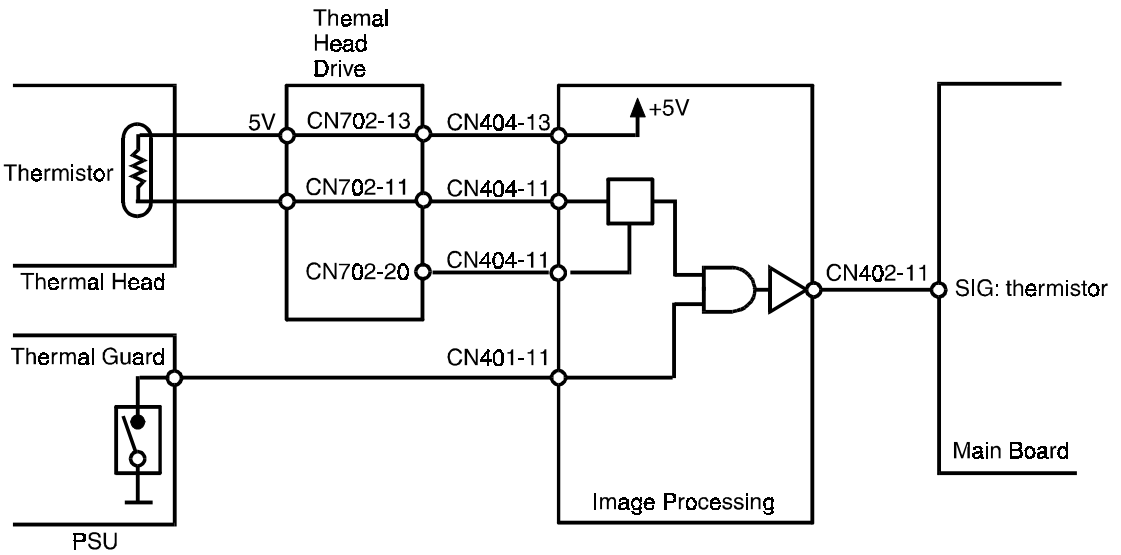
A thermistor located on the thermal head and a thermal guard located on the power supply board are used for thermal protection. This is to prevent the temperature of the thermal head and the power supply board from overheating when continuously processing a solid image.

1). Thermal head detecting temp. 54°C

2). Thermal head return temp. 50°C

3). Power supply detecting temp. 85°C

When the thermistor is open, a detection signal is applied.



1. The thermal head temperature detection signal is applied if CN404-11 becomes greater than 3.13 volts (thermal head detecting temp.-- 54°C).

   NOTE: Thermal head temperature detection signal is applied if the thermistor is open circuit.

2. The thermal head temperature return signal is applied when CN404-11 becomes 2.98 volts (Thermal head return temp. -- 50°C).

3. The thermal guard detection signal is applied if CN401-11 is 0 volt (Power supply detecting temp. -- 85°C).

4. The thermal guard temperature return signal is applied when CN401-11 becomes 5 volts.

5. When the temperature rise signal is applied, CN402-11 goes HIGH.

During the master making process, if the pulse width is out of standard, CN702-20 goes low and an error signal is applied to CN402-11. The master making stops and E-08 lights. The machine then stops after a master is wrapped around the drum.

If the thermal head temperature is still out of standard after the master making process, an error signal is applied to CN402-11. The machine stops and E04 lights.

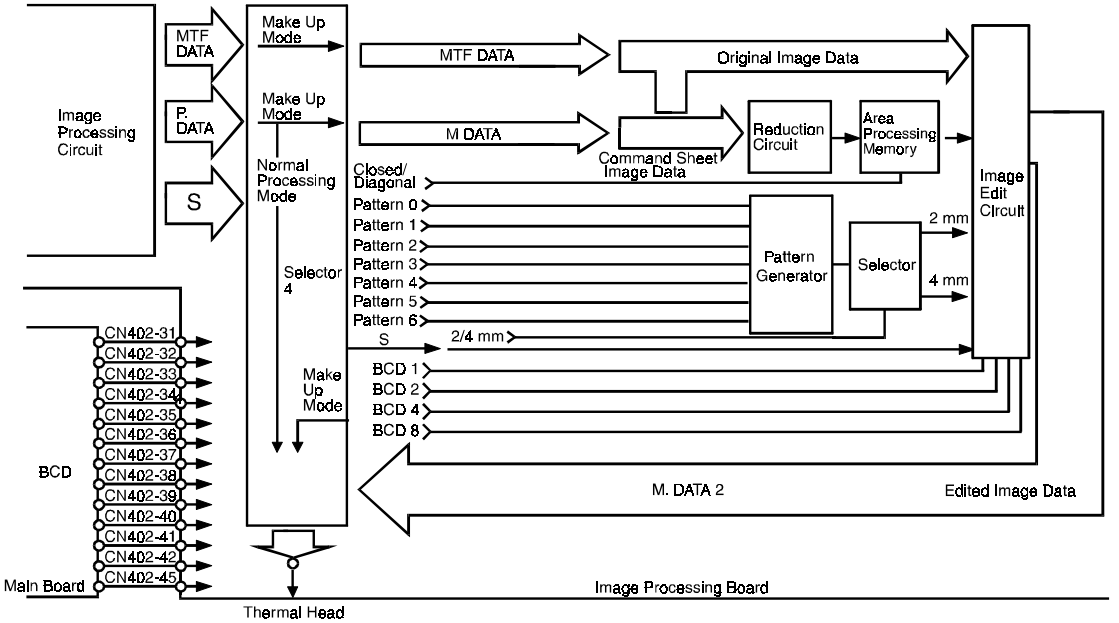
If the power supply unit temperature is out of standard, the machine stops and E-04 or E-08 lights.

NOTE: During all processes other than the master making process, E-04 will light when the PSU temperature reaches 85°.

During the master making process, E-08 will light when the PSU temperature reaches 85°.

2.12 MAKE-UP MODE: C213 ONLY

2.12.1 Overall Operation



The command sheet is read twice as fast as the original. The command data is converted in the A/D converter and is modulated in the image processing circuit. The modulated command data is reduced to 1/64 and stored in the area memory. The area memory stores the command sheet area data as area solid fill data.

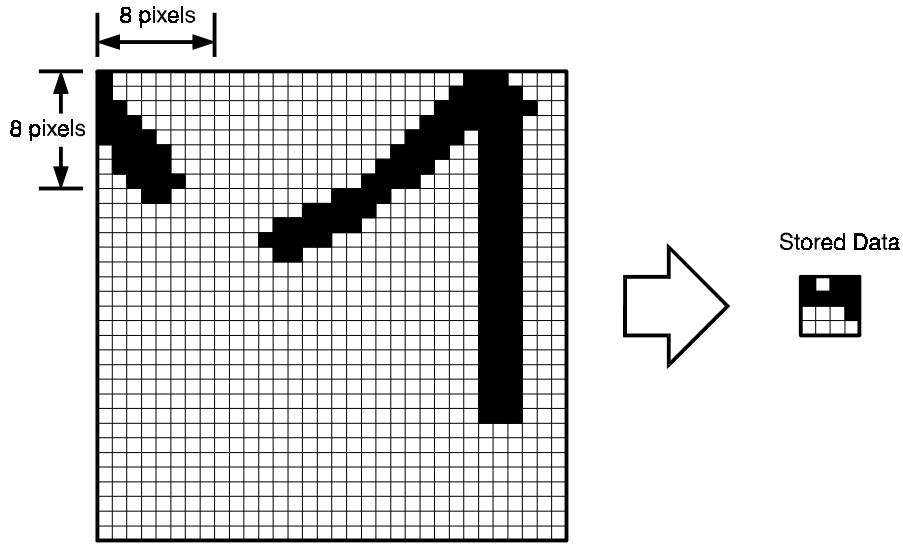
The image data read by CCD is also converted and is modulated. The modulated image data, the stored command area data, and the background pattern are edited in the editing circuit of the make up control board according to the editing command.

The edited image data is sent to the thermal head control board through the image processing board.

When the make-up mode is not selected, the modulated image data that was sent to the make-up control board is returned to the image processing board without any processing.

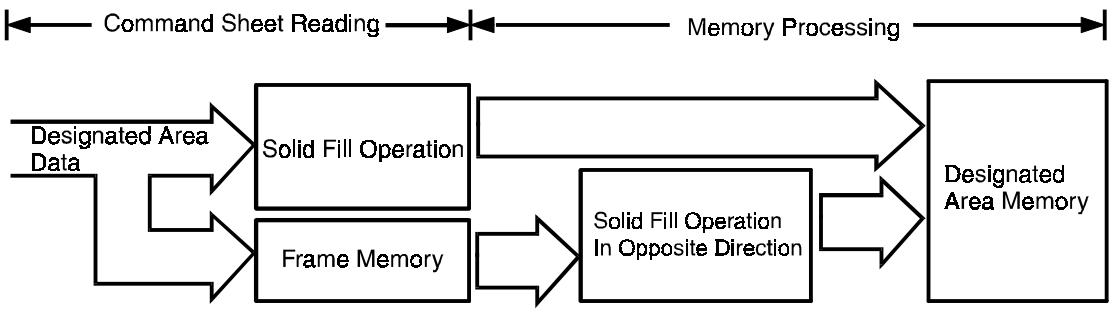
2.12.2 Command Sheet Data Reduction

The designated line data read from the command sheet is reduced to 1/64 and stored in the memory as shown in the illustration.



If any pixel in each of the 8 x 8 pixel squares is black, the square is stored as black data.

2.12.3 Designated Area Memory



The designated area by the command sheet is stored in the memory as a solid fill area data.

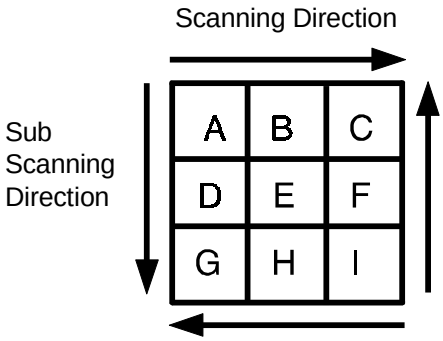
The designated area is read in two directions. One is from the leading edge to the trailing edge and the other is from the trailing edge to the leading edge.

1) Solid Fill Operation (Closed Area)

How to decide whether pixel E data is black or white.

1. When pixel E is black, E is black.
2. When the pixel C or F is black and also the pixel D or G is black, E is black.
3. In all other cases, E is white.

NOTE: The above operation also acts in the opposite direction.

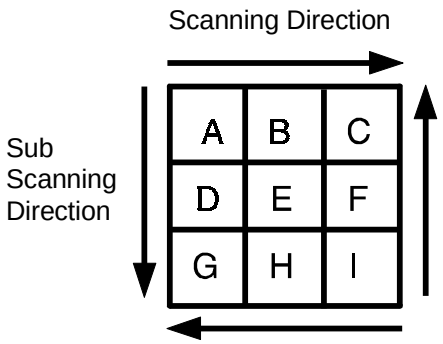


2) Solid Fill Operation (Diagonal Line)

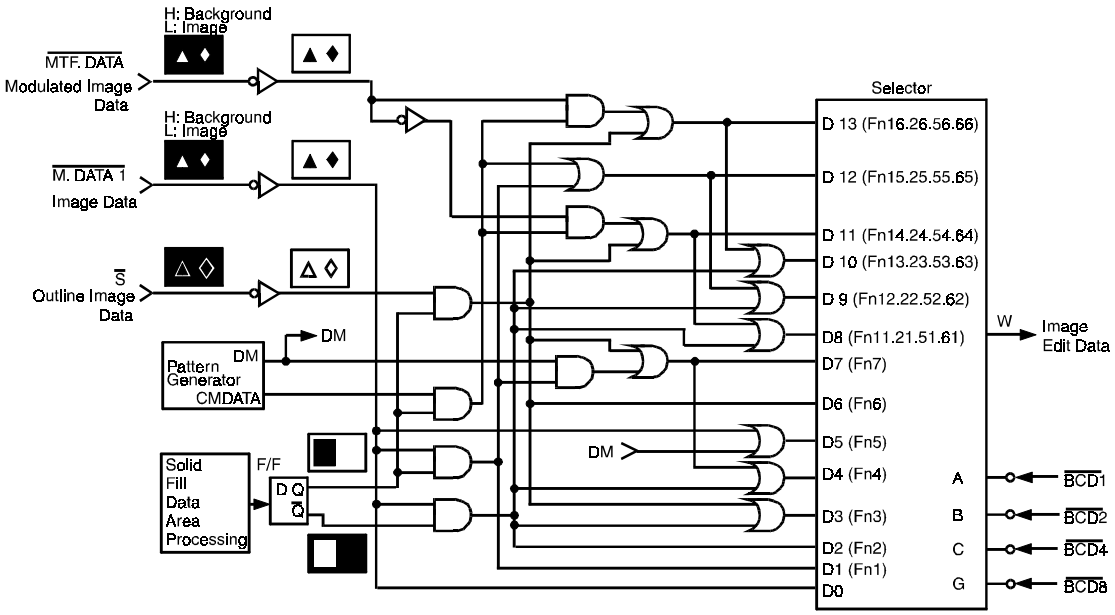
How to decide whether pixel E data is black or white.

1. When the pixels B and D are black, Pixel E is black.
2. When the pixel E is black, the pixel E is black.
3. In all other cases, the pixel E is white.

NOTE: The above operation also acts in the opposite direction.



2.12.4 Make-up Control Circuit



Selection Table

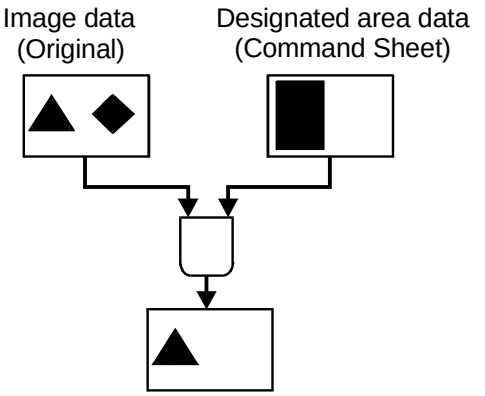
Make-up Selection Terminal / Make-up No / Input Signal	D0 OFF	D1 1	D2 2	D3 3	D4 4	D5 5	D6 6	D7 7	D8 11.21.51.61	D9 12.22.52.62	D10 13.23.53.63	D11 14.24.54.64	D12 15.25.55.65	D13 16.26.56.66
BCD 1	H	L	H	L	H	L	H	L	L	H	L	H	L	H
BCD 2	H	H	L	L	H	H	L	L	H	L	L	H	H	L
BCD 3	H	L	H	H	L	L	L	L	H	H	H	L	L	L
BCD 4	H	H	H	H	H	H	H	H	L	L	L	L	L	L

The make-up control circuit on the image processing board edits the image using the above logic circuit.
The modulated image data, the outline image data, the background pattern data and the designated area data are processed simultaneously in the image processing board.

When the operator inputs a make-up number, the main board sends a 4-bit signal to the make-up control circuit.
The circuit selects the corresponding make-up selection terminal (D0 ~ D13). This determines the path that image edit data takes before being output at the "W" terminal.

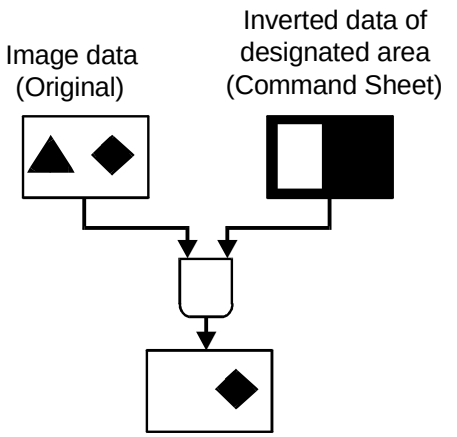
Fn1: Save area

The image data is ANDed with the designated area data in command sheet and the edited image data is output.



Fn2: Delete area

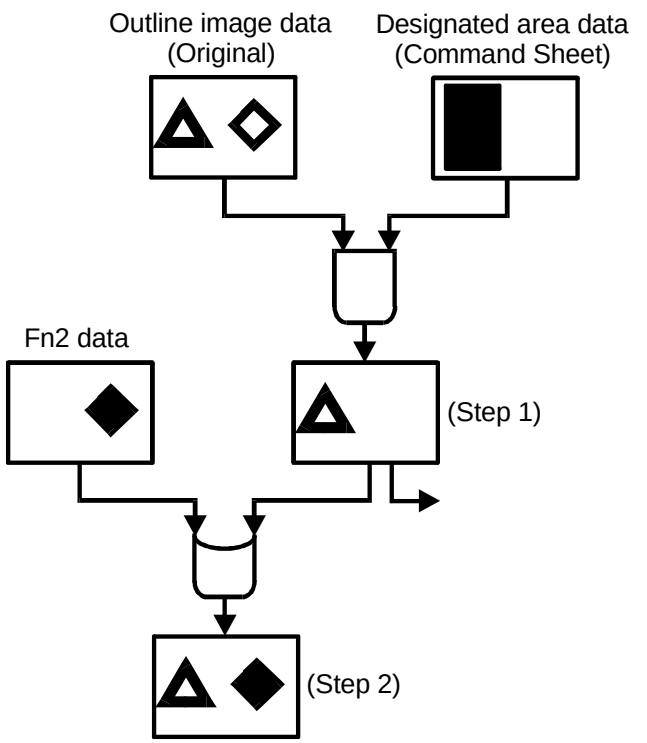
The image data is ANDed with the inverted data of designated area and the edited image data is output.



Fn3: Outline Image

Step 1:
The outline image data is ANDed with the designated area data and the edited image data is output.

Step 2:
The Fn2 data is ORed with the step 1 data and the edited image data is output.

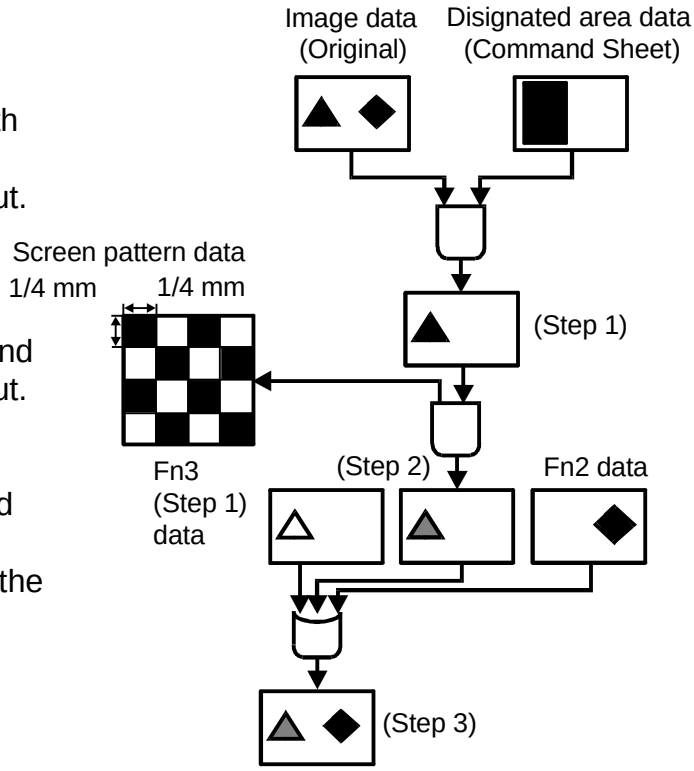


Fn4: Screen Image

Step 1:
This image data is ANDed with the designated area data and the edited image data is output.

Step 2:
The screen pattern data is ANDed with the step 1 data and the edited image data is output.

Step 3:
The Fn3 (step 1) data is ORed with the step 1 data and also ORed with the Fn2 data, and the edited image data is output.



Fn5: Photo Image

The designated area is processed by the photo mode processing.
The non designated area is processed by the line mode processing.
Above processing is performed independent of the image mode selection on the operation panel.

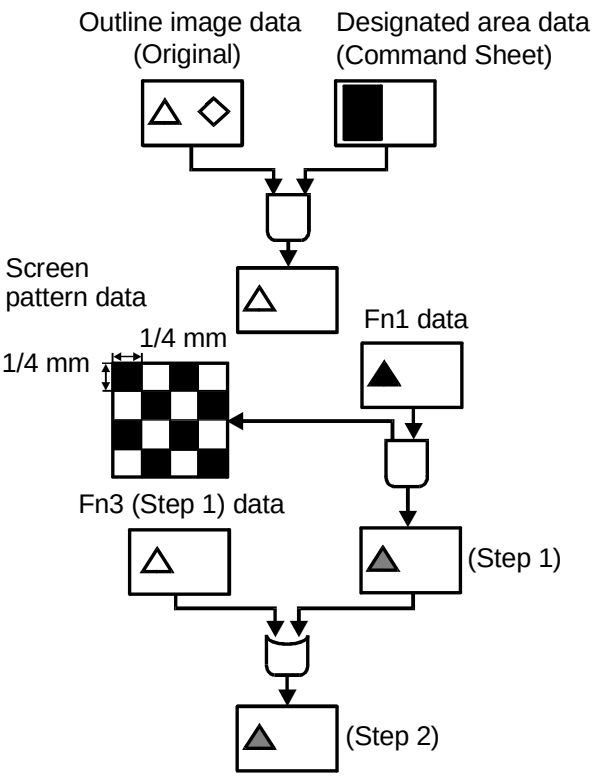
Fn6: Save area and Outline image

The outline image data is ANDed with the designated areadata and the edited image data is output.

Fn7: Save area screen image

Step 1:
The screen pattern data is ANDed with the Fn1 data and the edited image data is output.

Step 2:
The Fn3 (step 1) data is ORed with the step 1 data and the edited image data is output.



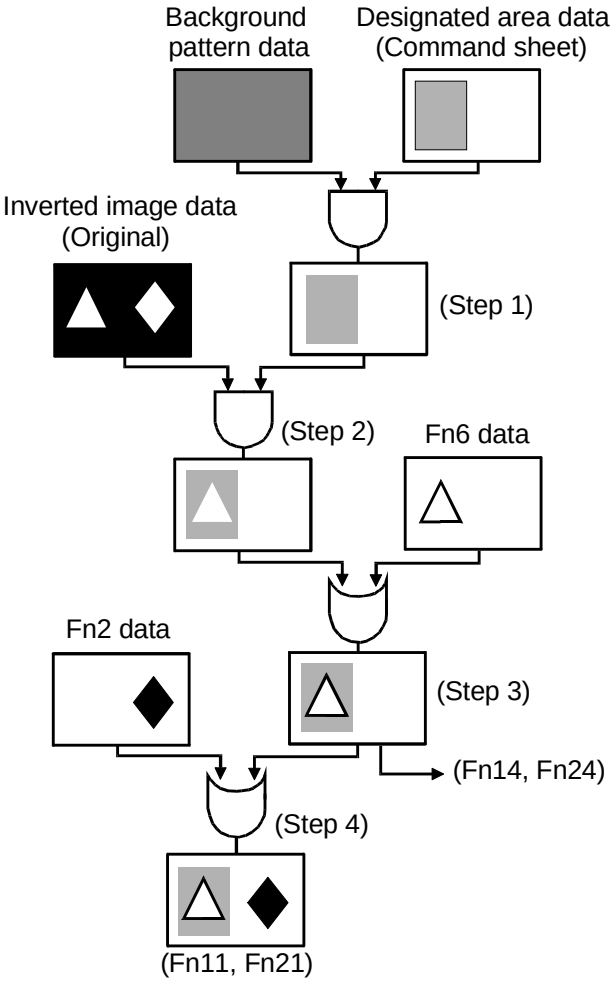
Fn11, Fn21:
Pattern Area/Outline Image
(Fn51, Fn62)
Fn14, Fn24:
Save Area/Pattern Area/
(Fn54, Fn64) Outline Image

Step 1:
The background pattern data is ANDed with the designated area data and the edited image data is output.

Step 2:
The inverted image data is ANDed with the step 1 data and the edited image data is output.

Step 3:
The step 2 data is ORed with the Fn6 data and the edited image data is output.

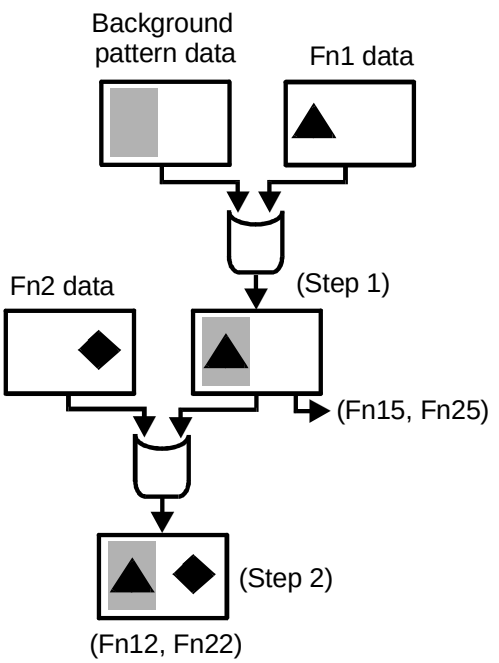
Step 4:
The Fn2 data is ORed with the step 3 data and the edited image data is output.



Fn 12, Fn22:
Pattern Are Normal
(Fn52, Fn62) Image
Fn 15, Fn25:
Save Area/Pattern Area/
(Fn55, Fn65) Normal Image

Step 1:
The background pattern data is ORed with the Fn1 data and the edited image data is output.

Step 2:
The Fn2 data is ORed with the step 1 data and the edited image data is output.

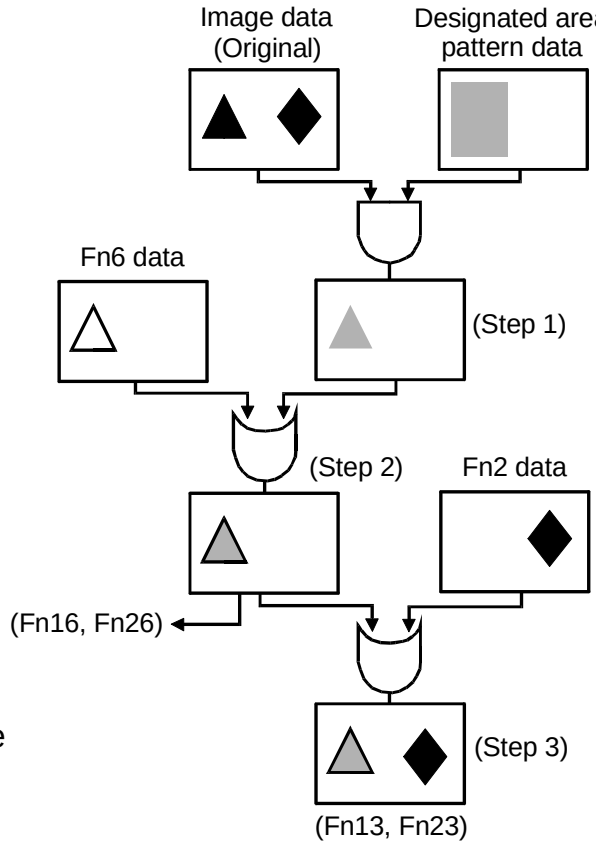


Fn13, Fn23:
Pattern Image (Fn53, Fn63)
Fn16, Fn26:
Save Area/Pattern Image
(Fn56, Fn66)

Step 1:
The image data is ANDed with the designated area pattern data and the edited image data is output.

Step 2:
The Fn6 data is ORed with the step 1 data and the edited image data is output.

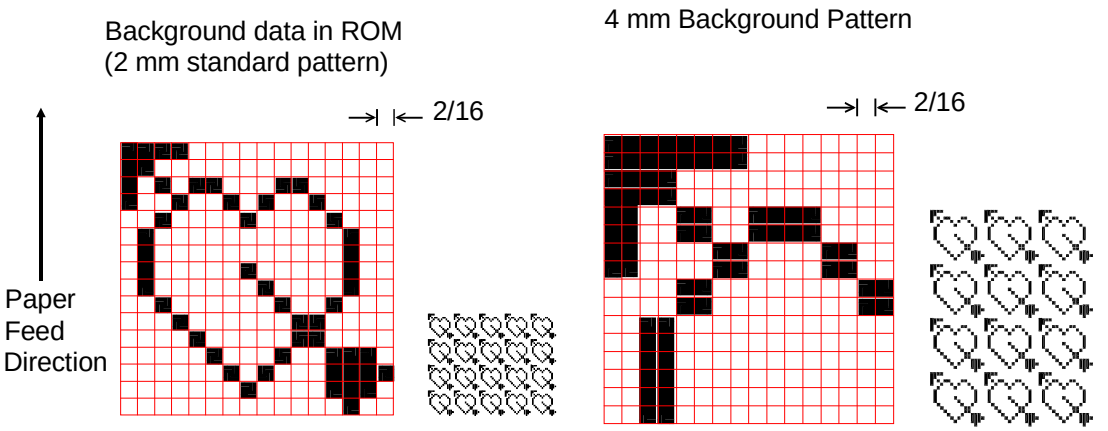
Step 3:
The step 2 data is ORed with the Fn2 data and the edited image data is output.



2.12.5 Background Pattern

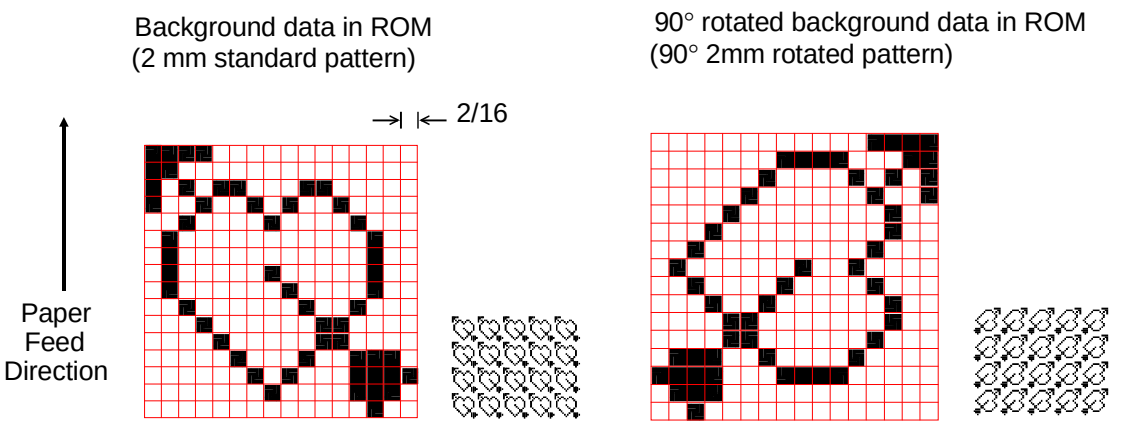
1) 4 mm Background Pattern

The 2mm background pattern data is stored in the ROM on the make-up board.
The 4 mm background pattern is made by simply doubling the 2 mm background data with the F/F circuit.



2) 90° Pattern Rotation

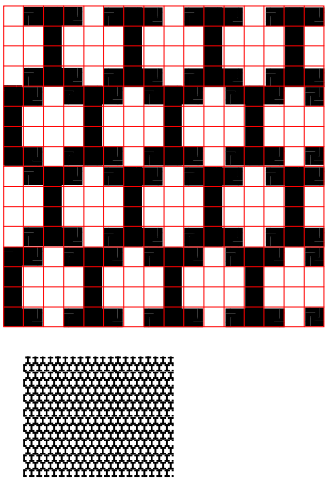
The 90° 2 mm background pattern data is also stored in the ROM on the make-up board.
The 90° 4 mm background pattern is made by doubling the 90° 2 mm background pattern data that has been rotated 90°.



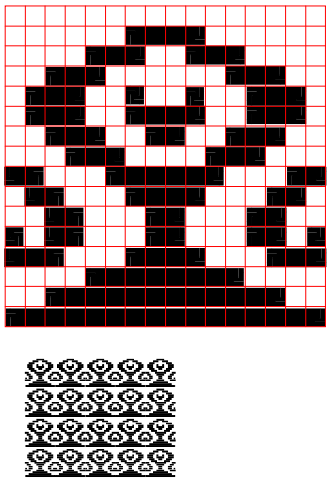
3) Background Patterns

The 40 background patterns shown below can be selected.

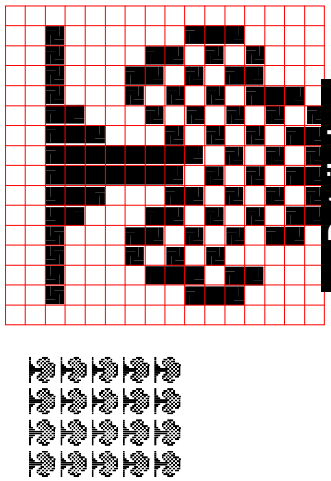
1



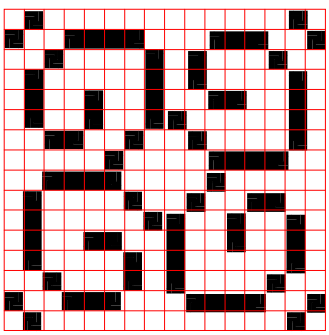
2



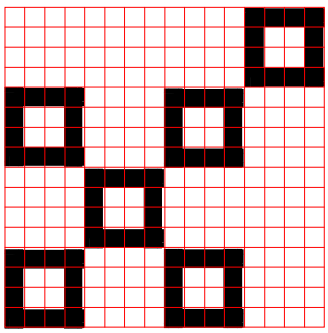
3



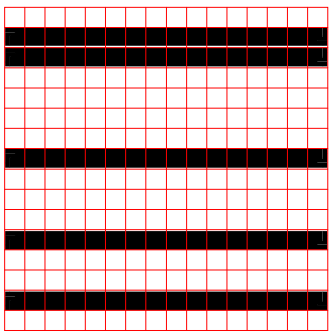
4

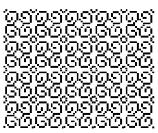


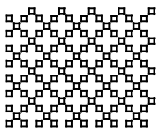
5

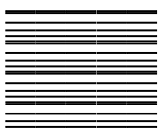


6

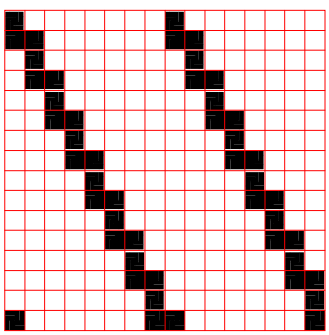




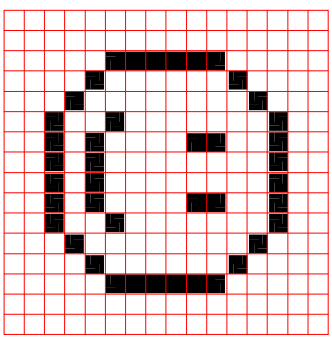




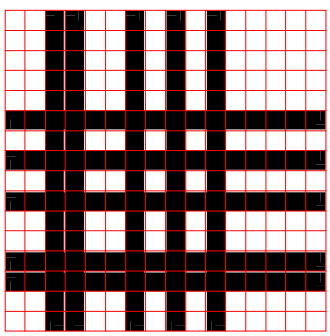
7

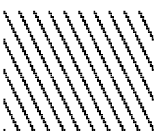


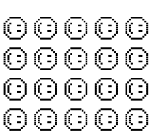
8

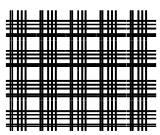


9

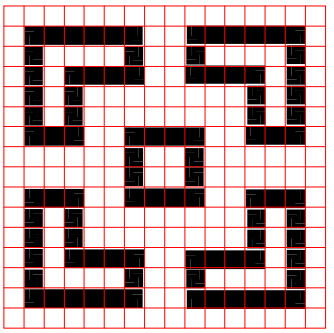


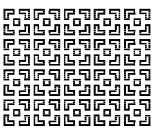




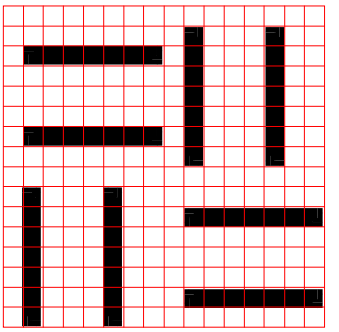


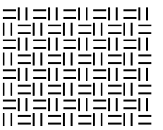
10



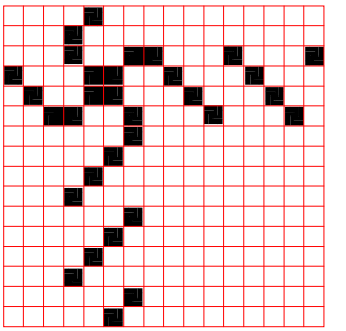


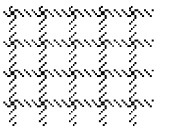
11



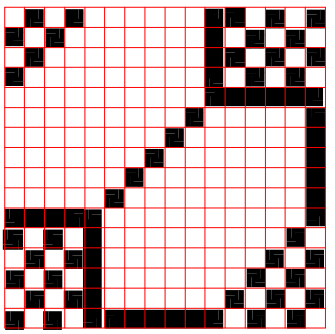


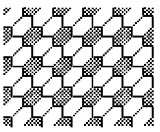
12



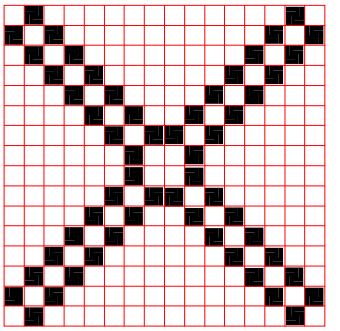


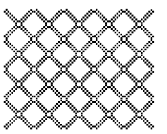
13



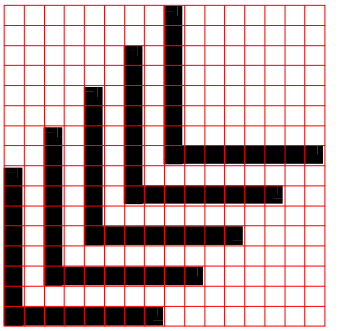


14

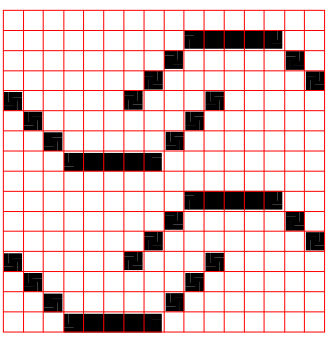


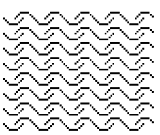


15

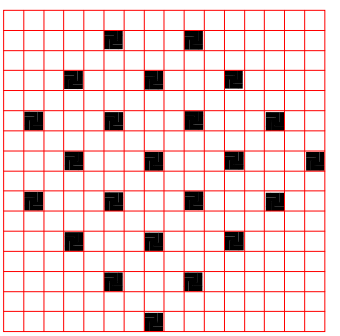


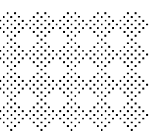
16



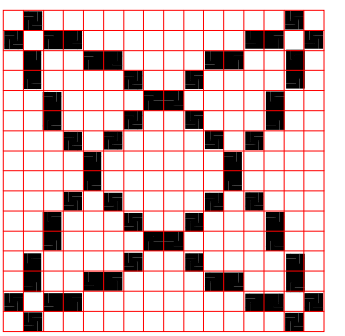


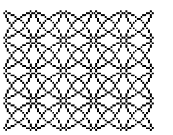
17



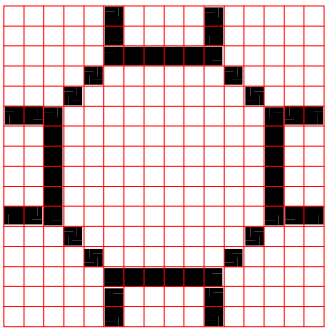


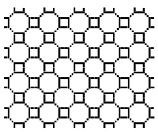
18



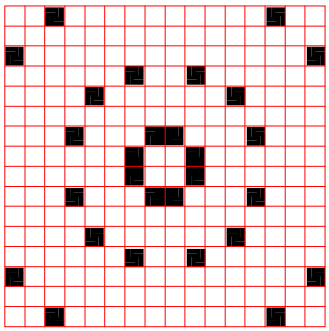


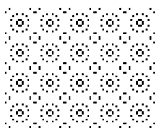
19



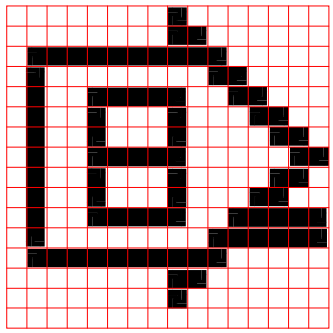


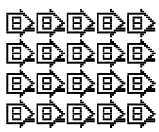
20



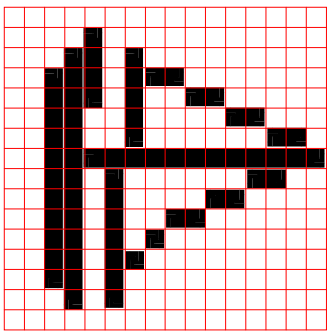


21

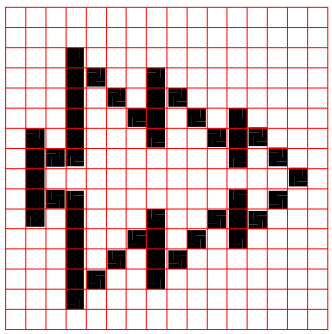


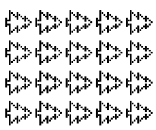


22

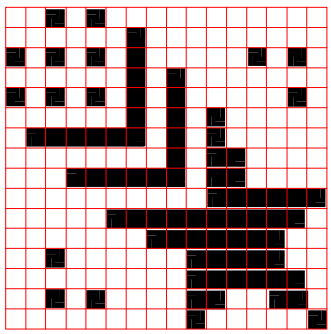


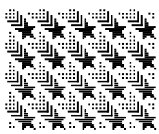
23



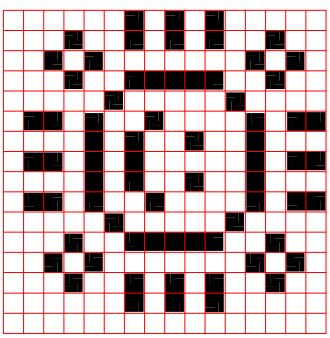


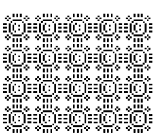
24



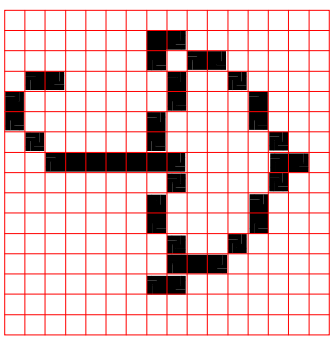


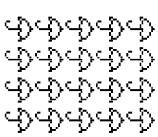
25



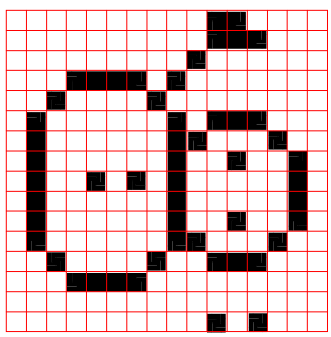


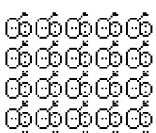
26



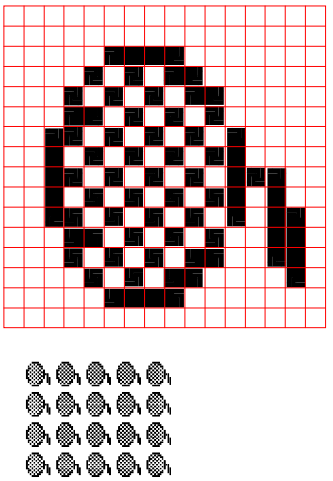


27

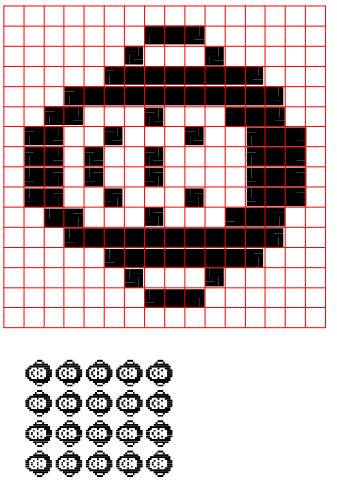




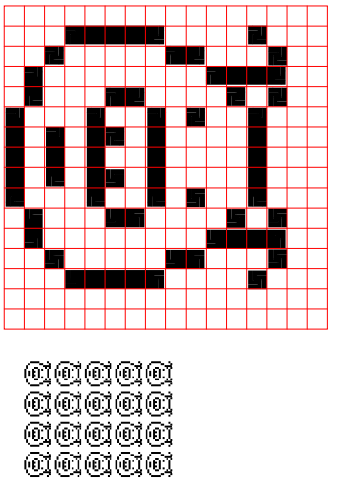
28



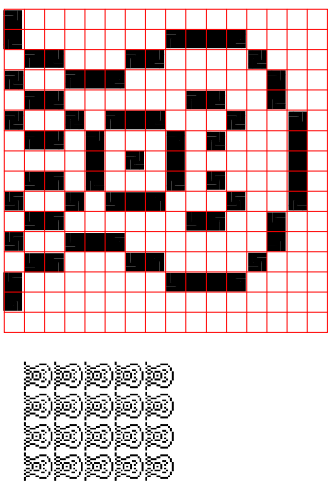
29



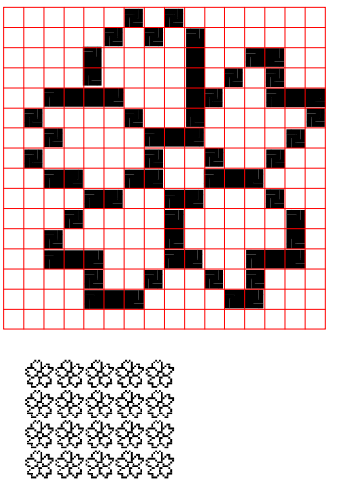
30



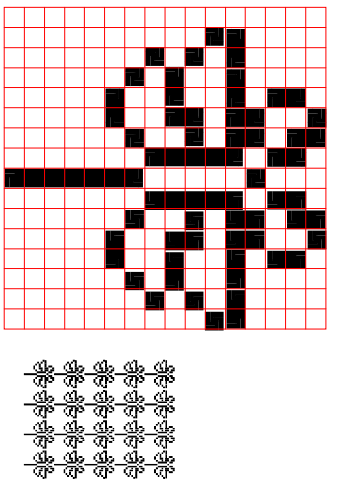
31



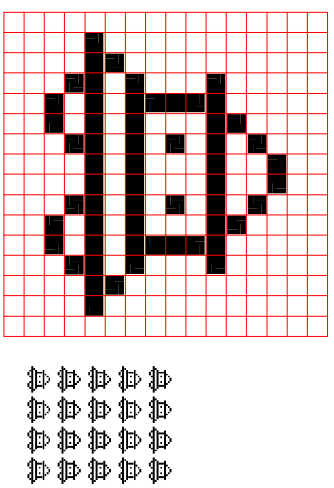
32



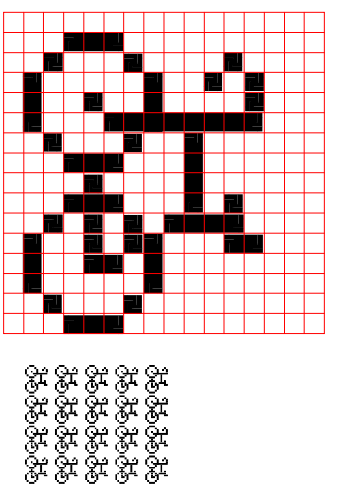
33



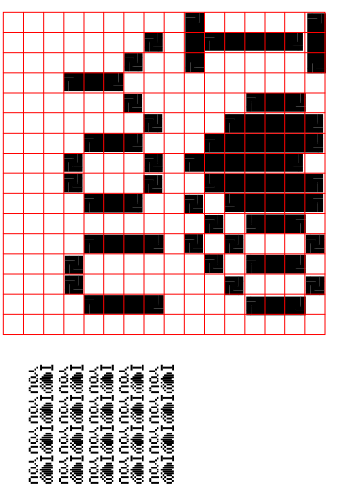
34



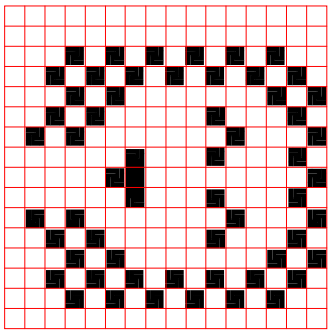
35

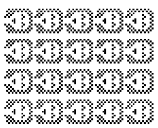


36

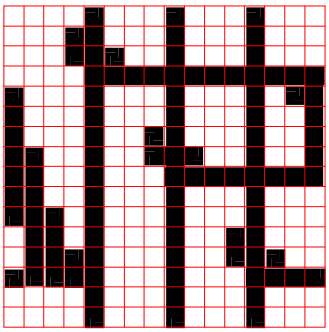


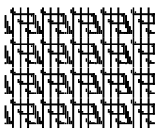
37



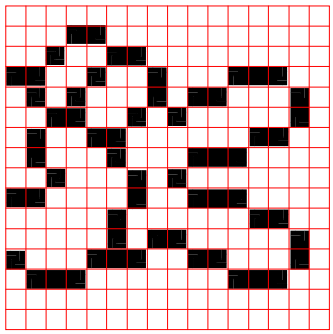


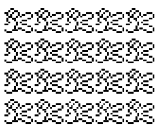
38



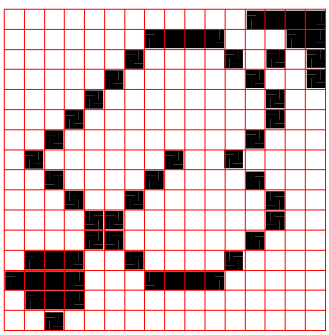


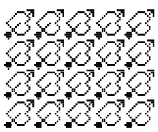
39





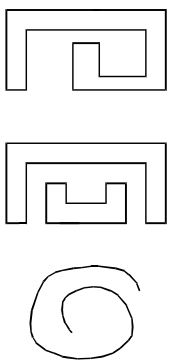
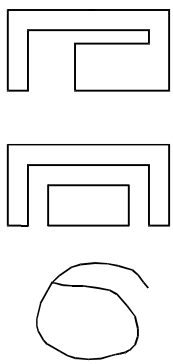
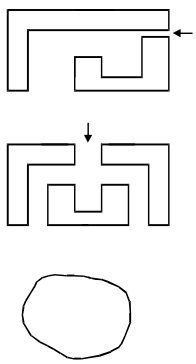
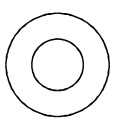
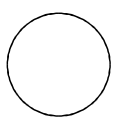
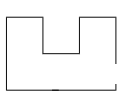
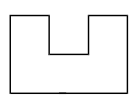
40

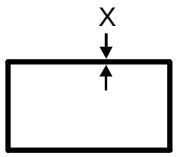


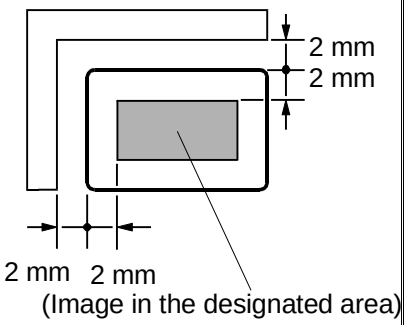


2.12.6 Recognition of Designated Area

As the required image may differ depending on how the designated area is entered, make the command sheet by referring to the following.

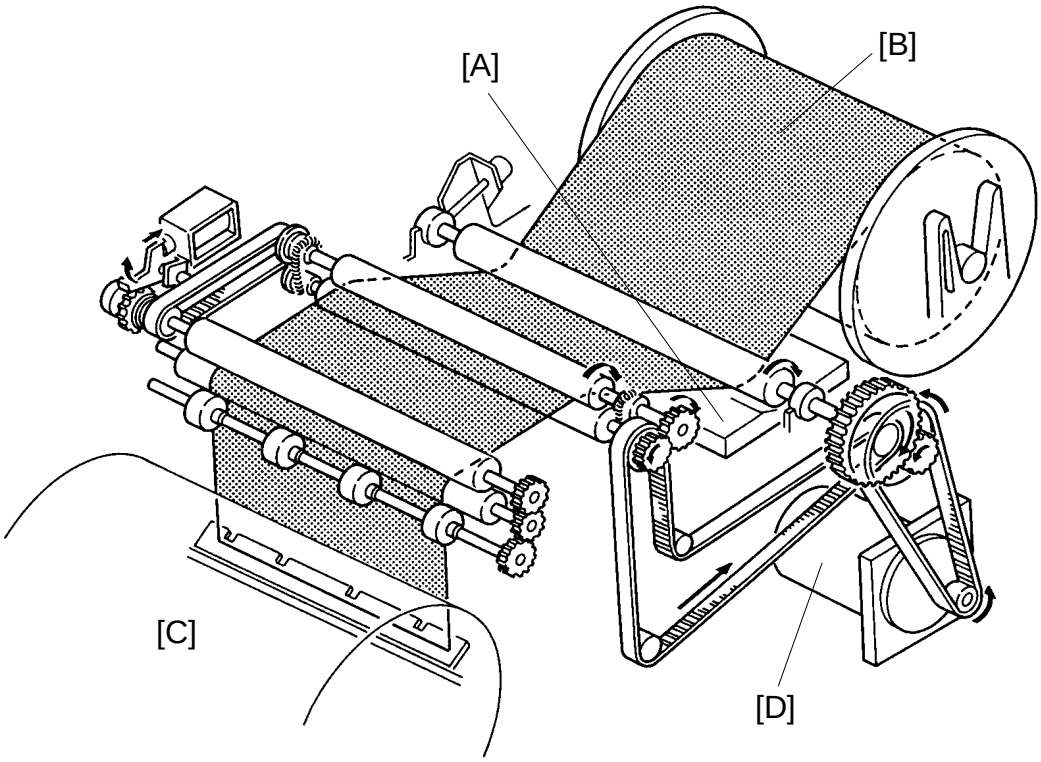
No.	Item	Sample of Problem		Preferred designated area
		Designated area	**Area recognized**	
1	Form of the designated area	Serial pattern 	The designated area is recognized as follows: 	Separation the area to be designated as follows:  Make a space more than 2 mm. Make a space more than 2 mm. Designate area by a closed line.
		Double circle pattern. 	Only the outer circle will be recognized as follows: 	Make a gap in the pattern. 
2	Non-closed line	The designated area is not a closed loop. 	The designated area is not recognized.	Designate the area by a closed loop. 

No.	Item	Sample of Problem		Preferred designated area
		Designated area	**Area recognized**	
3	Thickness of the designating line.	The thickness of the line as follows: X = Full Size: less than 0.5 mm Reduction: less than 0.7 mm 	As the line of the designated area is too thin, no designated area is recognized.	Mark with a line more than 1 mm in width.
4	Density of the designated line.	When using a pencil with low reflectivity or a color pen.	As the designating line is too light, no designated area is recognized.	Mark using a black pen.
5	Type of command sheet.	1) Rough paper is used as a command sheet. 2) If the command sheet has a different friction coefficient from the original.	Any fibrous black spots will be read as a designated area. Due to different registration of the original and the command sheet, the designated areas vary.	Use white paper (65 g/m^2). Use white paper (65 g/m^2).

No.	Item	Sample of Problem		Preferred designated area
		Designated area	**Area recognized**	
6	Gap between the designated area and neighboring image. (Gap between two designated areas.)	When the gap between the designated area and neighboring image is too small.	Depending on the original feed condition (registration and skewing) or handwriting ability the designated area, the neighboring image may or may not be recognized as a designated area.	 1) There should be more than 2 mm clearance between designated areas. 2) Mark the line away from the image in the designated area move than 2 mm to recognized the image completely. 3) For consideration of the handwriting ability, approximately 5 mm is needed as a gap.

3. MASTER FEED SECTION

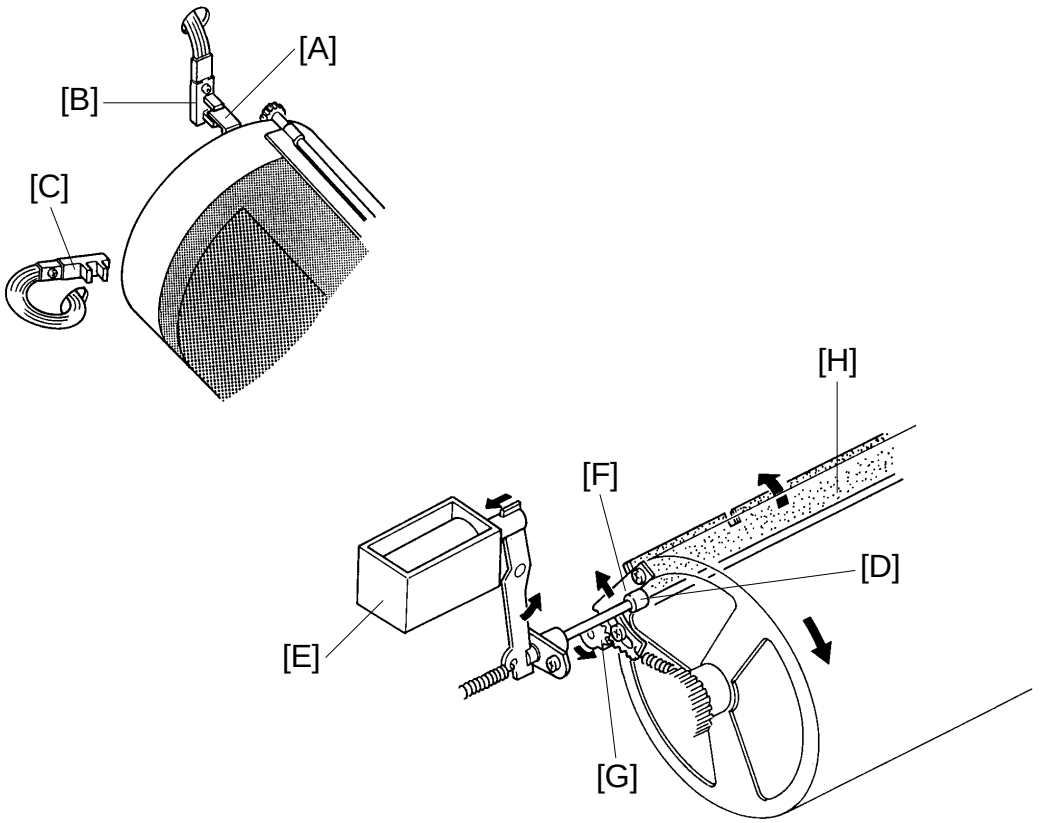
3.1 OVERALL



.

The thermal head [A] burns an image on the master [B] as it is being fed to the drum [C]. After this, the master is clamped and wrapped around the drum.

3.2 MASTER CLAMPER OPENING MECHANISM

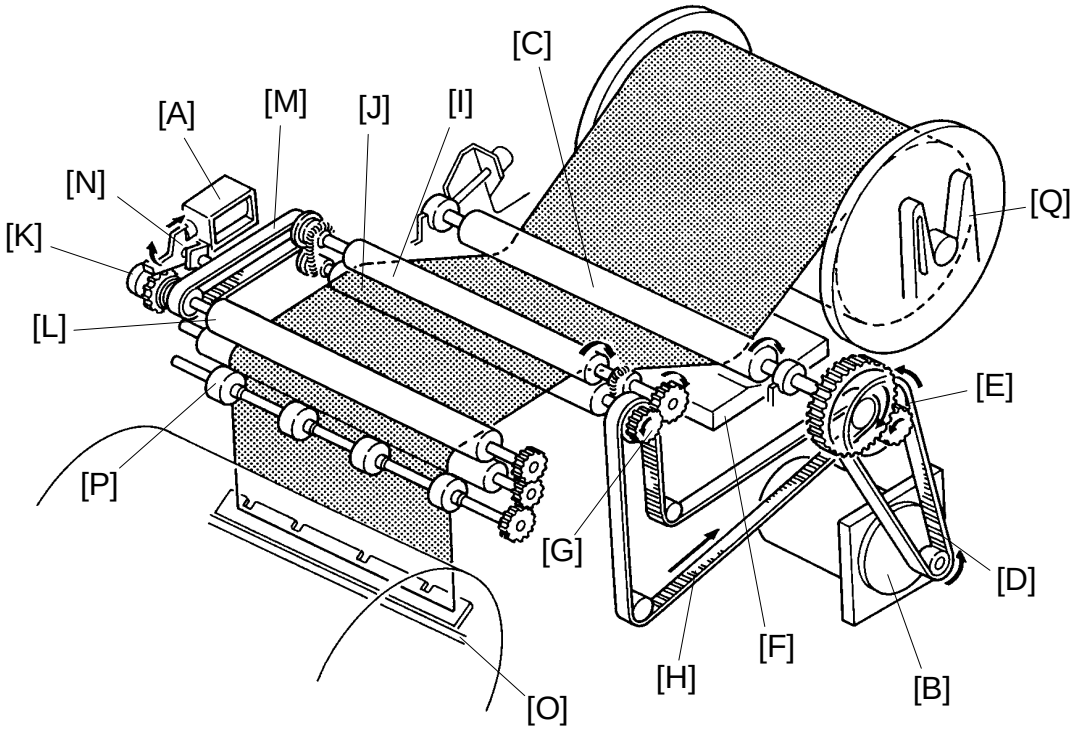


After the master eject process is finished and the interrupter [A] is positioned in the first drum position sensor [B], the main motor turns on and the drum starts rotating (30 rpm) in the reverse direction.

When the drum turns 160 degrees past the actuation position of the second drum position sensor [C], the cam [D] is moved to the drum's side as the master feed clamper solenoid [E] turns on.

When the drum turns 220 degrees further in the reverse direction, the sector gear [F] runs along the cam [D] and the gear [G] turns counterclockwise to open the clamper [H]. At the same time, the drum stops and the clamper remains open to clamp the master leading edge.

3.3 MASTER FEEDING MECHANISM



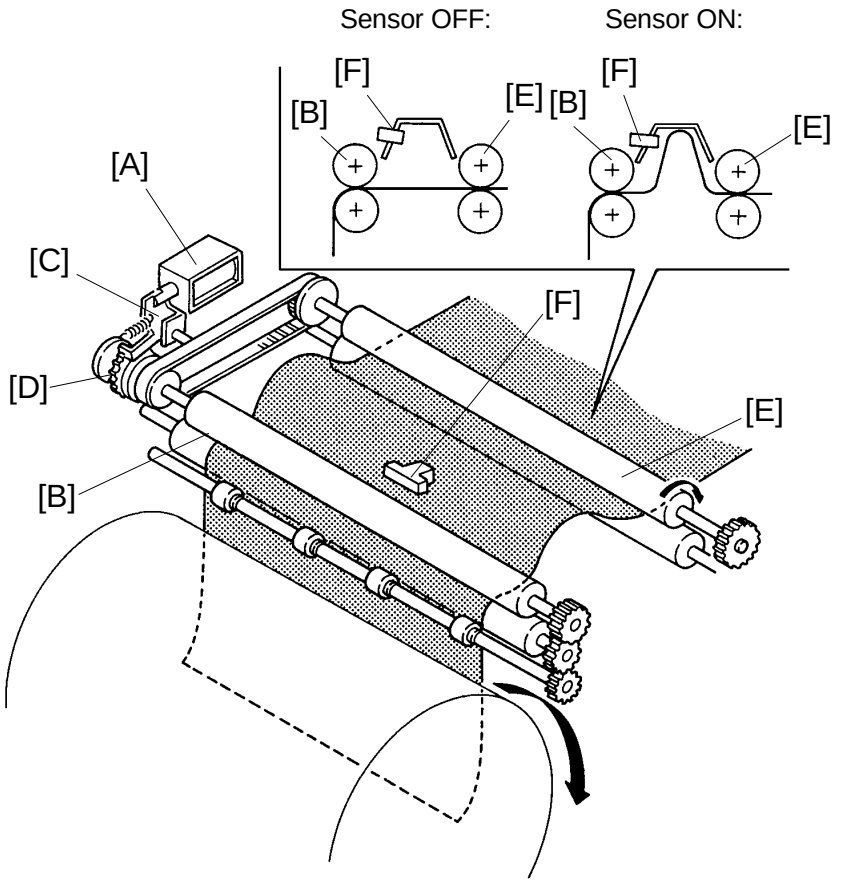
The original transport motor starts rotating after the drum rotates 120 degrees past the 2nd drum position sensor. The reverse roller solenoid [A] and the master feed motor [B] turn on after the original is fed 14 mm. The rotation of the master feed motor is transmitted to the platen roller [C] through the belt [D] and the pulley [E] which feeds the master and forces the master to contact the thermal head [F]. Also, the rotation of the pulley [E] is transmitted to the pulley [G] through the belt [H] to drive the upper feed roller [I] and the lower feed roller [J] for master feeding.

The spring clutch [K] is located behind the reverse roller [L]. When the reverse roller solenoid turns on, the rotation of the upper feed roller is transmitted to the reverse roller through the belt [M] as the stopper [N] releases the spring clutch, thus feeding the master. Also, the master is directed down to the clamper [O] of the drum. The counter rollers [P] prevent the master leading edge from being wrapped around the reverse roller.

After the master is fed 61 millimeters, the master feed clamper solenoid turns off because the master leading edge has already reached the clamper. At the same time, the reverse roller solenoid turns off and the reverse roller stops.

A leaf spring on both holders [Q] prevents any master buckle due to free rotation of the master roll.

3.4 MASTER WRAPPING MECHANISM

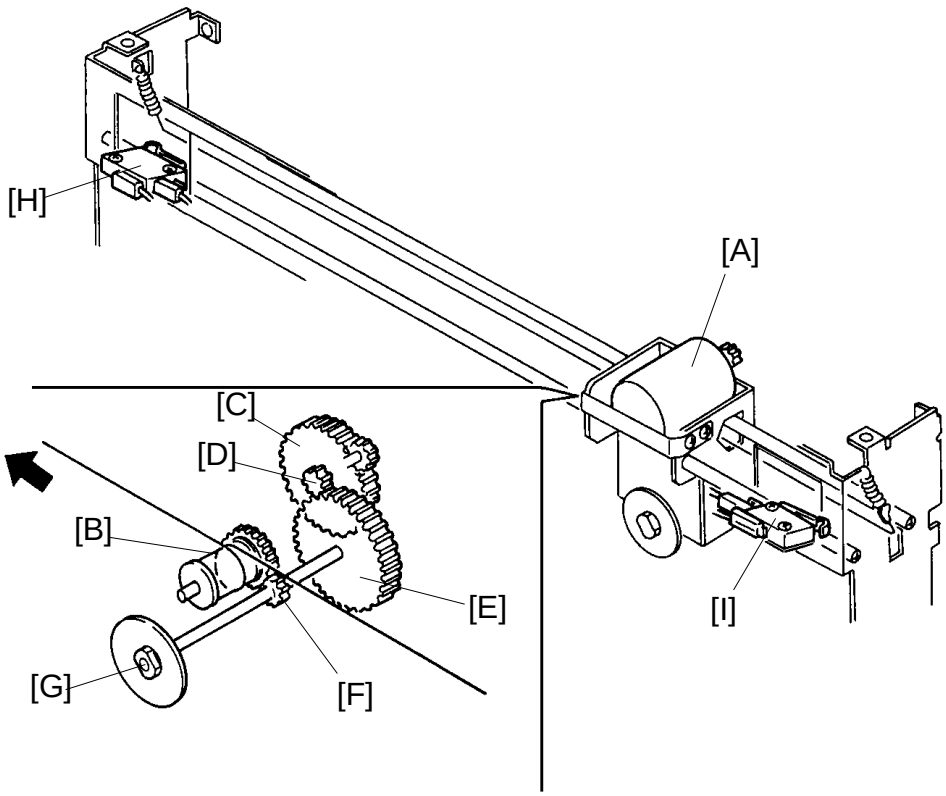


When the reverse roller solenoid [A] is turned off, the reverse roller [B] stops as the stopper [C] locks the clutch gear [D].

However, since the feed roller [E] turn continuously, the master continues to be fed causing the master to buckle. This buckle is detected by the master buckle sensor [F]. When the sensor turns on, the main motor turns on at 10 rpm to rotate the drum. The main motor turns off when the sensor turns off.

Therefore, the master is fed by the ON/OFF action of the master buckle sensor.

3.5 CUTTER MECHANISM



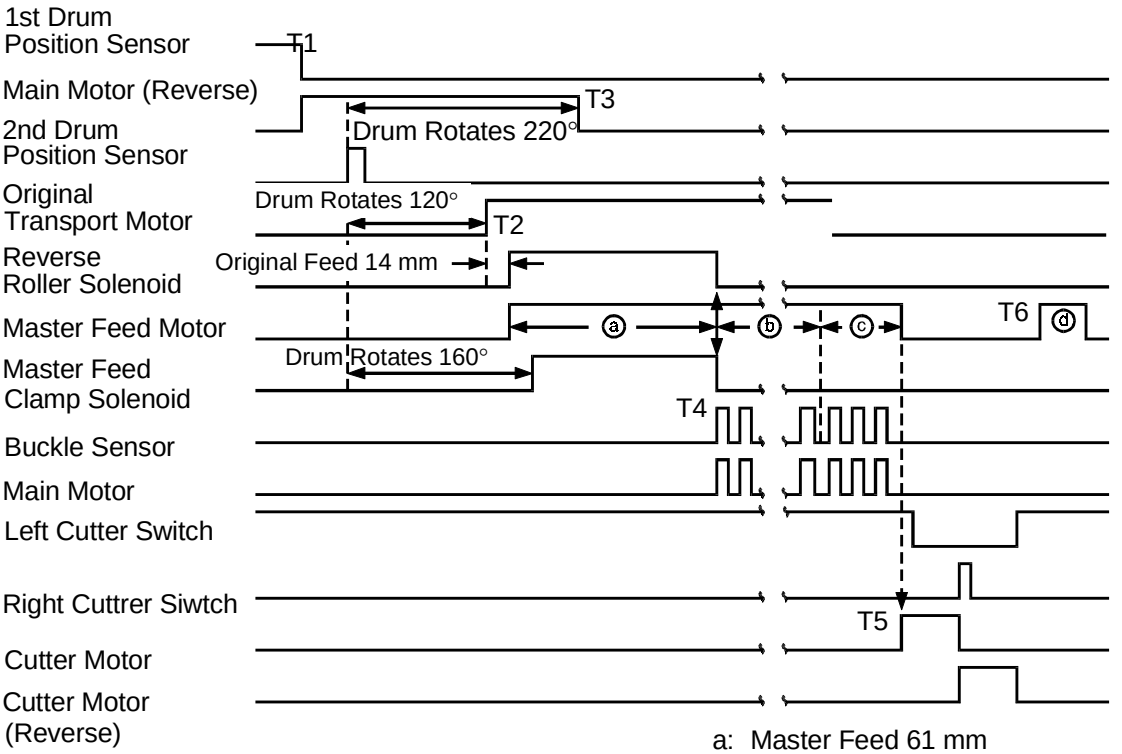
After the master making process (writing process) is finished, the master feed motor turns off and the cutter motor [A] starts turning in the reverse direction as indicated by the arrow.

The cutter motor drives the wire pulley [B] through the gears [C], [D], [E], and [F]. This is to shift the cutter unit to the rear (non-operation side). As the cutter [G] rotates and travels to the rear, it cuts the master.

When the right cutter switch [H] turns on, the cutter motor starts turning in the opposite direction to return the cutter unit to the front (operation side). When the left cutter switch [I] turns on, the cutter motor stops. This finishes the master cutting process.

After the master cutting process is finished, the master is fed about 42 millimeters.

3.6 ELECTRICAL TIMING



a: Master Feed 61 mm
b: Master Feed 293 mm (B4/LG)
Master Feed 226 mm (A4)
c: Master Feed 84 mm
d: Master Feed 42 mm

T1: The main motor starts rotating in the reverse direction at 30 rpm after the master eject process is completed.

T2: After the drum rotates 120 degrees past the point where the 2nd drum position sensor is activated, the original transport motor turns on and starts feeding the original. The master feed motor turns on and the reverse roller solenoid energizes when the original has fed 14 mm.

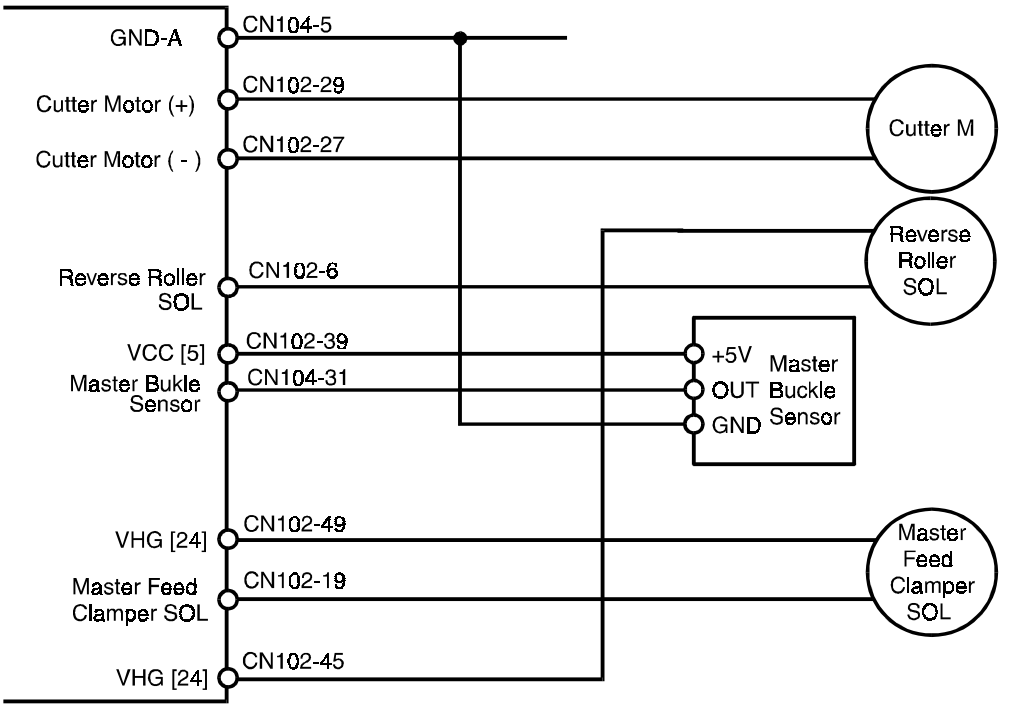
T3: The main motor stops and the clamper remains open when the drum rotates 220 degrees past the point where the 2nd drum position sensor is activated.

T4: The reverse roller solenoid and the master feed clamper solenoid are de-energized when the master is fed 61 mm.
After the reverse roller solenoid is de-energized, the master buckles and the master buckle sensor is activated. At the same time the main motor turns on to wrap the master around the drum. When the master is fed to the drum, the master buckle sensor is de-activated, and the main motor stops. The master continues to feed by repeating the above steps, controlled by the ON/OFF action of the buckle sensor.

T5: The main motor stops after the master paper is fed 438 mm for B4/LG (371 mm for A4.) At the same time the cutter motor rotates to cut the master paper.

T6: When the cutter returns to the home position, the master feed motor rotates again to feed the master paper 42 mm.

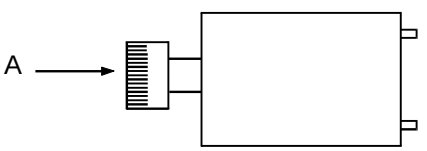
3.7 CIRCUIT: C212/C213



OUTPUTS

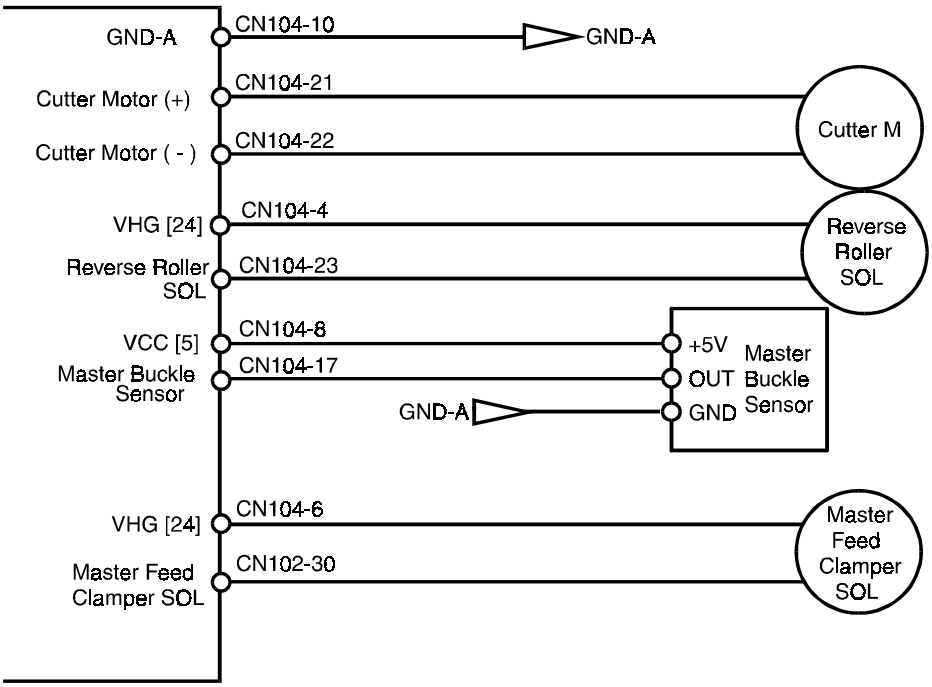
Signal Name	I/O	Main Control PCB		Description
		CN No.	Level	
Master Buckle Sensor	I	CN104-31	0V ↑ 5V	When the sensor is activated, CN104-31 becomes 5 V.
Reverse Roller Solenoid	O	CN102-6	24V ↓ 0V	When the solenoid is turned on, CN102-6 becomes 0 V.
Master Feed Clamper Sol.	O	CN102-19	24V ↓ 0V	When the solenoid is turned on, CN102-19 becomes 0 V.
Cutter Motor (+)	O	CN102-29	22V ↓ 0V	When the cutter unit is returning, CN102-29 becomes 0 V
Cutter Motor (–)	O	CN102-27	22V ↓ 0V	When the cutter unit is moving to the non operation side, CN102-27 becomes 0 V.

Master Eject Motor



The specified direction of the motor rotation is as viewed from A.

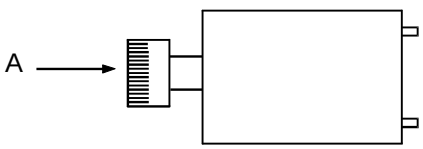
3.8 CIRCUIT: C211



OUTPUTS

Signal Name	I/O	Main Control PCB		Description
		CN No.	Level	
Master Buckle Sensor	I	CN104-17	0V ↑ 5V	When the sensor is activated, CN104-17 becomes 5 V.
Reverse Roller Solenoid	O	CN104-23	24V ↓ 0V	When the solenoid is turned on, CN104-23 becomes 0 V.
Master Feed Clamper Sol.	O	CN102-30	24V ↓ 0V	When the solenoid is turned on, CN102-30 becomes 0 V.
Cutter Motor (+)	O	CN104-21	22V ↓ 0V	When the cutter unit is returning, CN104-21 becomes 0 V
Cutter Motor (–)	O	CN104-22	22V ↓ 0V	When the cutter unit is moving to the non operation side, CN104-22 becomes 0 V.

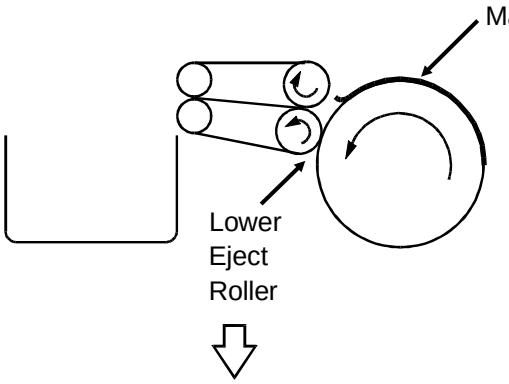
Master Eject Motor



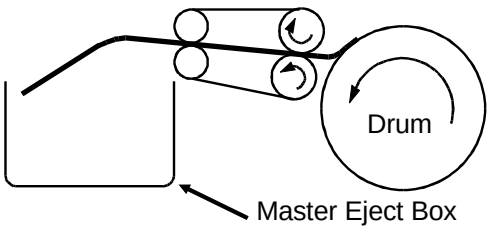
The specified direction of the motor rotation is as viewed from A.

4. MASTER EJECT SECTION

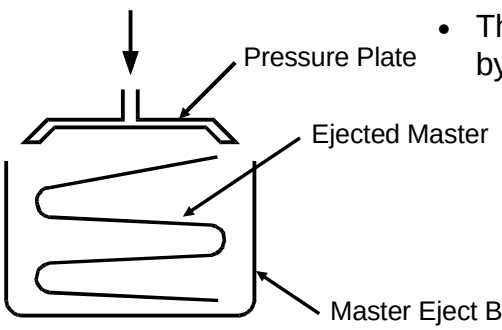
4.1 OVERALL



- Drum rotates in direction opposite to printing.
- Master eject rollers rotate.
- Lower eject roller contacts drum.



- The curled master is caught between the upper and lower eject rollers to eject the master into the master eject box.



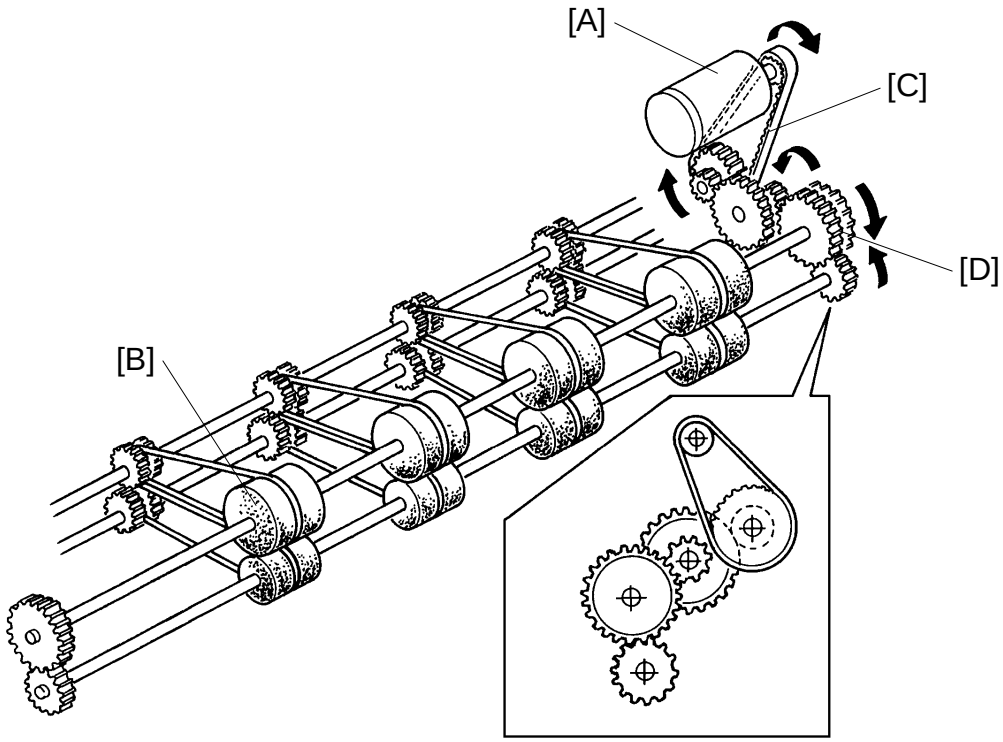
- The ejected master is compressed by the pressure plate.

To eject the master wrapped around the drum, the drum rotates in the direction opposite to the printing direction. Thus, the master is ejected into the master eject box by utilizing the back curl of the master trailing edge which is caught between the upper and lower eject rollers.

The ejected master is then compressed by the pressure plate to fully utilize the master box capacity.

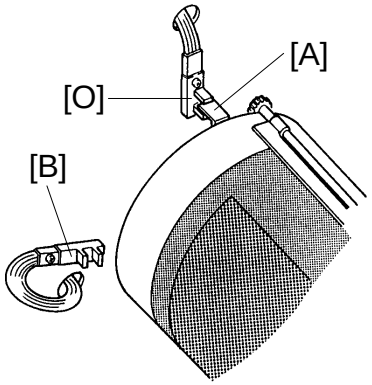
4.2 MASTER EJECT ROLLER ROTATING MECHANISM

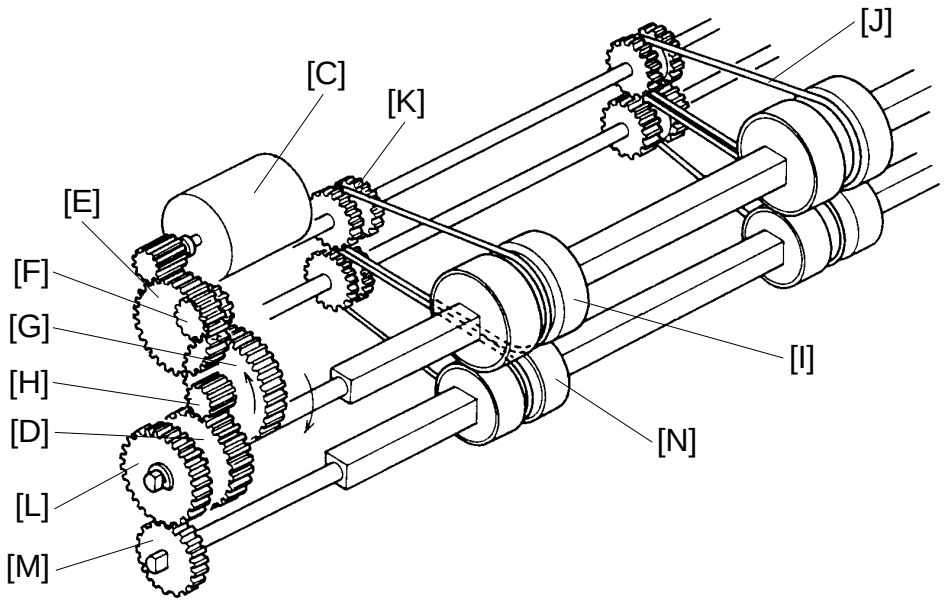
4.2.1 C224/C226 Only



A dc motor [A] installed in the rear of the machine drives the master eject rollers [B] through a timing belt [C] and gears [D] to eject used masters. The master is transported between the upper and lower master eject rollers to be ejected to the master eject box.

4.2.2 Other Modes





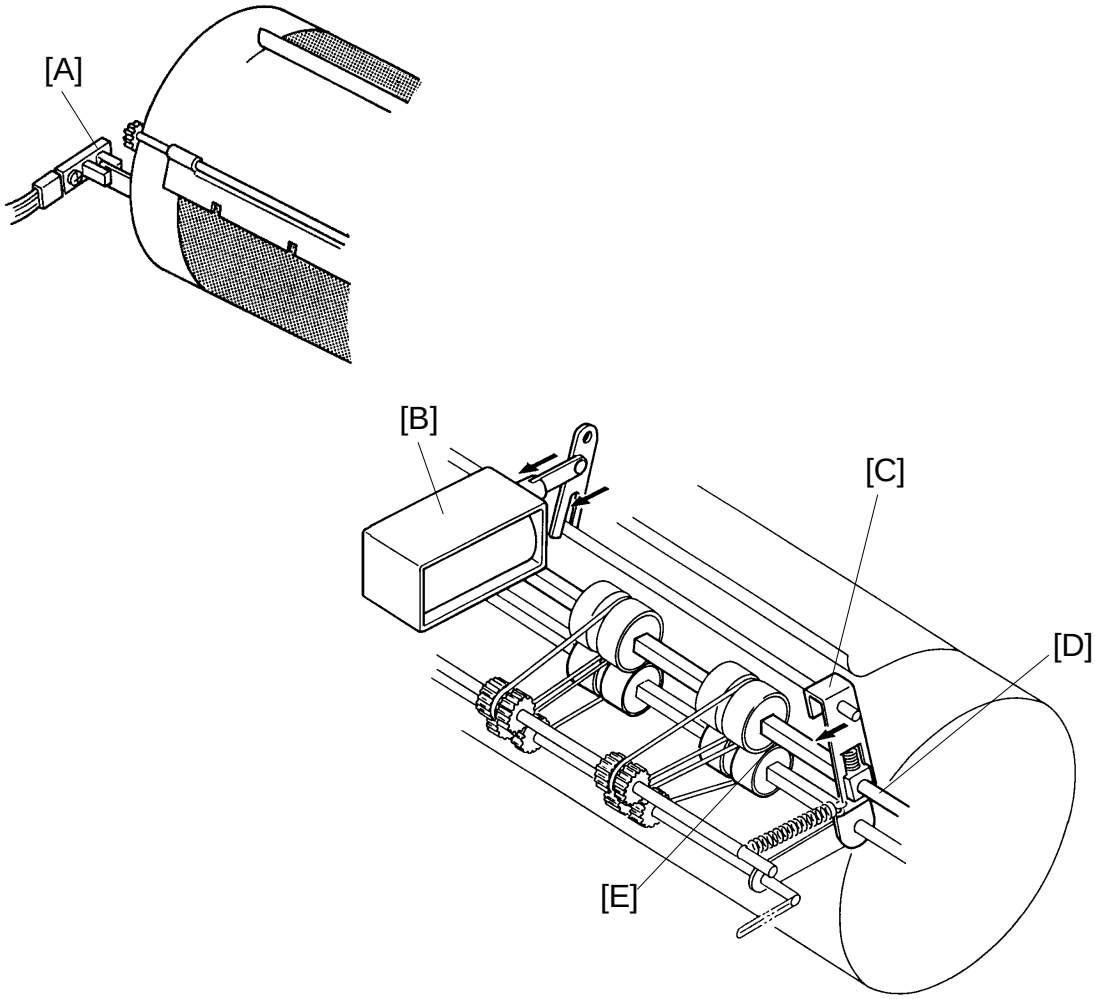
After the original is set, the main motor rotates in the reverse direction (30 rpm) when the Master Making key is pressed.

When the interrupter [A] blocks the 2nd drum position sensor [B], the master eject motor [C] starts rotating counterclockwise and the gear [D] is driven clockwise through gears [E], [F], [G], and [H]. The upper first eject rollers [I] also turn clockwise, because gear [D] has a one-way clutch. At the same time, the belts [J] drive the upper second eject rollers [K], and gears [L] and [M] drive the lower eject rollers [N] counterclockwise.

After the drum completes one rotation in the reverse direction, the interrupter [A] blocks the first drum position sensor [O]. The master eject roller then stops rotation.

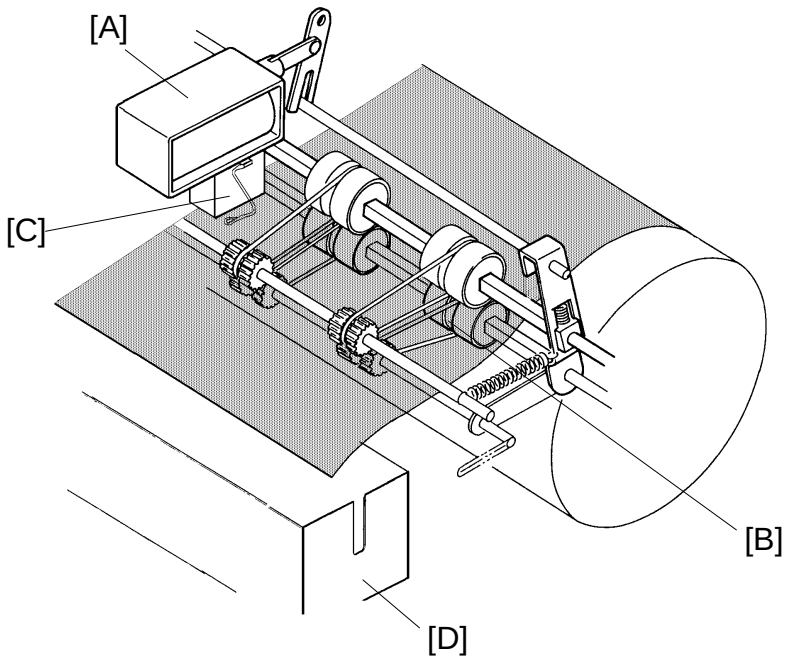
NOTE: The C212/C213 models use a timing belt instead of a gear [E].

4.3 MASTER EJECT ROLLER DRIVE MECHANISM



When the drum turns 20 degrees past the second drum position sensor [A], the master eject solenoid [B] turns on and the supporter [C] turns counterclockwise around the upper eject roller shaft [D]. This forces the lower first eject rollers [E] to contact the drum.

As the drum turns, the curled trailing edge of the master enters between the upper and lower first eject rollers. The first eject rollers then peel the master from the drum.

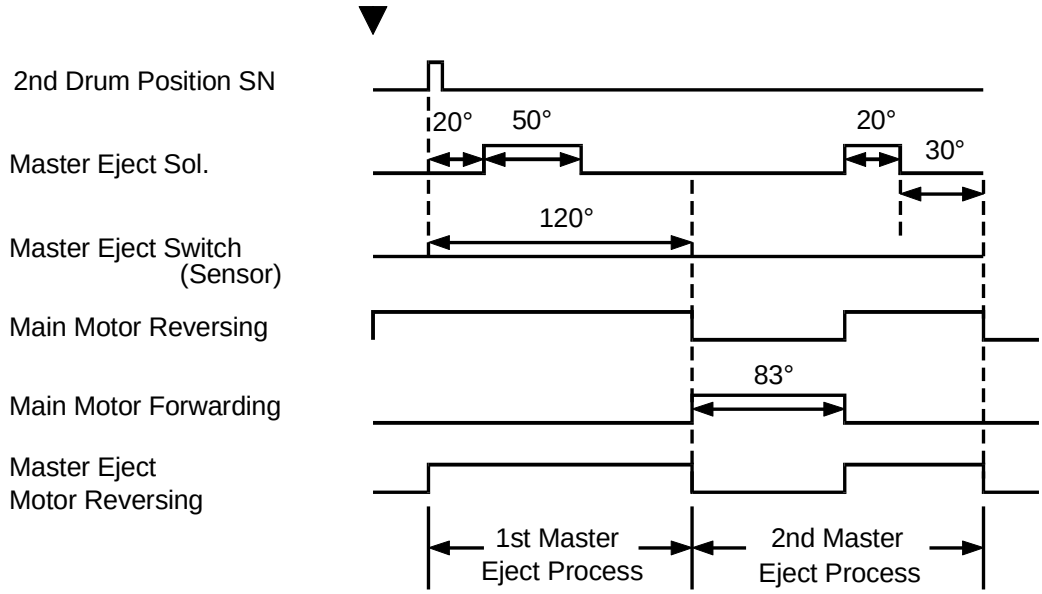


When the drum turns 70 degrees past the second drum position sensor, the master eject solenoid [A] turns off, separating the lower first eject roller [B] from the drum.

When the ejected master is between the upper and lower first eject rollers, it activates the master eject switch [C]. After that, the master is stacked into the master eject box [D].

NOTE: The C212/C213/C224/C226 models use a photo reflective sensor instead of a mechanically actuated switch [C].

Master Eject Misfeed Detection:



( ): C212/C213/C224/C226 model

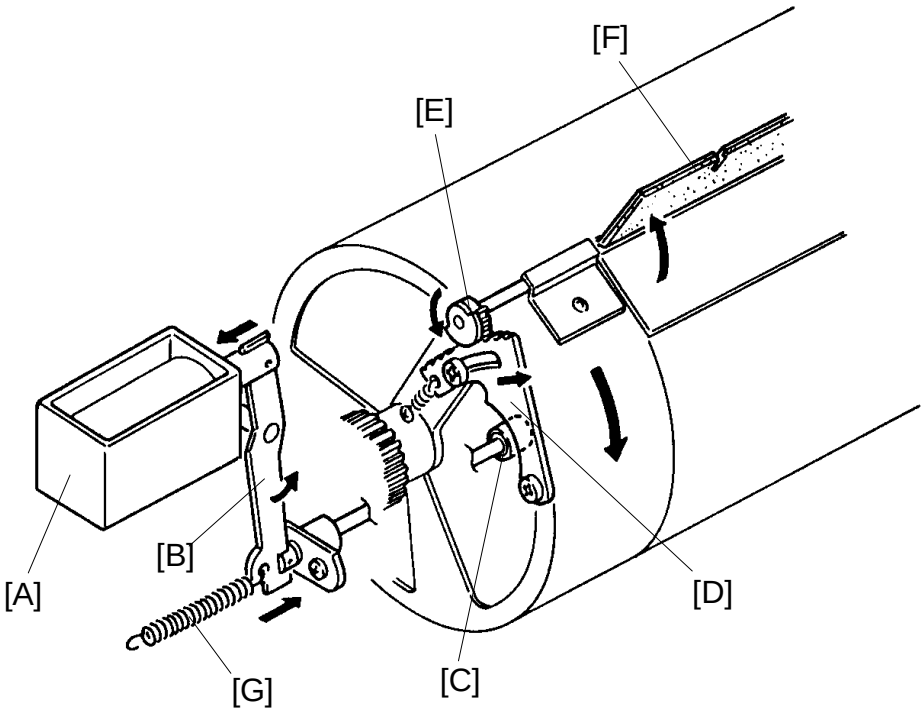
When the master eject switch is not activated within 120 degrees of drum reverse rotation during the 1st master eject process, the drum rotates 83 degrees in the forward direction to repeat the master eject process (2nd master eject process) as shown above.

If the master eject switch is not turned on again in the 2nd master eject process, a master eject misfeed is detected.

When a master misfeed occurs during the 2nd master ejection, rotation of the drum in the reverse direction stops, the master eject motor turns off, and the main motor turns on to drive the drum to the home position. After the drum returns to the home position, the beeper sounds, and F and indicators blink.

NOTE: The C212/C213/C224/C226 models use a photo reflective master eject sensor.

4.4 MASTER EJECT CLAMPER MECHANISM

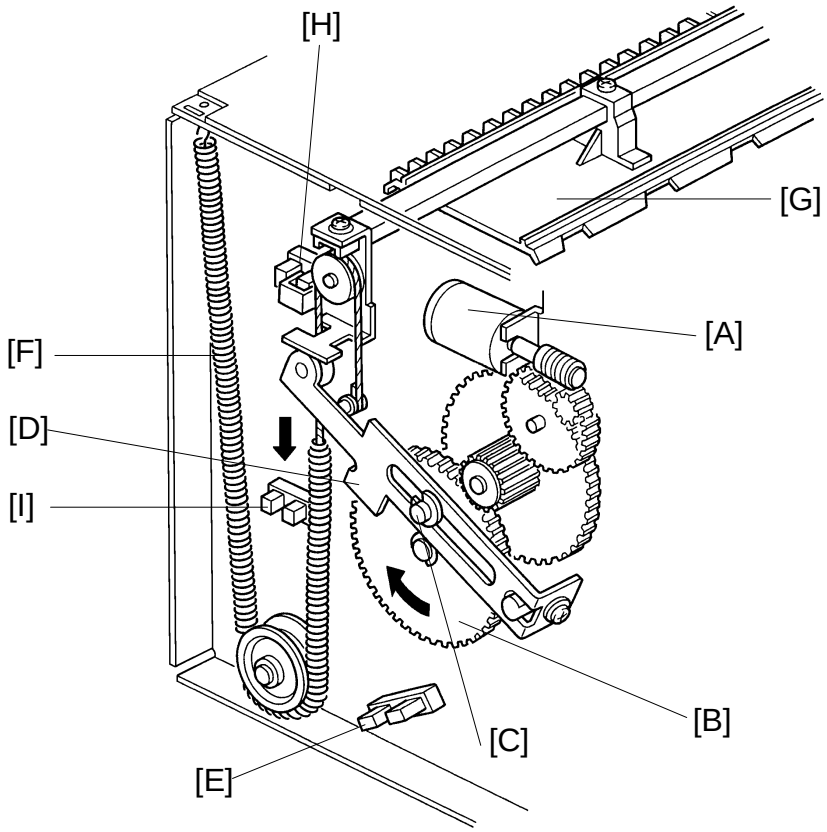


When the drum has turned 230 degrees past the second drum position sensor activation position, the master eject clamper solenoid [A] turns on and turns the lever [B] counterclockwise. This moves the cam [C] to the drum's side. After that, the clamper sector gear [D] rides on the cam [C] and the gear [E] turns counterclockwise opening the master clamper [F] for master ejection.

When the drum turns 13 degrees past the first drum position sensor, the main motor turns off. Then, after 0.5 second, the master eject clamper solenoid turns off and the spring [G] returns the opening cam to the normal position.

4.5 PRESSURE PLATE UP/DOWN MECHANISM

4.5.1 C224/C226 Only

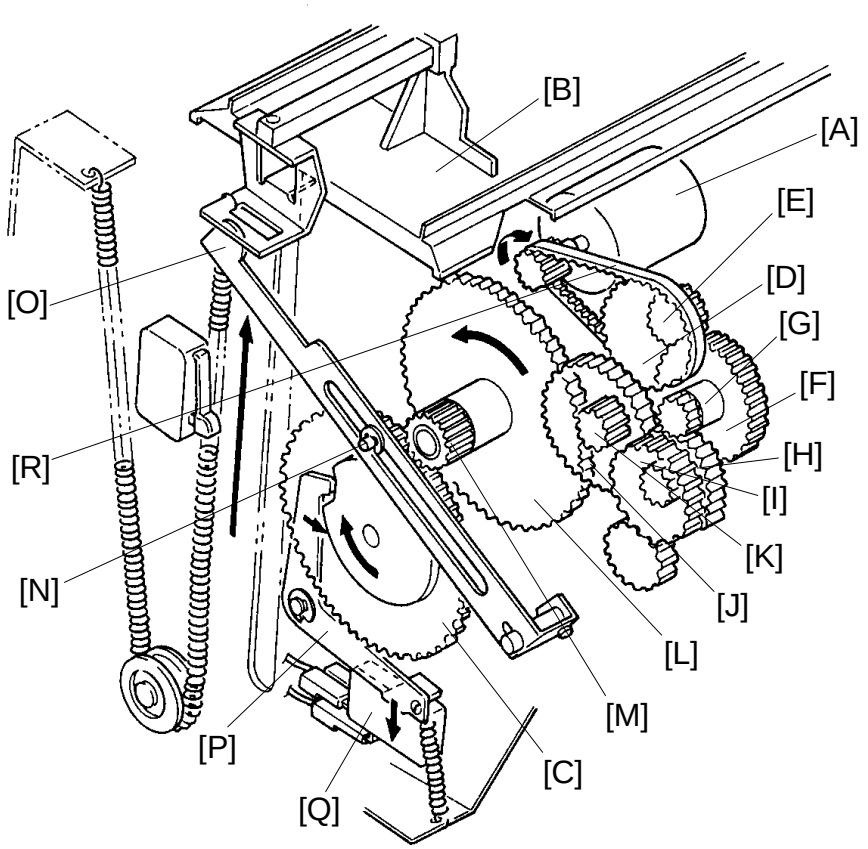


After the used master is transported to the master eject box, the master is compressed by the pressure plate.

The pressure plate is driven by an independent dc motor. The pressure plate motor [A] drive is transmitted to the gear [B] through gears, and the pin [C] moves link [D] down until the lower pressure plate sensor [E] is actuated. Spring [F] pulls down on the pressure plate [G] and the ejected master in the master eject box is compressed. Then the pressure plate motor stays off until the master making process is finished. Then the pressure plate motor starts again to return the pressure plate to the upper position. The motor stops when the upper pressure plate sensor [H] is actuated.

The machine detects that the master box is full if the full master box sensor [I] is not actuated when the pressure plate goes down.

4.5.2 Other Models



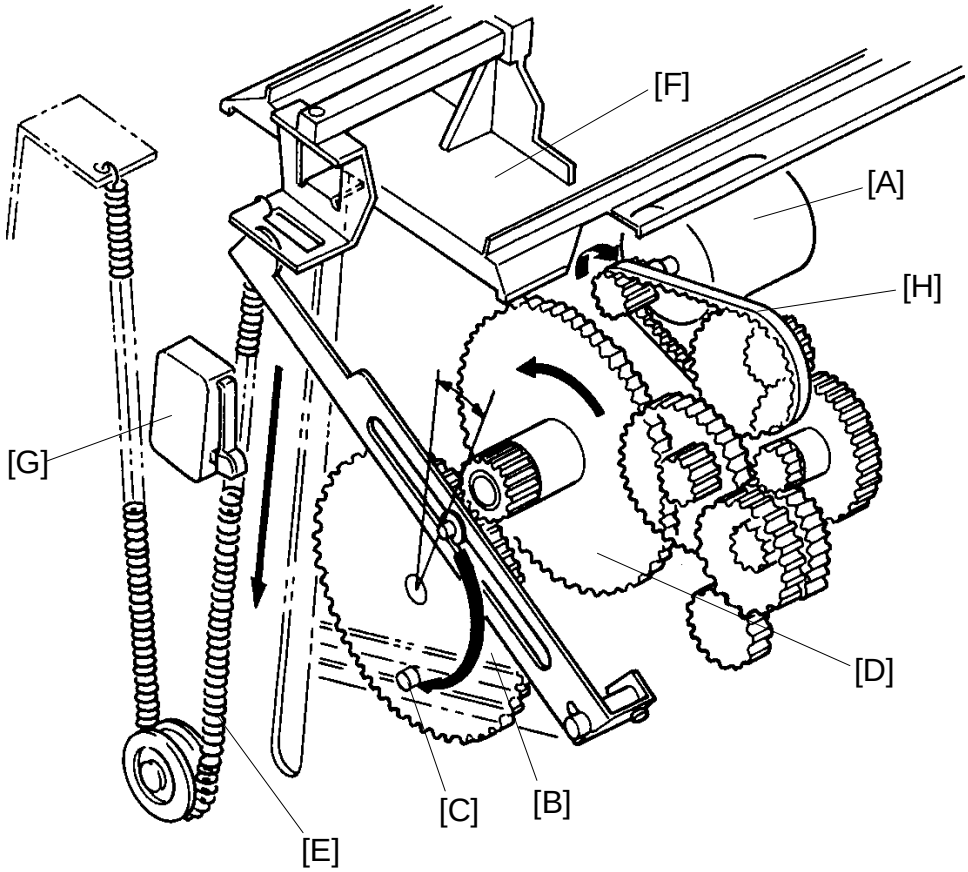
After the master making process is finished, the master eject motor [A] turns clockwise to raise the pressure plate [B].

When the master eject motor turns, the gear [C] is driven through the timing belt [R] the gears [D], [E], [F], [G], [H], [I], [J], [K], [L] and [M]. The pin [N] on the gear [C] which is inserted into the link [O] rises and lifts the left end of the link; thus, raising the pressure plate [B].

The gear [C] continues to turn until the lever [P] moves into the notch on the bottom of the cam, located behind the gear [C]. At this time, the master eject motor [A] stops as the lower end of the lever [P] pushes the pressure plate position switch [Q]. Thus, the pressure plate is held in the upper position.

When the master eject motor turns clockwise, the gear [I] turns clockwise, but the upper first eject roller does not turn because of a one-way clutch in the gear [I]. Also, when the master eject motor turns in the reverse direction (counterclockwise), the pressure plate does not move because of a one-way clutch in the gear [L].

NOTE: The C211/C215/C216 model uses a gear instead of a timing belt [R].



After the master eject process is finished, the master eject motor [A] turns clockwise, driving the gear [B] clockwise through the relay gears.

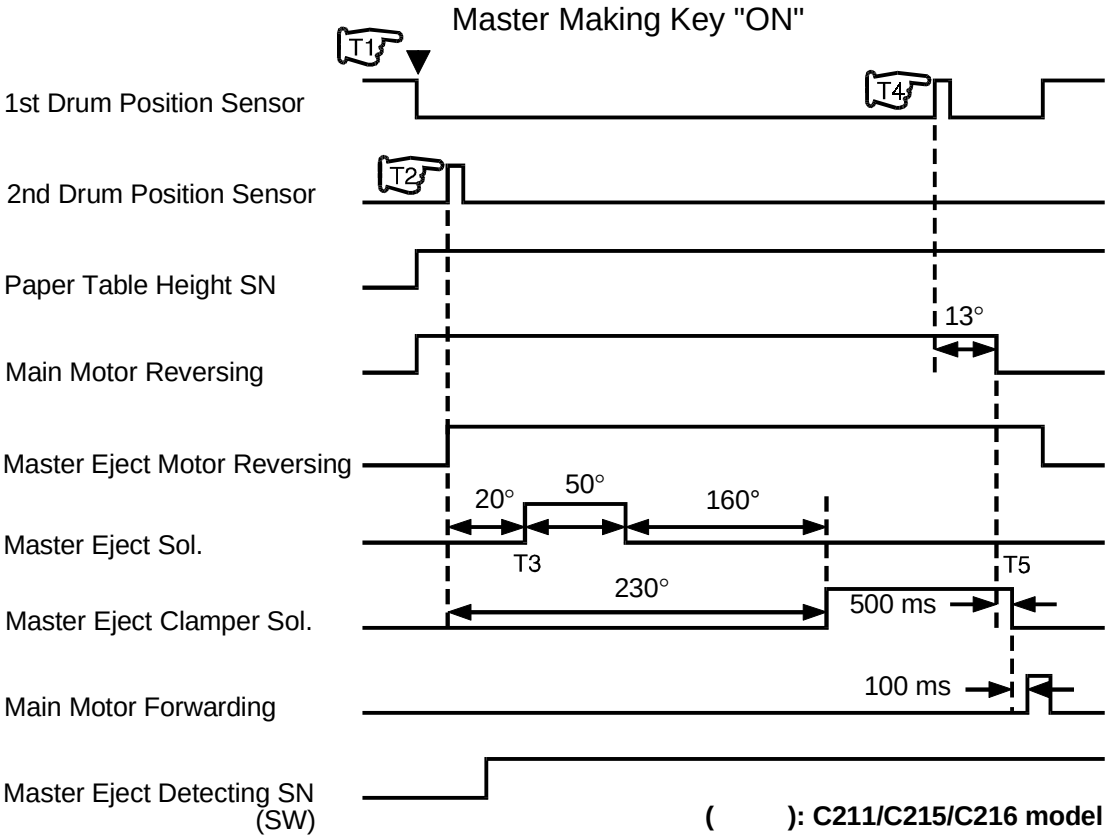
When the pin [C] of the gear [B] turns about 45 degrees, the pressure plate goes down immediately due to the one-way clutch in the gear [D] and the pressure spring [E]. Therefore, the ejected master in the master eject box is compressed by the pressure plate [F].

If the full master detecting switch [G] does not turn on when the pressure plate goes down, this means that the master eject box is filled with ejected masters. In this case, the "F" and ⬇ indicators blink, and the machine stops after a new master is wrapped.

The "F" and ⬇ indicators cannot be reset until the master box switch is turned OFF and ON. This is to prevent the full ejected master condition from being reset without removing the ejected master from the box.

NOTE: The C211/C215/C216 model uses a gear instead of a timing belt [H].

4.6 ELECTRICAL TIMING



T1: When the Master Making key is pressed, the main motor starts rotating in reverse. At the same time the paper table drive motor also starts rotating to lift the paper table to the proper position.

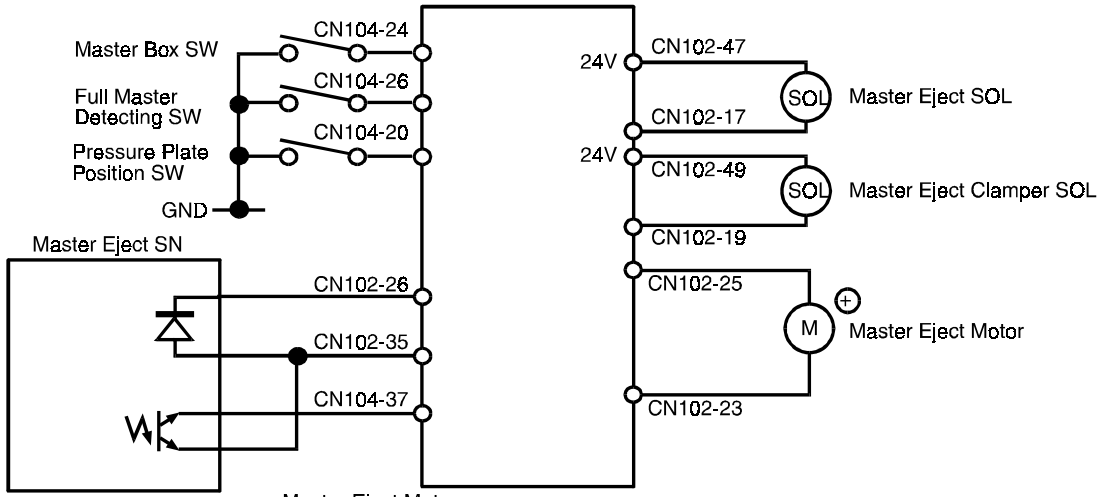
T2: When the 2nd drum position sensor is activated, the master eject motor starts rotating in reverse to drive the master eject rollers.

T3: When the drum rotates 20 degrees past the 2nd drum position sensor, the master eject solenoid is energized to press the master eject roller against the drum surface. The master eject solenoid is de-energized when the drum rotates 50 degrees more.
When the drum rotates 160 degrees after the master eject solenoid is de-energized the master eject clamper solenoid is energized.

T4: When the drum turns 13 degrees past the first drum position sensor actuation position, the main motor stops.

T5: 500 milliseconds after the main motor stops, the master eject clamper solenoid turns off. Then, after a 100 millisecond-pause, the main motor starts rotation in the forward direction and stays on until the first drum position sensor is activated.

4.7 CIRCUIT: C212/C213



Master Eject Motor:

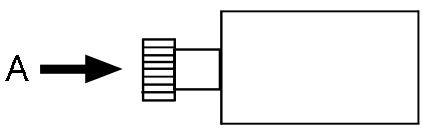
Turning counterclockwise : CN102-23 is connected to the GND and CN102-25 is connected to 24V line.

Turning clockwise : CN102-25 is connected to the GND and CN102-23 is connected to 24V line

OUTPUTS

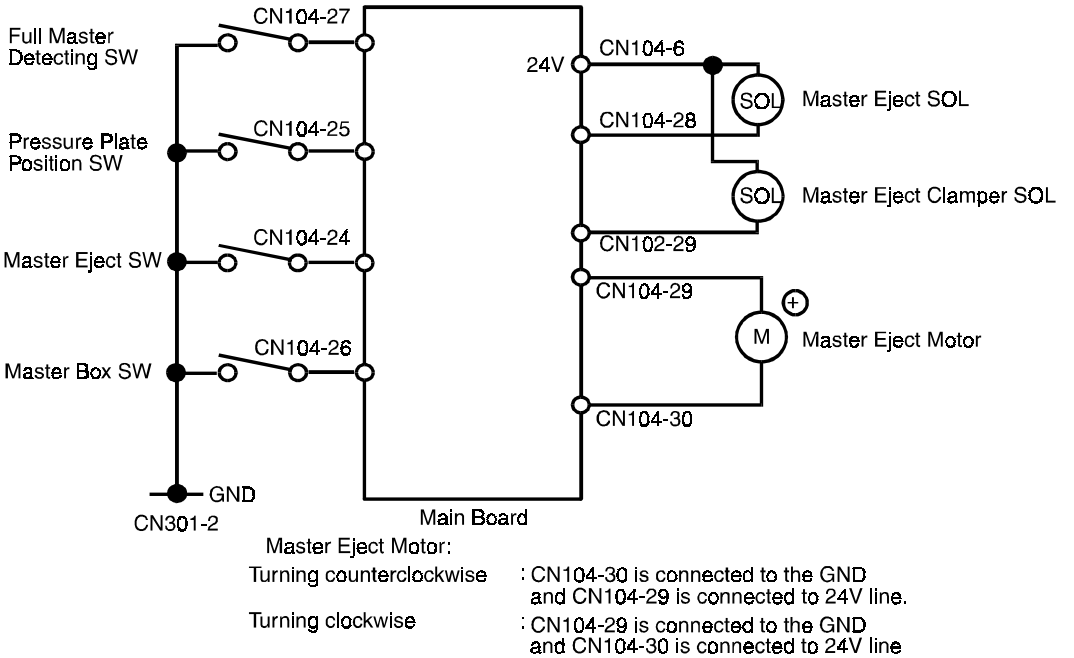
Signal Name	I/O	Main Control Board		Description
		CN No.	Level	
LED: Master Eject Detection	0	102-26	24V 0V	When the main switch is turned on, the voltage at CN102-26 is 0 V.
Master Eject Detection	I	104-37	0V 0.2V	When the master is placed under the sensor, the voltage is 0.2 V ~ 0.4 V at CN104-37 and 4 V at TP104 (MDLV).
Master Box Detection	I	104-24	7.5V 5 msec 0V	When the master box switch turns on, the voltage at CN104-24 is 0 V.
Full Master Detection	I	104-26	7.5V 5 msec 0V	When the full master detection switch turns on, the voltage at CN104-26 is 0 V.
Pressure Plate Position	I	104-20	7.5V 5 msec 0V	When the pressure plate position switch turns on, the voltage at CN104-20 is 0 V.
Master Eject Solenoid	0	102-17	24V 0V	When the master eject solenoid turns on, the voltage at CN 102-17 is 0 V.
Master Eject Clamper Solenoid	0	102-19	24V 0V	When the master eject clamper solenoid turns on, the voltage at CN102-19 is 0 V.
+: Master Eject Motor	0	102-25	0V 22V	When the master eject motor turns clockwise, the voltage at CN102-25 is 22 V.
—: Master Eject Motor	0	102-23	0V 22V	When the master eject motor turns counterclockwise, the voltage at CN102-23 is 22 V.

Master Eject Motor



The motor direction of rotation is as viewed from A.

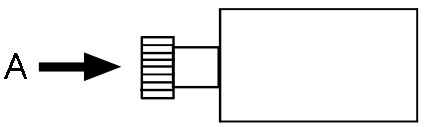
4.8 CIRCUIT: C211



OUTPUTS

Signal Name	I/O	Main Control Board		Description
		CN No.	Level	
Master Eject Detection	I	104-24	7.5V 5 m sec 0V	When the master eject detection switch turns on, the voltage at CN104-24 is 0 V
Master Box Detection	I	104-26	7.5V 5 m sec 0V	When the master box switch turns on, the voltage at CN104-26 is 0 V
Full Master Detection	I	104-27	7.5V 5 m sec 0V	When the full master detection switch turns on, the voltage at CN104-27 is 0 V
Pressure Plate Position	I	104-25	7.5V 5 m sec 0V	When the pressure plate position switch turns on, the voltage at CN104-25 is 0 V
Master Eject Solenoid	0	104-28	24V 0V	When the master eject solenoid turns on, the voltage at CN104-28 is 0 V
Master Eject clamper Solenoid	0	102-29	24V 0V	When the master eject clamper solenoid turns on, the voltage at CN102-29 is 0 V
+: Master Eject Motor	0	104-29	22V 0V	When the master eject motor turns clockwise, the voltage at CN104-29 is 22 V
—: Master Eject Motor	0	104-30	22V 0V	When the master eject motor turns counter clockwise, the voltage at CN104-30 is 22 V

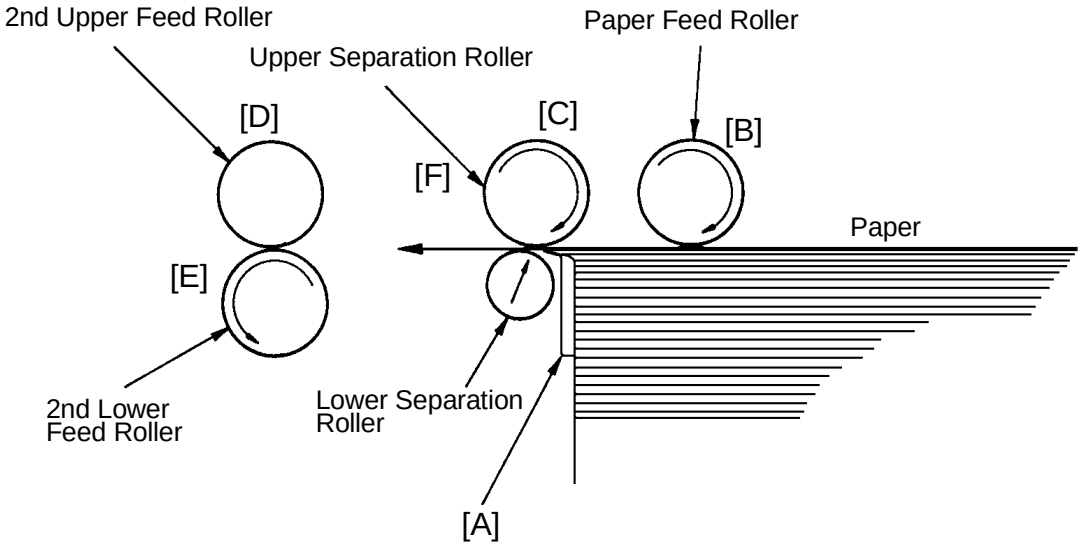
Master Eject Motor



The motor direction of rotation is as viewed from A.

5. PAPER FEED SECTION

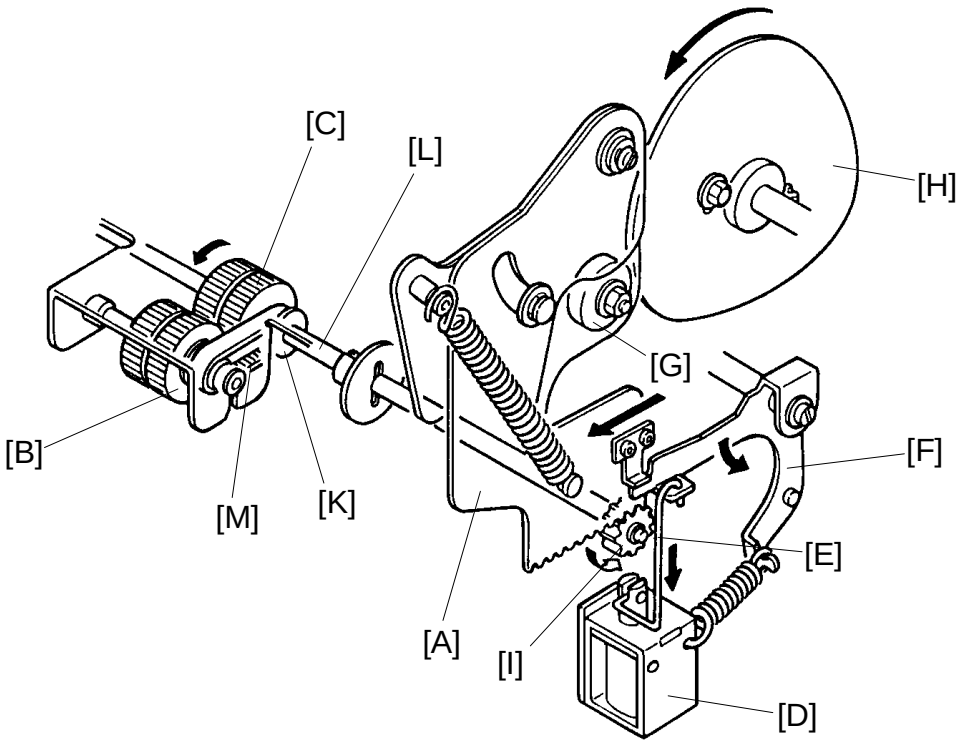
5.1 OVERALL



[A]: Separation Plate
[B]: Paper Feed Roller
[C]: Upper Separation Roller
[D]: 2nd Upper Feed Roller
[E]: 2nd Lower Feed Roller
[F]: Lower Separation Roller

This machine uses a center separation system, which consists of the separation plate [A] and rollers, is used instead of the corner separation system. Also, the paper table is lifted and lowered by a motor.

5.2 PAPER FEED ROLLER/UPPER SEPARATION ROLLER MECHANISM



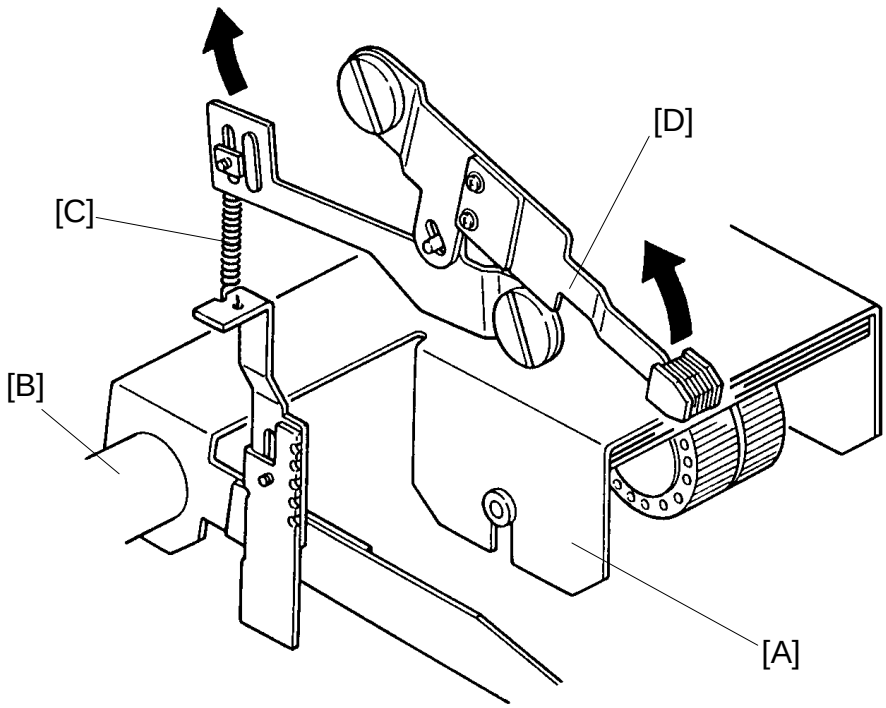
The sector gear [A], located on the non-operation side, rotates the paper feed roller [B] and the upper separation roller [C]. When the paper feed solenoid [D] turns on, the link [E] is pulled and the sector stopper [F] turns counterclockwise. This is because the sector gear lock is released when the cam roller [G] is positioned on the top of the paper feed roller cam [H]. Then, the cam roller [G] of the sector gear moves along the cam face of the paper feed roller cam [H].

When moving the cam roller [G] from the bottom to the top of the paper feed roller cam [H], the sector gear [A] turns clockwise and the gear [I] is turned counterclockwise. The rotation of the gear [I] is transmitted to the upper separation roller shaft [J] by the one-way clutch inside the gear [I], and the upper separation roller [C] turns counterclockwise.

At the same time, the pulley [K] mounted on the upper separation roller shaft [L] turns, and the belt [M] rotates the paper feed roller [B] counterclockwise to feed the printing paper.

When the cam roller [G] moves from the top to the bottom of the paper feed roller cam [H], the sector gear [A] turns counterclockwise and the gear [I] is turned clockwise. However, due to the one-way clutch inside the gear [I], the upper separation roller [C] and the paper feed roller [B] do not turn.

5.3 FEED ROLLER PRESSURE MECHANISM



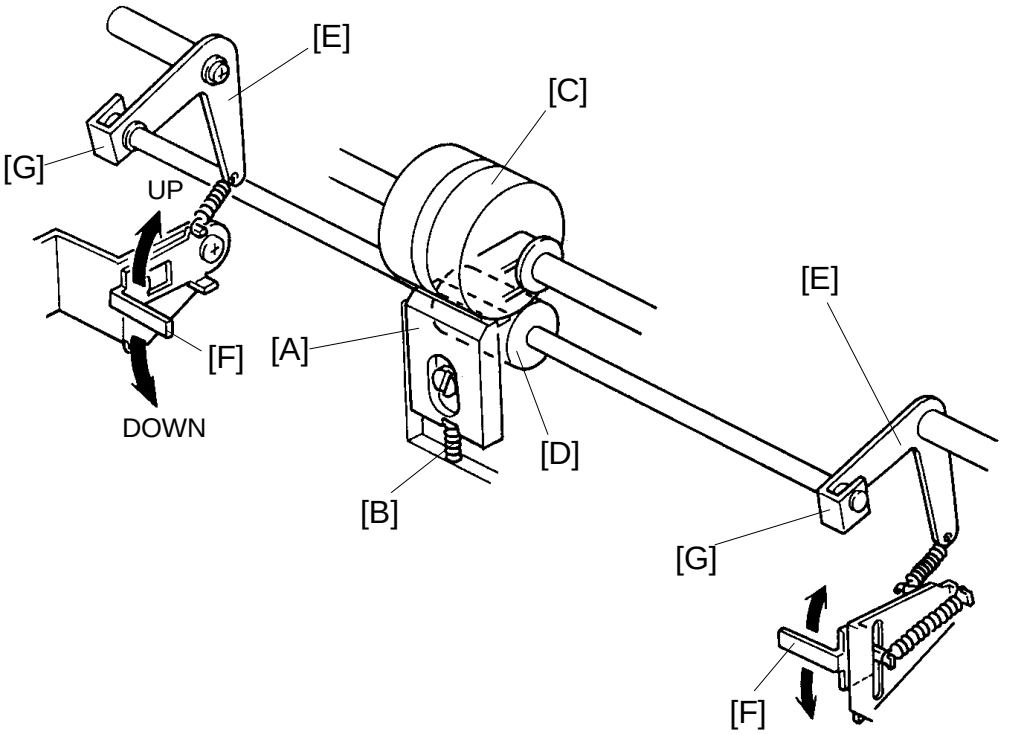
The feed roller assembly [A] rotates clockwise around it's shaft [B] due to the weight of assembly.

The feed roller rotation is resisted by the feed roller pressure spring [C].

The force difference between the feed roller assembly weight and the pressure spring force is applied to the paper as a feed roller pressure.

The feed roller pressure can be changed by moving the feed- pressure lever [D] up or down as shown in the figure.

5.4 SEPARATION MECHANISM



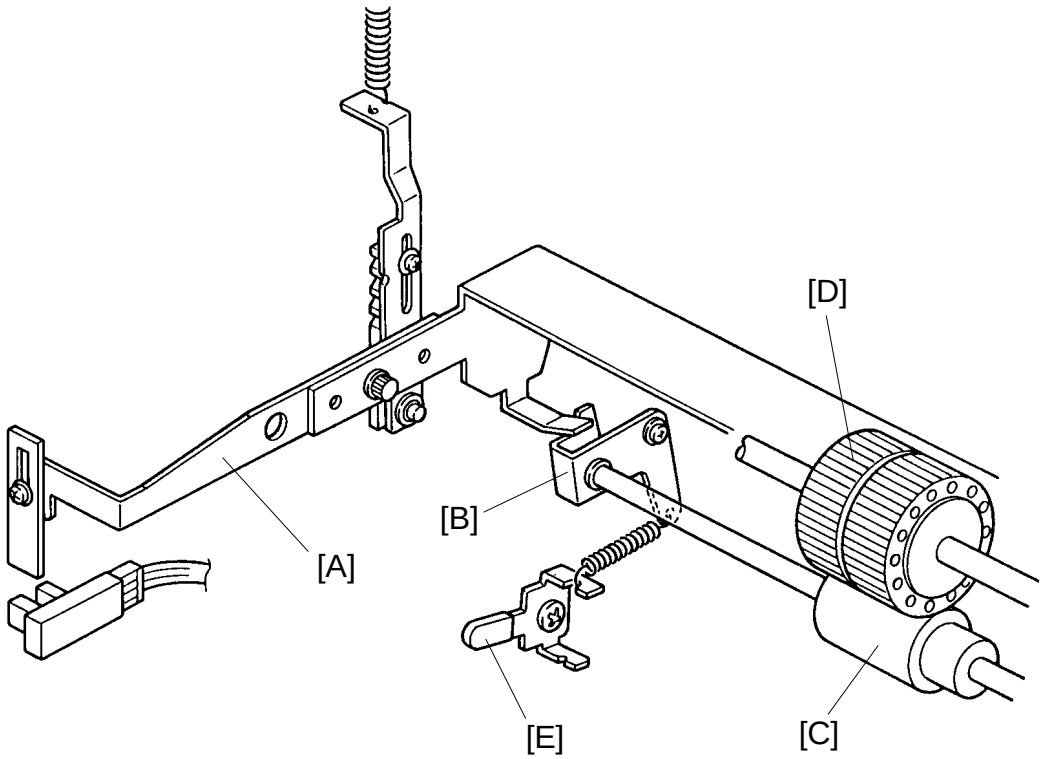
The separation plate [A] is in contact with the upper separation roller [C] due to the spring [B]. This is to prevent multiple paper feed.

As the lower separation roller [D] does not turn clockwise due to the one way clutch bearings [G] provided on both right and left separation levers [E], the sheets are separated and a sheet of paper is fed to the second feed rollers. When 2 sheets of paper are fed, brake force is applied to the lower sheet of paper.

The pressure between upper and lower separation rollers can be adjusted in two steps by changing the right and left separation pressure adjusting levers [F].

Up (Weak position)	→	Spring tension and separation pressure decrease.
Down (Standard position)	→	Spring tension and separation pressure increase.

5.5 SEPARATION ROLLER PRESSURE RELEASE MECHANISM

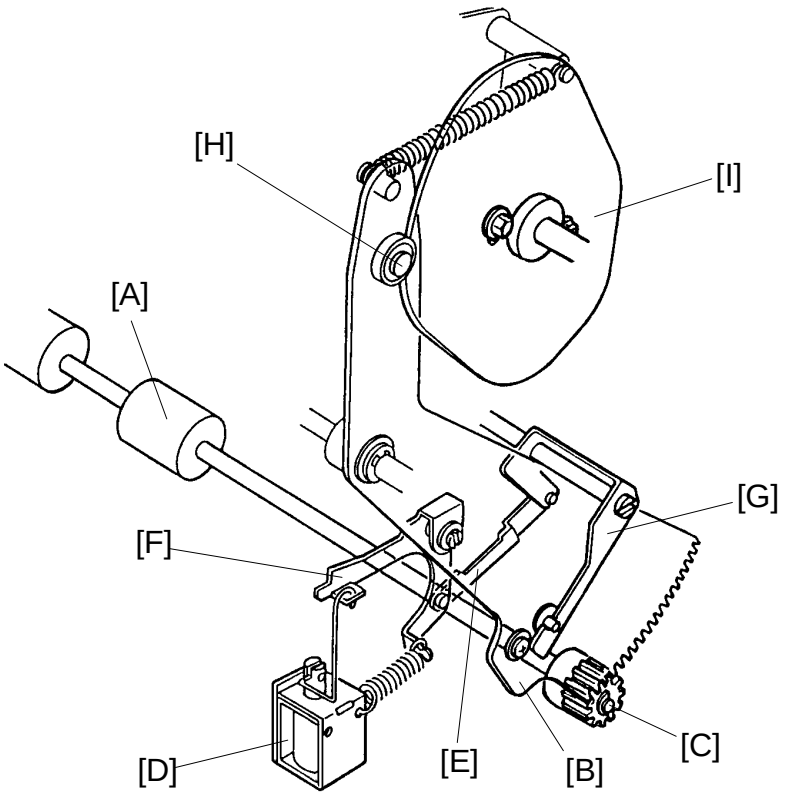


[C]: Lower Separation Roller
[D]: Upper Separation Roller
[E]: Separation Pressure Adjusting Lever

When the paper table lowers the paper feed roller lever [A] also lowers and presses the left separation lever [B] to release the separation roller pressure.

This mechanism makes misfed paper removal easy.

5.6 SECOND FEED ROLLER MECHANISM

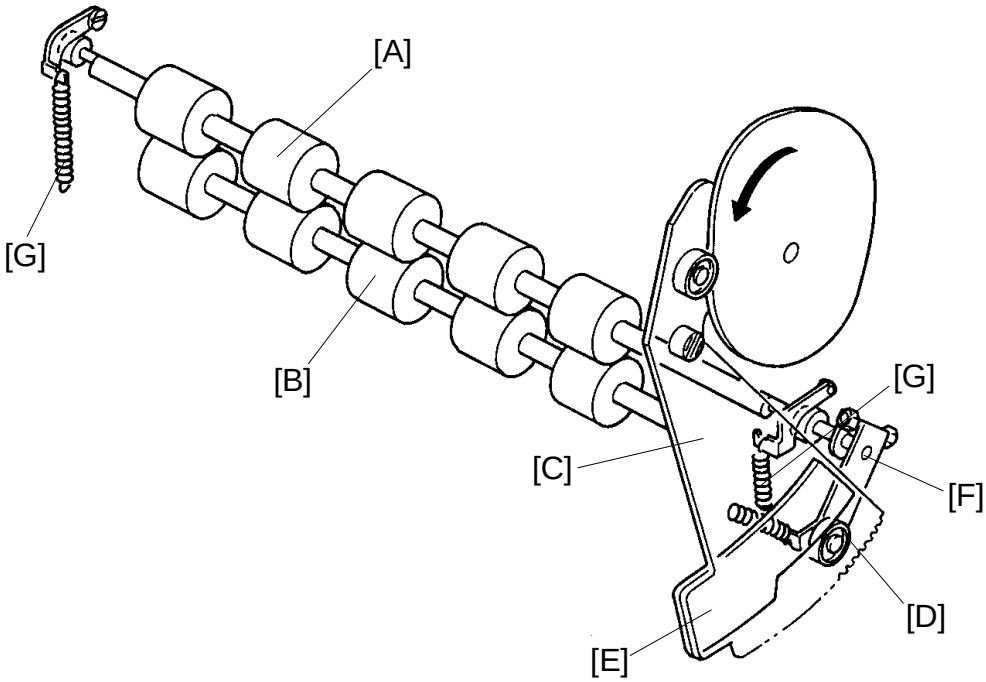


The lower second feed roller [A] is driven by the sector gear [B] and the gear [C]. When the paper feed solenoid [D] turns on, the link [E] combined with the paper feed roller sector stopper [F] is pulled and the second feed roller sector stopper [G] turns counterclockwise.

When the bearing [H] of the sector gear comes to the top of the lower second feed roller cam [I], the stopper [G] is released from the sector gear [B] as a clearance is formed between the pin of the sector gear and the stopper. Therefore, the bearing of the sector gear moves along the second feed roller cam face.

When turning the gear [C] counterclockwise, its rotation is not transmitted to the lower second feed roller due to the one-way clutch bearing press-fit into the gear [C].

When the bearing [H] of the sector gear moves up from the bottom of the second feed roller cam [I], the sector gear turns counterclockwise and gear [C] turns clockwise. As the rotation of the gear [C] is transmitted to the lower second feed roller, the lower second feed roller turns clockwise to feed the paper to the drum section.



Normally, the upper second feed roller [A] does not contact the lower second feed roller [B]. When the second feed roller sector gear [C] is moved, the upper second feed roller moves against the lower second feed roller to feed paper to the drum section.

When the sector gear [C] turns clockwise, the bearing of the lever [D] moves down from the top of the cam [E] mounted behind the sector gear, and the lever [D] and the upper roller shaft [F] turn clockwise.

As the upper roller shaft [F] is an eccentric shaft, the upper second feed roller [B] contacts the lower second feed roller and the upper second feed roller is turned by the friction of the lower second feed roller. Springs [G] apply tension to both the right and left sides of the upper second feed roller.

5.7 PAPER TABLE UP/DOWN MECHANISM

The paper table is raised and lowered by the paper table drive motor [A].

The paper end sensor [B] is actuated when the paper is set on the paper table. When the Print Start key is pressed, the paper table drive motor starts turning clockwise (X direction) and the worm gear [C] also turns. The worm wheel [D] turns clockwise and the gears [E] on the both sides turn to raise the racks [F].

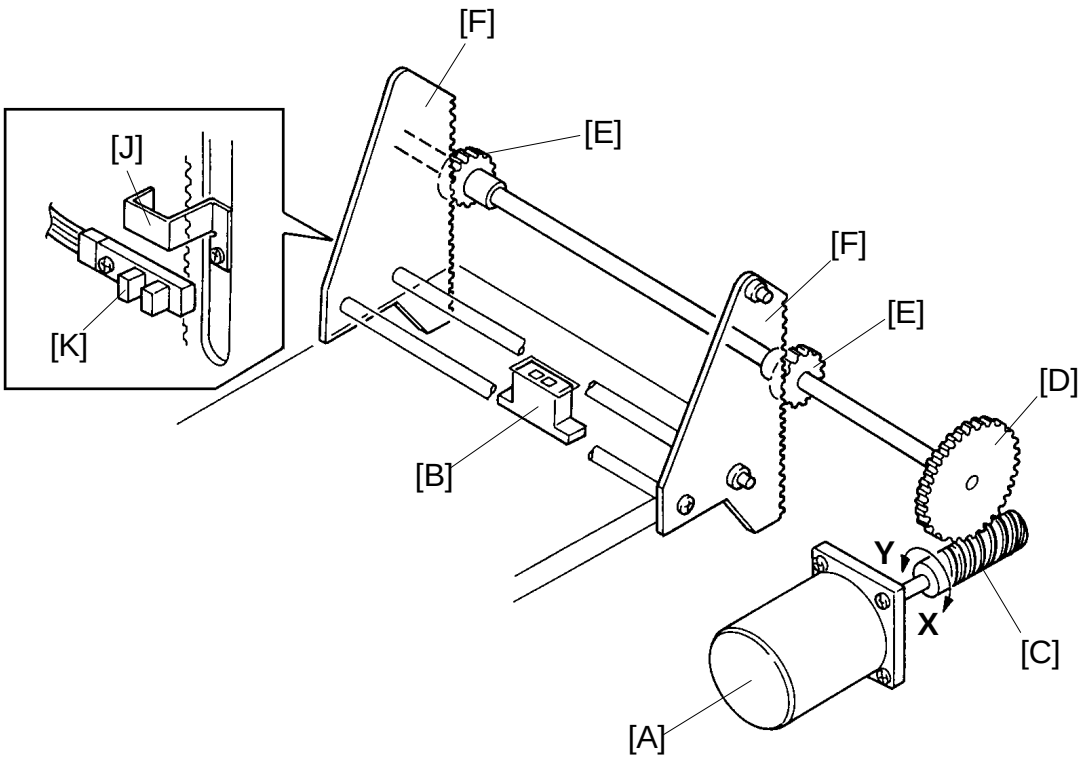
As the paper table rises, the paper pushes against the paper feed rollers [G]; thereby, raising the lever [H] which is mounted on the feed roller cover. This activates the paper table height sensor [I] (the phototransistor senses the light from the photocoupler, which up to now was cut off by the lever), causing the paper table motor to turn OFF and stop raising the paper table.

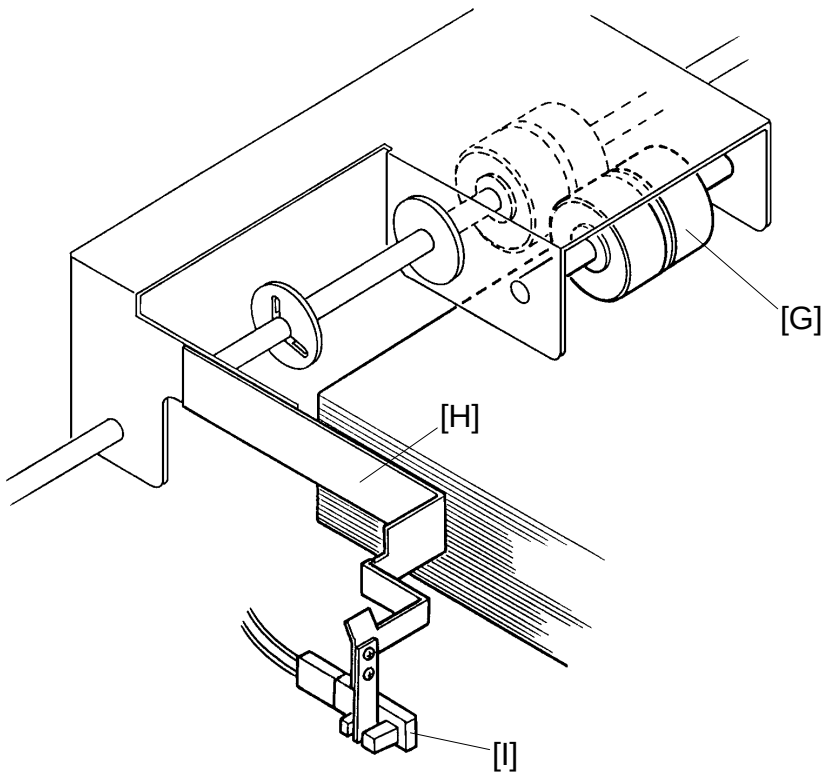
As printing proceeds and the paper level runs down, the lever [H] cuts off the light of photocoupler and the paper table motor turns clockwise until the phototransistor is reactivated. As a result, the top of the paper stack is constantly kept at the correct height.

When no paper is present, the paper end sensor is not activated and the paper table motor turns counterclockwise (Y direction) to lower the paper table. The paper table is lowered until the actuator [J] interrupts the lower limit sensor [K].

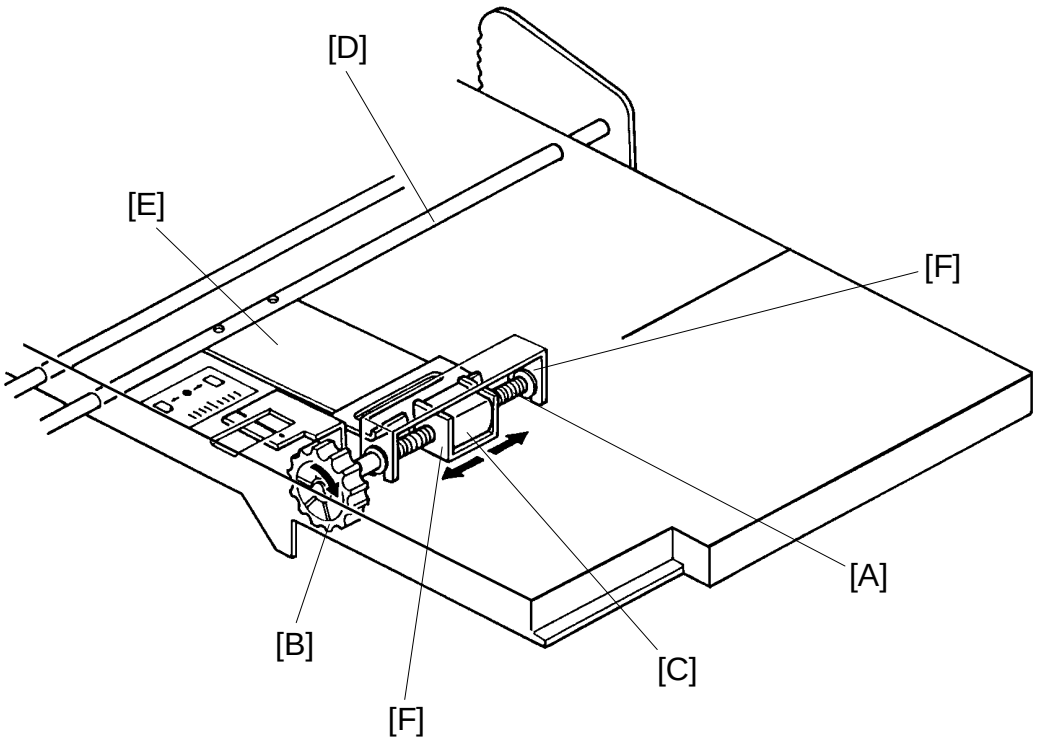
When a misfeed occurs, the paper table motor turns counterclockwise (Y direction) for one second, slightly lowering the paper table.

NOTE: The C211/C215/C216/C224/C226 model uses a photo interrupter sensor instead of a photo reflective sensor [B].


[F]
[E]
[J]
[K]
[F]
[E]
[D]
[B]
Y
X
[C]
[A]


[G]
[H]
[I]

5.8 SIDE REGISTRATION MECHANISM

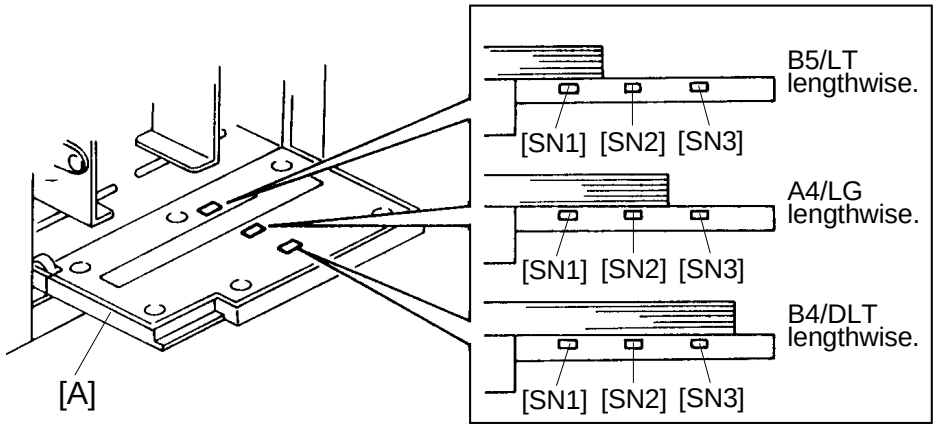


The shaft [A] of the fine adjusting dial [B] is threaded. The inside of the sleeve [C] is also threaded. The sleeve is fixed to the feed table stay [D] through a bracket [E].

The feed table brackets [F] mounted under the table are fixed on the both ends of the adjusting dial shaft.

When the fine adjusting dial is turned clockwise and the feed table moves to the right.

5.9 PAPER SIZE DETECTION: C212/C213 ONLY



The size of the paper set on the paper table is detected by the three paper size sensors (photo sensors) mounted on the paper table [A].

The master making process (Master feed direction only) is controlled according to the detected paper size so that ink will not be transferred to the pressure roller when the printing paper is smaller than the image on the master.
Paper size sensors [SN1], [SN2], and [SN3] detect the paper size before the master making process starts. The master making length in the master feeding direction is determined by sensor ON/OFF states as shown below.

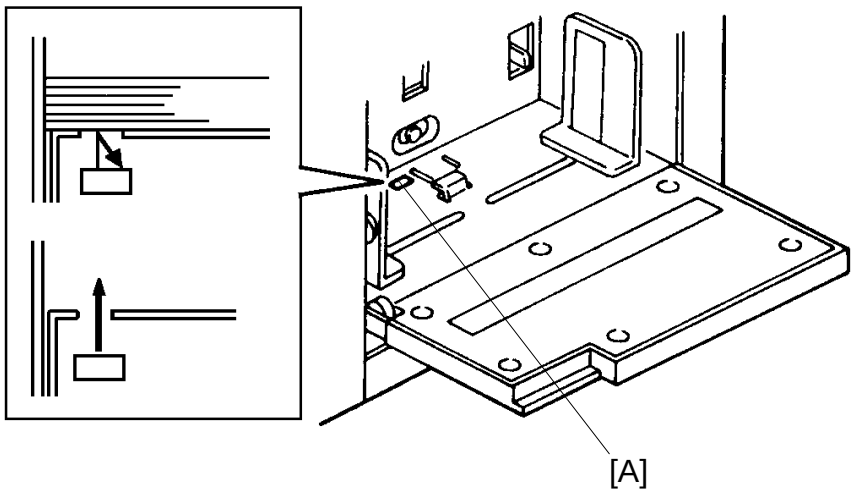
A4 Version:

Paper Size	Paper Size Sensor			Master Making Length in Normal Mode	Master Making Length in Combine 2 Originals Mode	
	SN1	SN2	SN3		More than 100% ratio	Less than 93% ratio
A3/B4 lengthwise	ON	ON	ON	354 mm	354 mm	354 mm
A4 lengthwise	ON	ON	OFF	287 mm	287 mm	291.1 mm
B5 lengthwise	ON	OFF	OFF	247 mm	247 mm	251.3 mm
A5 lengthwise B5 sideways	OFF	OFF	OFF	172 mm	172 mm	203.1 mm

LT Version:

Paper Size	Paper Size Sensor			Master Making Length in Normal Mode	Master Making Length in Combine 2 Originals Mode	
	SN1	SN2	SN3		More than 100% ratio	Less than 93% ratio
DLT lengthwise	ON	ON	ON	354 mm (13.9")	354 mm (13.9")	354 mm (13.9")
LG lengthwise	ON	ON	OFF	345.6 mm (13.6")	345.6 mm (13.6")	345.6 mm (13.6")
LT lengthwise	ON	OFF	OFF	269.4 mm (10.6")	269.4 mm (10.6")	269.4 mm (10.6")
HLT lengthwise	OFF	OFF	OFF	205.9 mm (8.1")	205.9 mm (8.1")	205.9 mm (8.1")

5.10 PAPER END DETECTION: C212/C213 ONLY



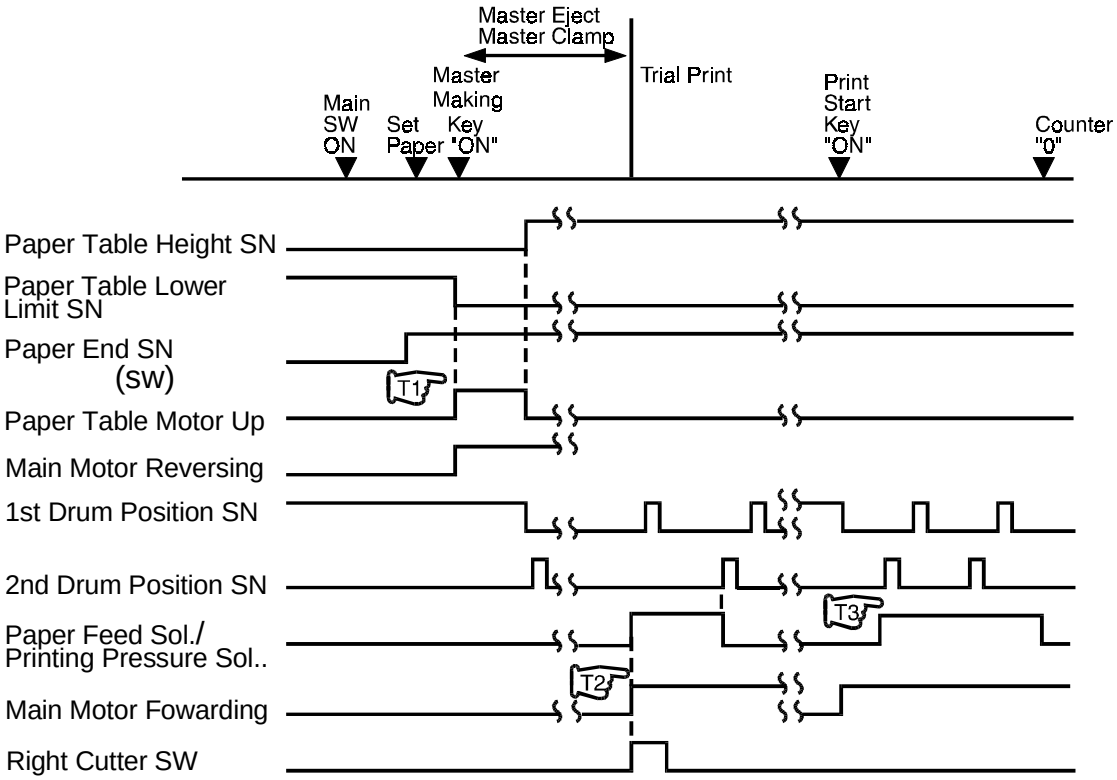
A reflective sensor [A] (non-actuator type) is used to detect paper end. This makes it possible for the optional paper cassette to be installed on the paper table.

5.11 OPTIONAL B4 PAPER CASSETTE: C212/C213 ONLY

The optional B4 paper cassette is the universal type. The paper guide plates can be adjusted to accommodate different paper sizes.

Side plate width settings:	180 ~ 260 mm (7.1" x 10.2")
Rear plate length settings:	178 ~ 188 mm (7.0" x 7.4"), 255 ~ 366 mm (10.0" x 14.4")
Paper cassette capacity:	500 sheets (66.3 g/m^2/17.6 lb)

5.12 ELECTRICAL TIMING

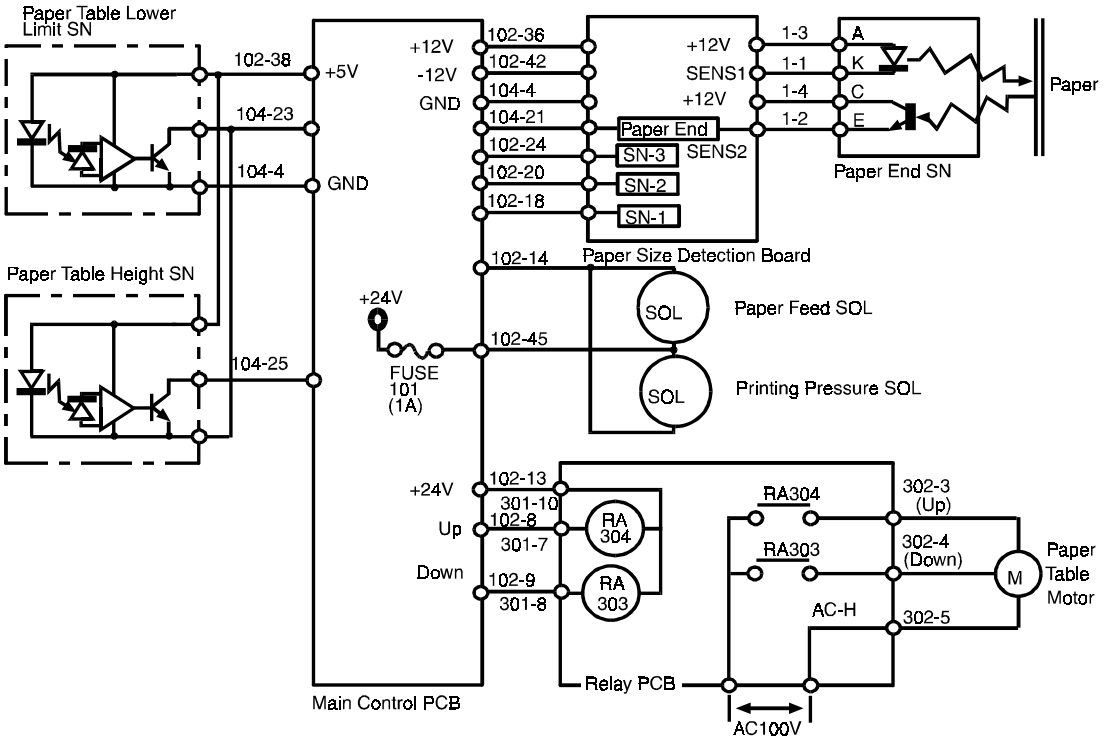


T1: When the paper end sensor is not actuated and the Master Making key is pressed, the paper table up signal turns on RA303 and the paper table motor rotates to raise the paper table. The paper table motor turns off when the paper table height sensor turns on. At the same time main motor starts rotating in the reverse direction.

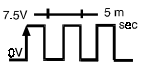
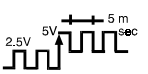
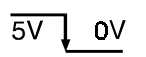
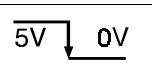
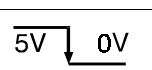
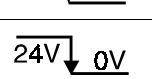
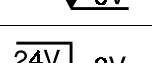
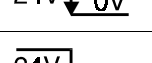
T2: After the master eject and master clamping process are over and the cutter motor is driven to the right position (right cutter switch ON) the paper feed solenoid and the printing pressure solenoid turn on. It turns off when the second drum position sensor turns on.

T3: When the Print Start key is pressed, the main motor starts rotating. When the second drum position sensor turns on, the paper feed solenoid and the printing pressure solenoid turn on again to start printing. The paper feed solenoid and the printing pressure solenoid turn off when the copy counter indicates "0".

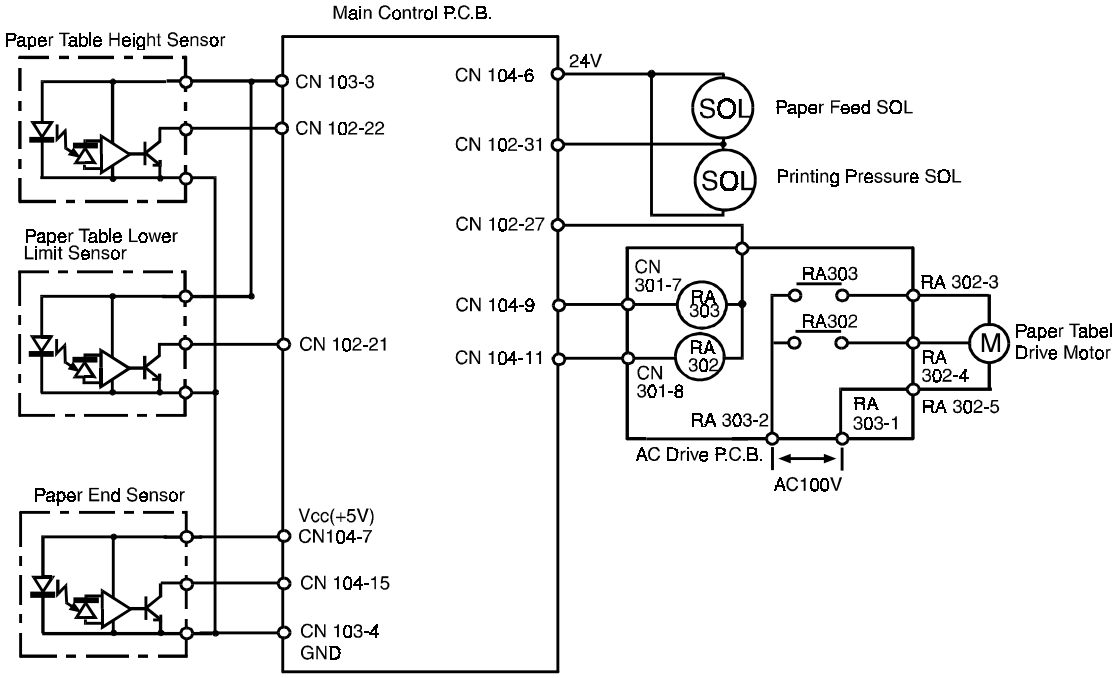
5.13 CIRCUIT: C212/C213



OUTPUTS

Signal Name	I/O	Main Control PCB		Description
		CN No	Level	
Paper Table Lower Limit Sensor	I	104-23		When the actuator is in the sensor, the voltage at CN104-23 is 7.5 V Pulse.
Paper Table Height Sensor	I	104-25		When the actuator is in the sensor, the voltage at CN104-25 is 7.5 V pulse.
Paper End Sensor	I	104-21		When paper is present, the voltage at CN104-21 is 5.0 V pulse.
Paper Size Detection Sensor 3	I	102-24		When paper is present, the voltage at CN102-24 is 0 V.
Paper Size Detection Sensor 2	I	102-20		When paper is present, the voltage at CN102-20 is 0 V.
Paper Size Detection Sensor 1	I	102-18		When paper is present, the voltage at CN102-18 is 0 V.
Paper Feed Solenoid	O	102-14		When the solenoid turns on, the voltage at CN102-14 is 0 V.
Relay: Paper Table Up	O	102-8		When the paper table is being raised, the voltage at CN102-8 is 0 V.
Relay: Paper Table Down	O	102-9		When the paper table is being lowered, the voltage at CN102-9 is 0 V.

5.14 CIRCUIT: C211

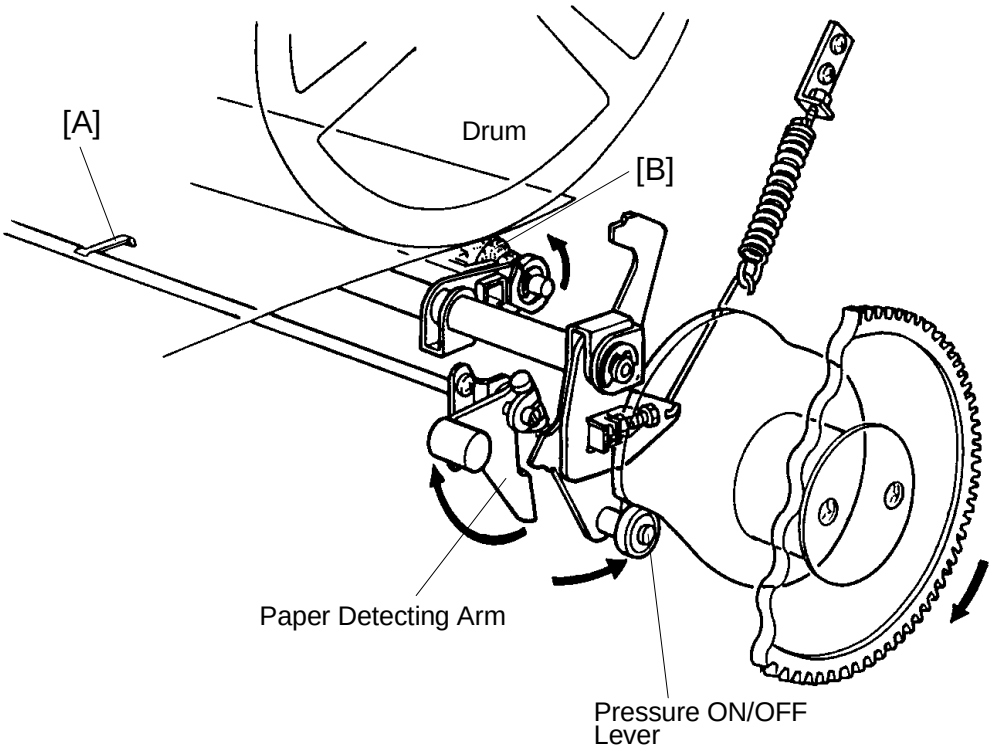


OUTPUTS

Signal Name	I/O	Main Control PCB		Description
		CN No	Level	
paper Feed Solenoid	O	102-31	24V 0V	When the solenoid turns on, the voltage at CN102-31 is 0 V
Paper Table Height Sensor	O	102-22	7.5V 5 msec 0V	When the actuator is out of the sensor, the voltage at CN102-22 is 0 V
Paper Table Lower Limit Sensor	O	102-21	7.5V 5 msec 0V	When the actuator is out of the sensor, the voltage at CN102-21 is 0 V
Relay: Paper Table Up	O	104-9	24V 0V	When the paper table is being raised, the voltage at CN104-9 is 0 V
Relay: Paper Table Down	O	104-11	24V 0V	When the paper table is being raised, the voltage at CN104-11 is 0 V
Paper End Sensor	O	104-15	7.5V 5 msec 0V	When paper is present, the voltage at CN104-15 0 V

6. PRINTING SECTION

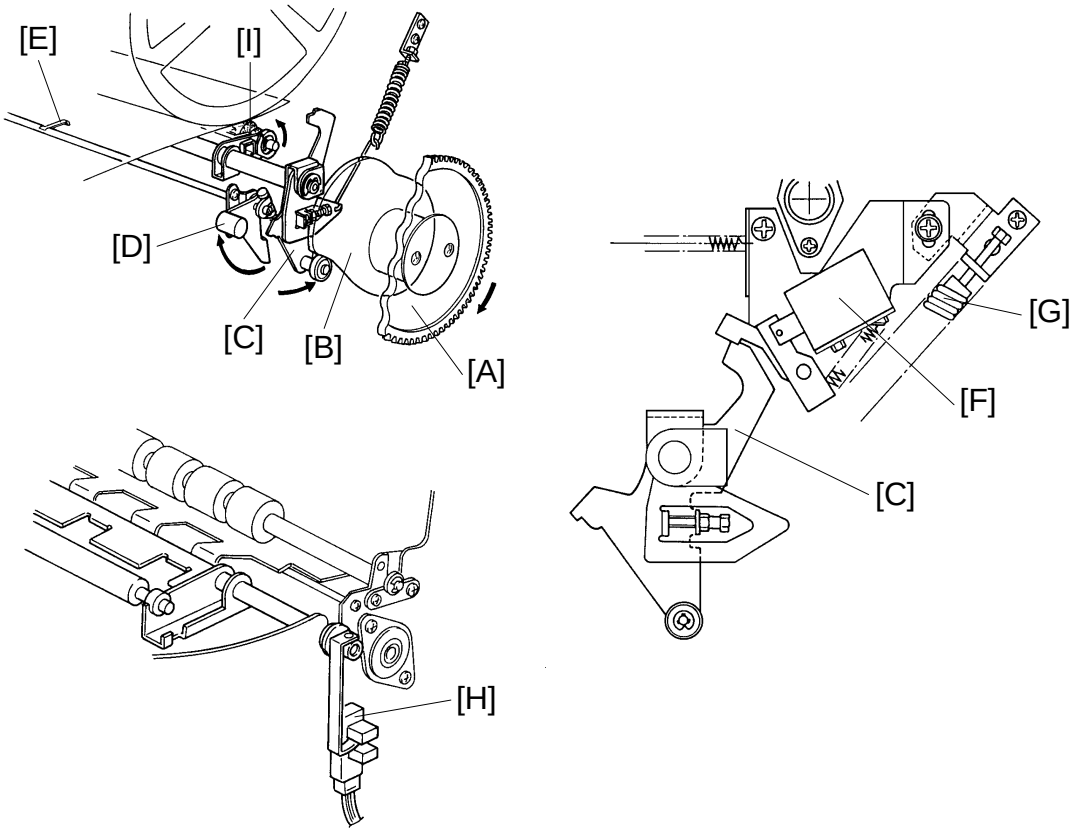
6.1 OVERALL



In this section, the paper detecting feeler [A] detects whether paper is fed correctly to the second paper feed roller section or not.

Only when the paper is correctly fed, printing pressure is applied (the pressure roller [B] contacts the drum) to transmit the ink from the master to the printing paper.

6.2 PAPER DETECTING AND PRINTING PRESSURE ON/OFF MECHANISM

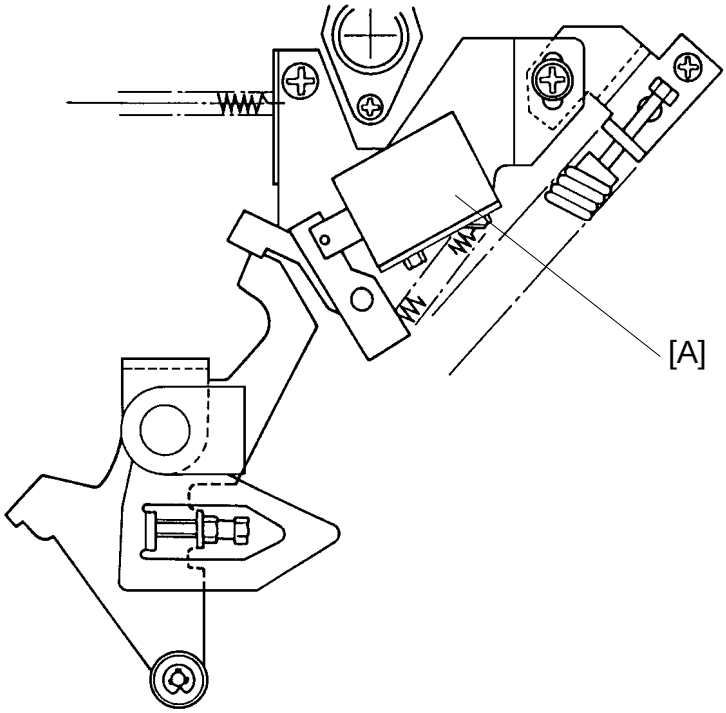


Printing Pressure ON → Printing Pressure sensor [H] is not interrupted.
Printing Pressure OFF → Printing Pressure sensor [H] is interrupted.

The main motor turns the gear [A], thus rotating the pressure cam [B]. During the printing process, the pressure cam [B] turns clockwise as the main motor turns clockwise. When paper is not fed, the pressure ON/OFF lever [C] is locked by the paper detecting arm [D]. However, when paper is fed, the bearing of the pressure ON/OFF lever [C] rides up on the top of the pressure cam [B] and slight clearance is made between the paper detecting arm [D] and the pressure ON/OFF lever [C]. At this moment, the paper turns the paper detecting feeler [E] slightly clockwise and a clearance forms in the lock section. Therefore, the paper detecting arm [D] turns clockwise, releasing the lock of the pressure ON/OFF lever [C]. Also, the printing pressure solenoid [F] turns on to release the pressure ON/OFF lever [C]. As a result, the bearing of the pressure ON/OFF lever [C] moves along the pressure cam [B] and the pressure roller [I] moves against the drum for printing.

The printing pressure is determined by the pressure spring [G] which is adjustable. The printing pressure sensor [H] is not interrupted when the press roller [I] comes near the drum.

6.3 PRINT PRESSURE RELEASE MECHANISM



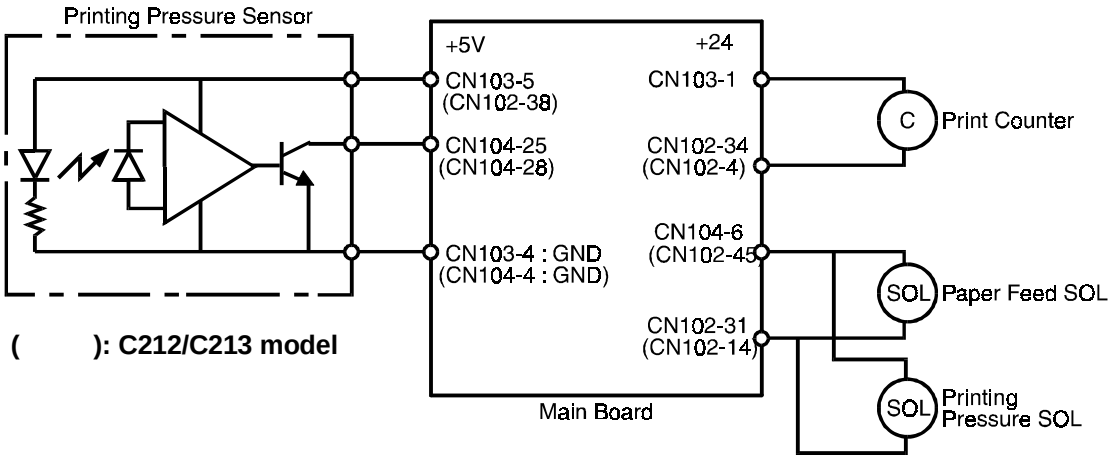
This release mechanism prevents deformation of the drum and the pressure roller when the drum is pulled out to remove misfed paper.

The printing pressure solenoid [A] is energized/de-energized at the same time as the paper feed solenoid.

When a paper misfeed occurs, the paper feed solenoid and the printing pressure solenoid are de-energized but the print pressure is still applied to the drum. This print pressure is released when the drum rotates to the drum home position after the drum rotation button is pressed.

This printing pressure release mechanism works even if the paper detecting feeler is actuated by the misfed paper.

6.4 CIRCUIT



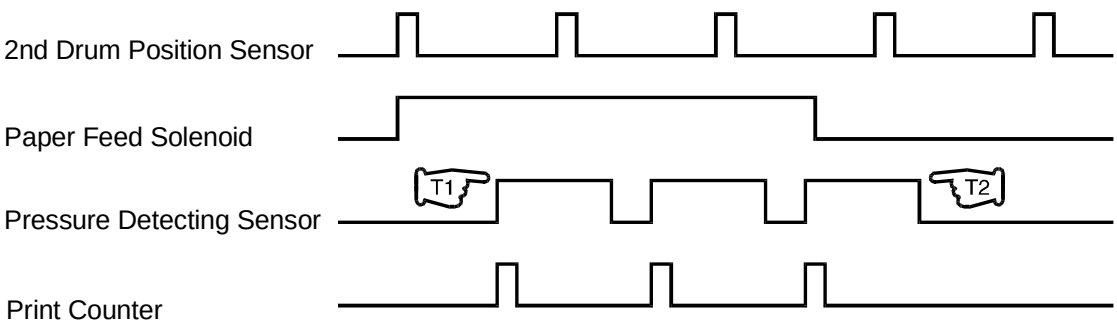
( ): C212/C213 model

OUTPUTS

Signal Name	I/O	Main Control PCB		Description
		CN No.	Level	
Printing Pressure Sensor	I	CN104-25 (CN104-28)	7.5V, 0V, 5 m sec	When the pressure is applied the voltage at CN104-25 (CN104-28) is 0 V.
Printing Pressure Solenoid	O	CN102-31 (CN102-14)	24V, 0V	When the printing pressure solenoid turn on, the voltage at CN102- 31 (CN102-14) 0 V.

( ): C212/C213 model

6.5 ELECTRICAL TIMING

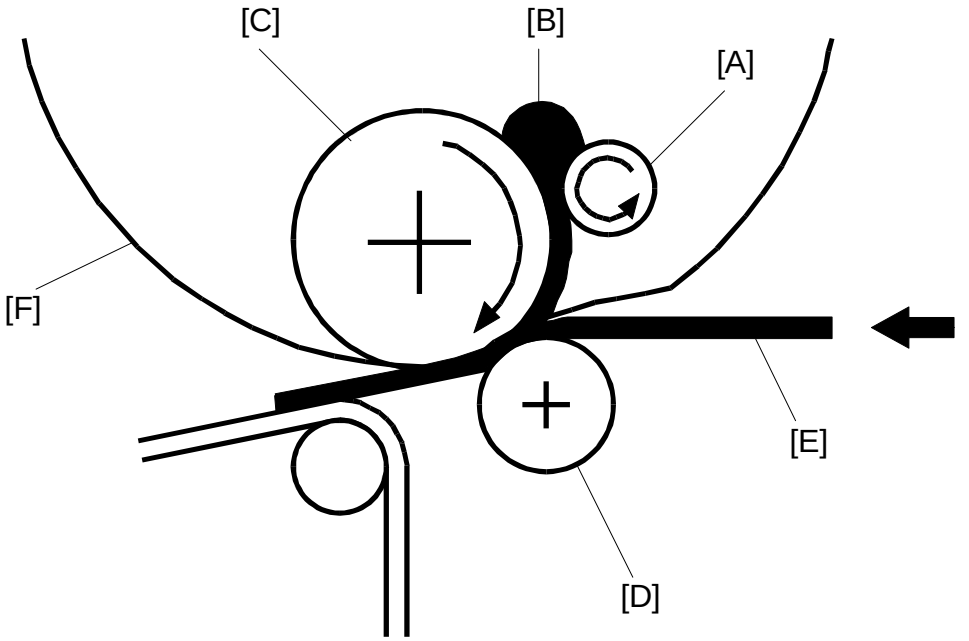


T1: When the printing pressure is applied and the printing pressure sensor is not interrupted, the print counter signal is applied for 100 milliseconds to increase the print counter and decrease the counter on the operation panel.

T2: When the printing pressure sensor is not interrupted and the copy counter on the operation panel indicates "0", the paper feed solenoid and the printing pressure solenoid turn off to stop paper feeding and to release the printing pressure.

7. DRUM SECTION

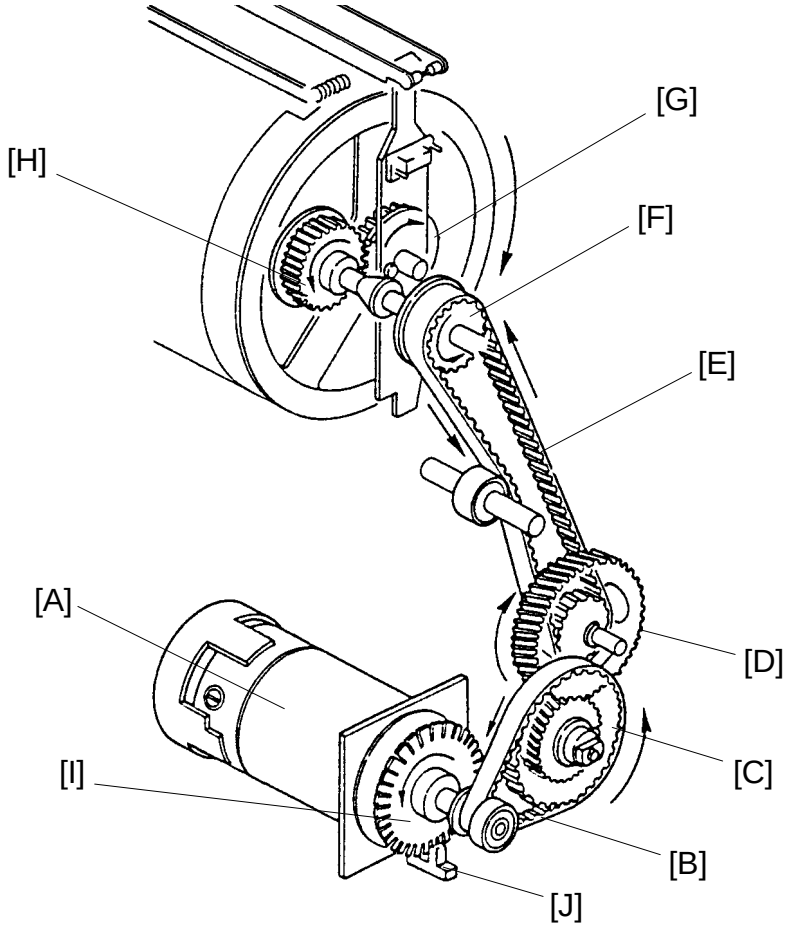
7.1 OVERALL



[A]: Doctor Roller
[B]: Ink
[C]: Ink Roller
[D]: Pressure Roller
[E]: Paper
[F]: Drum

In this section, ink is supplied from the ink cartridge and is applied to the ink roller uniformly. The ink is then transferred to the printing paper through the holes in the master.

7.2 DRUM ROTATION MECHANISM



The main motor (DC motor) [A], located under the rear side plate, turns the drum either clockwise or counterclockwise by means of belt [B], gears [C] [D], belt [E], and pulley [F].

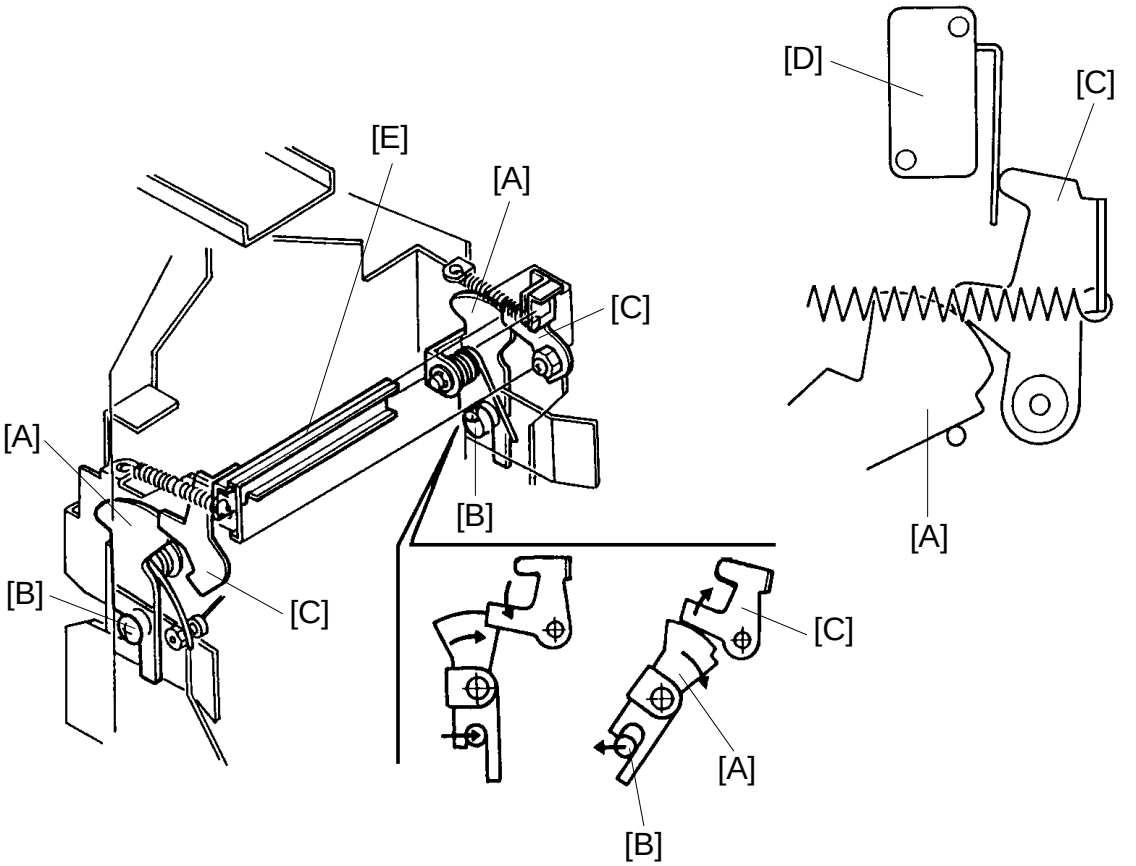
The drive mechanism uses helical gears, which turn more quietly. Gear [H] at the rear of the machine and gear [G] at the rear end of the drum unit have special grooves that prevent gear [G] from engaging gear [H] if gear [H] is not at the correct position.

Pulse disk [I] and sensor [J] on the main motor shaft check the drum rotation speed.

When the drum is at the original stop position, the drum actuator interrupts the first drum position sensor and the drum unit can be pulled out from the machine.

NOTE: The C211 model uses a gear instead of a timing belt [B].

7.3 DRUM LOCK MECHANISM 1

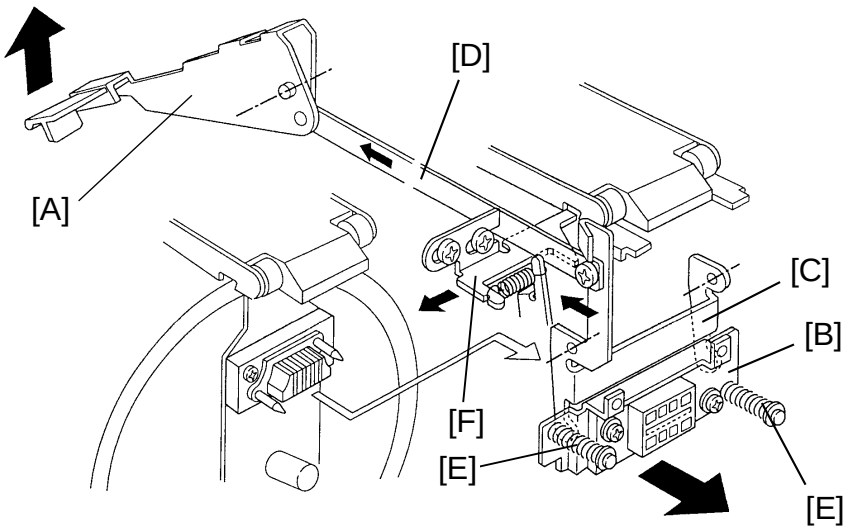


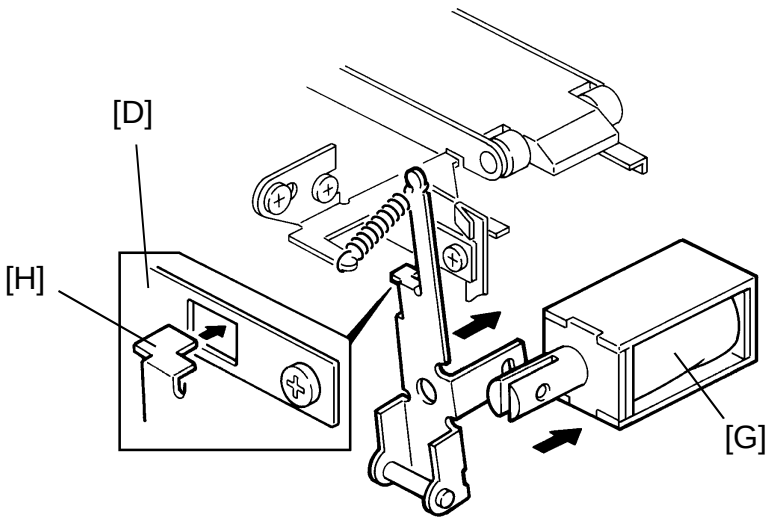
When the drum unit is set in the machine, the arm [A] is turned counterclockwise by the lock pin [B]. The top of the arm is locked by the stopper [C] to lock the drum in the machine completely. At the same time, the drum detecting switch [D] is turned on by the top of the stopper [C].

When pulling the lever [E] to the operation side, the stopper [C] is turned clockwise and the stopper is released from the arm [A] due to spring tension. Therefore, the locking mechanism of the drum is also released.

7.4 DRUM LOCK MECHANISM 2

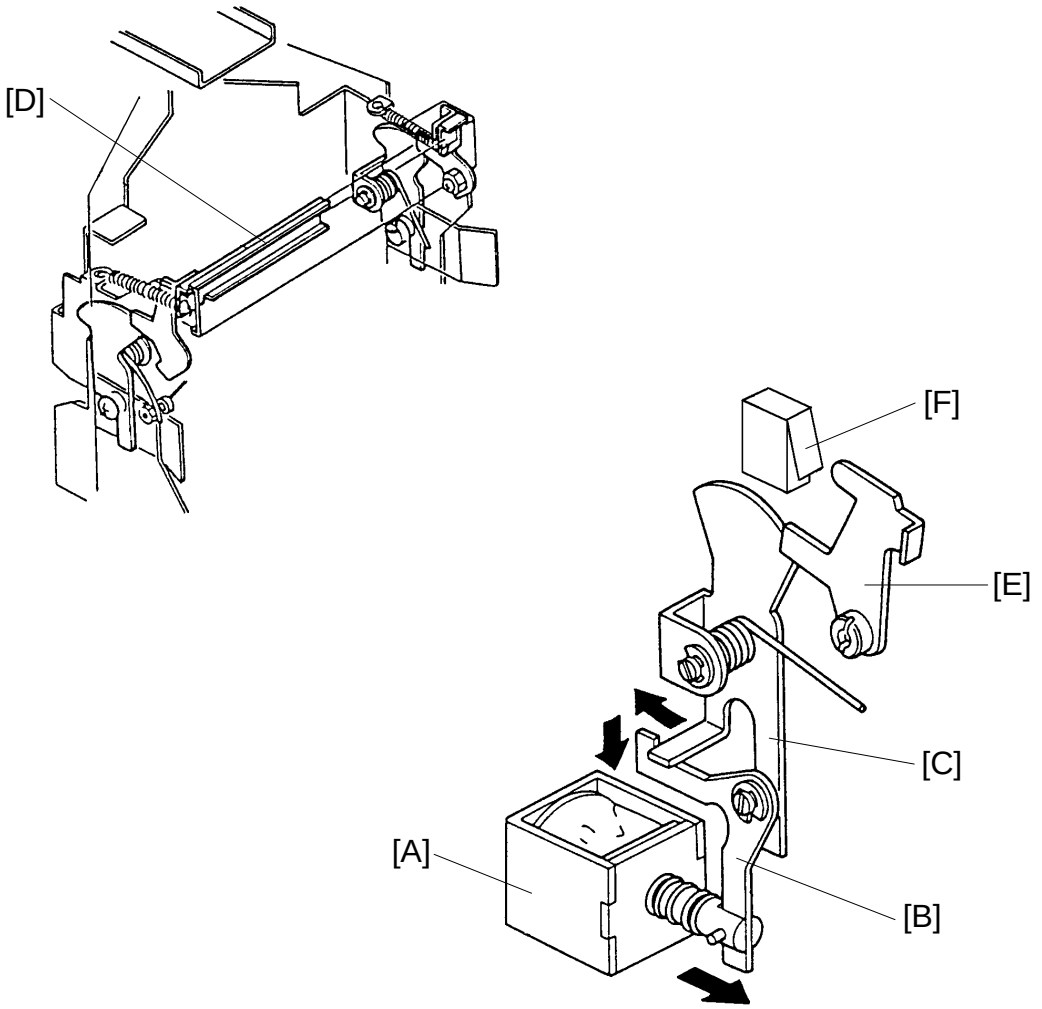
7.4.1 C215/C216/C224/C226





When the drum release lever [A] in front of the machine is raised, the connector [B] is pushed away from the drum by the bracket [C] through the link [D] to be disconnected. The connector moves only horizontally due to the guidance of the shafts [E]. The bracket [C] also pushes the drum lock lever [F] to release the drum lock allowing the drum to be removed.
While the drum is out of home position, the drum lock solenoid [G] is energized and the stopper [H] locks the link [D] not to be pulled. The solenoid is de-energized when the drum stops at the home position (1st drum home position sensor is actuated).

7.4.2 C212/C213

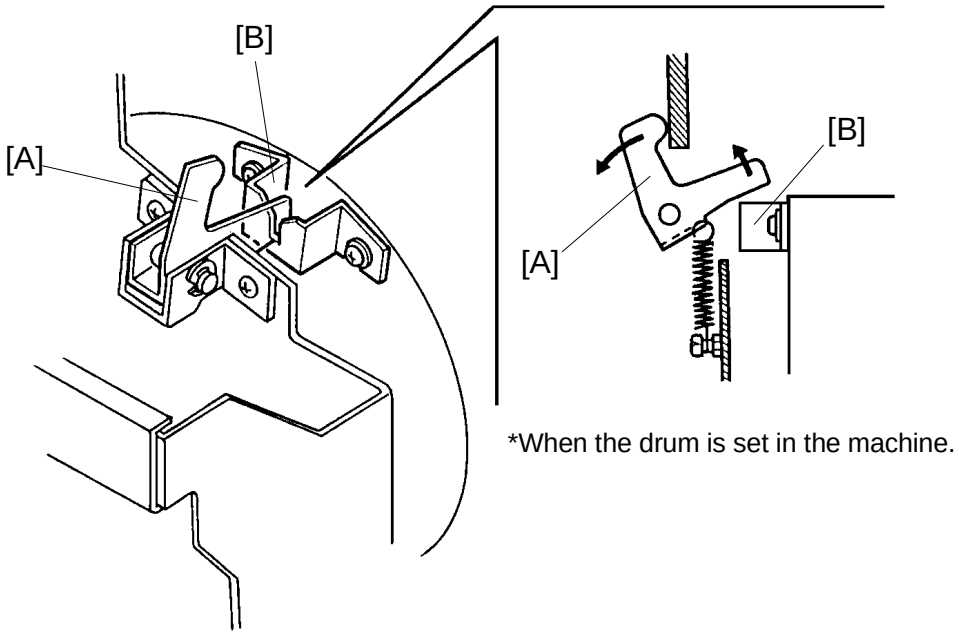


The drum lock solenoid [A] turns on when the copy cycle is interrupted by opening a cover or turning off the main switch. Arm [B] then locks arm [C] in place. This prevents the drum from being removed.

When lever [D] is pulled towards the front of the machine, arm [E] raises and the drum safety switch [F] turns off. With the safety switch off, the drum will not rotate when the Drum Rotation button is pressed. Push in on the drum handle to turn on the safety switch and enable the Drum Rotation button.

NOTE: Lever [D] is pulled out when the user attempts to pull the drum unit out before returning the drum to the original position.

7.5 DRUM LOCK MECHANISM 3

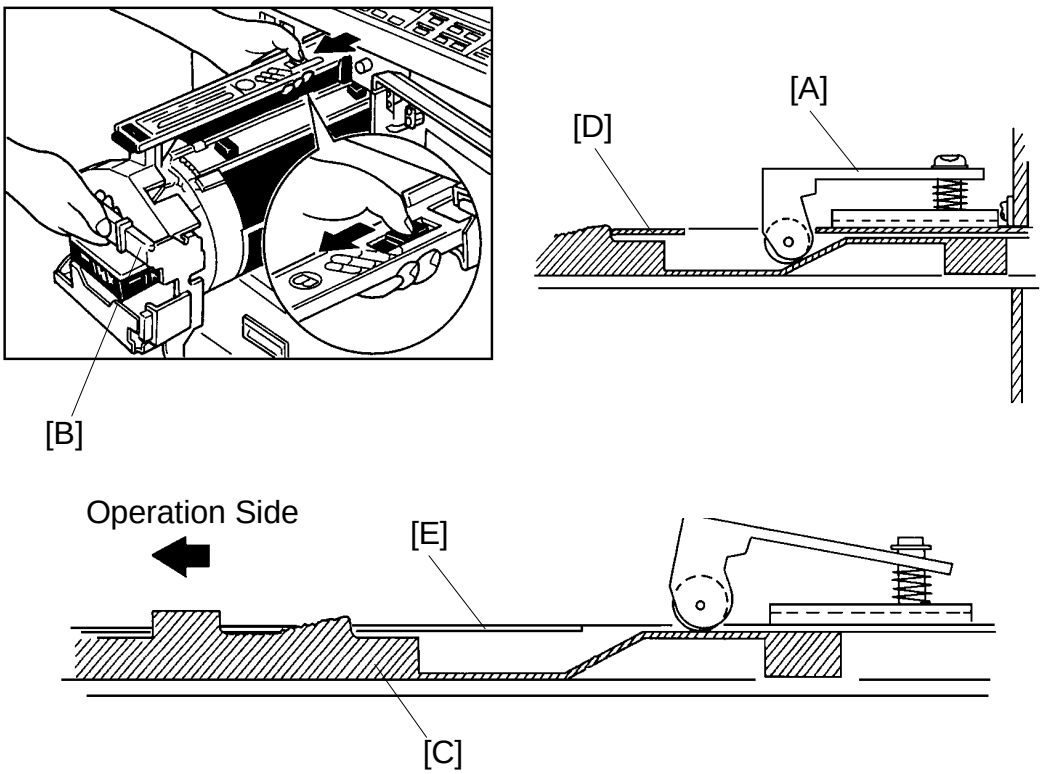


*When the drum is set in the machine.

To prevent the drum from rotating when the drum is pulled out of the machine, the drum stopper [A] drops into the drum lock [B] to secure the drum.

When the drum is installed in the machine, the drum stopper [A] is held out of the drum lock by the side plate of the machine.

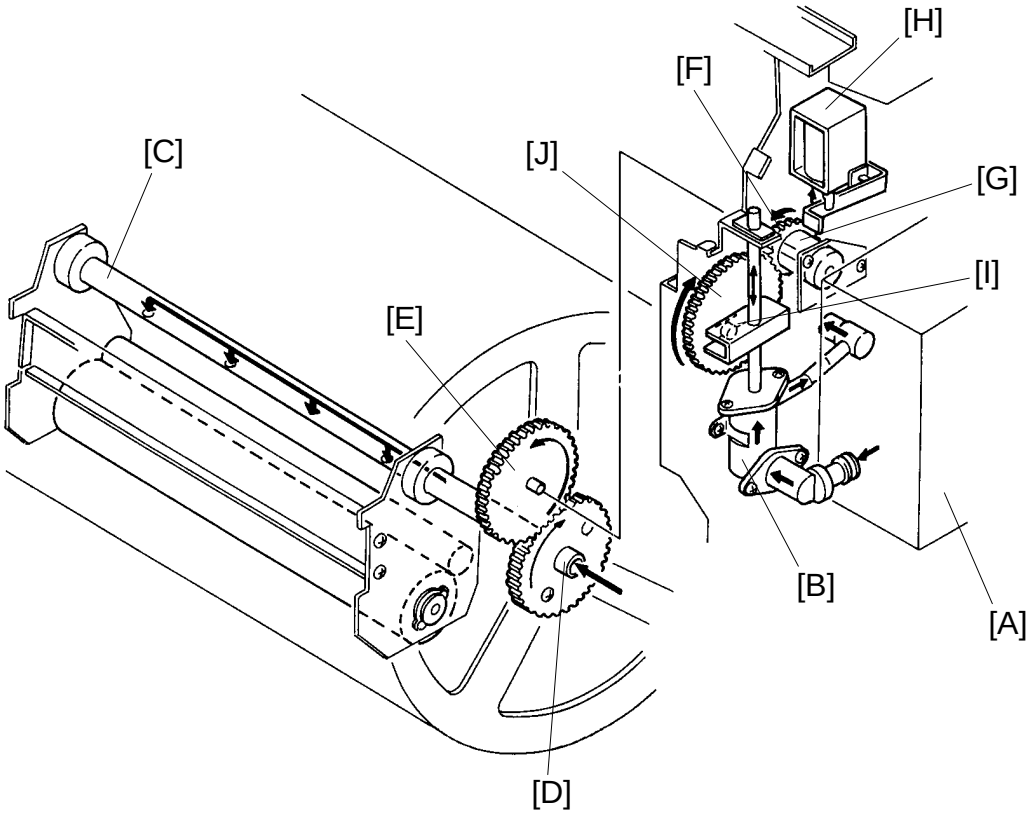
7.6 DRUM LOCK MECHANISM 4



When the drum is pulled out, the drum stopper [A] drops down into the hole as shown in the figure and the drum stopper stops the drum unit from being pulled out any further.
In this condition, if the operator pull the handle [B], the drum unit cannot drop.

When the stopper releasing lever [C] is moved to the operation side as illustrated in the direction of the allow, the drum stopper releasing lever pushes up the drum stopper [D] to the same level as the drum rail cover[E]. This allows the drum to be removed.

7.7 INK SUPPLY MECHANISM



Ink is supplied from the ink cartridge [A] to the ink roller by the ink pump [B] through 4 holes in the drum shaft [C].

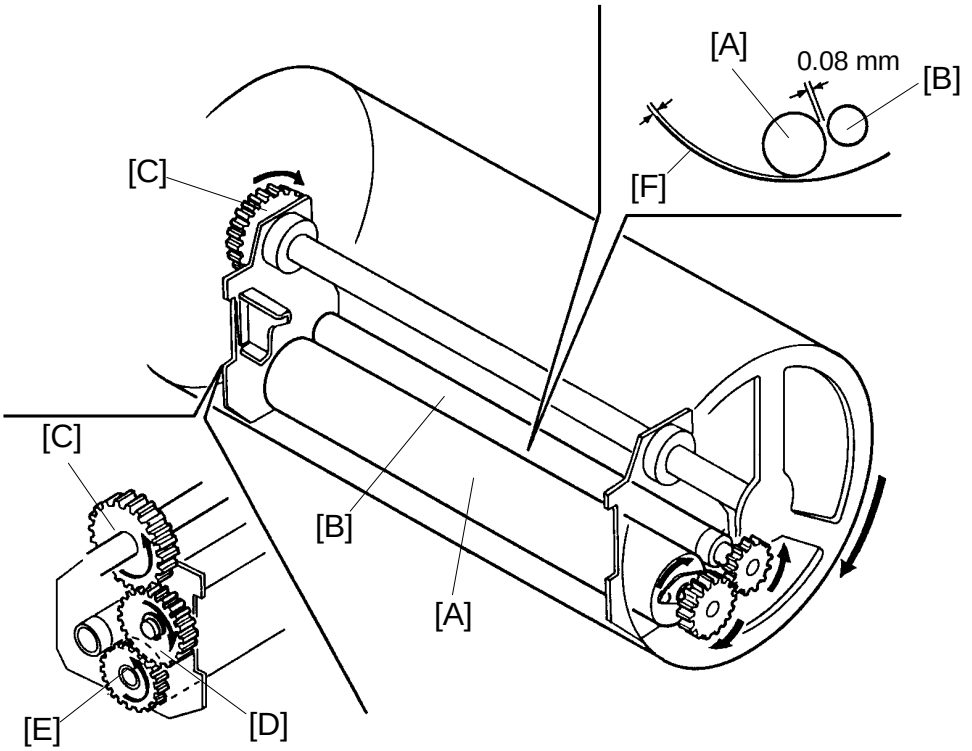
Drum rotation is transmitted through gear [D] to gear [E].
However, rotation is not transmitted to gear [F] due to the spring clutch [G].

When the ink on the ink roller decreases and the ink detector turns on, the ink supply solenoid [H] turns on and the ink supply stopper [I] releases from the clutch sleeve allowing the gear [F] and gear [J] to turn.

The pin [H] moves the pump shaft up and down as gear [J] rotates. Therefore, the ink in the ink cartridge is sucked into the pump. The pump then pushes the ink out onto the ink roller through the 4 holes in the drum shaft [C].

* One stroke of the ink pump occurs for every 2 rotations of the drum.

7.8 INK KNEADING MECHANISM



The ink kneading mechanism consists of the ink roller [A] which rotates with the drum and the doctor roller [B] which ensures that the ink is supplied evenly to the ink roller.

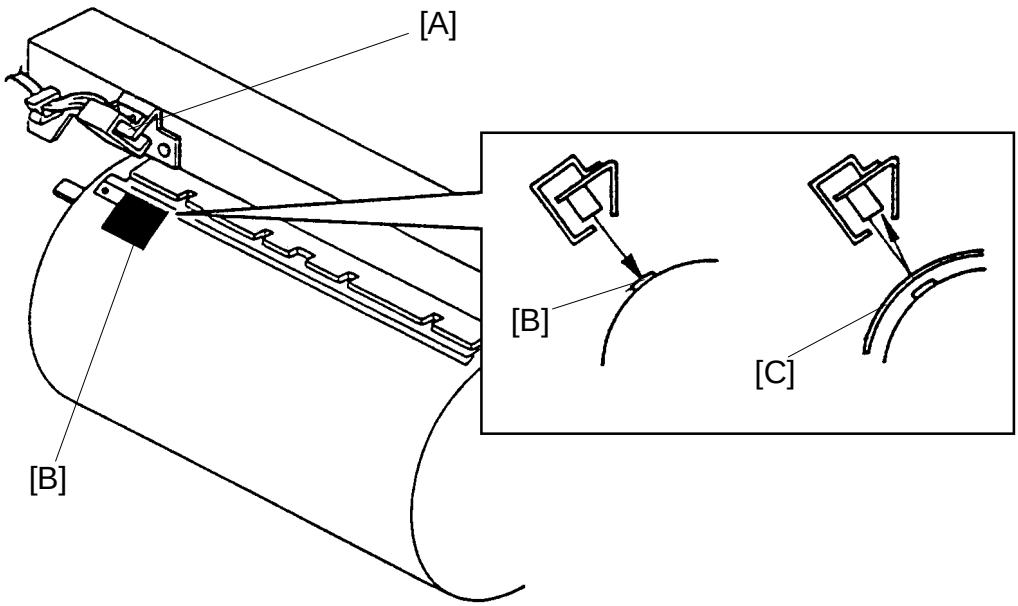
The ink roller rotates due to the gear [C], which rotates with the drum, through idle gear [D] and gear [E] mounted on the ink roller. The ink roller rotates 1.5 times faster than the drum.

The doctor roller is adjusted to give a distance of 0.08 millimeters between itself and the ink roller. It rotates to create an even thickness of ink.

The ink roller does not contact the screen [F] when not printing. However, during the printing process, the ink on the ink roller is transmitted to the print paper through holes in the screen and the master while the drum screen is held against the master by the pressure roller located under the drum.

Gear [E] has a one-way clutch to prevent the ink roller from rotating in the reverse direction when the drum turns in the reverse direction during the master eject process.

7.9 DRUM MASTER DETECTION: C212/C213 ONLY

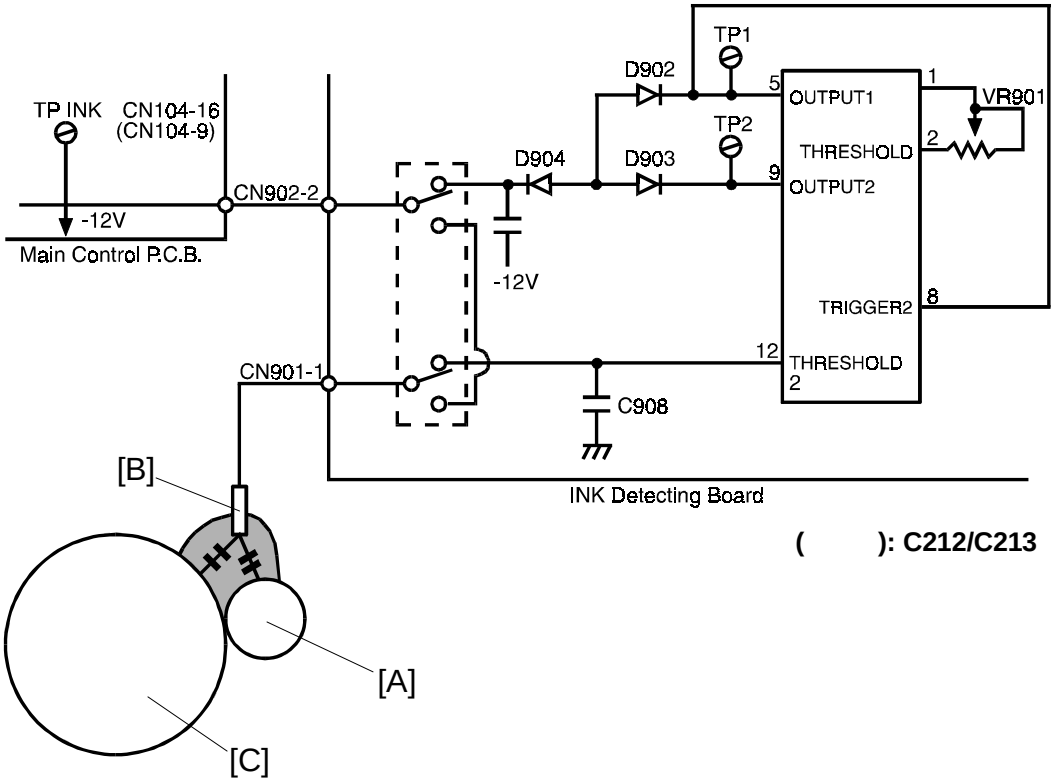


The drum master detection sensor [A] mounted on the drum rail detects whether the master is on the drum.

When there is a master on the drum, the black seal [B] is covered and the sensor detects the light reflected from the master [C]. Printing starts when the Print Start key is pressed.

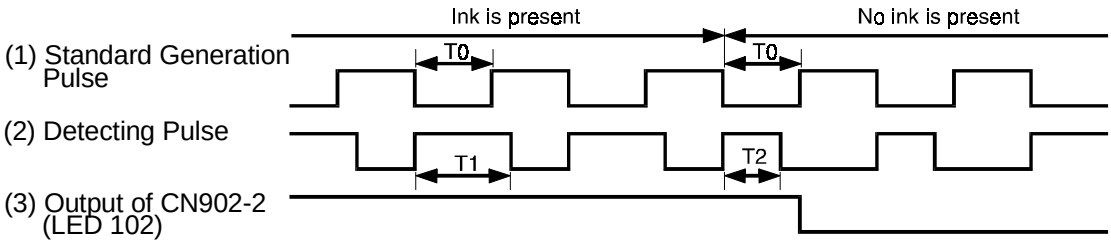
When there is no master on the drum, the black seal is exposed. The black seal does not reflect light back to the sensor. The "M" indicator blinks and printing does not start when the Print Start key is pressed. The Master Making key can only be pressed after an original is set on the original table.

7.10 INK DETECTION



[A]: Doctor Roller
[B]: Detecting Pin
[C]: Ink Roller

The ink detection circuit consists of an electrode (detecting pin), to detect the electrostatic capacity and a multivibrator. The pulse generated by the multivibrator is different when ink is present and when ink is not present. This pulse is compared to a standard pulse to detect whether or not there is ink in the drum.

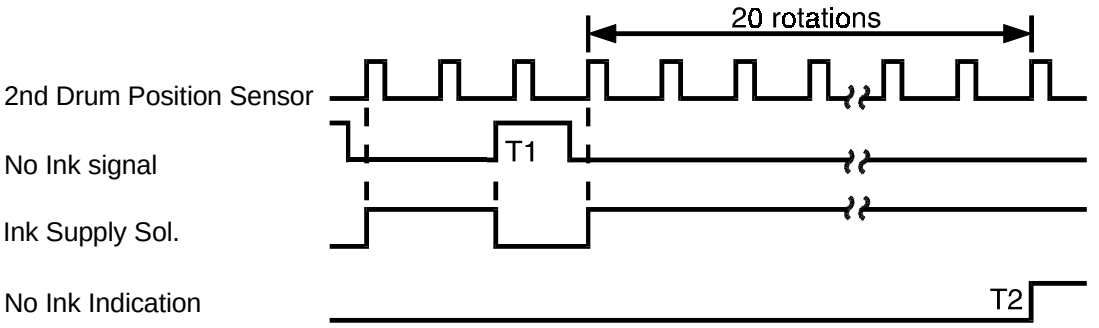


(1) The standard pulse is output from OUTPUT 1. The pulse length (T_0) can be adjusted by adjusting VR901.

(2) OUTPUT 2 is the detection pulse. The time constant is determined by C908 and the ink. The detection pulse is triggered by the rising edge of the standard pulse.
When ink is present, the electrostatic capacity increases and the pulse length (T_1) becomes longer. On the other hand, when ink is not present, the pulse length (T_2) becomes shorter as the electrostatic capacity decreases.

(3) The pulse length (T_1 or T_2) is compared with the standard pulse (T_0). When the time constant (T_2 = No ink) is shorter than the standard pulse (T_0), the output of CN902-2 goes low.

7.11 ELECTRICAL TIMING

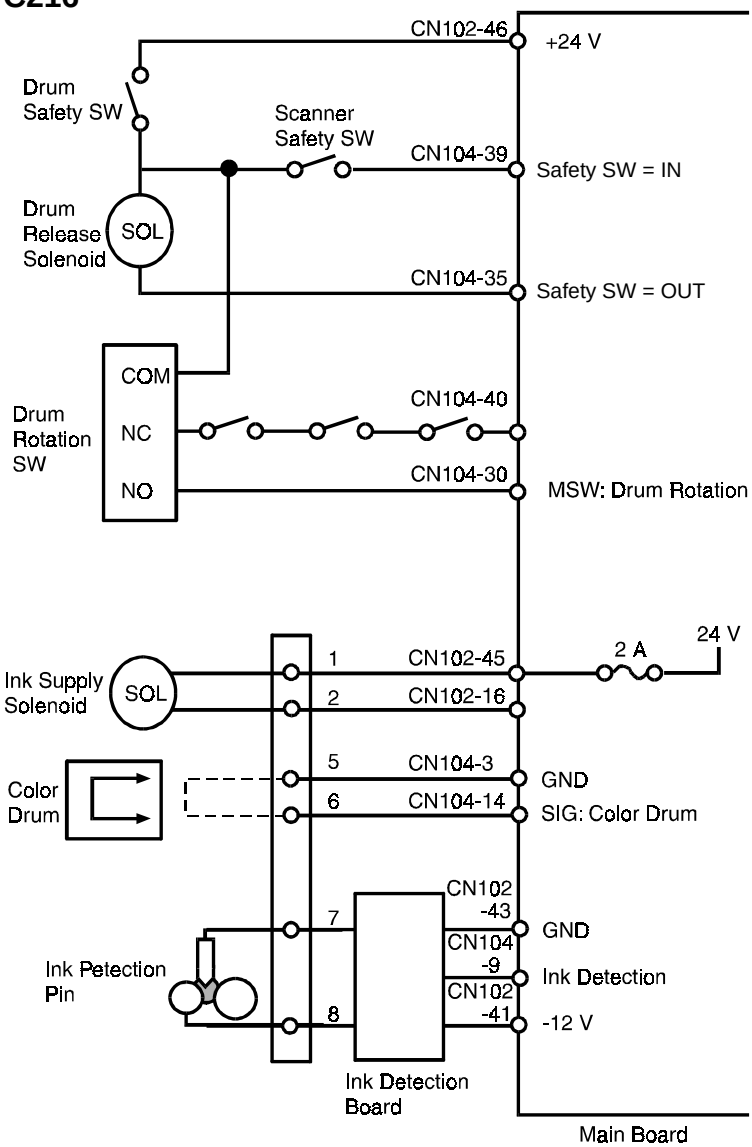


T1: After all the ink has been consumed and the no ink signal is HIGH,the ink supply solenoid turns on at the rising edge of the second drum position sensor signal. The ink supply solenoid turns off when the no ink signal goes HIGH.

T2: If after the ink supply solenoid turns on the drum turns a further 20 rotations and the no ink signal remains LOW, the No Ink indicator (D + ⏎) blinks.
When the "0" key and "Reset" key are pressed while the No Ink indicator (D + ⏎) blinks, the drum turns 40 rotations.
When the No Ink Signal goes HIGH during the 40 drum rotations, the ink supply solenoid is de-energized.

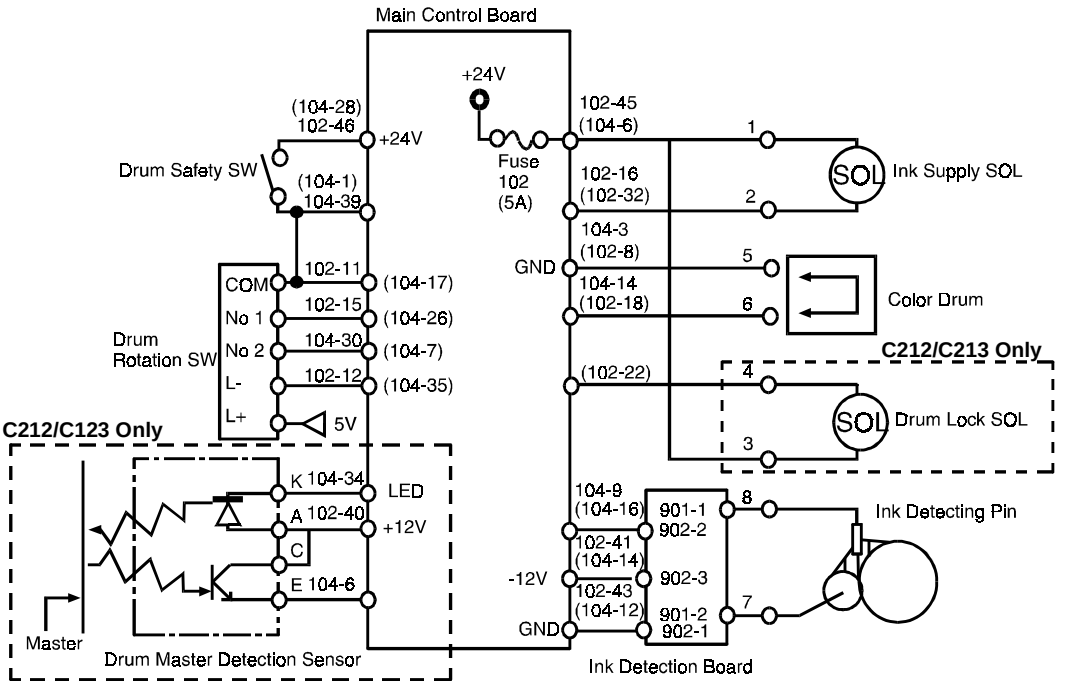
7.12 CIRCUIT

7.12.1 C215/C216



Component Name	I/O	ID Conversion Board		Description
		CN No		
MSW: Drum Rotation	I	104-30	0V ↑ 24V	When the drum rotation SW is pressed, CN104-30 goes to 24 V.
Ink Supply SOL	O	102-16	24V ↓ 0V	When the solenoid is turned on, CN102-16 goes to 0 V.
Drum Release SOL	O	104-35	24V ↓ 0V	When the drum position sensor 1 is deactuated, CN104-35 goes to 0 V.
Ink Detection PCB	I	104-9	12V ↓ 0V	When there is no ink on the ink roller, CN104-9 goes to 0 V.

7.12.2 C211/C212/C213



( ): C211 model

OUTPUTS

Signal Name	I/O	Main Control PCP		Description
		CN NO	Level	
Drum Rotation SW	I	104-30 (104-7)	24V ↓ 0V	When the drum rotation switch is pressed, the voltage at CN104-30 (CN104-7) is 0 V.
Drum Master Detection (LED): **C212/C213 Only**	0	104-34	0V ↑ 12V	When the main switch is turned on, the voltage at CN104-34 is 12 V.
Drum Master Detection (Master): **C212/C213 Only**	I	104-6	0V ↑ 0.01V	When the master is wrapped on the drum, the voltage is 0.01 V at CN104-6 and 3.5 V at TP101.(When no master is on the drum, TP101 is less than 1.5 V.)
Ink Supply SOL	0	102-16 (102-32)	24V ↓ 0V	When the solenoid turns on, the voltage at CN102-16 (CN102-32) is 0 V.
Drum Lock SOL: **C212/C213 Only**	0	102-22	24V ↓ 0V	When the cover open indicator is displayed and the 1st drum position sensor is not interrupted, the voltage at CN102-22 is 0 V.
Ink Detection	I	104-9 (104-16)	0V ↓ -12V	When there is no ink on the ink roller, the voltage at CN104-8 is -12 V.

( ): C211 model

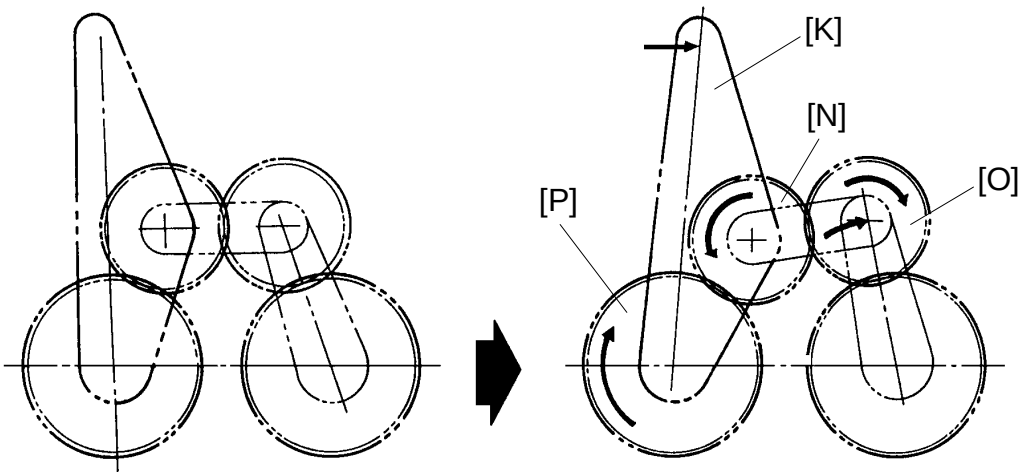
8. IMAGE SHIFTING SECTION

8.1 OVERALL

The image on the printing paper can be shifted 20 millimeters either backwards or forward using the Image Shift keys on the operation panel.

The image position is adjusted by the image shifting motor which changes the paper feed timing by turning the first paper feed and second feed cams.

8.2 IMAGE SHIFTING MECHANISM

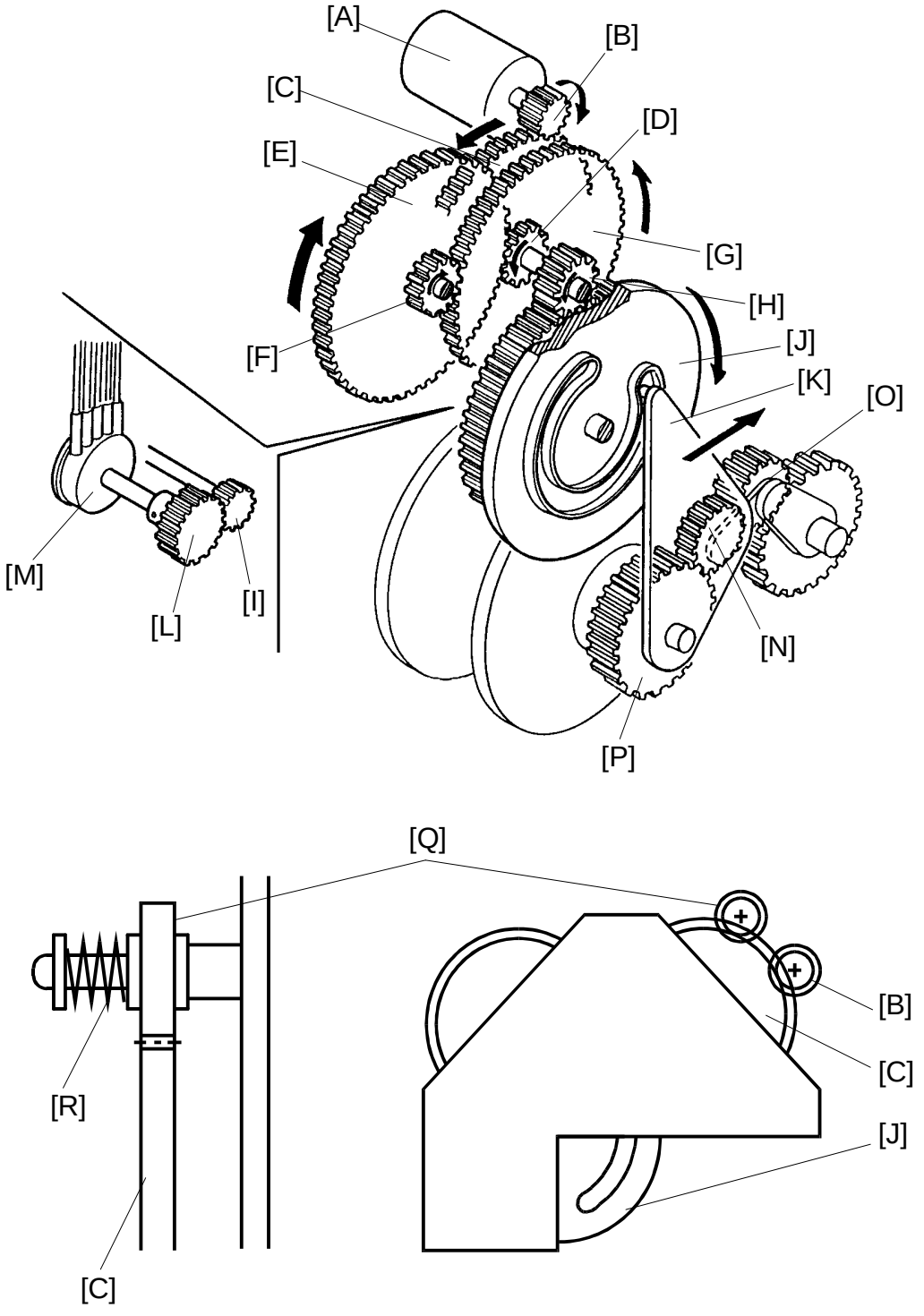


When the forward key (+key) is pressed, the image shifting motor [A] turns clockwise (in the direction of the arrow) and drives cam gear [J] clockwise through gears [B], [C], [D], [E], [F], [G] and [H] as illustrated on the next page.

The cam gear [J] has a spiral track which the lever [K] moves along. When the cam gear turns clockwise, the pin of the lever [K] moves towards the outside of the cam gear [J]. Therefore, the lever [K] moves clockwise.

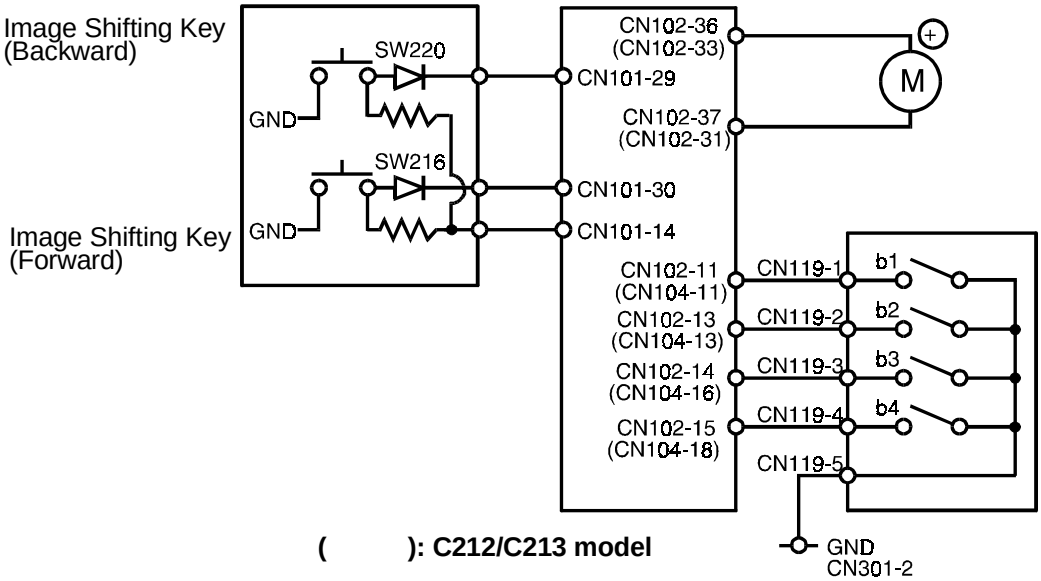
The lever [K] drives the gear [O] clockwise through the gear [N] and the first paper feed and second feed cams mounted on the shaft of the gear [P] turn clockwise. As a result, the paper feed start timing is delayed compared with drum rotation timing and the image position is moved in the forward direction.

When the cam gear [J] turns, the gear [I] located behind the gear [J] turns and the encoder [M] mounted on the gear [L] turns to check the image shifting position.



This brake mechanism prevents the print image from shifting during the printing process. The gear [Q] pressed by spring [R] is used to brake the gear [C].

8.3 ELECTRICAL OPERATION:

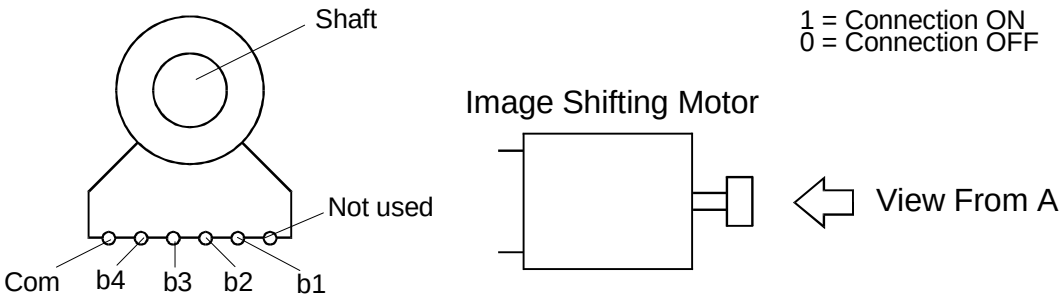


When the Image Shifting key (forward key = SW216) is pressed, CN102-37 (CN102-31) becomes 22 V and CN102-36 (CN102-33) becomes 0 V. Thus, the image shifting motor turns clockwise. (View from A as shown below.)

On the other hand, when the Image Shifting key (backward key = SW220) is pressed, CN102-36 (CN102-33) becomes 22 V and CN102-37 (CN102-31) becomes 0 V. Thus the image shifting motor turns counterclockwise. (View from A as shown below.)

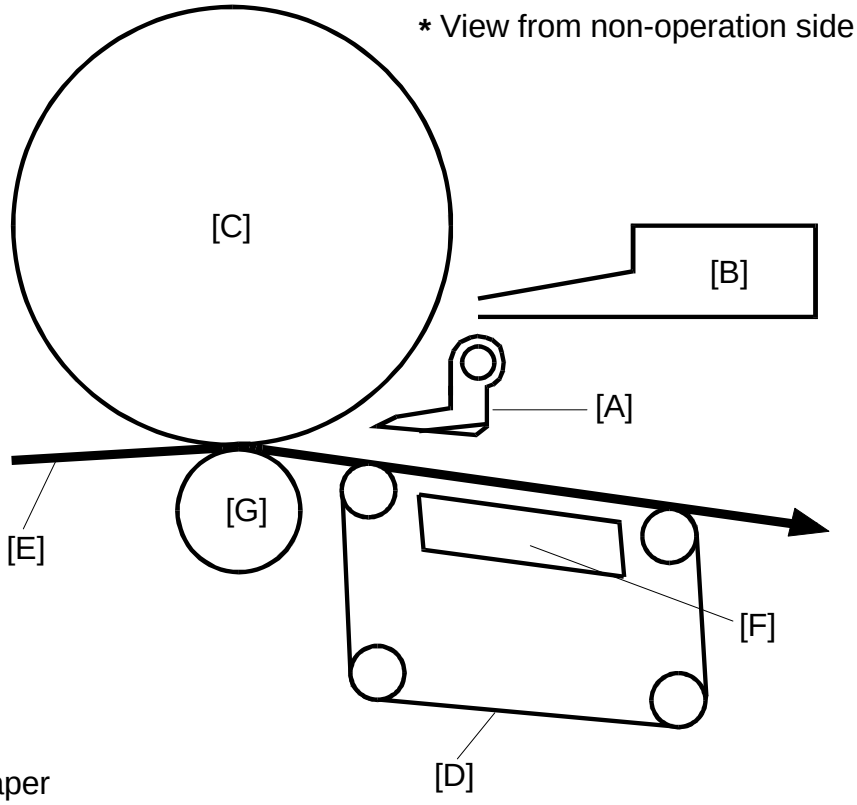
To check the image position, an encoder, which converts 16 positions to 4 bit data, is used.

	← Image Shift Area →															
	(+)						0									(–)
Position	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16
Hexadecimal No.	0	1	3	2	6	7	5	4	C	D	F	E	A	B	9	8
b1	0	1	1	0	0	1	1	0	0	1	1	0	0	1	1	0
b2	0	0	1	1	1	1	0	0	0	0	1	1	1	1	0	0
b3	0	0	0	0	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	0	0	0	0
b4	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	0



9. DELIVERY SECTION

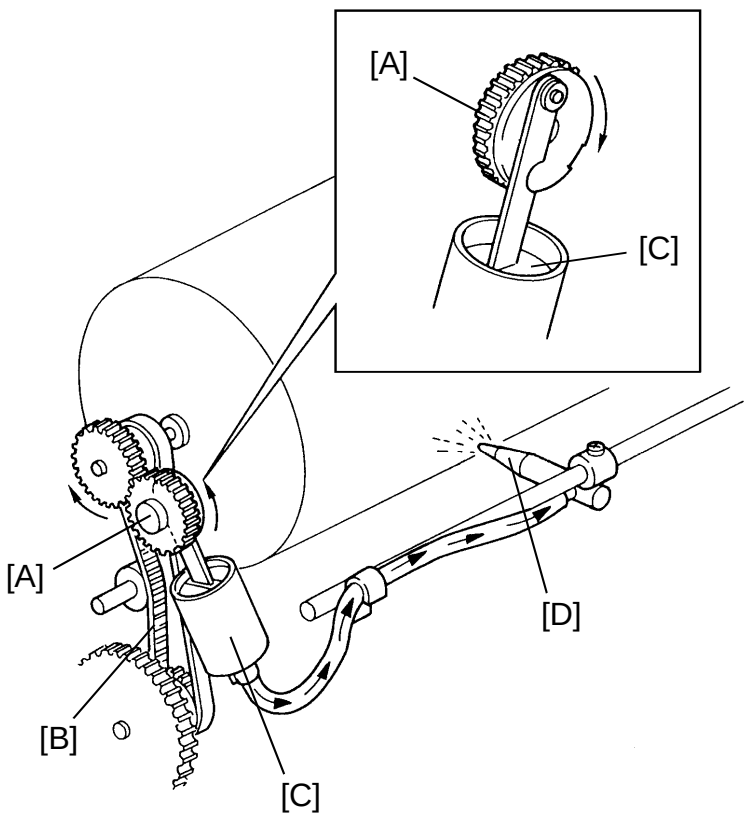
9.1 OVERALL



[E]: Paper
[F]: Vacuum Fan
[G]: Pressure Roller

This section consists of the exit pawl [A] and air knife (blower fan) [B], which separate the paper leading edge from the drum [C], and the vacuum units [D], which deliver the separated paper to the delivery table.

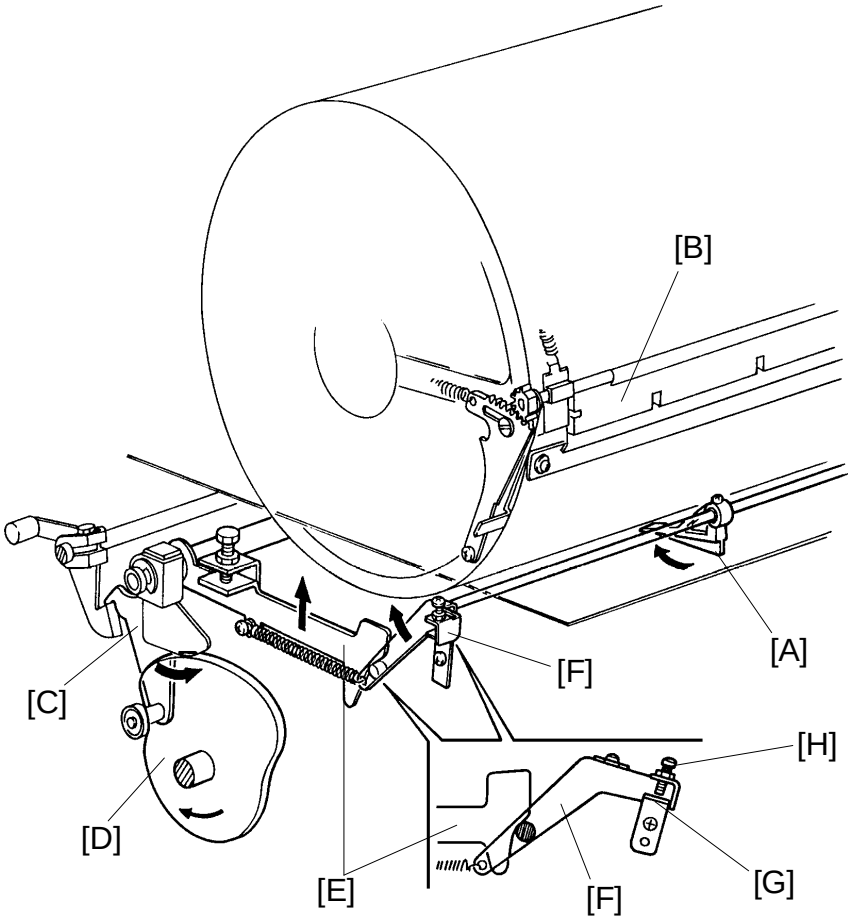
9.2 EXIT PAWL AIR PUMP MECHANISM: C215/C216/C224/ C226



The main motor drive is transmitted to the pump gear [A] through gears and a timing belt [B]. The gear [A] rotates and drives the piston [C] back and forth.

The piston moves forward and pushes a jet of air out through the nozzle [D]. This jet of air helps separating the paper from the drum.

9.3 EXIT PAWL DRIVE MECHANISM



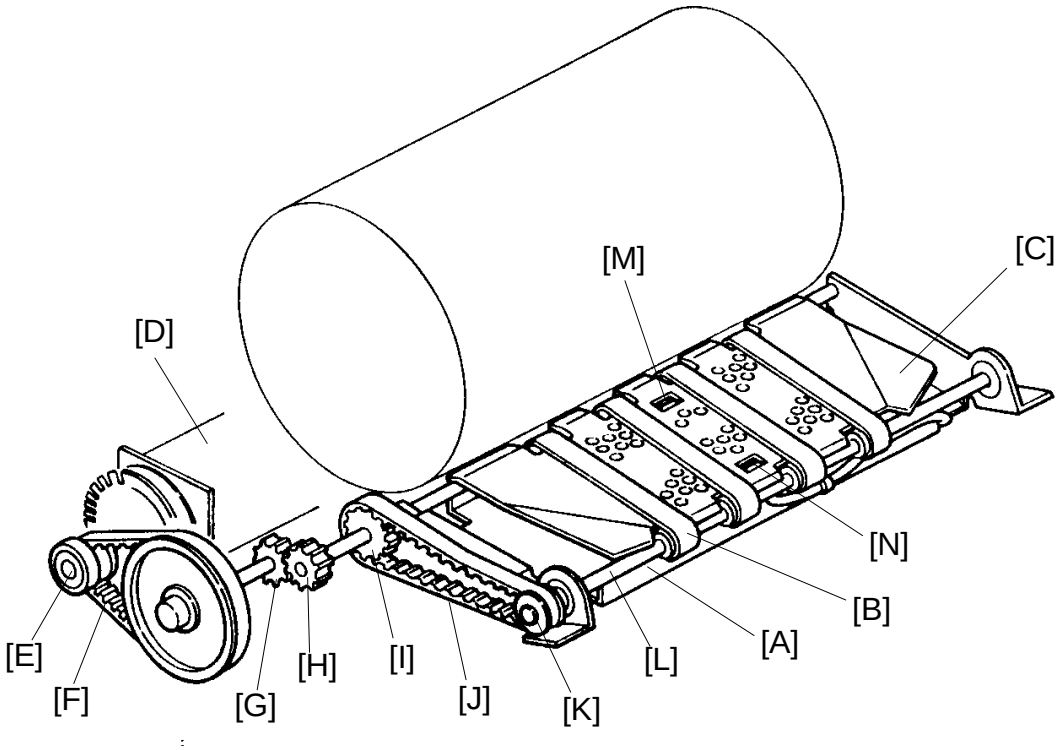
The exit pawl [A] located in the center of the drum, guides the center of the printing paper. As the master clamper [B] approaches the exit pawl, the exit pawl moves away from the drum.

When the bearing of the pressure ON/OFF cam [C] comes to the top of the pressure cam [D], the exit pawl drive cam [E] mounted on the pressure ON/OFF cam, moves up. The exit pawl lever [F] then turns clockwise along the surface of the exit pawl drive cam [E]. Therefore, the exit pawl also comes near the drum until the stopper [G] contacts the adjusting screw [H]. This keeps a small clearance between the exit pawl and the drum surface to enable the printing paper to feed to the vacuum unit.

As the pressure roller moves away from the drum, the exit pawl drive cam [E] moves down and the exit pawl lever [F] turns counterclockwise. This causes, the exit pawl to separate from the drum.

The exit pawl is held away from the drum when printing pressure is not applied.

9.4 VACUUM UNIT DRIVE MECHANISM



The vacuum fan [A] holds the paper against the transport belts [B]. The transport belts move the paper to the delivery table.

A fixed wing guide [C] at each end of the vacuum unit helps keep the back side of the printing paper clean.

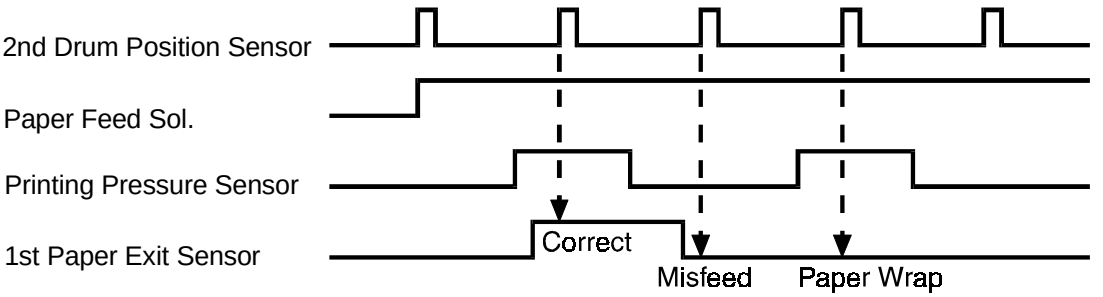
When the main motor [D] turns on, the gear [E] mounted on the main motor shaft drives belt [F], gears [G] and [H], pulley [I], drive belt [J], pulley [K], and drive shaft [L]. This drive shaft turns the transport belts [B].

NOTE: The C211 model uses a gear instead of a timing belt [F].

The first and second paper exit sensors [M] and [N] check for paper jams. The paper exit jam check is done when printing pressure is applied and the printing pressure sensor is interrupted.

	1st Paper Exit Sensor [M]	2nd Paper Exit Sensor [N]
When 2nd Drum Position sensor is ON	On: Correct OFF: Paper Wrap	OFF: Correct ON: Delivery Miss
When 1st Drum Position Sensor is ON	----- -----	ON: Correct OFF: Paper Wrap

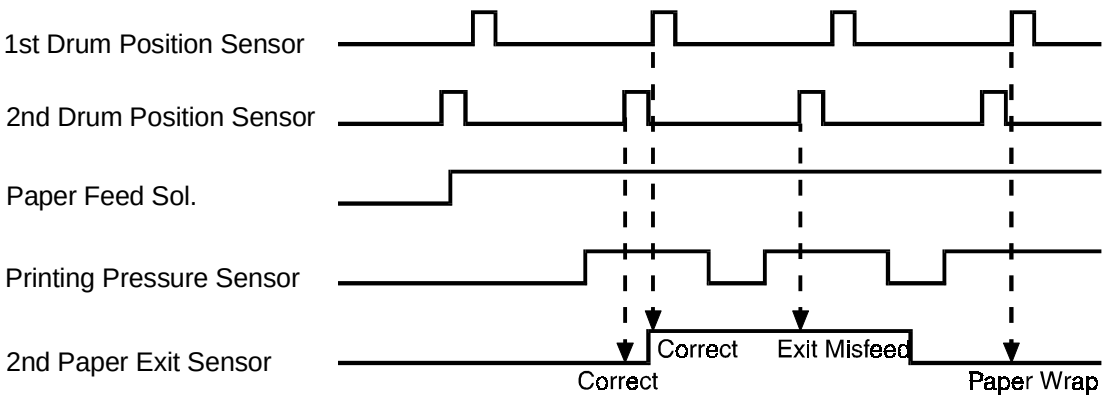
9.5 MISFEED/PAPER WRAP



Misfeed
If printing pressure is not applied (printing pressure sensor is interrupted) when the paper feed solenoid turns on, the Misfeed indicator blinks and the drum stops.

Paper Wrap
If the first paper exit sensor does not turn on when the paper feed solenoid turns on, the Paper Wrap indicator blinks and the drum stops.

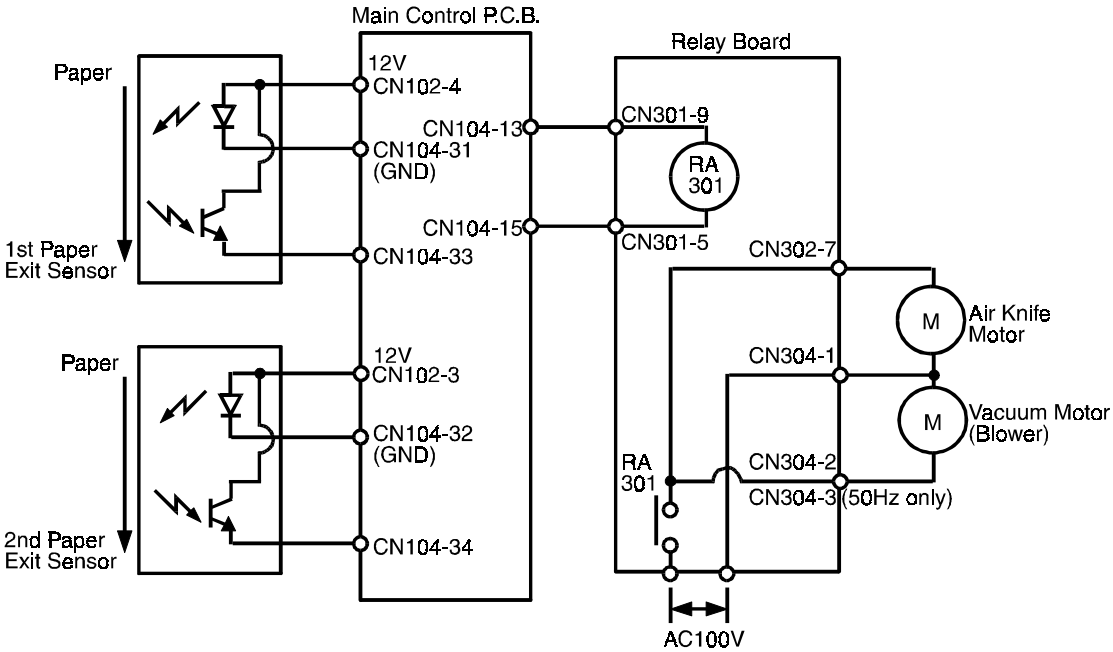
9.6 EXIT MISFEED/PAPER WRAP



Exit Misfeed
If the second paper exit sensor and the second drum position sensor turn on at the same time after printing pressure is applied, the Exit Misfeed indicator blinks and the drum stops.

Paper Wrap
After printing pressure is applied, if the second paper exit sensor turns off when the first drum position sensor turns on, the Paper Wrap indicator blinks and the drum stops.

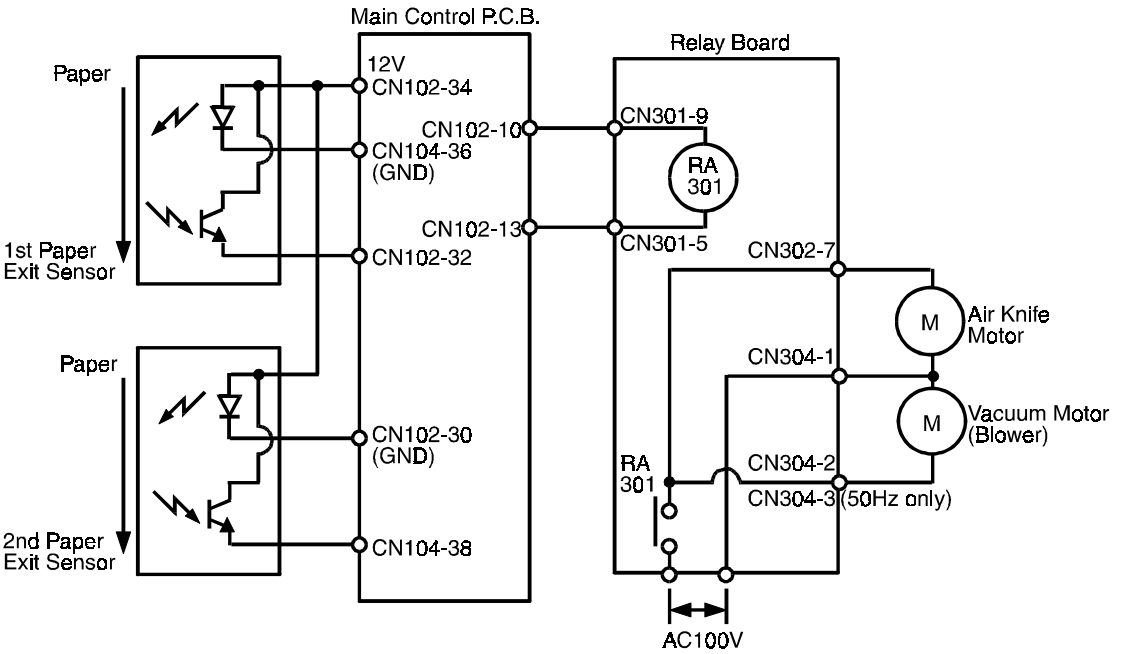
9.7 CIRCUIT: C211



OUTPUTS

Signal Name	I/O	Main Control PCB		Description
		CN No.	Level	
1st Paper Exit Sensor	I	CN104-33	0V ↑ 3V	When the paper passes, the voltage at CN104-33 is more than 3 V.
2nd Paper Exit Sensor	I	CN104-34	0V ↑ 3V	When the paper passes, the voltage at CN104-34 is more than 3 V.
Relay: Blower	O	CN104-13	24V ↓ 0V	When the air knife motor and the vacuum motor turn on, the voltage at CN104-13 is 0 V.

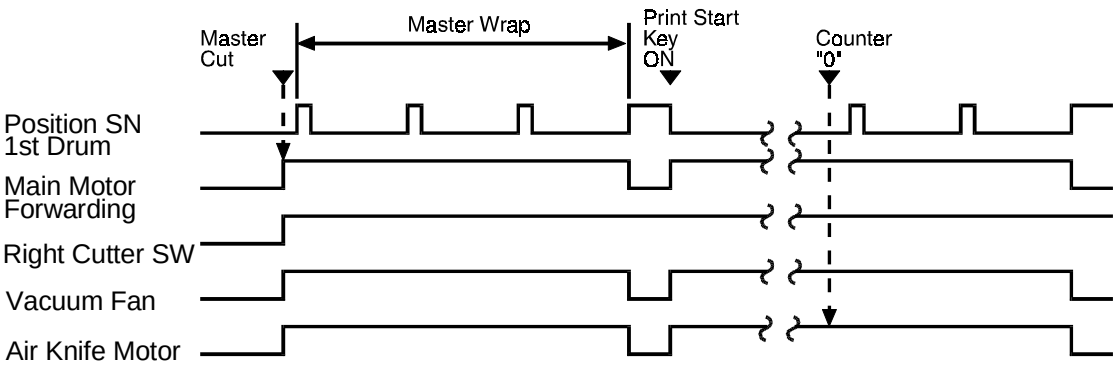
9.8 CIRCUIT: C212/C213



OUTPUTS

Signal Name	I/O	Main Control PCB		Description
		CN No.	Level	
1st Paper Exit Sensor	I	CN102-32	0V ↑ 3V	When the paper passes, the voltage at CN102-32 is more than 3 V.
2nd Paper Exit Sensor	I	CN104-38	0V ↑ 3V	When the paper passes, the voltage at CN104-38 is more than 3 V.
Relay: Blower	O	CN102-10	24V ↓ 0V	When the air knife motor and the vacuum motor turn on, the voltage at CN102-10 is 0 V.

9.9 ELECTRICAL TIMING: C211/C212/C213



T1: After the master is cut and the right cutter switch turns on, the main motor starts rotating. At the same time, the air knife motor and the vacuum fan also turn on and stay on until the first drum position sensor turns on 4 times.

T2: When the Print Start key is pressed, the main motor starts rotating and the air knife motor and the vacuum fan also turn on. Then, when the counter indicates "0", the main motors turn off after the first drum position sensor turns on 4 times.

10. INDICATORS/KEYS/PROGRAMS: C212/C213 ONLY

10.1 CHECK PAPER SIZE/DIRECTION INDICATOR

When an enlargement ratio (A4: 115%, 122%, or 141% LT: 115%, 127%, or 141%) is selected with the Reduce/Enlarge key, the Check Paper Size/Direction indicator lights. This indicator turns off when the Master Making key, Print Start key, or Proof key is pressed and full size mode or reduction mode is selected.

All keys remain accessible after the Check Paper Size/Direction indicator lights. This indicator simply reminds the customer to check the size and direction of the paper set on the paper table.

10.2 REDUCE/ENLARGE KEY

The Reduce/Enlarge key can be used when the machine stops. The reproduction ratio changes as shown below.

A4 version: 71% → 82% → 93%→ 115% → 122% → 141%

LT version: 64% → 75% → 93%→ 115% → 122% → 141%

10.3 SKIP PAPER FEED SWITCH

The paper feed interval can be set to allow time for the user to remove prints. This interval can be adjusted with the Skip Paper Feed switch.
The three following steps are available:

- Standard (normal feeding)
- 1/3 rotation (one sheet fed every three drum rotations)
- 1/5 rotation (one sheet fed every five drum rotations)

This function can also be used in Proof Mode.

If the Stop key is pressed before the copier feeds out a print during the 1/3 or 1/5 step interval, the copier returns to the normal feed interval and a print is fed out soon after the Start key is pressed.

10.4 COMBINE 2 ORIGINALS

The length of the original in Combine 2 Originals mode is limited according to the printing paper size and magnification ratio. When the original is too long, Combine 2 Original mode is automatically canceled and only the first original is made.

The following table lists the optimum magnification ratio for each paper size/original size combination in Combine 2 Originals mode.

A4 Version :

Paper Size	Master Making Length		Acceptable Original Size Ratios in Combine 2 Originals mode				
	100% or more	93% or less	A4 Sideways	B5 Sideways	A5 Sideways	B6 Sideways	A6 Sideways
A5 sideways	172 mm	203.1 mm	X	X	71%	82%	100%
B5 lengthwise	247 mm	251.3 mm	X	71%	82%	100%	122%
A4 lengthwise	287 mm	291.1 mm	71%	82%	100%	115% (122%)	141%
B4 lengthwise	354 mm	354 mm	82%	100%	122%	141%	*141%

LT Version:

Paper Size	Master Making Length		Acceptable Original Size Ratios in Combine 2 Originals mode	
	100% or more	less than 93%	LT Sideways	HLT Sideways
HLT lengthwise	205.9 mm	205.9 mm	X	*64%
LT lengthwise	269.4 mm	269.4 mm	64%	100%
LG lengthwise	345.6 mm	345.6 mm	*75%	127%

X: Combine 2 Originals mode is canceled.
When the values given in the above table are exceeded, Combine 2 Originals mode is also canceled.

* : A black area is mode.

10.5 MEMORY/CLASS KEY

The Memory/Class switch selects Memory or Class mode.

When Memory mode is selected (Memory indicator lights), Up to 15 prints can be input. Press the Master Making key after returning the memory number to "1".

When Class mode is selected (Class indicator lights), the number of prints for up to 20 groups can be input.

10.6 TRIAL PRINTS

Two trial printing sheets can be fed out by holding down the Master Making key and the Speed key ◄.

Only one trial printing sheet is fed out when just the Master Making key is pressed.

10.7 CLEAR MODES KEY

The Clear Modes key can be used after the machine stops. All previously entered settings and modes are cleared by the Clear Modes key. The normal settings and modes are displayed on the operation panel as follows:

Make-up Mode	OFF
Combine 2 Originals	OFF
Image Mode	Line
Printing Density	Standard
Magnification Ratio	100%
Auto Cycle Mode	OFF
Printing Speed	3
Image Position	0 (Previous setting remains when the Cover Open indicator lights.)
Counter Indicator	0
Memory Indicator (Class Indicator)	1

10.8 INITIAL CHECK

When the main switch is turned on, the CPU checks the ON/OFF status of the sensors listed below. If a sensor is ON, the letter on the Jam indicator corresponding to the sensor blinks:

Master Eject Sensor	F
Master Buckle Sensor	C
2nd Original Sensor	A
Original Registration Sensor	A
1st/2nd Paper Exit Sensor	G
Printing Pressure Sensor	E

10.9 MAIN MOTOR SOFT START

The main motor turns at 60 rpm for the first print (not trial print) made from a new master. The printing speed then gradually increases with each rotation until the standard printing speed is reached.

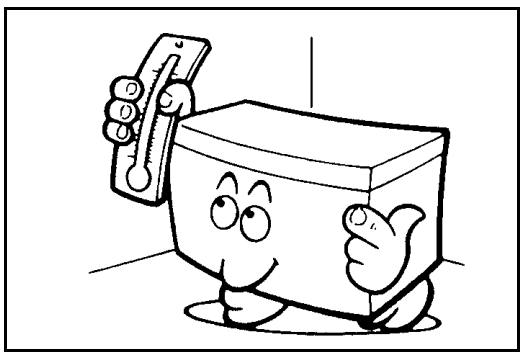
SECTION 3

INSTALLATION

1. INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

The installation location should be carefully chosen because the environmental conditions greatly affect the performance of a machine.

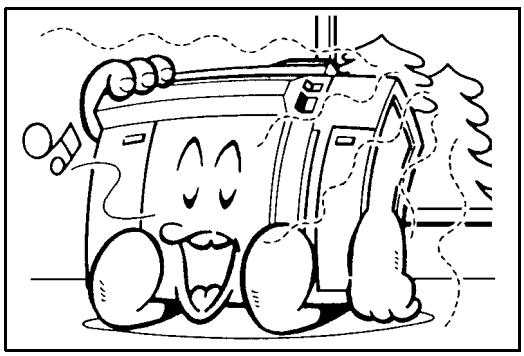
1.1 OPTIMUM ENVIRONMENTAL CONDITIONS:



Temperature: 10 to 30°C (50 to 86°F)

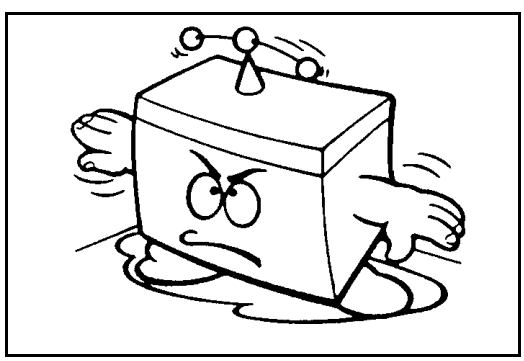
Humidity:
Main frame: 20 to 90% RH
Document feeder (option): 20 to 70% RH

NOTE: If you use the optional document feeder in high humidity conditions, original misfeeds may occur. In such cases, use the platen mode.

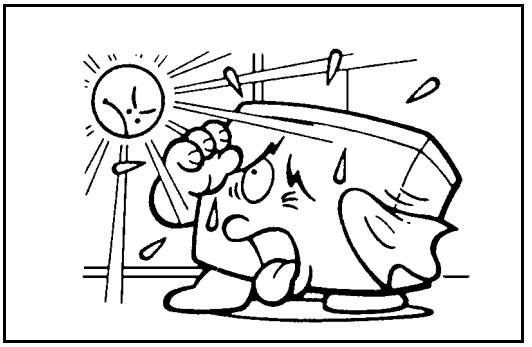


Wide, well-ventilated room.
Minimum ventilation: air turnover 3 times / hour

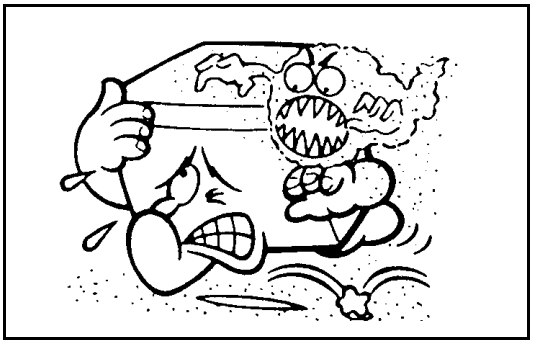
On a strong and level base.
The machine must be level within 5 mm (13/64") both front to rear and left to right.



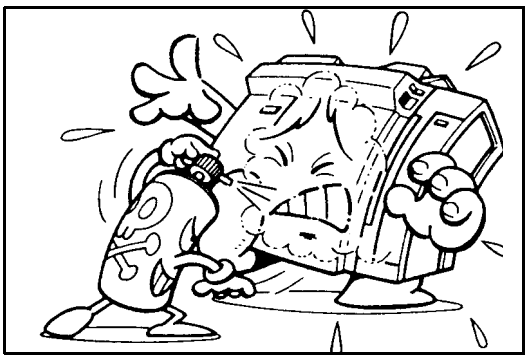
1.2 ENVIRONMENTS TO AVOID:



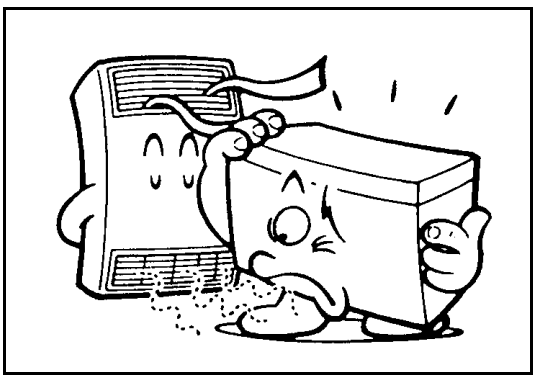
Location exposed to direct sun-light or strong light (more than 1,500 lux).



Dusty areas.

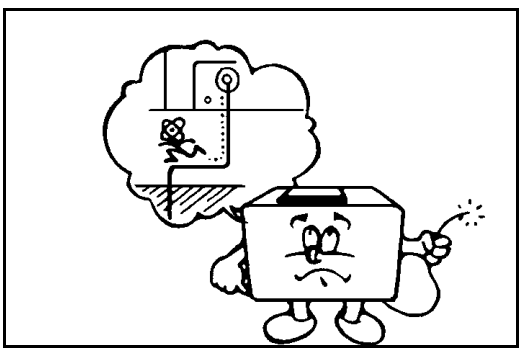


Areas with corrosive gases.



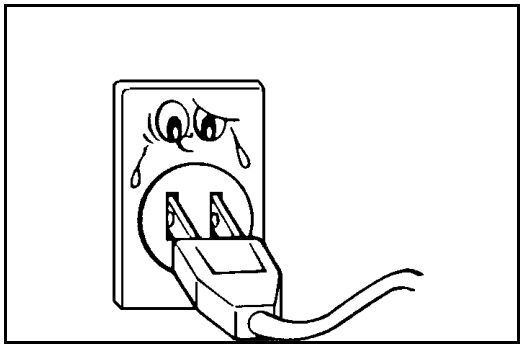
Locations directly exposed to cool air from an air conditioner or to reflected hear from a space heater. (Sudden temperature changes from low to high or vice versa may cause condensation within the machine.)

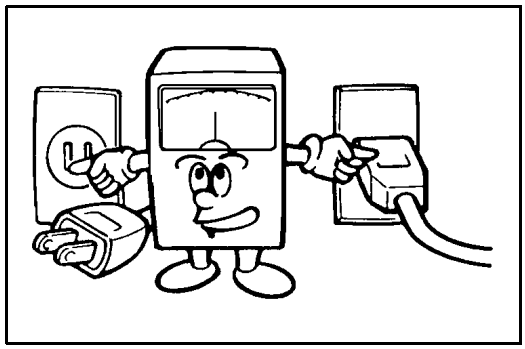
1.3 GROUND:



Be sure to ground the machine. Never connect the ground line to gas pipes.

1.4 POWER CONNECTION:

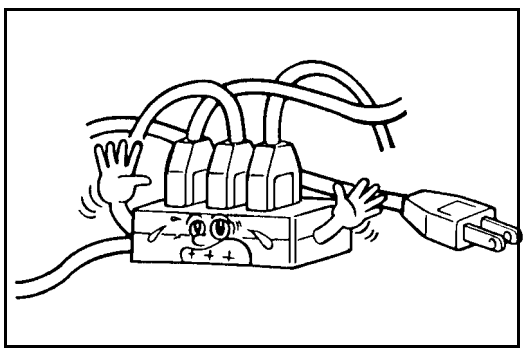


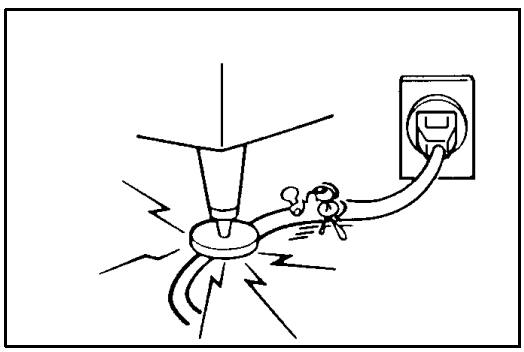


Securely connect the power cord to a power source.
a) 110V, 60 Hz: More than 6.0 A
b) 120V, 60Hz: More than 5.5 A
c) 220V 240V, 50Hz: More than 2.7 A

Voltage must not fluctuate more than 10%.

Make sure the plug is firmly inserted in the outlet.



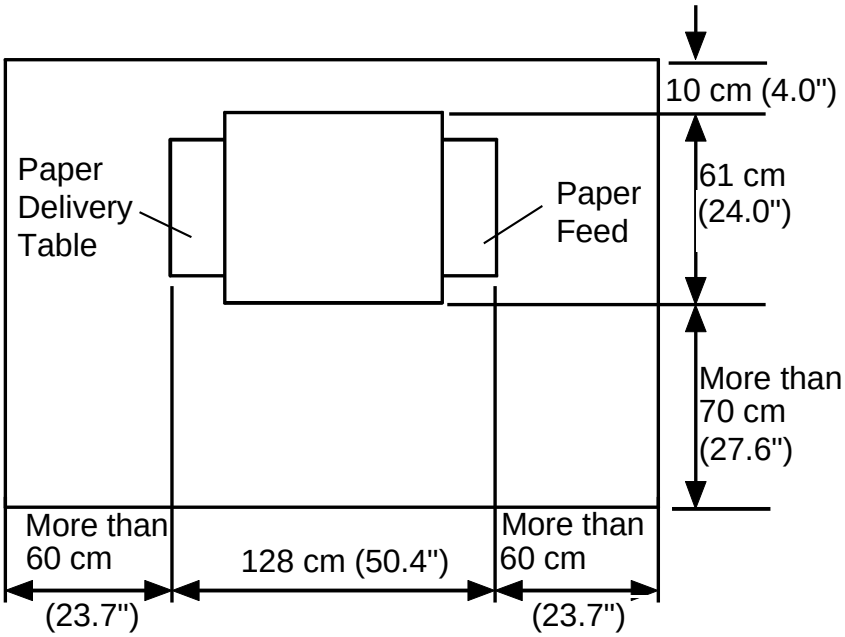


Avoid multiwiring.

Do not pinch the power cord.

1.5 ACCESS TO MACHINE:

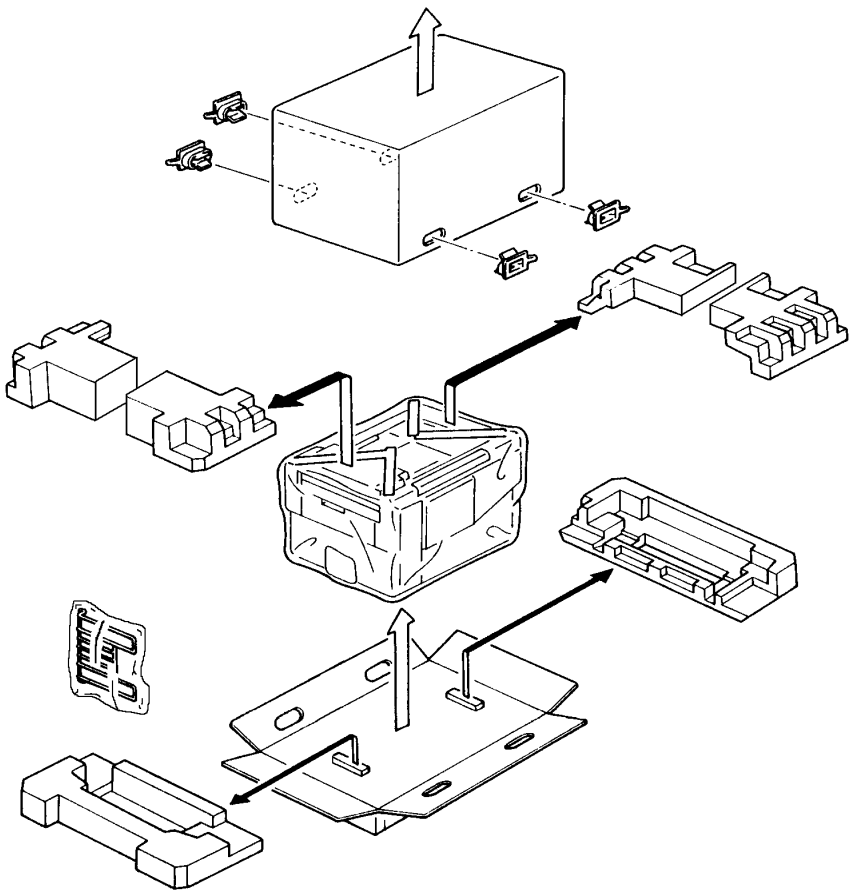
Place the machine near a power source, providing clearance as shown below.



2. INSTALLATION PROCEDURE

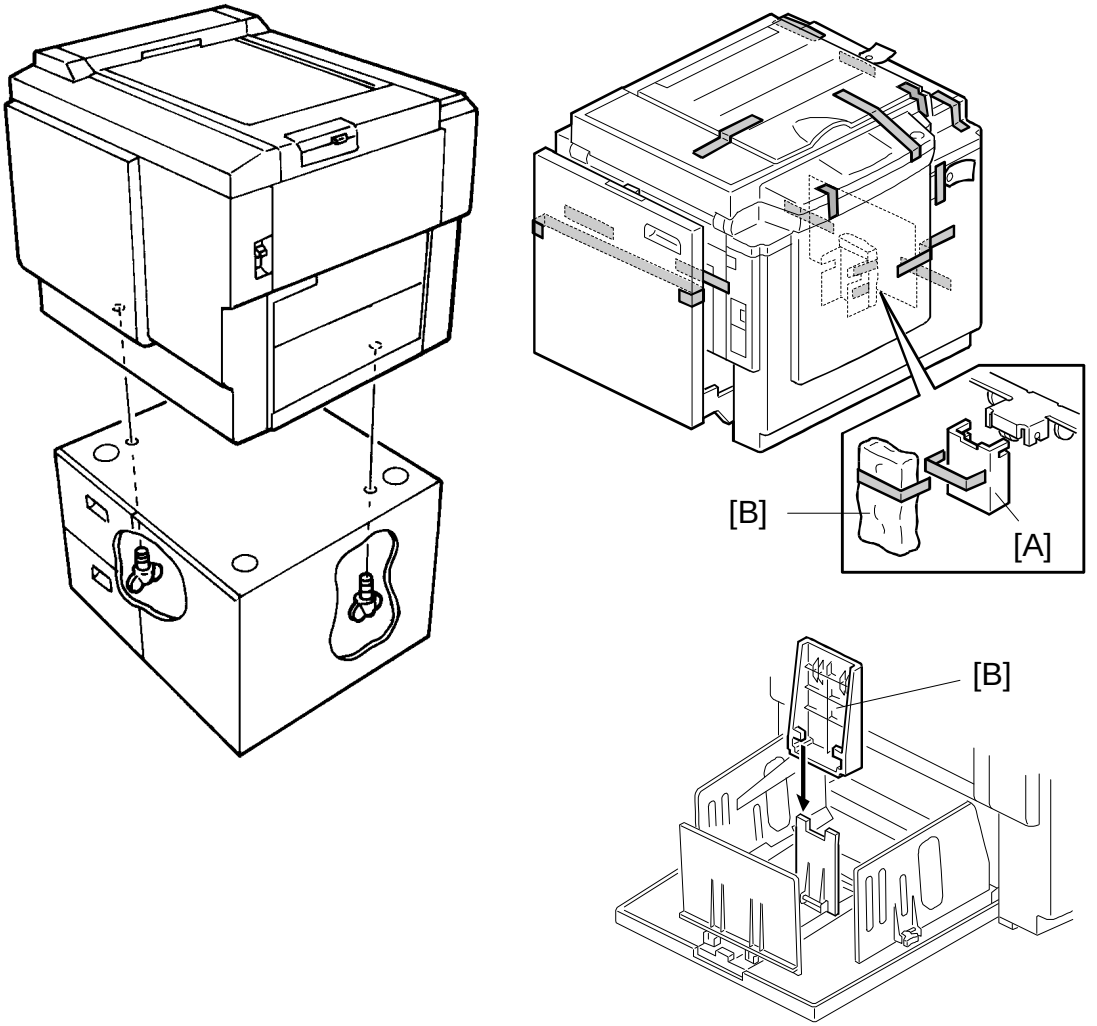
2.1 C226

2.1.1 Main Body



1. Make sure that you have all the accessories listed below.

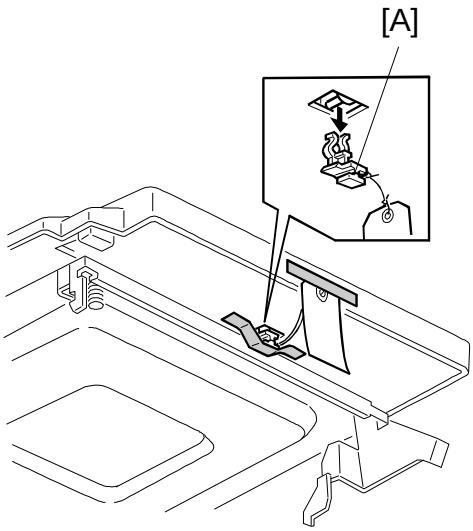
(1) Master Spools 2
(2) Auxiliary End Fence (for Paper Delivery Table).....1
(3) Operating Instructions (USA and Asia versions only).....1



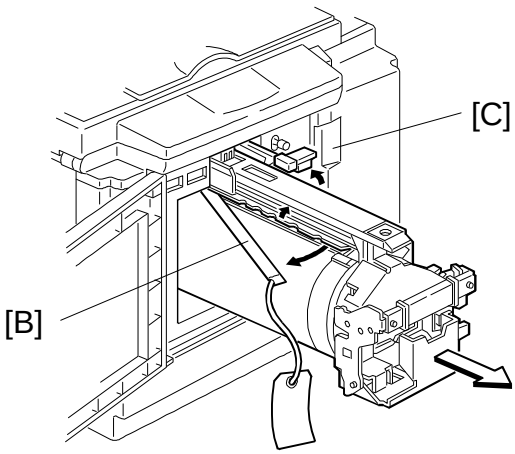
2. Mount the machine on the optional table (2 screws packed with the table).

3. Remove the strips of tape securing the covers and units as shown on the right.
   a. Open the paper feed tray. Then remove the cushion plate [A] from the paper feed roller section.
   b. Keep the auxiliary end fence [B] for future use.
   c. Open the master delivery unit. Then remove the tape securing the paper delivery guide plate.

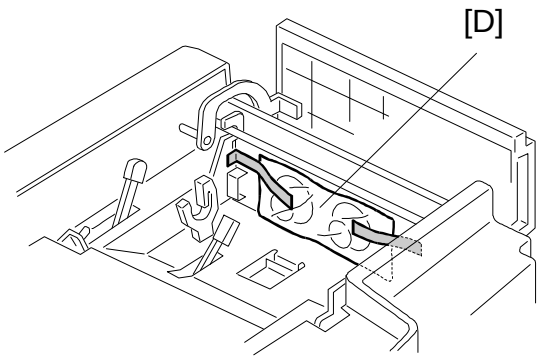
4. Open the scanner unit, and remove the shipping clamp [A].



5. Remove the protective sheet [B] from the drum unit.
   a. Open the front door.
   b. Take out the drum unit.
   c. Remove the protective sheet from the master clamper.
   d. Reinstall the drum unit in the machine.
   e. Push down the drum lock lever [C].



6. Open the scanner unit and plotter unit upper cover, and take the master spools [D] out.



7. Installing the Master Roll
(Type VT-Ⅱ-M)

a. Attach a spool to each end of the master roll.

b. Set the master roll in the machine.

NOTE: The vinyl side faces down.

c. Return the pressure release lever to the original position.

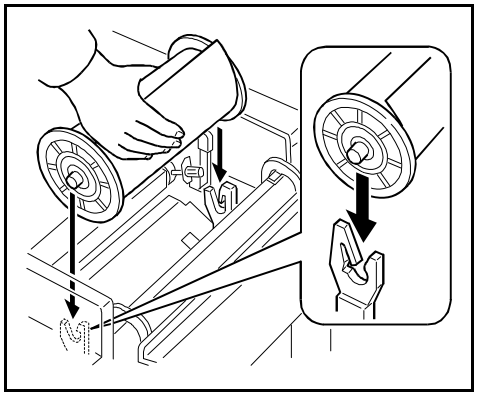
d. Plug in the power cord and turn on the main switch.

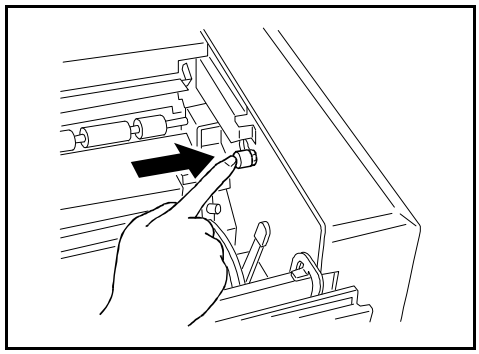
e. Press the Master Cut button.

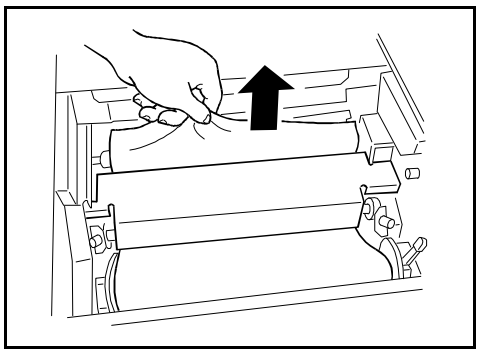
f. Remove the cut master paper.

NOTE: Check that the master paper is not bent or creased.

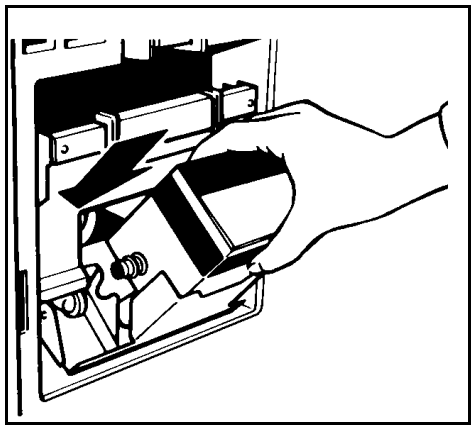
g. Close the upper cover and scanner unit.



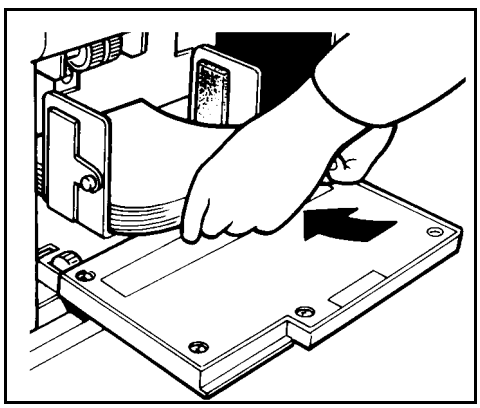




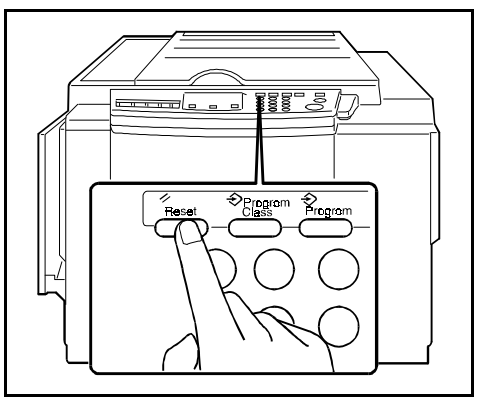
8. Installing the Ink Cartridge
   a. Open the front door and lower the ink holder.
   b. Remove the ink cartridge cap.
   c. Insert the ink cartridge into the ink holder and return the ink holder to the original position.
   d. Close the front door.



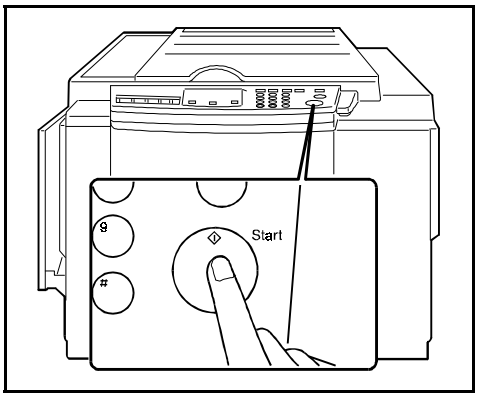
9. Loading Paper on the Paper Feed Table
   a. Open the paper feed table.
   b. Stack the paper neatly on the paper feed table.
   c. Position the paper feed side plates so that they gently contact the paper on both sides.
   d. Position the paper delivery table for the printing paper size, using the scale on the table.
   e. Position the paper delivery side plate for the printing paper size, using the scale on the table.



10. Idling
   a. While holding down the "0" key on the operation panel, press the Reset key.
   b. If "LOAD NEW INK CARTRIDGE" is displayed on the operation panel, repeat step 10-a.



11. Test Printing



a. Place an original face down and close the platen cover.

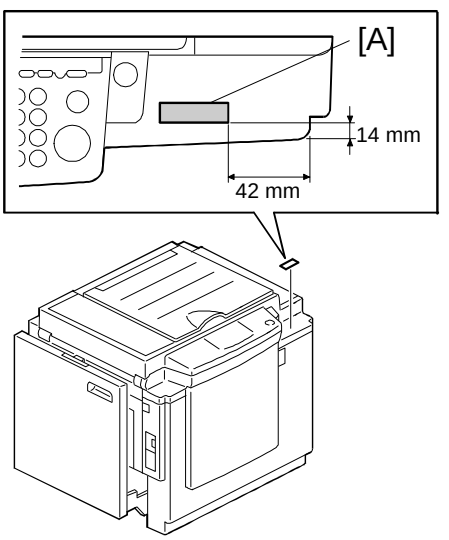
b. Input the desired number of prints with the number keys and press the Start key.

NOTE: With a new machine, "MASTER EJECT JAM" will be displayed because there is no master yet on the drum. Press the Reset key, then press the Start key again.

c. After one sheet of paper is delivered, make prints at the lowest print speed (1) until the print image density stabilizes. Use a test chart to check for changes in the image density.

d. Check the copy quality after the image is stabilized.

12. **This procedure is for the NRG version model only.**
Attach the brand decal [A] as shown below.



2.1.2 ADF (Option)

Accessory Check

Make sure that you have all the accessories listed below:

ADF Unit 1

Upper Front Cover 1

Upper Rear Cover 1

Lower Front Cover 1

Lower Rear Cover 1

Connector Cover 1

ADF Roller Assembly 1

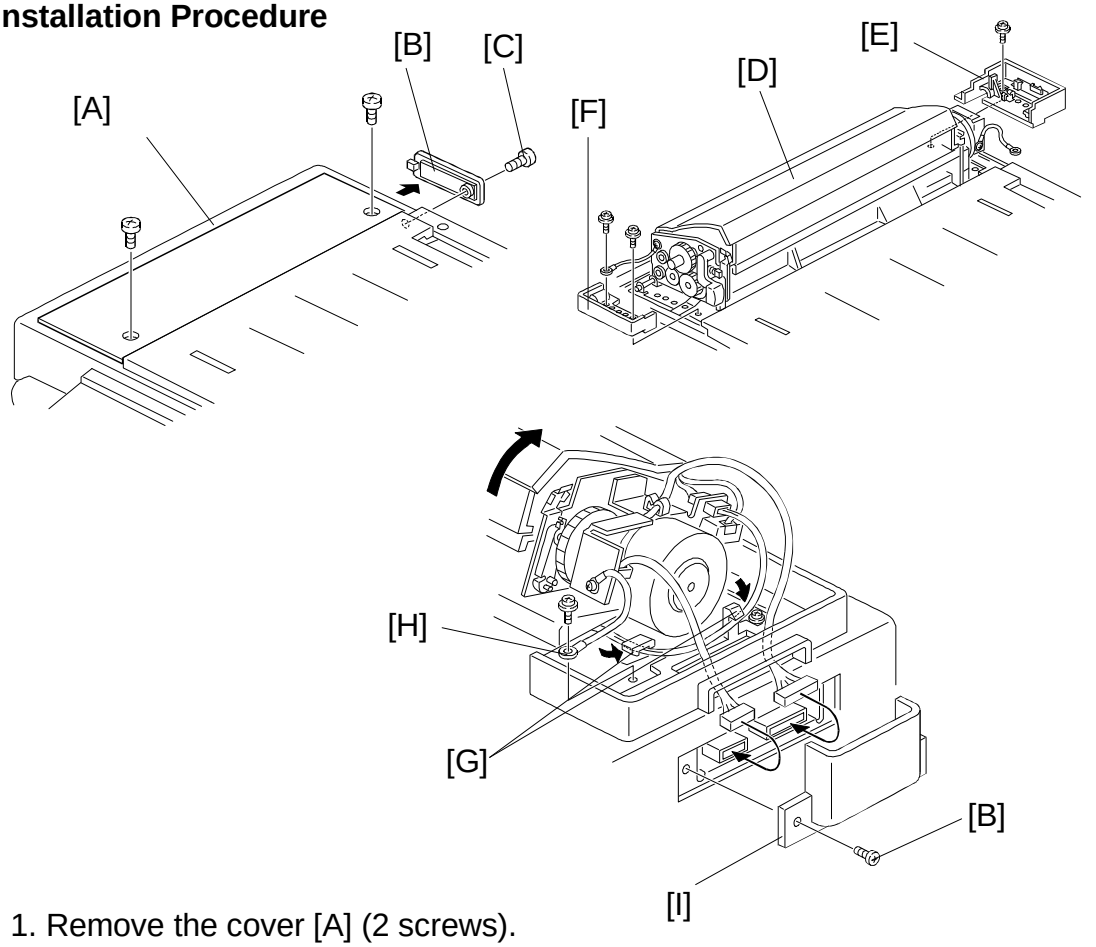
Original Table 1

Platen Cover Stopper 1

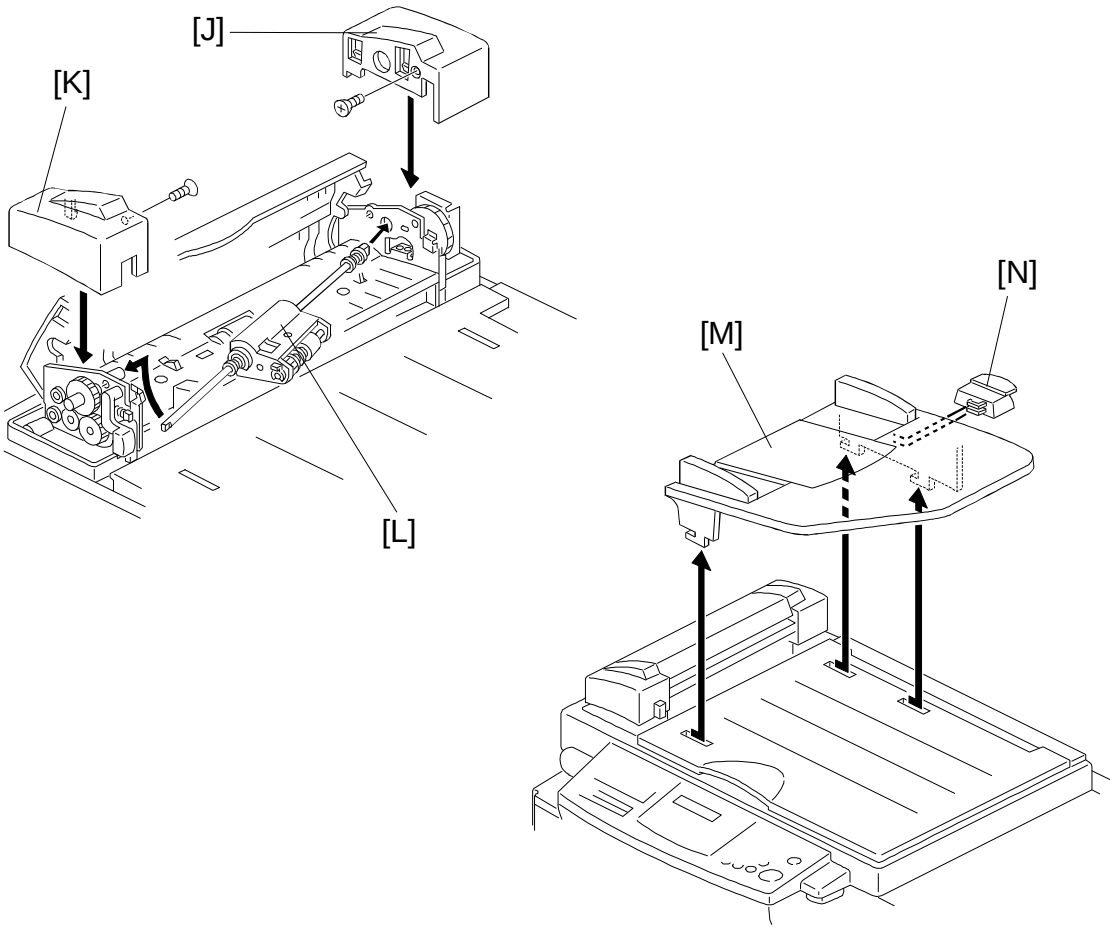
M3 x 8 Screws (to install the lower front/rear covers) 4

M3 x 6 Sunken Screws (to install the upper front/rear covers) 2

Installation Procedure



1. Remove the cover [A] (2 screws).
2. Remove the small cover [B] (1 screw). Retain the screw [C] for step 9.
3. Mount the ADF unit [D].
4. Secure the non-operation side of the ADF unit with the ADF Lower Rear Cover [E] (1 screw).
5. Secure the operation side of the ADF unit with the ADF Lower Front Cover [F] (2 screws). Secure the grounding wire with one of the two screws.
6. Secure the harness with the two clamps [G].
7. Secure the grounding wire [H] (1 screw).
8. Pass the two harnesses through the cutout in the ADF Lower Rear Cover, then connect the harnesses to the main body.
9. Install the Connector Cover [I] with the screw [B] removed in step 2.



10. Install the ADF Upper Rear Cover [J] (1 sunken screw and 1 hook).

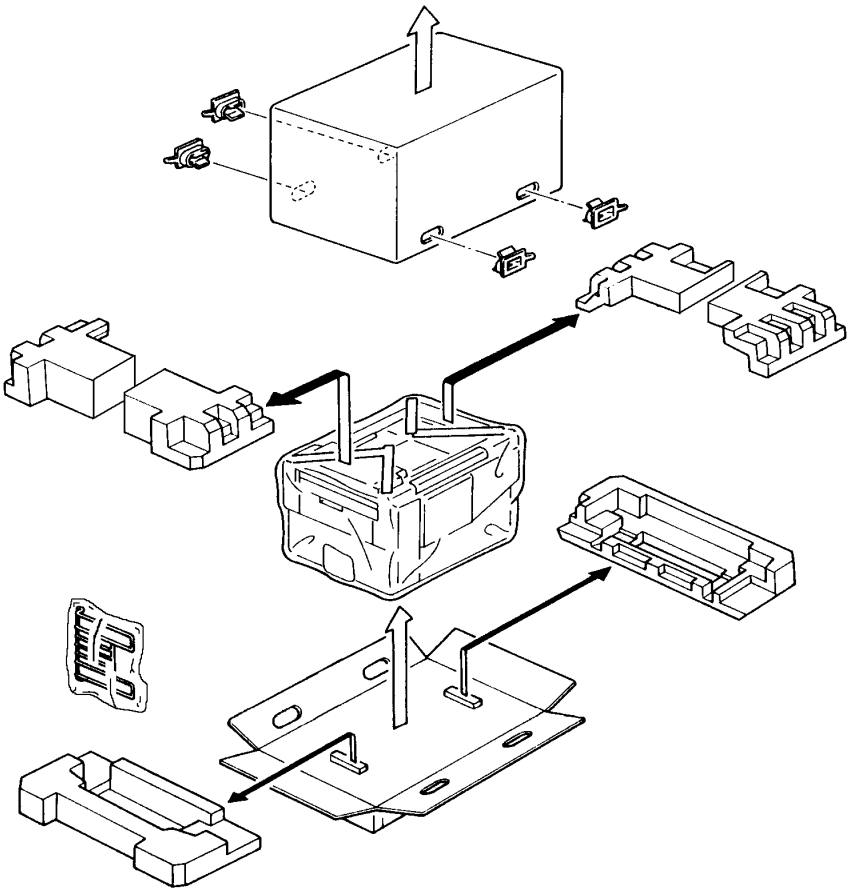
11. Install the ADF Upper Front Cover [K] (1 sunken screw and 2 hooks).

12. Install the ADF Roller Assembly [L].

13. Install the Original Table [M], then install the Platen Cover Stopper [N] on it.

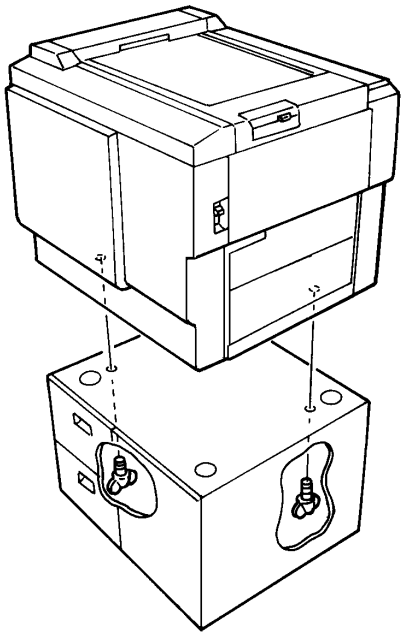
NOTE: To enable the use of the ADF function, you must change the SP mode setting. Access the SP mode and set SP No. 2 to "1". For details, refer to "SERVICE PROGRAM TABLE."

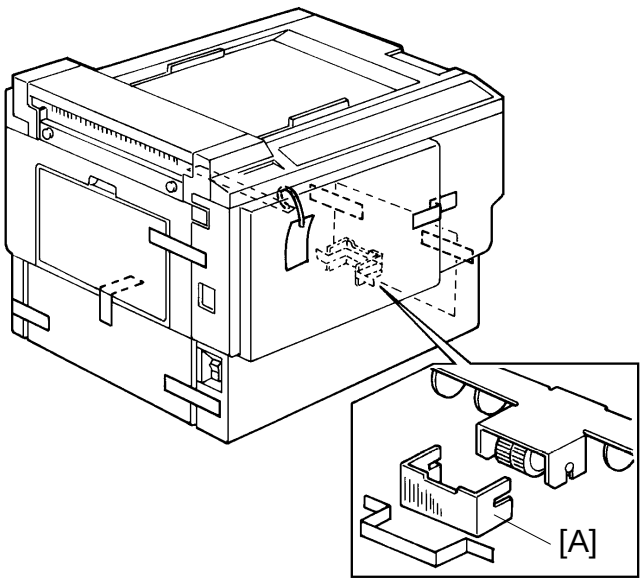
2.2 C224



1. Make sure that you have all the accessories listed below.

(1) Original Exit Tray.....1
(2) Operating Instructions (USA and Asia versions only) .1
(3) NECR 1

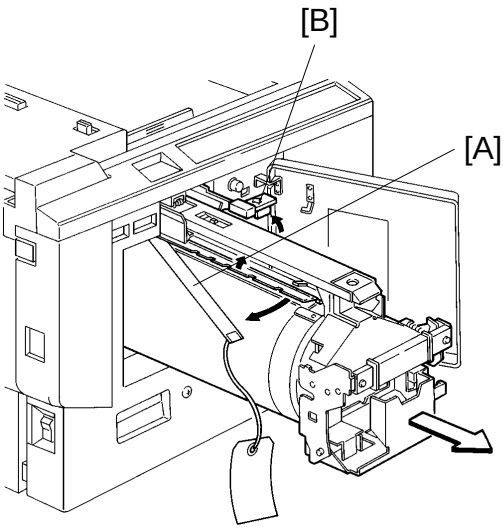




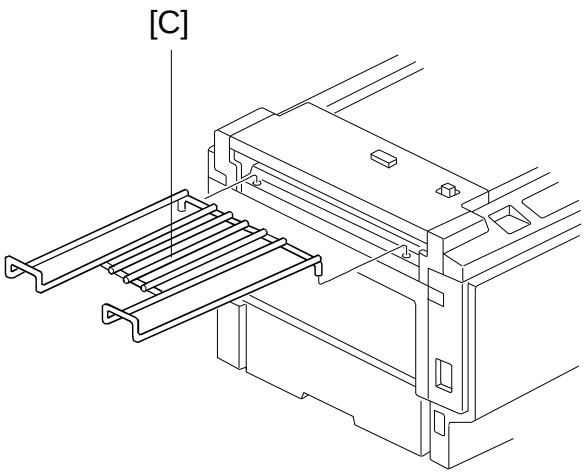
2. Mount the machine on the optional table (2 screws packed with the table).

3. Remove the strips of tape securing the covers and units as shown on the right.
   a. Open the paper feed tray. Then remove the cushion plate [A] from the paper feed roller section.
   b. Open the master delivery unit. Then remove the tape securing the paper delivery guide plate.

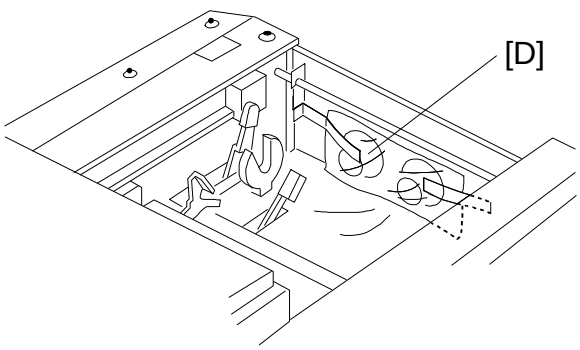
4. Remove the protective sheet [A] from the drum unit.
   a. Open the front door.
   b. Take out the drum unit.
   c. Remove the protective sheet from the master clamper.
   d. Reinstall the drum unit in the machine.
   e. Push down the drum lock lever [B].



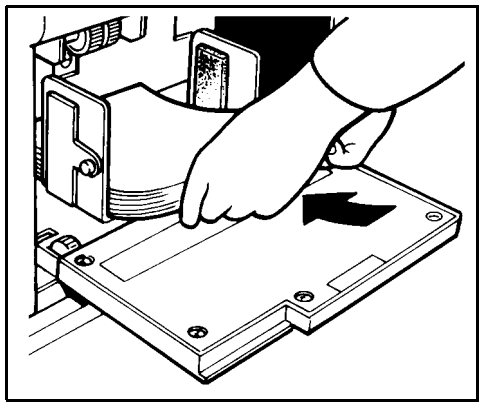
5. Install the original exit tray [C].



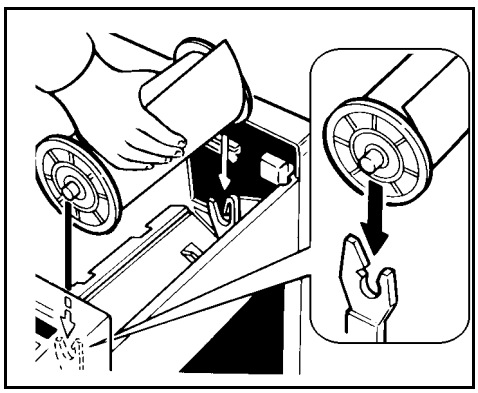
6. Slide the scanner unit all the way to the left, and take the master spools [D] out.



7. Loading Paper on the Paper Feed Table
   a. Open the paper feed table.
   b. Stack the paper neatly on the paper feed table.
   c. Position the paper feed side plates so that they lightly contact the paper on both sides.
   d. Position the paper delivery table for the printing paper size, using the scale on the table.
   e. Position the paper delivery side plate for the printing paper size, using the scale on the table.

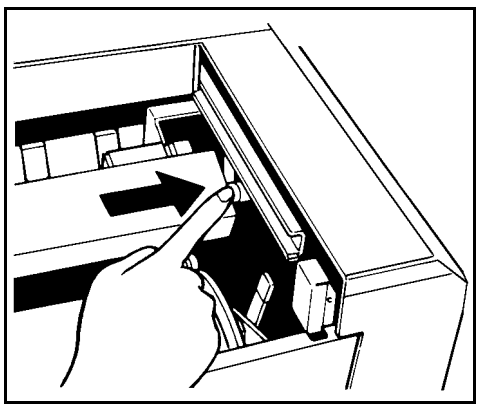


8. Installing the Master Roll (Type VT-Ⅱ-M)
   a. While lifting the release lever, slide the scanner unit to the left.
   b. Attach a spool to each end of the master roll.



   c. Set the master roll in the machine.

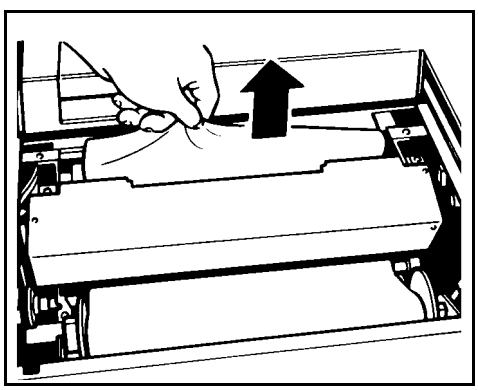
      NOTE: The vinyl side faces down.



   d. Return the pressure release lever to the original position.
   e. Plug in the power cord and turn on the main switch.
   f. Press the Master Cut button.
   g. Remove the cut master paper.

      NOTE: Check that the master paper is not bent or creased.

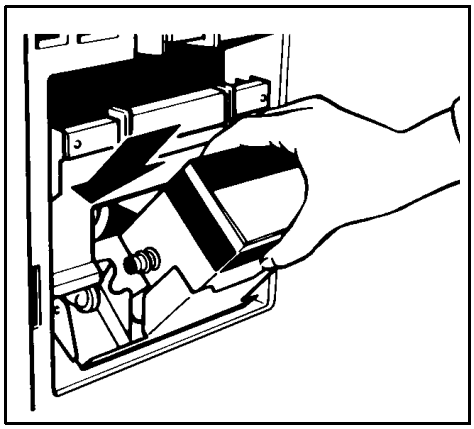
   h. Close the scanner unit.

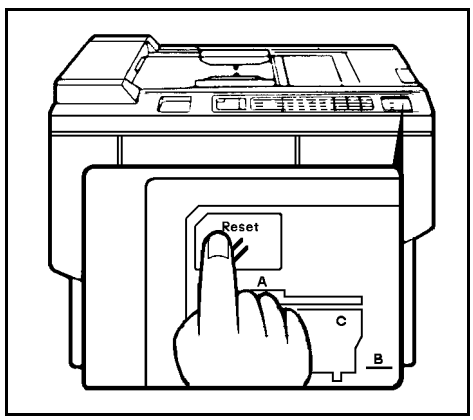


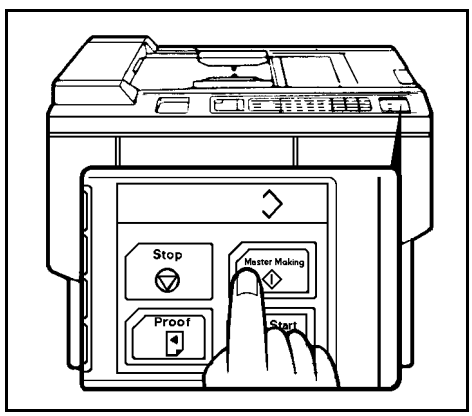
9. Installing the Ink Cartridge
   a. Open the front door and lower the ink holder.
   b. Remove the ink cartridge cap.
   c. Insert the ink cartridge into the ink holder and return the ink holder to the original position.
   d. Close the front door.
10. Idling
   a. While holding down the "0" key on the operation panel, press the Reset key.
   b. If + **D** blinks on the operation panel, repeat the above procedure.
11. Test Printing
   a. Adjust the original guide to match the original size.
   b. Place an original face down.
   c. Input the desired number of prints with the number keys and press the Master Making key.

      NOTE: With a new machine, the master paper misfeed indicator + **F** blinks because there is no master yet on the drum. Press the Reset key, then press the Master Making key.

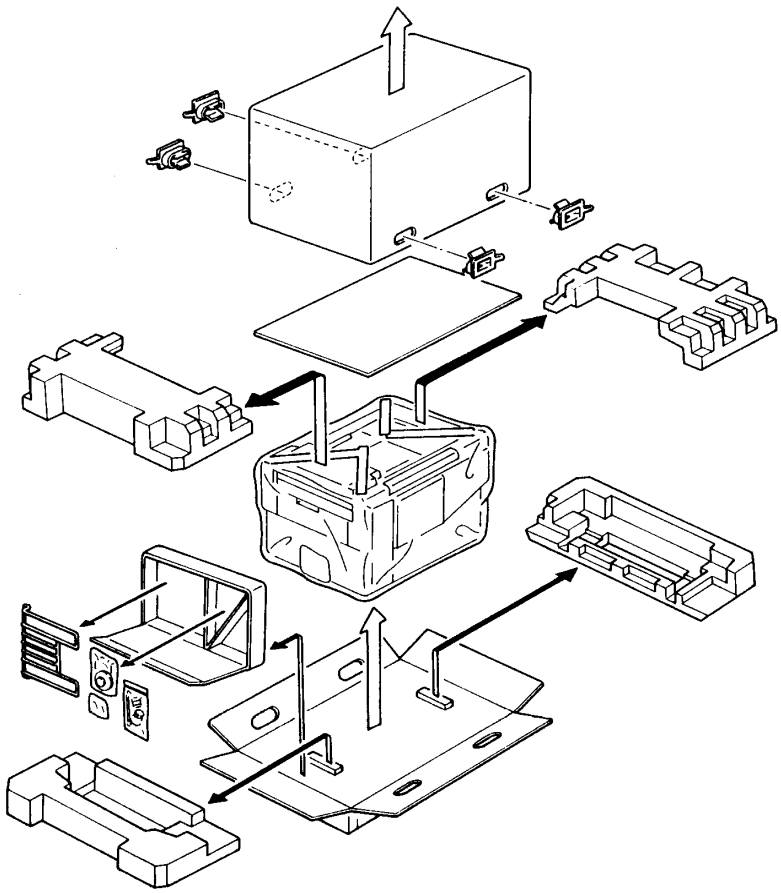
   d. After one sheet of paper is delivered, make prints at the lowest print speed (1) until the print image density stabilizes. Use a test chart to check for changes in the image density.
   e. Check the copy quality after the image is stabilized.





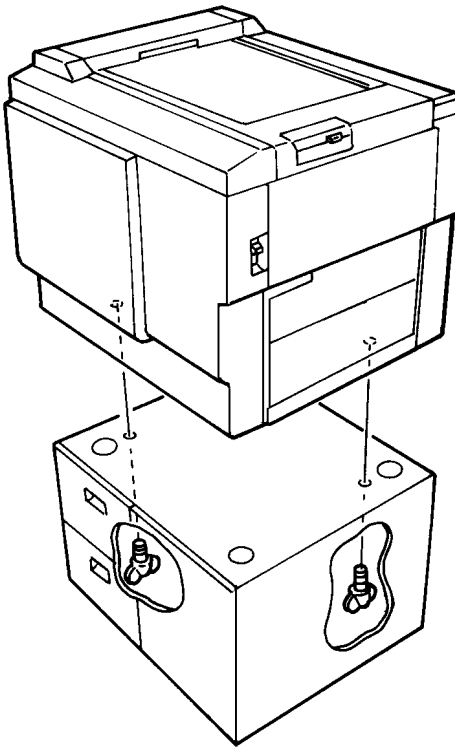


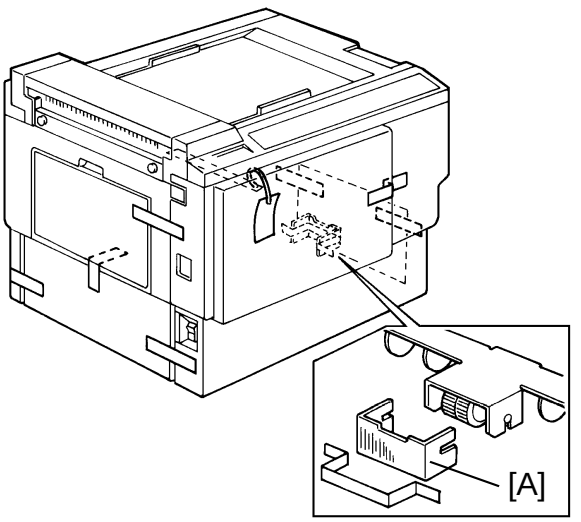
2.3 C215/C216



1. Make sure that you have all the accessories listed below.

(1) Original Exit Tray.....1
(2) Right Tray Bracket 1
Left Tray Bracket.....1
(3) Fixing Screws.....2
(4) Master Spools 2
(5) Thermal Head Cleaner.....1
(6) Operating Instructions (USA and Asia version only).....1
(7) NECR 1
(8) Installation Procedure (English) 1

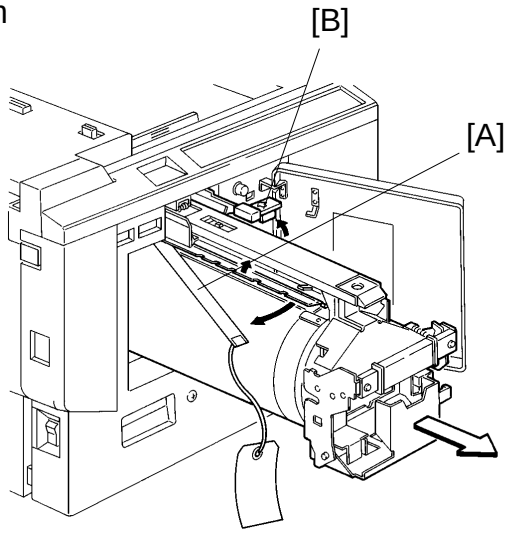




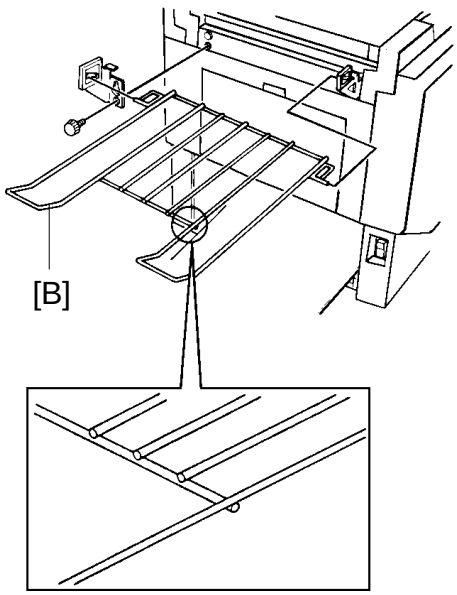
2. Mount the machine on the optional table (2 screws packed with table).

3. Remove the tape and string securing the covers and units as shown on the right.
   a. Open the paper feed tray. Then remove the cushion plate [A] from the paper feed roller section.
   b. Open the master delivery unit. Then remove the tape securing the paper delivery guide plate.

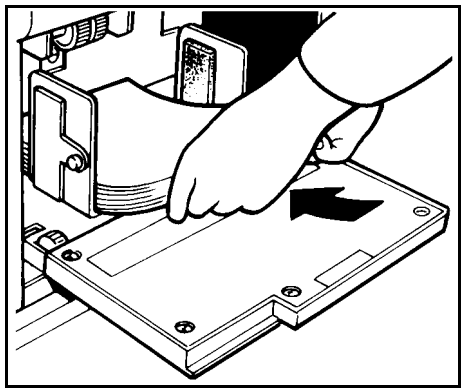
4. Remove the protective sheet [A] from the drum unit.
   a. Open the front door.
   b. Take out the drum unit.
   c. Remove the protective sheet from the master clamper.
   d. Reinstall the drum unit in the machine.
   e. Push down the drum lock lever [B].



5. Install the original exit tray [B].
   a. Hook the right and left tray brackets on the stepped screws.
   b. Set the original exit tray on the brackets.
   c. Secure the brackets with fixing screws.

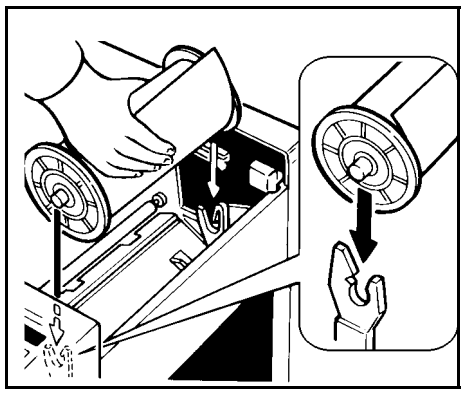


6. Loading Paper on the Paper Feed Table
   a. Open the paper feed table.
   b. Stack the paper neatly on the paper feed table.
   c. Position the paper feed side plates so that they lightly contact the paper on both sides.
   d. Position the paper delivery table for the printing paper size, using the scale on the table.
   e. Position the paper delivery side plate for the printing paper size, using the scale on the table.



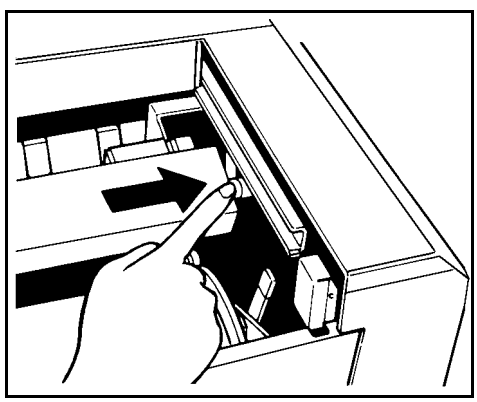
7. Installing the Master Roll (Type VT-Ⅱ-M)
   a. While lifting the release lever, slide the scanner unit to the left.
   b. Attach a spool to each end of the master roll.
   c. Set the master roll in the machine.

      NOTE: The vinyl side faces down.

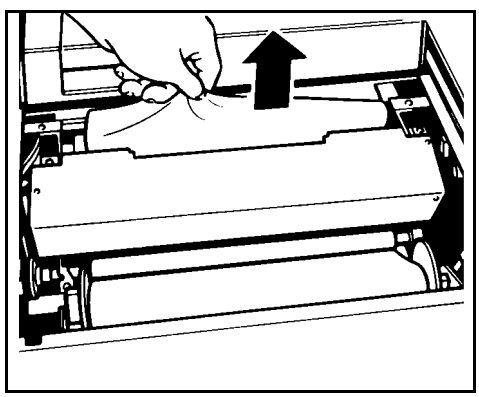


   d. Return the pressure release lever to the original position.
   e. Plug in the power cord and turn on the main switch.
   f. Press the Master Cut button.
   g. Remove the cut master paper.

      NOTE: Confirm that the master paper is not bent or creased.

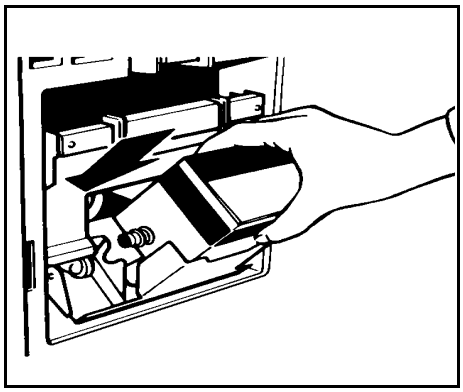


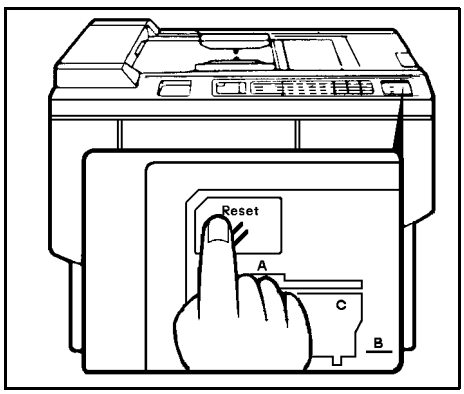
   h. Close the scanner unit.

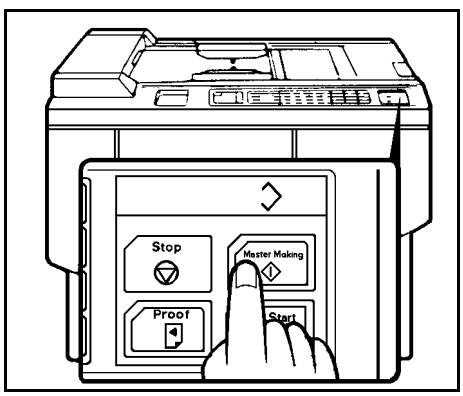


8. Installing the Ink Cartridge
   a. Open the front door and lower the ink holder.
   b. Remove the ink cartridge cap.
   c. Insert the ink cartridge into the ink holder and return the ink holder to the original position.
   d. Close the front door.
9. Idling
   a. While holding down the "0" key on the operation panel, press the Reset key.
   b. If + **D** blinks on the operation panel, repeat the above procedure.
10. Test Printing
   a. Adjust the original guide to match the original size.
   b. Set the original face down.
   c. Input the desired number of prints with the number keys and press the Master Making key.

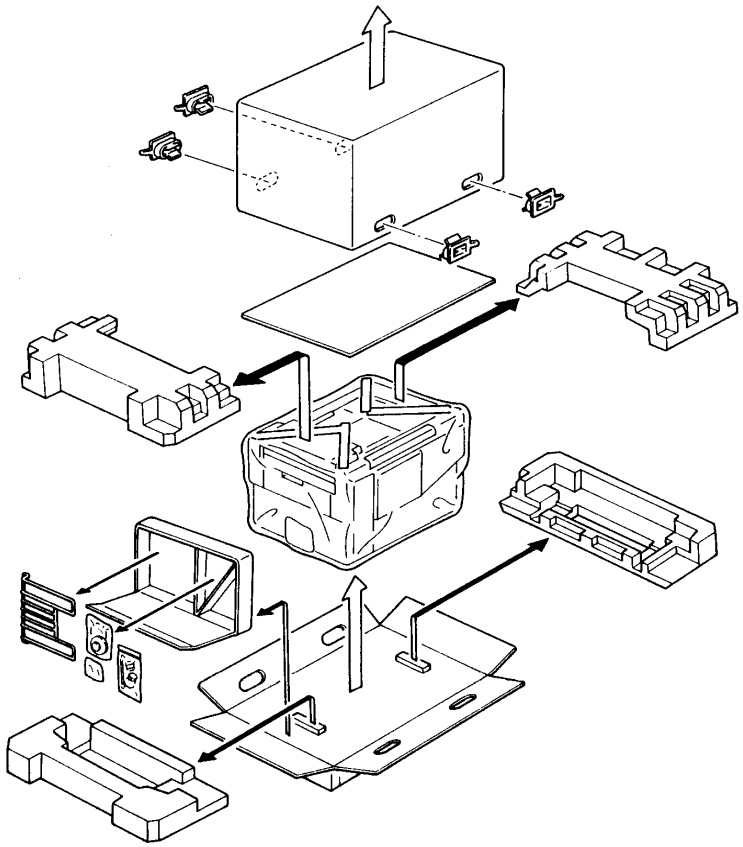
      NOTE: With a new machine, the master paper misfeed indicator + **F** blinks because there is no master yet on the drum. Press the Reset key, then press the Master Making key.
   d. After one sheet of paper is delivered, make prints at the lowest print speed (1) until the print image density stabilizes. Use a test chart to check for changes in the image density.
   e. Check the copy image after about one hundred prints.





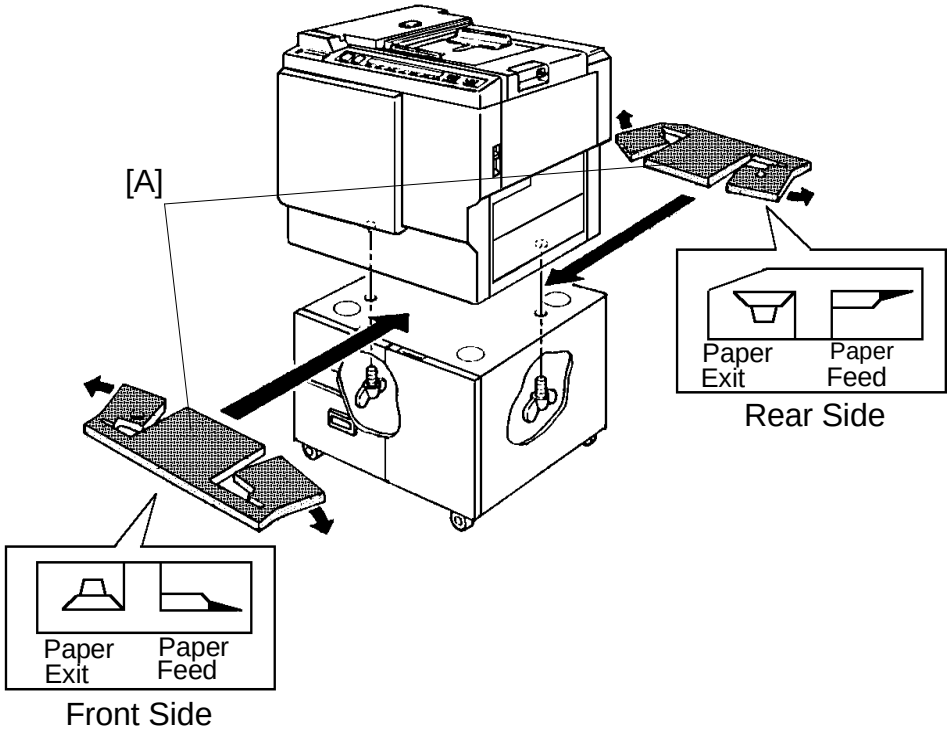


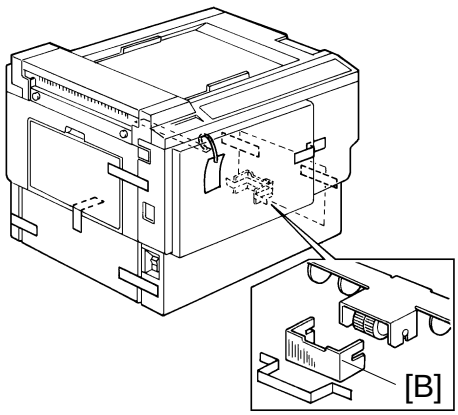
2.4 C212/C213



1. Make sure that you have all the accessories listed below.

(1) Original Exit Tray 1
(2) Right Tray Bracket 1
Left Tray Bracket 1
(3) Fixing Screws 2
(4) Master Spools 2
(5) Thermal Head Cleaner 1
(6) Operating Instructions (USA and Asia Version Only) 1
(7) Operating Guide (USA and Asia Version Only) 1
(8) NECR 1
(9) Installation Procedure (English) 1
(10) Noise Absorber 2
(11) Background Pattern Sheet (C213 only) 1





2. Place two noise absorbers on the optional table.

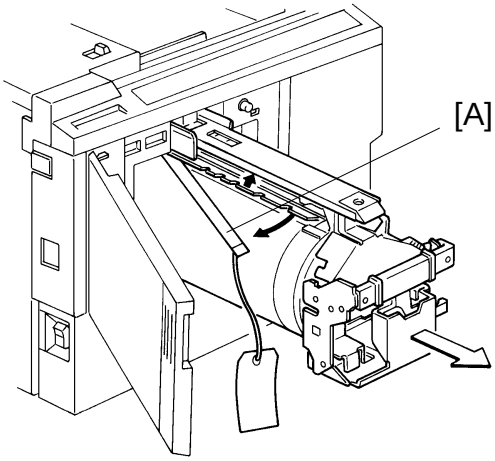
   NOTE: Make sure that the noise absorbers are positioned on the table at the locations shown in the above figure.

3. Mount the machine on the optional table (2 screws--packed with table).

4. Remove the tape and string securing the covers and units as shown above.
   a. Open the paper feed tray. Then remove the cushion plate [B] from the paper feed roller section.
   b. Open the master delivery unit. Then remove the tape securing the paper delivery guide plate.

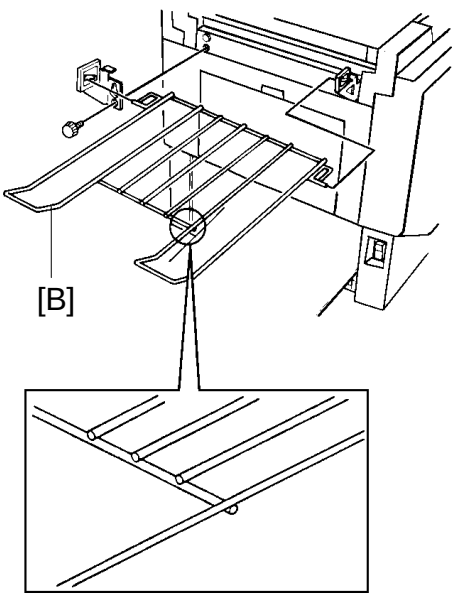
5. Remove the protective sheet [A] from the drum unit.

   a. Open the front door.
   b. Take out the drum unit.
   c. Remove the protective sheet from the master clamper.
   d. Reinstall the drum unit in the machine.

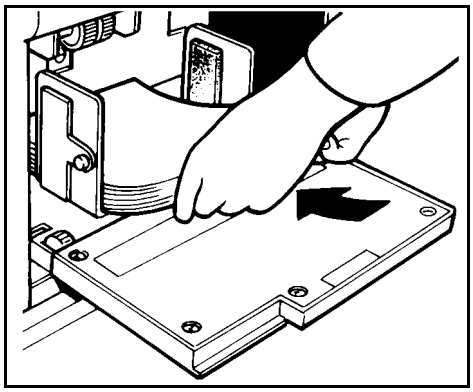


6. Install the original exit tray [B].

   a. Hook the right and left tray brackets on the stepped screws.
   b. Set the original exit tray on the brackets.
   c. Secure the brackets with fixing screws.



7. Loading Paper on the Paper Feed Table



a. Open the paper feed table.

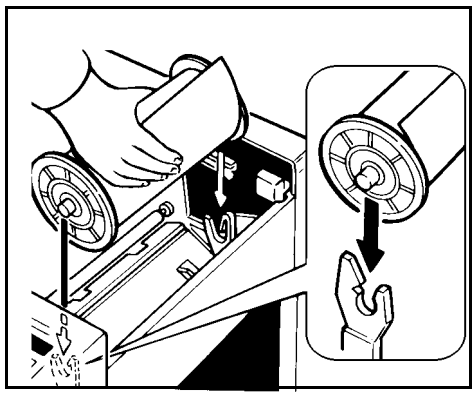
b. Stack the paper neatly on the paper feed table.

c. Position the paper feed side plates so that they lightly contact the paper on both sides.

d. Position the paper delivery table for the printing paper size, using the scale on the table.

e. Position the paper delivery side plate for the printing paper size, using the scale on the table.

8. Installing the Master Roll (Type VT-M)

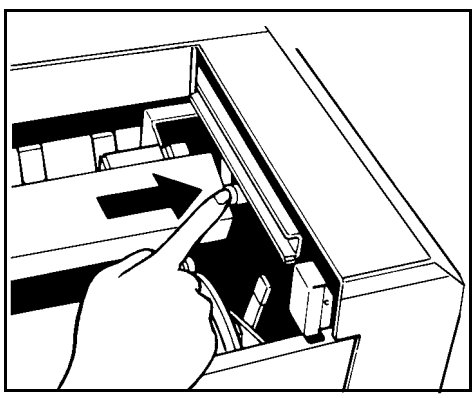


a. While lifting up on the release lever, slide the scanner unit to the left.

b. Attach a spool to each end of the master roll.

c. Set the master roll in the machine.

NOTE: The vinyl side faces down.



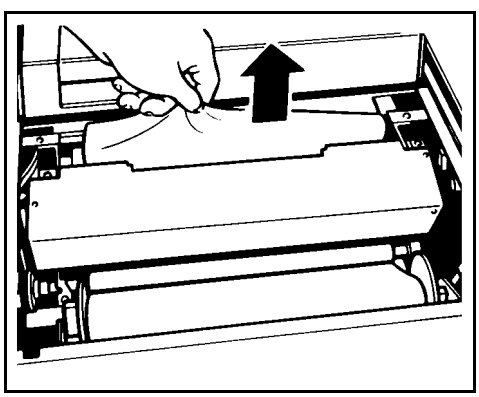
d. Return the pressure release lever to the original position.

e. Plug in the power cord and turn on the main switch.

f. Press the Master Cut button.

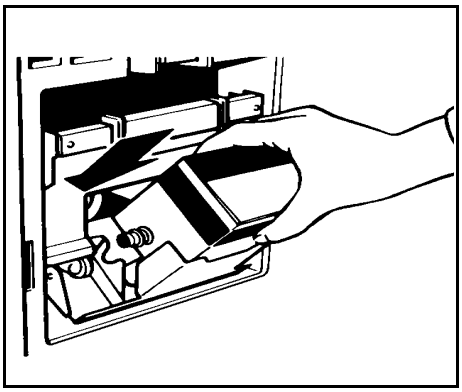
g. Remove the cut master paper.

NOTE: Please confirm that the master paper is not bent or creased.



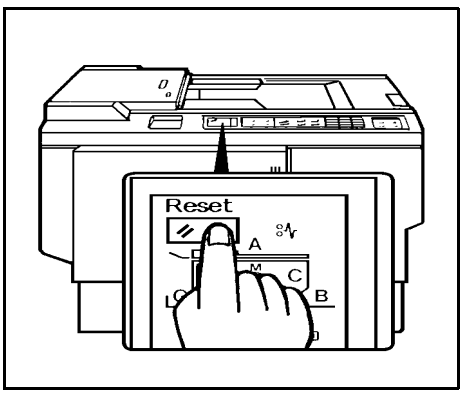
h. Close the scanner unit.

9. Installing the Ink Cartridge



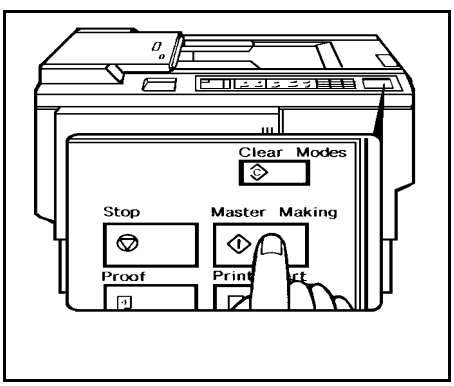
a. Open the front door and lower the ink holder.
b. Remove the ink cartridge cap.
c. Insert the ink cartridge into the ink holder and return the ink holder to the original position.
d. Close the front door.

10. Idling

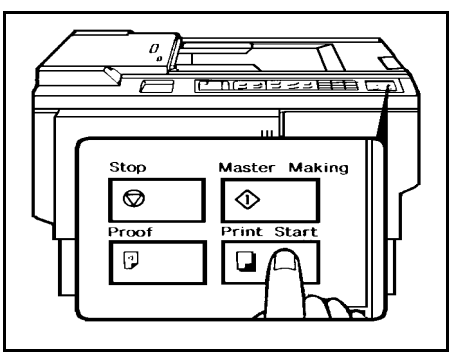


a. While holding down the "0" key on the operation panel, press the Reset key.
b. If [ ] blinks on the operation panel, press the Reset key.

11. Test Printing

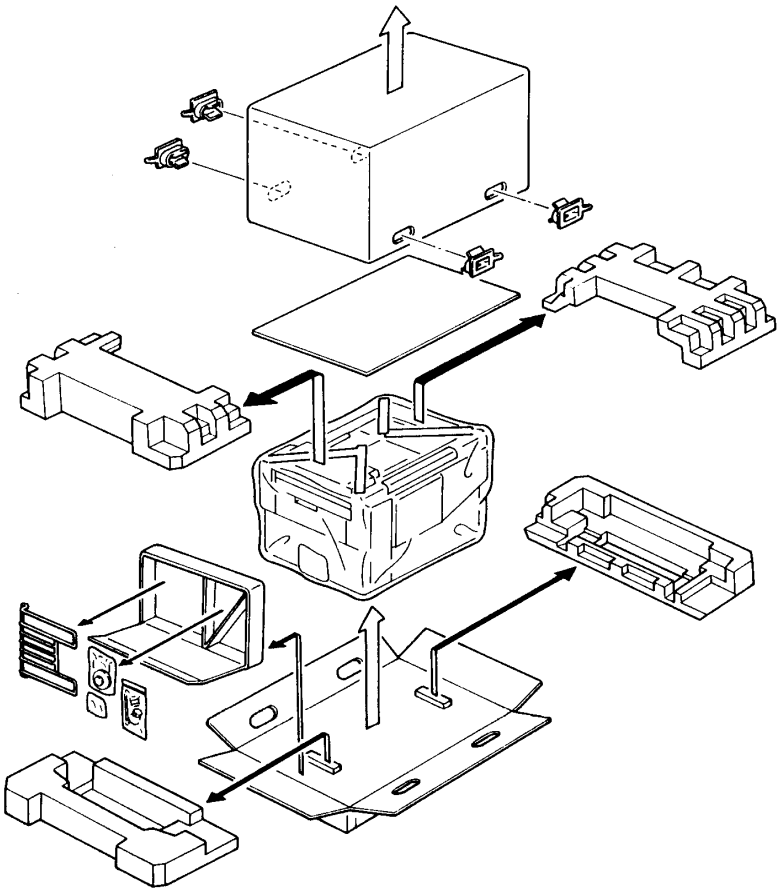


a. Adjust the original guide to match the original size.
b. Set the original face down.
c. Input the desired number of prints with the number keys and press the Master Making key.



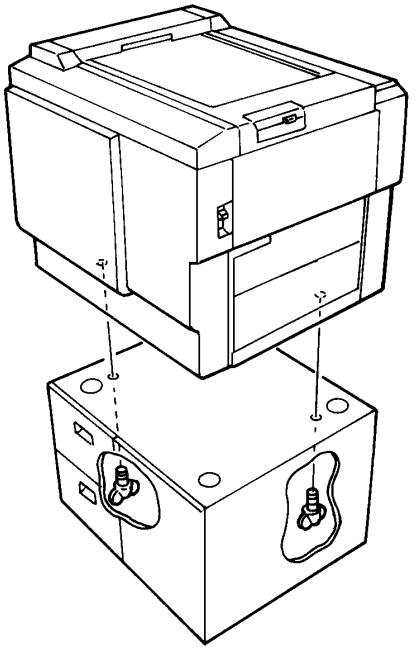
d. After one sheet of paper is delivered, press the Print Start key to make prints at the lowest print speed (1) until the print image density stabilizes. Use a test chart to check for changes in the image density.
e. Check the copy image after about one hundred prints.

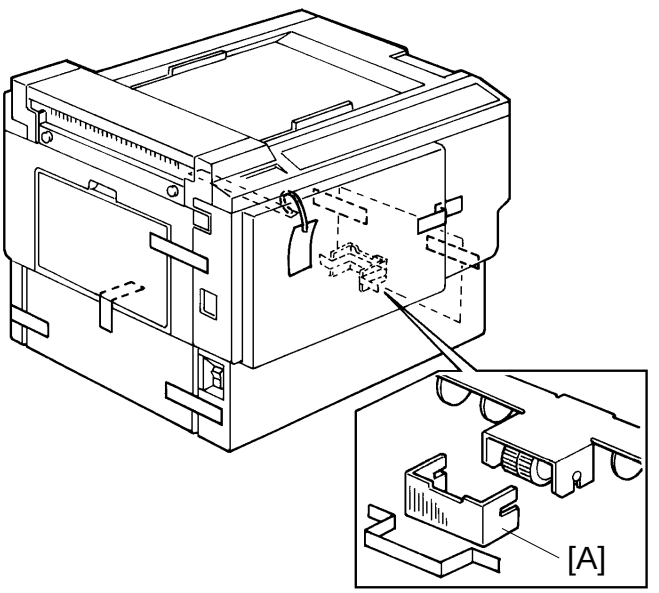
2.5 C211



1. Make sure that you have all the accessories listed below.

(1) Original Exit Tray.....1
(2) Right Tray Bracket 1
Left Tray Bracket.....1
(3) Fixing Screws.....2
(4) Master Spools 2
(5) Thermal Head Cleaner.....1
(6) Operating Instructions (USA and Asia version only).....1
(7) Operating Guide (USA and Asia version only).....1
(8) NECR 1
(9) Installation Procedure (English) 1



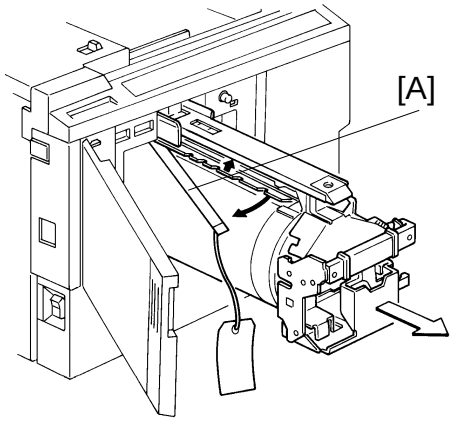


2. Mount the machine on the optional table (2 screws packed with table).

3. Remove the tape and string securing the covers and units as shown on the right.
   a. Open the paper feed tray. Then remove the cushion plate [A] from the paper feed roller section.
   b. Open the master delivery unit. Then remove the tape securing the paper delivery guide plate.

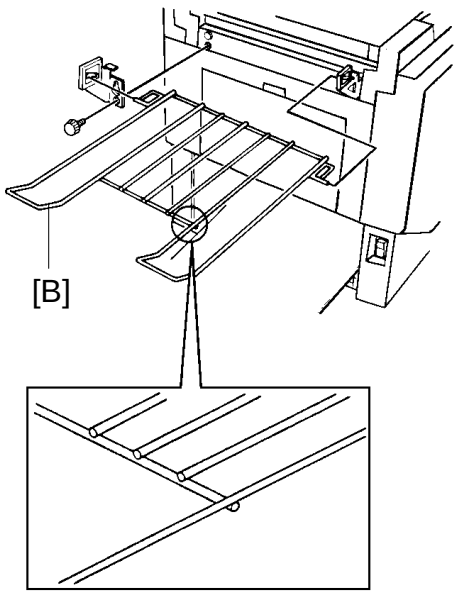
4. Remove the protective sheet [A] from the drum unit.

   a. Open the front door.
   b. Take out the drum unit.
   c. Remove the protective sheet from the master clamper.
   d. Reinstall the drum unit in the machine.

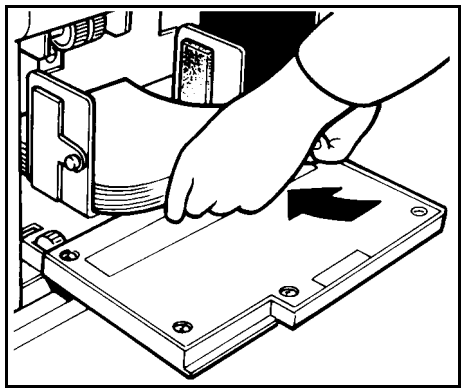


5. Install the original exit tray [B].

   a. Hook the right and left tray brackets on the stepped screws.
   b. Set the original exit tray on the brackets.
   c. Secure the brackets with fixing screws.



7. Loading Paper on the Paper Feed Table



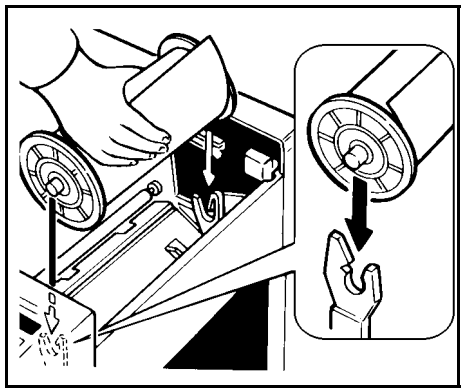
a. Open the paper feed table.

b. Stack the paper neatly on the paper feed table.

c. Position the paper feed side plates so that they lightly contact the paper on both sides.

d. Position the paper delivery table for the printing paper size, using the scale on the table.

e. Position the paper delivery side plate for the printing paper size, using the scale on the table.



8. Installing the Master Roll (Type VT-M or S)

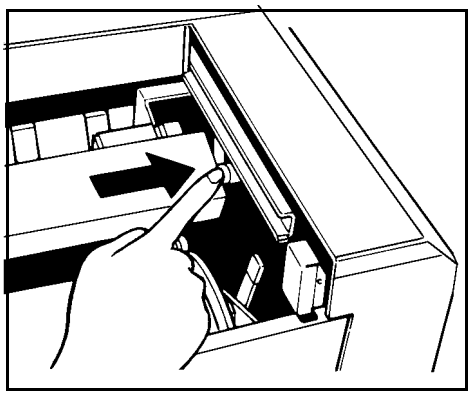
C211 B4:	Type VT-M
C211 LG/C211 A4:	Type VT-S

a. While lifting up on the release lever, slide the scanner unit to the left.

b. Attach a spool to each end of the master roll.

c. Set the master roll in the machine.

NOTE: The vinyl side faces down.



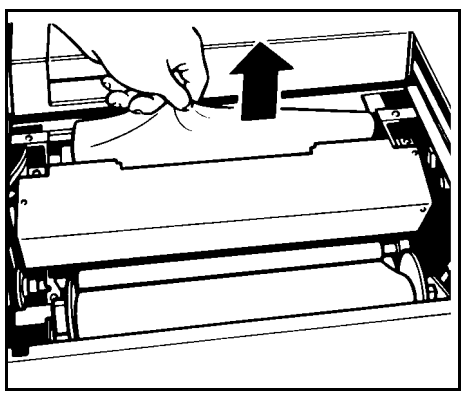
d. Return the pressure release lever to the original position.

e. Plug in the power cord and turn on the main switch.

f. Press the Master Cut button.

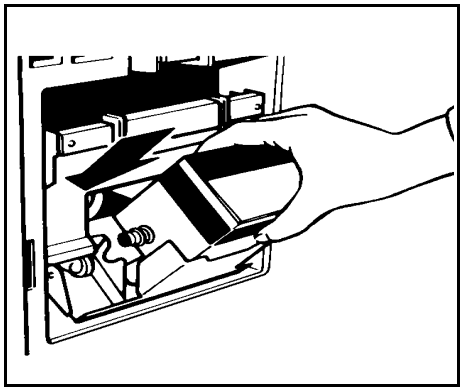
g. Remove the cut master paper.

NOTE: Please confirm that the master paper is not bent or creased.



h. Close the scanner unit.

8. Installing the Ink Cartridge



a. Open the front door and lower the ink holder.

b. Remove the ink cartridge cap.

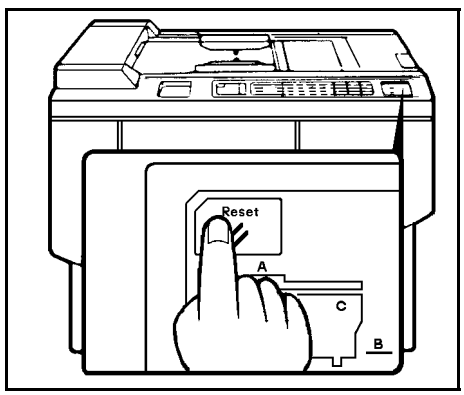
c. Insert the ink cartridge into the ink holder and return the ink holder to the original position.

d. Close the front door.

9. Idling

a. While holding down the "0" key on the operation panel, press the Reset key.

b. If + **D** blinks on the operation panel, repeat the above procedure.



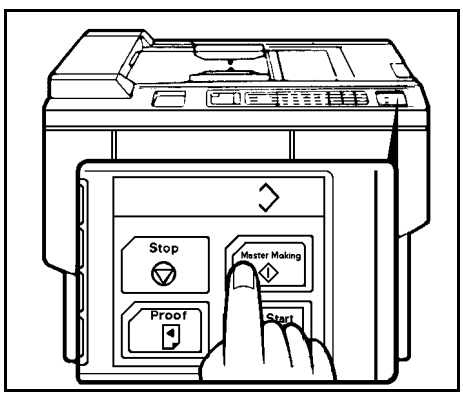
10. Test Printing

a. Adjust the original guide to match the original size.

b. Set the original face down.

c. Input the desire number of prints with the number keys and press the Master Making key.

NOTE: With a new machine, the master paper misfeed indicator + **F** blinks because there is no master yet on the drum. Press the Reset key, then press the Master Making key.



d. After one sheet of paper is delivered, make prints at the lowest print speed (1) until the print image density stabilizes. Use a test chart to check for changes in the image density.

e. Check the copy image after about one hundred prints.

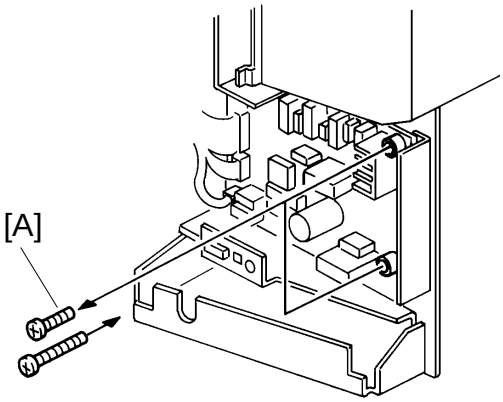
3. TAPE MARKER INSTALLATION

3.1 ACCESSORY CHECK

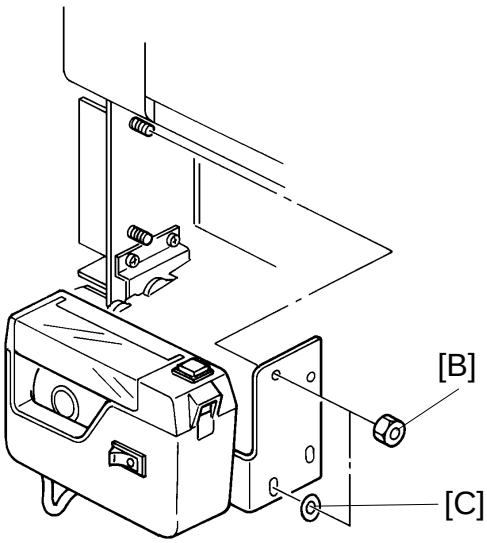
Check the quantity and condition of the accessories in the box against the following list:

1. Knob Screw
   (For models #C210, C217, C218, C219, C222, C223,
   and C225 only) 2
2. Screw M4 x 25
   (For models # C211, C212, C213, C214, C216, C224,
   and C226 only) 2
3. Hexagon Nut M4
   (For models # C211, C212, C213, C214, C216, C224,
   and C226 only) 2
4. Auxiliary Bracket (For model # C226 only) 1
5. Screw M4 x 8 (For model # C226 only) 2
6. Lock Washer (For model # C226 only) 1
7. Lock Washer 1
8. Tape 1

3.2 C211, C212, C213, C214, C216, and C224



C532I500.img



C532I501.img

Main Body:

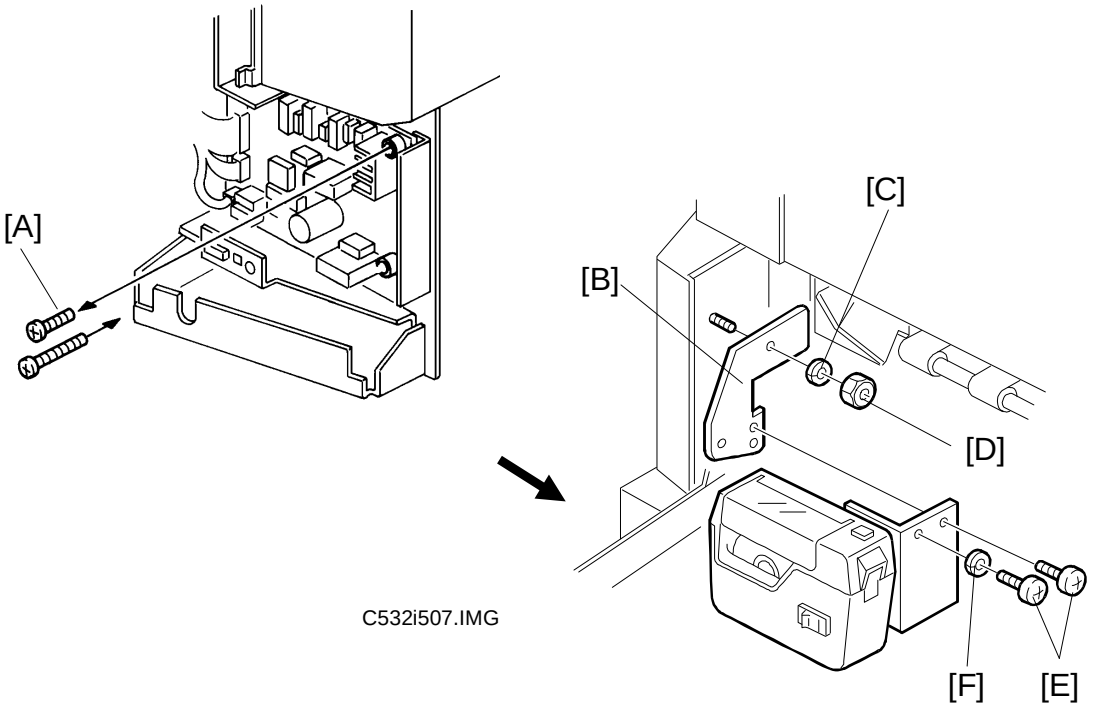
1. Turn off the main switch and unplug the power cord.
2. Remove the rear cover (6 screws).
3. Replace two screws [A], to secure the AC drive PCB with M4 x 25 screws (accessory).
4. Reinstall the rear cover.

Tape Marker:

5. Install the tape marker on the main body in the two inner holes of the tape marker bracket. Then, tighten the two hexagon nuts [B] (accessory).

   NOTE: Install the lock washer [C] (accessory) with the lower of the two nuts.

3.3 C226



Main Body:

1. Turn off the main switch and unplug the power cord.
2. Remove the rear cover (6 screws).
3. Replace the screw [A], to secure the AC drive PCB with M4 x 25 screws (accessory).
4. Reinstall the rear cover.
5. Install the auxiliary bracket [B] on the main body with the hexagon nut [D] (accessory) as shown.

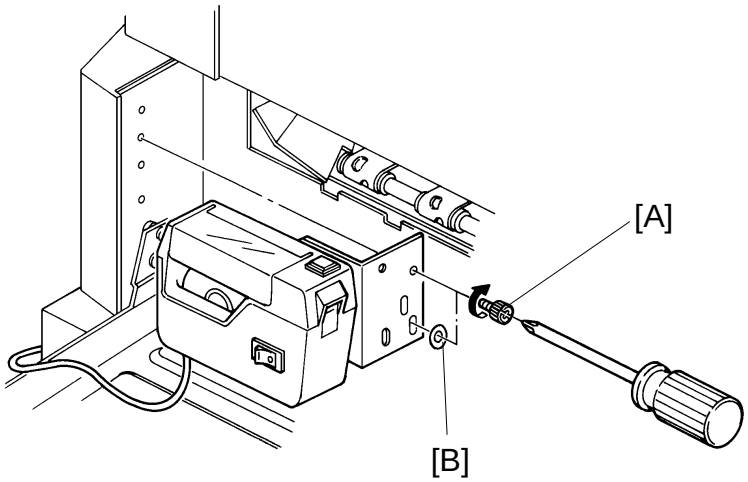
   NOTE: Install the lock washer [C] (accessory) with the nut.

Tape Marker:

6. Install the tape marker on the auxiliary bracket with two M4 x 8 screws [E] (accessory).

   NOTE: Install the lock washer [F] (accessory) with one of the two screws.

3.4 C210, C218, C219, C222, and C223



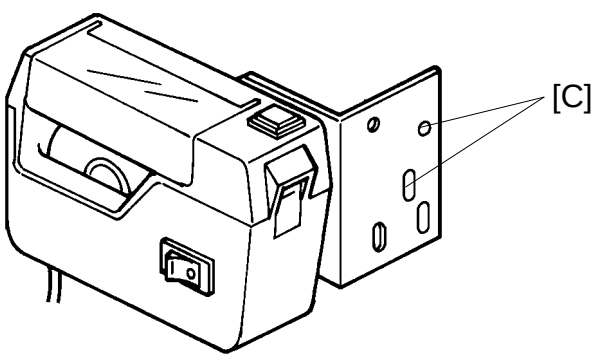
C532I502.img

1. Turn off the main switch and unplug the power cord.
2. Install the tape marker on the main body with two knob screws [A] (accessory) in the two outside holes of the tape marker bracket.

NOTE: 1) Tighten the knob screws with a screwdriver to prevent them from coming loose.
2) Install the lock washer [B] (accessory) with the lower of the two knob screws.

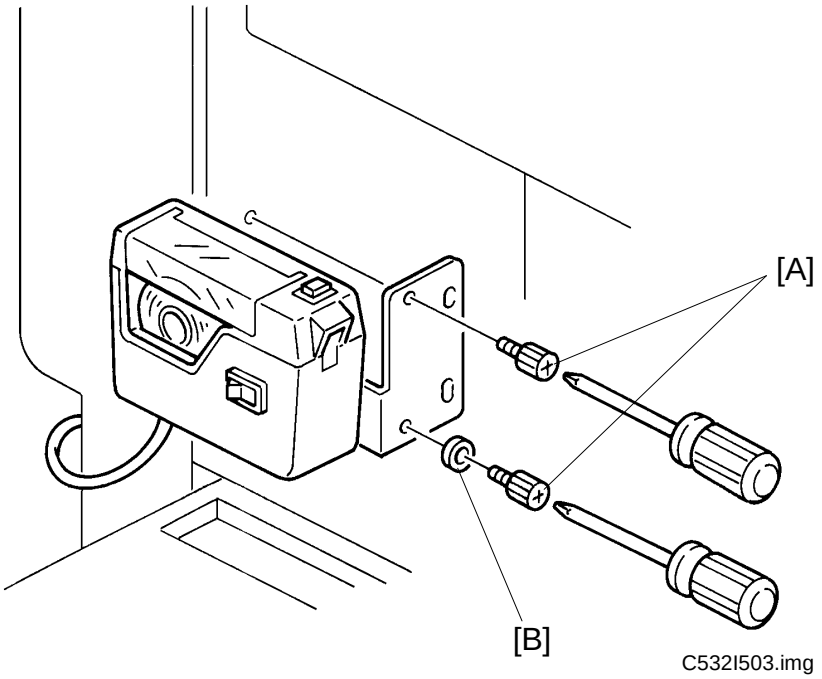
– When The New Paper Delivery Table is Installed –

Use the two holes of the tape marker bracket [C] as shown below.



A532I504.img

3.5 C217 and C225



1. Turn off the main switch and unplug the power cord.
2. Install the tape marker on the main body with two knob screws [A] (accessory) in the two inside holes of the tape marker bracket.

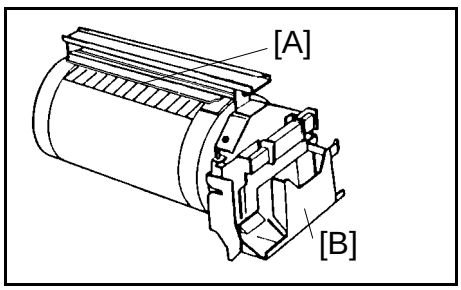
NOTE: 1) Tighten the knob screws with a screwdriver to prevent them from coming loose.
2) Install the lock washer [B] (accessory) with the lower of the two knob screws.

4. INSTALLATION PROCEDURE COLOR DRUM (Option)

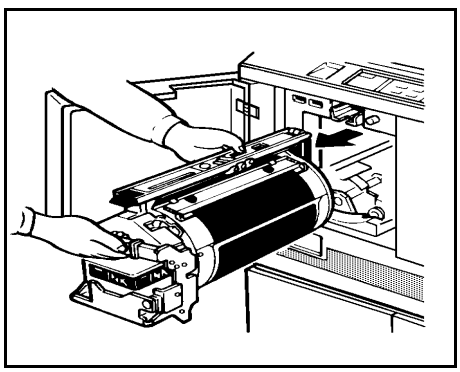
NOTE: There are three types of color drum units.

Color Drum Type VT2000-M:	For the C211 B4/C212/C213 model
Color Drum Type VT2000-LG:	For the C211 LG model
Color Drum Type VT2000-S:	For the C211 A4 model

1. Remove the protective sheet [A] from the drum unit.

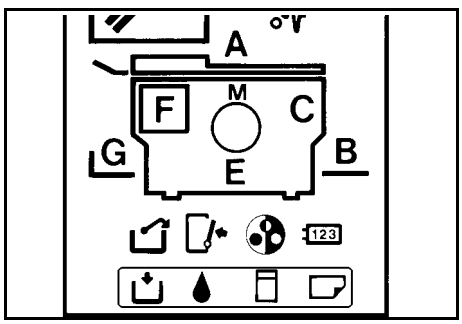


2. Remove the tape securing the ink holder [B].
3. Stick a color indicator seal on the drum case and the ink holder. The seal must be the same color as the ink in use.
4. Remove the drum unit.
   a. Leave the master wrapped around the removed drum to protect the drum from dust and drying.
   b. Keep the removed drum unit in the drum case.



5. Install the color drum unit.

   The color drum indicator on the operation panel stays lit when the color drum is mounted in the machine.

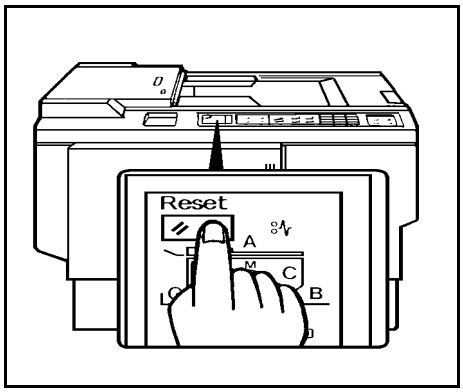


6. Install the color ink.
   a. Remove the ink cartridge cap.
   b. Insert the ink cartridge into the ink holder.

7. Idling

   a. While holding down the "0" key, press the Reset key on the operation panel.

   b. If (+ **D** : C211 model) blinks, press the Reset key.



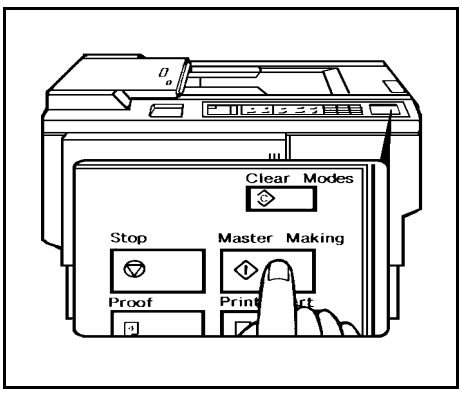
8. Test Printing

   a. Adjust the original guide to match the original size.

   b. Set the original face down.

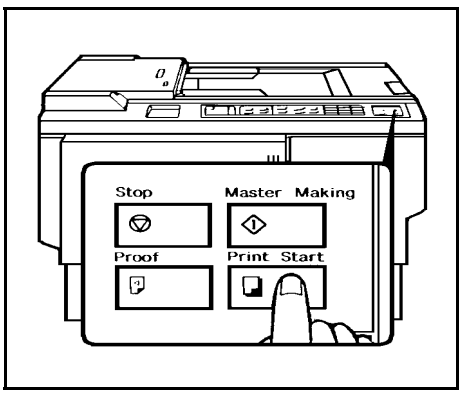
   c. Input the desired number of prints with the number keys and press the Master Making key.

   NOTE for C211 model:
   With a new drum, the master paper misfeed indicator + **F** blinks because there is no master yet on the drum. Press the Reset key, then press the Master Making key.

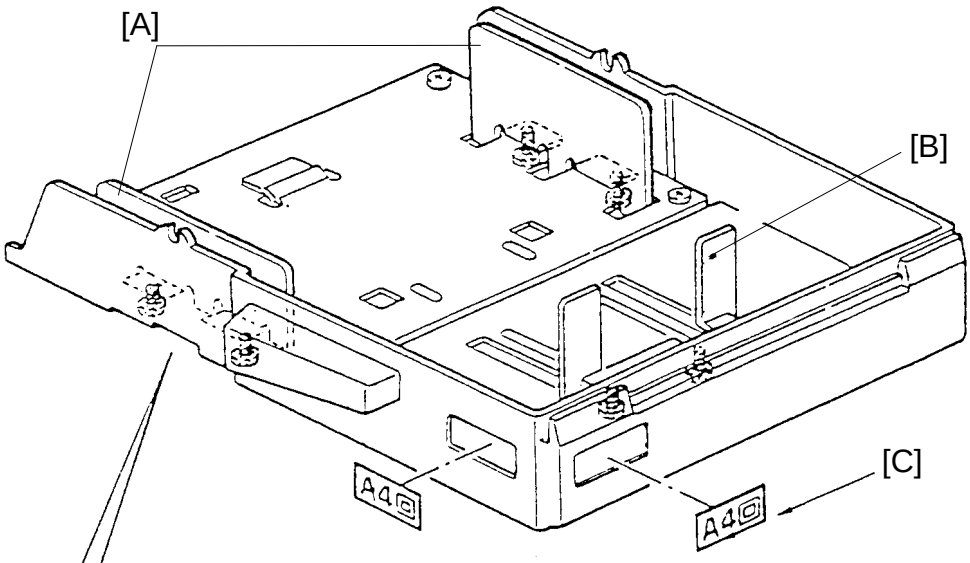


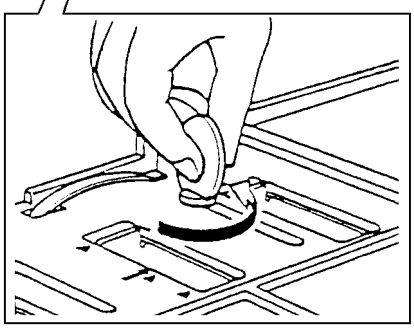
   d. After one sheet of paper is delivered, press the Print Start key to make prints at the lowest print speed (1) until the print image density stabilizes. Use a test chart to check the image density.

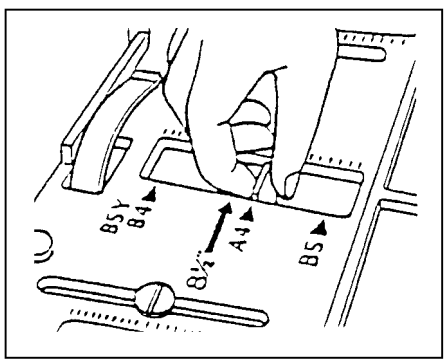
   e. Check the copy image after about one hundred prints.



5. CASSETTE INSTALLATION PROCEDURE (Option)







1. Turn the cassette over.
2. Use a coin to loosen the 6 screws securing the side fences [A] and the rear fence [B].
3. Move the 3 fences to the desired paper size position and tighten the 6 screws.

   NOTE: The paper size positions are marked on the cassette bottom.
4. Affix the paper size decals [C] to the cassette at the positions shown.

SECTION 4

SERVICE TABLES

1. MAINTENANCE TABLES

1.1 LUBRICATION POINTS

Lubricate after removing adhering ink and paper dust.

Lubrication Point	Interval	Type
Bearings for drum drive shaft	yearly	Oil
Bearing for each cam shaft	yearly	Oil
Bearing for main motor shaft	yearly	Oil
Bearing for speed reduction shaft	yearly	Oil
Gears on the drum drive shaft	yearly	Grease
Gears for each cam	yearly	Grease
Paper feed sector gear	yearly	Grease
Second feed sector gear	yearly	Grease
Edge of each cam	yearly	Grease
Master pressure plate groove	yearly	Grease

Type of Oil and Grease

Oil: Motor Oil (SAE No.20)
Grease: Shell Albania No.2

1.2 USER'S MAINTENANCE

Please advise the customer to clean each item at suitable intervals.

Cleaning Point	Interval	Cleaner
Original platen cover	at any time	Cloth and water
Exposure glass	at any time	Cloth and glass cleaner
Thermal head (C211/C212/C213/C215/ C216 only)	500 masters	Thermal Head cleaner
Paper feed rollers	at any time	Cloth, and soap and water (or ethyl alcohol)
Press roller (C211/C212/C213/C215/ C216 only)	at any time	Cloth, and soap and water (or ethyl alcohol)

1.3 TABLE OF PERIODIC INSPECTION (every 6 months)

Item/Location	Step	Inspection Standard
Original platen cover	cleaning	Wipe off the stain with soft cloth dampened with ethyl alcohol.
Exposure glass	cleaning	Wipe with dry cloth.
Mirror/Sub mirror	cleaning	Use blower brush.
Thermal head	cleaning and image check	Wipe off the stain on the thermal head using thermal head cleaning kit. Check the print image. White line must not exist.
Platen roller	cleaning	Wipe off the paper powder with cloth dampened with water.
Sensors	inspection and cleaning	Check the performance of all the sensors. Remove the stains from sensors with dry cloth.
Press roller	cleaning	Wipe off the ink and paper powder with cloth dampened with ethyl alcohol.
Drum surface	cleaning	Wipe off the ink which is forced out from trail edge of a master and paper powder using cloth dampened with ethyl alcohol.
Master feed and delivery	inspection	Master should be properly fed and clamped, without generation of skew, fold. etc. Master should also be properly delivered without jam.
Paper feed and delivery	inspection	Actually print a few sheets to ensure that paper is smoothly fed and delivered, without generation of skew, folds, wrinkles, etc.
Second paper feed rollers	cleaning	Wipe off the ink and paper powder with cloth dampened with alcohol.
Original transport roller	cleaning	Wipe off paper powder with cloth dampened with water.
ADF (C212/C213/C216/C224)		
Pull-out roller	cleaning	Wipe off paper powder with cloth dampened with water.
Original feed roller	cleaning	Wipe off paper powder with cloth dampened with water.
Separation blade	cleaning	Wipe off paper powder with cloth dampened with water.
ADF (C226 only)		
ADF pick-up, reverse, feed rollers	cleaning	Wipe off paper powder with cloth dampened with water.
ADF R1, R2, R3 rollers	cleaning	Wipe off paper powder with cloth dampened with water.

1.4 TABLE OF PERIODIC INSPECTION (every 12 months)

Item/Location	Step	Inspection Standard
Original platen cover	cleaning	Wipe off stains with soft cloth dampened with ethyl alcohol.
Exposure glass	cleaning	Wipe off the stain with soft cloth dampened with ethyl alcohol.
Fluorescent lamp	cleaning	Wipe with dry cloth.
Mirror/Sub mirror	cleaning	Use blower brush.
Thermal head	cleaning and inspection	Wipe off stains on thermal head using thermal head cleaning kit. Check the print image. White line must not exist.
Platen roller	cleaning	Wipe off paper powder with cloth dampened with water.
Paper feed roller	cleaning	Wipe off paper powder with cloth dampened with water and wipe off ink with cloth dampened with ethyl alcohol.
Separation roller	cleaning	Wipe off paper powder with cloth dampened with water and wipe off ink with cloth dampened with ethyl alcohol.
Sensors	inspection and cleaning	Check the performance of all the sensors. Wipe off stains on the sensor with dry cloth.
Master delivery rollers	cleaning	Wipe off the built up ink and paper powder on the master delivery rollers using cloth dampened with ethyl alcohol.
Master delivery belts	cleaning	Wipe off the built up ink and paper powder on the master delivery belts using cloth dampened with ethyl alcohol.
Second paper feed rollers	cleaning	Wipe off the built up ink and paper powder on the second feed rollers using cloth dampened with ethyl alcohol.
Press roller	cleaning	Wipe off the built up ink and paper powder on the press roller using cloth dampened with ethyl alcohol.
Drum surface	cleaning	Wipe off the ink, which is forced out from trail edge of a master, and paper powder using cloth dampened with ethyl alcohol.
Master feed and delivery	inspection	Master should be properly fed and clamped without generation of skew, fold, etc. Master should also be properly delivered without jam.
Paper feed and delivery	inspection	Actually print a few sheets to ensure that paper is smoothly fed and delivered without generation of skew, folds, wrinkles, etc.
Original transport roller	cleaning	Wipe off paper powder with cloth dampened with water.
Lubrication points	Lubrication	Lubricate the lubrication points by following lubrication points list.

Item/Location	Step	Inspection Standard
ADF (C212/C213/C216/C224)		
Pull-out roller	cleaning	Wipe off paper powder with cloth dampened with water.
Original feed roller	cleaning	Wipe off paper powder with cloth dampened with water.
Separation blade	cleaning	Wipe off paper powder with cloth dampened with water.
ADF (C226 only)		
ADF pick-up, reverse, feed rollers	cleaning	Wipe off paper powder with cloth dampened with water.
ADF R1, R2, R3 rollers	cleaning	Wipe off paper powder with cloth dampened with water.

2. EXPECTED LIFE OF PARTS

NOTE: Main parts have the following expected life.

Target Copy Volume Range: Avg. 50,000 prints/month.
(Max. 100,000 ~ Min. 20,000 prints/month)
Avg. 500 masters/month

Section	Part Description	Expected Life
Master Feed Unit	Thermal head Cutter Platen roller	30,000 masters 30,000 masters 30,000 masters
Drum Unit	Drum screen	2 years or 1,200,000 prints
Paper Feed Unit	Paper feed rubber side plate Paper feed roller Upper separation roller Separation plate Lower separation roller Feed roller brake	1,200,000 prints 6 months or 300,000 prints 1 year or 600,000 prints 1 year or 600,000 prints 2,000,000 prints 1,000,000 prints
Printing Unit	Pressure roller	2 years or 1,200,000 prints
Delivery Unit	Vacuum belts	2 years or 1,200,000 prints
(C211/C212/C213/C215/C216/C224 only)		
Scanner Unit	Fluorescent lamp Original transport rollers	15,000 masters 1 year or 6,000 masters
(C212/C213/C216/C224 only)		
ADF Unit	Pull-out roller Original feed roller Separation blade Original pressure plate	60,000 sheets 60,000 sheets 60,000 sheets 60,000 sheets
(C226 only)		
ADF Unit	Pick-up roller Reverse roller Feed roller	30,000 sheets 30,000 sheets 30,000 sheets

3. SPECIAL TOOLS

Description	Parts Number	Remarks
Test chart	99992131	C2111/C212/C213/C215/ C216/C224 only
Resolution chart	A0129110	C215/C216/C224 only
Drum gauge	C2009001	
Image shifting gauge	C2009002	

4. TABLE OF SERVICE CALL INDICATIONS

4.1 C226

Indication	Trouble	Possible cause
E 01	Malfunction in the cutter section: The cutter does not reach both right and left cutter position switches within 2 seconds.	1) Drive wire cut 2) Drive section malfunction 3) No power supply
E 02	Malfunction in the paper table drive section: The lower limit sensor or the paper table height sensor status does not change even though the paper table Up or Down signal is applied.	1) Drive worm gear broken 2) Mounting screw of the worm gear broken 3) No power supply
E 04	The temperature of the thermal head is high: The temperature of the thermal head becomes greater than 54 °C.	1) Defective thermistor 2) Defective thermal head
E 05	Malfunction in the image shifting section: All the encoder output signals are at the "H" level.	1) Encoder connector of the image shifting section is disconnected. 2) Defective encoder
E 06	Mechanical lock: The drum rotation sensor detects that the drum rotation speed is abnormal.	1) Mechanical lock 2) Main motor failure 3) Blown fuse on the AC drive board
E 09	Malfunction of the thermal head.	1) Defective thermal head 2) Defective thermistor 3) Thermal head harness broken
E-10	Malfunction in the thermal head drive section.	1) Defective main control PCB 2) Thermal head drive wire short circuit
E-11	Image shift motor malfunction: The encoder status does not change within 3 seconds after the encoder motor starts rotating.	1) Image shift motor lock 2) Image shift motor harness broken
E-12	Malfunction in the pressure plate drive section: The upper or lower pressure plate sensor remains activated for more than 4 seconds after the pressure plate motor starts turning. The upper or lower pressure plate sensor is not activated within 8 seconds after the pressure plate starts leaving for the other side.	1) Pressure plate motor lock 2) Pressure plate motor harness broken 3) Pressure plate sensor malfunction
E-13	Scanner malfunction: The scanner home position sensor did not turn on after the motor moved for more than 7 seconds back to the home position after scanning. The scanner could not leave the home position within 4 seconds of power on. Otherwise, when the scanner could not return to the home position within 2 seconds of leaving.	1) Mechanical lock of scanner 2) Defective scanner home position sensor

4.2 C224

Indication	Trouble	Possible cause
E 01	Malfunction in the cutter section: The cutter does not reach both right and left cutter position switches within 2 seconds.	1) Drive wire cut 2) Drive section malfunction 3) No power supply
E 02	Malfunction in the paper table drive section: The lower limit sensor or the paper table height sensor status does not change even though the paper table Up or Down signal is applied.	1) Drive worm gear broken 2) Mounting screw of the worm gear broken 3) No power supply
E 04	The temperature of the thermal head or the power supply unit is high: The temperature of the thermal head becomes greater than 53°C.	1) Defective thermistor 2) Defective thermal head 3) Defective power supply unit
E 05	Malfunction in the image shifting section: All the encoder output signals are at the "H" level.	1) Encoder connector of the image shifting section is disconnected. 2) Defective encoder
E 06	Mechanical lock: The drum rotation sensor detects that the drum rotation speed is abnormal.	1) Mechanical lock 2) Main motor failure
E 09	Malfunction of the thermal head.	1) Defective thermal head 2) Defective thermistor 3) Thermal head harness broken
E-10	Malfunction in the thermal head drive section.	1) Defective main control PCB 2) Thermal head drive wire short circuit
E-11	Image shift motor malfunction: The encoder status does not change within 3 seconds after the encoder motor starts rotating.	1) Image shift motor lock 2) Image shift motor harness broken
E-12	Malfunction in the pressure plate drive section: The loner pressure plate sensor is not actuated within 8 seconds. The upper pressure plate sensor is not actuated within 4 seconds.	1) Pressure plate motor lock 2) Pressure plate motor harness broken 3) Pressure plate position sensor malfunction

4.3 C215/C216

Indication	Trouble	Possible cause
E 01	Malfunction in cutter section: The cutter does not reach both right and left cutter position switches within 2 seconds.	1) Drive wire cut 2) Drive section malfunction 3) No power supply
E 02	Malfunction in the paper table drive section: The lower limit sensor or the paper table height sensor status does not change even though the paper table UP or Down signal is applied.	1) Drive worm gear broken 2) Mounting screw of the worm gear broken 3) No power supply
E 03	Malfunction in the program.	1) Defective PROM 2) Defective control PCB
E 04	Temperature of the thermal head or the power supply unit is high: Temperature of the thermal head becomes greater than 57°C or the temperature of the power supply unit becomes greater than 85°C when the machine is in stand-by condition.	1) Defective thermistor 2) Defective thermal head 3) Defective power supply unit
E 05	Malfunction in the image shifting section:	1) Encoder connector of the image shifting sectiond is connected. 2) Defective encoder
E 06	Mechanical lock: Drum rotation sensor detects that the drum rotation speed is abnormal.	1) Mechanical lock 2) Main motor failure
E 07	Malfunction in the program (PROM). When using I/O check mode, "E 07" lights up if the ROM is defective. **NOTE:** When "E 03" is lit, access I/O check mode to check if the PROM is defective.	Defective ROM
E 08	Thermal head drive signal (ENL) is defective.	Defective image processing board.

4.4 C211/C212/C213

Indication	Trouble	Possible causes
E 01	Malfunction in cutter section: The cutter motor does not reach both right and left cutter position detecting switches within 2 seconds	1) Drive wire cut 2) Drive section malfunction 3) No power supply
E 02	Malfunction in the paper table drive section: The lower limit sensor or the paper table height sensor is not turned off even though the paper table UP or Down signal is applied	1) Drive worm gear broken 2) Mounting screw of the worm gear broken 3) No power supply
E 03	Malfunction in the program:	1) PROM defective 2) Control PCB defective
E 04	Temperature of the thermal head or the power supply unit is high: Temperature of the thermal head becomes greater than 57°C or the temperature of the power supply unit becomes greater than 85°C when the machine is in stand-by condition	1) Thermistor defective 2) Thermal head defective 3) Power supply unit defective
E 05	Malfunction in the image shifting section:	1) Encoder connector of the image shifting section disconnected 2) Encoder defective
E 06	Mechanical lock: When a paper jam or part failure occurs, the decoder detects that the motor speed is incorrect if this occurs, the main motor turns off. This prevents any further damage its components or fuse failure.	1) Paper Jam 2) Parts failure
E07	Malfunction in the program (PROM). When using I/O check mode, "E07" lights up if the ROM is defective. **NOTE:** When "E03" is lit, check whether or not the PROM is defective using I/O check mode.	ROM defective.
E08	The pulse width applied to the thermal head is out of standard	Thermal head drive board detective.
	The power supply unit temperature reaches 85°C	Power supply unit detective (Thermal guard failure)

5. DIP SW, LED, VR, AND TP TABLES

5.1 C226

5.1.1 Dip Switch Table

DIP SW No.	Function	Remarks	Factory Setting
DPS101	Cover Open OFF	Bypasses the cover safety switches, except for the ADF cover switch. To disable the ADF cover switch function, use SP mode no. 146.	OFF

5.1.2 LED Table

LED No.	Function	Remarks
LED101	Main Motor	Lights when the main motor turns on.
LED102	Second Paper Exit Sensor	Lights when paper is detected.
LED103	First Paper Exit Sensor	Lights when paper is detected.
LED104	Master Eject Sensor	Lights when a master is under the master eject sensor.
LED105	Lights when ink is present.	

5.1.3 VR Table

VR No.	Function
VR101	Adjustment for Drum Speed 5 (120 rpm)
VR102	Second Paper Exit Sensor Adjustment
VR103	First Paper Exit Sensor Adjustment
VR104	Master Eject Sensor Adjustment

5.1.4 Test Pin Table

Test Pin No.	Function
TP101	Drum Rotation Detection Signal Output
TP102	Second Paper Exit Sensor Voltage
TP103	First Paper Exit Sensor Voltage
TP104	Master Eject Sensor Voltage
TP105	Ink Detection Voltage
TP106	Contact Image Sensor Output
TP107	Clock Signal Output
TP108	Line Synchronized Signal Output
TP109	Grounding

5.2 C224

5.2.1 DIP SW Table (on the main board)

No.	DIP SW	Function	Remarks	Factory Setting
1	DPS101	Not Used		OFF
2	DPS102-1	Thermal Head Test	Turn off to access test pattern mode. (Refer to the Thermal Head Test section.)	ON
3	DPS102-2	Dither Matrix Selection	Turn off to select the 6 x 6 dither matrix. (Image will be lighter if the 6 x 6 dither matrix is selected.) ON: 4 x 4 OFF: 6 x 6	ON
4	DPS103-1 DPS103-2	Skip Paper Feed Setting	Select the number of drum rotation for every print when the Skip Paper Feed mode is selected. (See the skip paper setting table on the next page.)	DPS103-1: OFF DPS103-2: OFF
5	DPS103-3	Initial Full Master Check	If this switch is on, when the main switch is turned on, masters in the master eject box are compressed once to check if the master eject box is full.	OFF
6	DPS103-4	Initial Print	ON: Make two prints after making a master. OFF: Make one print after making a master.	OFF
7	DPS103-5	Beeper ON/OFF	Turn on to sound the beeper.	OFF
8	DPS103-6	Security Function	If this switch is on, prints cannot be made without making a new master after turning the main switch off and on.	OFF
9	DPS103-7	Key Counter	Turn on when installing the key counter.	OFF
10	DPS103-8	On Line	Turn on when installing the option controller.	OFF
11	DPS104-1 DPS104-2 DPS104-3	Reduction Ratio Compensation	Used to adjust the reduction ratio in the sub-scan direction. (Refer to Image Magnification in the Sub-Scan Direction Adjustment.)	
12	DPS104-4	Not Used		OFF
13	DPS104-5	Not Used		OFF
14	DPS104-6	Auto Class	If this switch is on, in Memory/Class mode, the next job starts 5 seconds after the previous job is finished even if the tape marker is not installed.	OFF
15	DPS104-7	Reduction Ratio Selection	Select the reduction ratio setting. ON: 93%, 75%, 64%. OFF: 93%, 82%, 71%.	A4 version: OFF LT version: ON
16	DPS104-8	Class/Memory Selection	Select class or memory function. ON: Memory OFF: Class	ON

Skip Paper Setting Table

	1 Sheet/ 2 Rotations	1 Sheet/ 3 Rotations	1 Sheet/ 5 Rotations	1 Sheet/ 8 Rotations
DPS103-1	OFF	ON	OFF	ON
DPS103-2	OFF	OFF	ON	ON

Skip paper setting can also be changed by key operation.

Press a number key while pressing the skip paper feed key to select the number of rotations per print.

5.2.2 LED Table

No.	LED	Function	Remarks
1	LED101 (MSPD)	Main Motor ON	When the main motor turns on, the LED lights.
2	LED102 (PDLV)	2nd Paper Exit SN	When paper is detected, the LED lights.
3	LED103 (ROLL)	1st Paper Exit SN	When paper is detected, the LED lights.
4	LED104 (MDLV)	Master Eject SN	When a master is detected, the LED lights.
5	LED105 (INK)	Ink Detection	When ink is detected, the LED lights. **NOTE:** When the drum release lever is raised, the drum connector is disconnected and the the LED turns off.

5.2.3 VR Table

No.	VR	Function
1	VR101 (MSPD)	Main motor speed adjustment.
2	VR102 (PDLV)	2nd paper exit sensor adjustment.
3	VR103 (ROLL)	1st paper exit sensor adjustment.
4	VR104 (MDLV)	Master eject sensor adjustment.

5.2.4 Test Pin Table (main control pcb)

No.	Test Pin	Function
1	TP101 (DPLS)	Drum rotation sensor output.
2	TP102 (PDLV)	2nd drum position sensor output.
3	TP103 (ROLL)	1st drum position sensor output.
4	TP104 (MDLV)	Master eject sensor output.
5	TP105 (INK)	Ink detection signal.
6	TP106 (GND)	GND.
7	TP107 (GND)	GND.

5.2.5 Test Pin Table (A/D conversion pcb)

No.	Test Pin	Function
1	TP600	GND.
2	TP601	Shift signal output (SH).
3	TP602	CCD output (OS).
4	TP603	Inverted and amplified CCD output.
5	TP604	Black level standard voltage output.

5.3 C215/C216

5.3.1 DIP SW Table (on the main board)

No.	DIP SW	Function	Remarks
1	DP102–1	Cover Open	Turn on to disable all cover safety switch functions except ADF cover safety. (Normal: OFF)
2	DP102–2	ADF Cover Open	Turn on to disable the ADF cover safety switch function. (C216 Normal: OFF) (C215 Normal: ON)
3	DP101–1	Key Counter	Turn on when installing the key counter. (Normal: OFF)
4	DP101–2	Buzzer ON/OFF	Turn on to sound the beeper. (Normal: OFF)
5	DP101–3	Initial Print	ON: Makes two prints after making a master. OFF: Makes one print after making a master. (Normal: OFF)
6	DP101–4	ADF Operation	Turn on to kill the ADF function. (C216 Normal: OFF) (C215 Normal: ON)
7	DP101–5	Class/Memory Selection	To select class or memory function. OFF: Class, ON: Memory. (Normal: ON)
8	DP101–6	I/O Check Procedure	Selects the I/O check mode access procedure. (ON: Europe/Asia version, OFF: US version)
9	DP101–7	Erase White Line	Turn on to erase the white line 60 mm from the leading edge. (NOTE1) (Normal: OFF)
10	DP101–8	Double Master Compression	If this switch is ON, when the master making key is pressed, masters in the master eject box are compressed once before plotting starts and detects if the master box is full. (NOTE2) (Normal: OFF)
11	DP103–1	Reduction Ratio Compensation	Used to adjust the reduction ratio in the sub-scan direction.
12	DP103–2	Reduction Ratio Compensation	Used to adjust the reduction ratio in the sub-scan direction.
13	DP103–3	Reduction Ratio Compensation	Used to adjust the reduction ratio in the sub-scan direction.
14	DP103–4	Mode Clear	If this switch is turned on, the blind key on the operation panel is used as the clear mode key. (Normal: OFF)
15	DP103–5 DP103–6	Skip Paper Feed Setting	Setting these switches enables skip paper feed mode. After setting these switches, the blind key is used to access skip paper feed mode. (NOTE3) (Normal: 103-5 OFF, 103-6 OFF)

NOTE 1) The shock wave from clamping might make a thin white line 60 mm from the leading edge. This line is visible when the image is made by photo mode. By turning on DPS 101-7, the reverse roller solenoid ON timing is delayed to absorb the shock wave. However, the above measure sometimes disturbs master registration (image position on the master).

2) If the customer does not dispose of the ejected masters even though full master is indicated (Turning off the main switch resets full master condition), master eject jams or master eject belt might slip off. Double master compression prevents the customer from making a master when the master box is full. However, if this switch is turned on, the master compression is performed twice for every master made. This hastens parts wear and may cause trouble.

3) The following skip number can be selected by setting DIP SW 103-5 and 103-6.

DPS103	1 Sheet/ 1 Rotation	1 Sheet/ 3 Rotation	1 Sheet/ 5 Rotation	1 Sheet/ 8 Rotation
5	OFF	ON	OFF	ON
6	OFF	OFF	ON	ON

If both DPS 103-4 (Mode Clear) and DPS 103-4/5 (Skip Paper Feed Setting) are selected, Mode Clear mode is selected. (Skip Feed is ignored.)

5.3.2 DIP SW Table (image processing board)

No.	DIP SW	Function	Remarks
1	DPS 400-1	Test Pattern	Turn off to access test pattern mode (Normal: ON)
2	DPS 400-1	Dither Pattern	Used to change dither matrix (ON: 4 x 4, OFF: 6 x 6)

5.3.3 LED Table

No.	LED	Function	Remarks
1	LED 101	Main Motor ON	When the main motor turns on, LED lights
2	LED 102	1st Paper Exit SN Detection	When paper is detected, LED lights
3	LED 103	2nd Paper Exit SN Detection	When paper is detected, LED light
4	LED 104	Ink Detection	When ink is detected, LED lights **NOTE:** When the drum release lever is raised, the drum connector is disconnected and LED turns off.

5.3.4 VR Table (main board)

No.	VR	Function
1	VR 101	Main motor speed adjustment
2	VR 102	1st paper exit sensor adjustment
3	VR 103	2nd paper exit sensor adjustment

5.3.5 VR Table (A/D conversion board)

No.	VR	Function
1	VR 600	White level adjustment
2	VR 601	Black level adjustment

5.3.6 Test Pin Table (main board)

No.	Test Pin	Function	Standard Voltage
1	TP 101	GND	0 V.
2	TP 102	1st paper exit sensor (PDLV)	ON: 5 ~ 10 V OFF: 0 V
3	TP 103	1st paper exit sensor (PROL)	ON: 5V OFF: 0 V

5.3.7 Test Pin Table (A/D conversion board)

No.	Test Pin	Function
1	TP 600	GND
2	TP 601	Shift signal output (SH)
3	TP 602	CCD output (OS)
4	TP 603	Inverted and amplified CCD output
5	TP 604	Black level standard voltage output

5.4 C211/C212/C213

5.4.1 DIP SW (on the main control PCB): C212/C213

NO. DIP SW	Function	Remarks
1. DPS101-1	Cover Open	Turn on to disable all cover safety switch functions except ADF cover safety.(Normal: OFF)
2. DPS101-2	ADF Cover Open	Turn on to release ADF cover.
3. DPS102-1	Key Counter (Option)	Turn on when installing Key Counter. (Normal: OFF)
4. DPS102-2	Buzzer ON/OFF	Turn on to sound the beeper. (Normal: OFF)
5. DPS102-3	Initial Print	Once: OFF, Twice: ON (Normal: OFF)
6. DPS102-4	ON Line-1	Turn on to use the machine with a PC. (Normal: OFF)
7. DPS102-5	Drum Master Detection	Turn on to detect the master on the drum. (Normal: ON)
8. DPS102-6	Paper Size Detection	Selects the paper size. (ON: LT version, OFF: A4 version)
9. DPS102-7	I/O Check Mode Access Procedure	Selects the I/O Check mode access procedure. (ON: Europe/Asia version, OFF: US version)
10. DPS102-8	ON Line-2	Turn on to use the machine with the Print Box. (Japanese version only)

5.4.2 Photo Diode (on the main control PCB): C212/C213

NO. LED	Function	Remarks
1. LED-101	Main Motor ON	When main motor turns on, LED lights.
2. LED-102	Master Eject SN Detection	When master is detected, LED lights.
3. LED-103	1st Paper Exit SN Detection	When paper is detected, LED lights.
4. LED-104	2nd Paper Exit SN Detection	When paper is detected, LED lights.
5. LED-105	Drum Master SN Detection	When master is detected, LED lights.
6. LED-106	Ink Detection	When ink is detected LED lights.

5.4.3 VR: C212/C213

NO. VR	PCB	Function
1. VR-101	Main	Main Motor Speed Adjustment
2. VR-102	Main	2nd Paper Exit Detection Adjustment
3. VR-103	Main	Drum Master Detection Adjustment
4. VR-104	Main	Master Eject Detection Adjustment
5. VR-105	Main	1st Paper Exit Detection Adjustment
6. VR-1	A/D Conversion	White Level Adjustment
7. VR-2	A/D Conversion	Black Level Adjustment
8. VR-201	Power Supply	Thermal Head Voltage Adjustment (16V)
9. VR-204	Power Supply	Vcc (+5V) Line Voltage Adjustment
10. VR-901	Ink Detecting	Ink Detecting Adjustment

5.4.4 DIP SW (on the image processing PCB): C212/C213

NO. DIP SW	Function
1. DPS400-1	Enlarge/Reduction Compensation Switch
2. DPS400-2	Enlarge/Reduction Compensation Switch
3. DPS400-3	Enlarge/Reduction Compensation Switch
4. DPS400-4	Reproduction Ratio (ON: LT Version OFF: A4 Version)
5. DPS400-5	Thermal Head (Pulse Control) Image Density High ⟷ Low 400-5 → ON ON OFF OFF 400-6 → ON OFF ON OFF
6. DPS400-6	
7. DPS400-7	Output the Test Pattern Image (Normal: ON)
8. DPS400-8	Dither matrix selection (Normal: ON) (ON: 6 x 6 Dither matrix, OFF: 4 x 4 Dither matrix)

5.4.5 DIP SW (on the main control PCB): C211

No.	DIP SW	Function	Remarks
1	DPS100-1	Key Counter (Option)	Turn on when installing Key Counter. (Normal: OFF)
2	DPS100-2	Buzzer ON/OFF	Turn on to sound the beeper. (Normal: OFF)
3	DPS100-3	Initial Print	Once: OFF, Twice: ON (Normal: OFF)
4	DPS100-4	ON Line-2	Turn on DPS100-4 and 5 to use the machine with the Print Box. (Japanese version only)
5	DPS100-5		
6	DPS100-6	Main Motor Speed Adjustment	Turn on to adjust the main motor speed using VR100. (Normal: OFF)
7	DPS101-1	Cover Open	Turn on to disable all cover safety switch functions. (Normal: OFF)
8	DPS101-2	ADF Cover Open	Turn on to release ADF cover.(Normal: ON)

	DPS102-1	DPS102-2	Version	Remarks
9	OFF	OFF	Japanese version	Class mode + B4 master processing
	OFF	ON	US version (C211 LG)	Memory mode + LG master processing + I/O check mode access procedure for US version
	ON	OFF	Europe/Asia version (C211 B4)	Memory mode + B4 master processing + I/O check mode access procedure for Europe/Asia version
	ON	ON	Europe/Asia version (C211 A4)	Memory mode + A4 master processing + I/O check mode access procedure for Europe/Asia version

5.4.6 PHOTODIODE (on the main control PCB): C211

No.	LED	Function	Remarks
1	LED100	Main Motor ON	When the main motor turns on, LED lights
2	LED101	2nd Paper Exit Detection	When paper is detected, LED lights
3	LED102	Ink Detection	When Ink is present, LED lights
4	LED103	1st Paper Exit Detection	When paper is detected, LED lights

5.4.7 VR: C211

No.	VR	PCB	Remarks
1	VR-100	Main	Main Motor Speed Adjustment
2	VR-102	Main	1st Paper Exit Detection Adjustment
3	VR-101	Main	2nd Paper Exit Detection Adjustment
4	VR-201	Power Supply	Thermal Head Voltage Adjustment (16V)
5	VR-203	Power Supply	Adjust the VCC (+5V) Line Voltage
6	VR-901	Ink Detecting	**Ink Detecting Adjustment**
7	VR-600	A/D Conversion	White Level adjustment

5.4.8 DIP SW (on the image processing PCB): C211

NO. DIP SW	Function
1. DPS400-1	Enlarge/Reduction Compensation Switch
2. DPS400-2	Enlarge/Reduction Compensation Switch
3. DPS400-3	Enlarge/Reduction Compensation Switch
4. DPS400-4	Reproduction Ratio (ON: LT Version OFF: A4 Version)
5. DPS400-5	Thermal Head (Pulse Control) Image Density High ← → Low 400-5 → ON ON OFF OFF 400-6 → ON OFF ON OFF
6. DPS400-6	
7. DPS400-7	Output the Test Pattern Image (Normal: ON)
8. DPS400-8	Not used

6. SERVICE PROGRAM TABLE (I/O CHECK MODE)

6.1 C226

6.1.1 Service Program Mode Operation

The service program (SP) mode is used to check electrical data, change modes, or change adjustment values.

Service Program Mode Access Procedure (For Engineers)
All service program modes can be accessed with the following procedures.

1. Press the following keys on the operation panel in the following order:
   Method 1:
   a) **Clear Modes key**
   b) **Clear (C) key**
   c) **Combine 2 Originals key**
   d) **Enter key**

   Method 2:
   a) Turn off the power switch
   b) Press the **Start key**, **Stop key**, and **Clear (C) key** simultaneously
   c) Turn on the power

2. The following is displayed on the LCD when the SP mode is accessed.

   ```
   SP–MODE
    PROGRAM No.  0
   ```

3. Using the **number keys**, enter the desired SP mode number (listed in the service program table), then press the **Enter (#) key**.

   NOTE: The SP mode number can be shifted up or down by pressing the **Select Size And Direction ("<" or ">") keys**.

4. Follow the "Change Adjustment Values or Modes" procedure on the next page. To cancel the SP mode, press the **Clear Modes key**. If you entered the SP mode using Method 2, you can cancel the SP mode only by turning the main switch off then on.

Service Program Mode Access Procedure (For Users)
This procedure allows users to access only the service program modes that are marked with an asterisk in the service program table.

1. Press the **SP Mode key** on the operation panel.
2. The following is displayed on the LCD.

```
SP–MODE
 PROGRAM No.  0
```

3. Using the **number keys**, enter the desired SP mode number (listed in the service program table), then press the **Enter (#) key**.
4. Do the following procedure. To cancel the SP mode, press the **Clear Modes key**.

Change Adjustment Values or Modes

1. After entering the desired SP mode number and pressing the **Enter (#) key**, the current value or mode will be displayed on the LCD (at the end of the second line).
2. Enter the desired value or mode using the **number keys** (listed in the service program table).
   Use the **Program Class key** to toggle between + and –.
3. Press the **Enter (#) key** to store the desired value or mode.
4. To cancel the SP mode, press the **Clear Modes key**. If you entered the SP mode using Method 2, you can cancel the SP mode only by turning the main switch off then on.

6.1.2 Service Program Table

*: Accessible by a customer **: Can be registered in CS mode

No.	Display	Function	Settings	Factory Setting	Comments
1	On Line	Enables On Line key operation.	0: No 1: Yes	0	
2	ADF Unit	Enables ADF operation.	0: No 1: Yes	0	
3	Key Counter	Enables key counter operation.	0: No 1: Yes	0	
4	Key Card	Used only in Japan.	0: No 1: Yes	0	
**5	Tape Marker Off	Disables tape marker operation.	0: No (Use the tape marker) 1: Yes	0	
*10.	Min. Print	Limits the minimum print quantity that can be entered.	0 to 9999	0	
*11	Max. Print	Limits the maximum print quantity that can be entered.	0 to 9999	9999	
12-1	Set Display Mode	Enables SP12-2 operation.	0: No 1: Yes	0	
12-2	0: JPN 1: ENG 2: GER 3: FRE 4: ITA 5: SPA	Selects the language used on the display.	0: No 1: Yes	0	• Use after setting SP12-1 to 1. • "1" is set at factory.
13	Set Size Mode	Selects the metric size (mm) or inch size on the display.	0: mm 1: Inch	0	For U.S.A. version models, "1" is set at factory.
**20	Buzzer On	Turns the beeper ON.	0: No 1: Yes	0	
*21	Prints/Master Cost	Adjusts the cost ratio of masters to prints for accounting purposes. (When SP4 is set at 1, this function cannot be used.)	0 to 50	0	The set number (0 to 50) is automatically added to the key counter each time a master is used.
*22	Print Program Class	Select which the printing with the One Touch Class mode is carried out from the first or last class.	0: First 1: Last	0	

Service Tables

No.	Display	Function	Settings	Factory Setting	Comments
**29	Pht Bckgrnd Correct	Determines whether the original background correction is done in Photo mode.	0: Correction is not done. 1: Correction is done.	0	
30	Scan Mag. Adjust	Adjusts the sub-scan magnification.	–1.9 to +1.9%	(0)	• For the ADF mode, see SP36. • 0.1% steps. • Use the Program Class key for "+" or "–".
31	SCN Center Adjust	Adjusts the center position of copies in the platen mode.	–1.9 to +1.9 mm	0	• 0.1 mm steps. • Use the Program Class key for "+" or "–". • For the ADF mode, see SP37. See Remarks (2).
33	Lead Edge Margin	Adjusts the lead edge margin.	4 to 10 mm	5	
34	Head Energy Adjust (Normal)	Adjusts the thermal head energy for the normal mode.	0 to -99%	0	
35	Economy Head Energy Adjust	Adjusts the thermal head energy for the Economy mode.	0 to -99%	(–)8	
36	ADF Mag. Adjust	Adjusts the ADF sub-scan magnification.	–1.9 to +1.9%	(0)	• For the platen mode, see SP30. • 0.1% steps. • Use the Program Class key for "+" or "–".

No.	Display	Function	Settings	Factory Setting	Comments
37	ADF Center Adjust	Adjusts the center position of copies in the ADF mode.	–1.9 to +1.9 mm	0	• For the platen mode, see SP31. • 0.1% steps. • Use the Program Class key for "+" or "–". • See Remarks (2).
38	ADF Scan Line Adjust	Adjusts the ADF scanning start position.	–4.9 to 4.9 mm	(0)	• 0.1 mm steps. • Use the Program Class key for "+" or "–". • See Remarks (1).
*40	Original	Specifies the image mode at power-up.	0: Letter 1: Lt/Photo 2: Photo	0	
*41	Image Density	Specifies the image density at power-up.	0: Light 1: Standard 2: Dark 3: Darker	1	
*42	Print Speed	Specifies the printing speed at power-up.	0: 60 rpm 1: 75 rpm 2: 90 rpm 3: 105 rpm 4: 120 rpm	2	
*43	Auto Cycle Mode	Specifies whether Auto Cycle mode is selected at power-up.	0: No 1: Yes	0	
*44	0: Master Make 1: Print	Specifies whether Master Making or Printing mode is selected of power-up.	0: Master Making 1: Print	0	
*45	Std. Image Position	Specifies the image position at power-up.	1: +15 mm 2: +10 mm 3: +5 mm 4: 0 mm 5: –5 mm 6: –10 mm 7: –15 mm	4	
60	Clear All Memory	Returns all SP modes to the default settings.	0: No 1: Yes	0	The memory is cleared after pressing the Enter (#) key.

No.	Display	Function	Settings	Factory Setting	Comments
61	Clear Memory/ Except 30, 31, 33 ~ 38	Returns all SP modes to the default settings except for SP No. 30, 31, 33 to 38.	0: No 1: Yes	0	The memory is cleared after pressing the Enter (#) key.
70	Original Feed Jam (A)	Displays the total number of original jams.		0	
71	Paper Feed Jam (B)	Displays the total number of paper feed jams.		0	
72	Paper Wrap Jam (E)/(B)(E)	Displays the total number of times that paper has accidentally wrapped around the drum.		0	
73	Paper Delivery Jam (G)	Displays the total number of paper delivery jams.		0	
74	Master Feed Jam (C)	Displays the total number of master feed jams.		0	
75	Master Delivery Jam (F)	Displays the total number of master delivery jams.		0	
76	Clear Jam Counters	Clears all jam counters.	0: No 1: Yes	0	The memory is cleared after pressing the Enter (#) key.
**81	Quality Print No.	Specifies how many trial prints are made after making a master in Quality Start mode.	0 to 3 sheets	1	
82	Skip Feed No.	Selects the feed interval.	1 to 9	2	1: Normal operation 2 to 9: One sheet fed every two to nine drum rotations
**84	Auto Multi Copy	Specifies the initial mode for the Combine 2 Originals mode.	0: Normal 1: Auto (Two identical images are made if the Master Making key is pressed once.)	0	

No.	Display	Function	Settings	Factory Setting	Comments
85	Initial Compression	Specifies whether full master box detection is made at power-up.	0: No 1: Yes	0	
**88	Auto Class Mode	Specifies whether the Auto Class mode is used.	0: No 1: Yes	0	See Remarks (3).
90	Thermal Head Test	Select "1" to carry out the thermal head test.	0: Off 1: On	0	See the Thermal Head Test section.
92	Thermal Paper Mode	Use this mode to test the thermal head.	0: No 1: Yes	0	See Remarks (4).
95	Scanner Free Run	Selects the type of scanner free run.	0: With the lamp off 1: With the lamp on	0	• Start with the Start key. Stop with the Stop key. • See Remarks (5).
96	ADF Original Feed	Carries out the ADF original feed check. (The speed can be changed; see Remarks (6).)	Start with the Print Start key. Stop with the Stop key.		See Remarks (6).
98	Economy Count	Displays the total number of masters made in Economy mode.		0	
103	Margin Erase Count	Displays the total number of masters made with the Margin Erase key.		0	
104	On line Count	Displays the total number of masters made in On Line mode.		0	
105	Overlay Count	Displays the total number of masters made in Overlay mode.		0	
106	Enlarge Count	Displays the total number of masters made in Fixed Enlargement mode.		0	
107	Reduction Count	Displays the total number of masters made in Fixed Reduction mode.		0	
111	Total Count	Displays the total number of masters and prints.		0	M: Master count P: Print count
*113	Resettable Count	Used by the customer to display the total number of masters and prints.		0	M: Master count P: Print count

No.	Display	Function	Settings	Factory Setting	Comments
*114	CLR Reset-table Count	Clears the resettable total master/print counters.	0: No 1: Yes	0	
115	ADF Mode Count	Displays the total number of sheets fed in the ADF mode.		0	
116	Scanner Mode Count	Displays the total number of originals set in platen mode.		0	
117	Color Drum Count	Displays the total number of prints made using the color drum.		0	
119	CLR All Total Count	Clears the following counters: SP Nos. 111, 115, 116 and 117.	0: No 1: Yes	0	
*120 -1	User Code Mode	Selects user code mode, and displays the total number of prints made in the User Code mode.	0: No 1: Yes	0	See the user code mode section.
-2	Auto Reset Time	Selects the auto reset time.	0: Unlimited 1: 1 min. 2: 2 min. 3: 3 min. 4: 4 min. 5: 5 min.	0	Displays only when "Yes" is selected in SP120-1.
*121	UC Count	Displays the total number of masters and prints made with each user code.		0	Press the # key to shift to another user code.
*122	Clear UC Count	Clears the selected user code counter.	0: No 1: Yes	0	Same as above.
*123	Total UC Count	Displays the total number of masters and prints for up to 20 user codes.		0	
*124	Clear Total UC Count	Clears the total user code counter.	0: No 1: Yes	0	
130	Input Check Mode	Displays the inputs from sensors and switches.			See the input check table.
131	Output Check Mode	Turns on the electrical components.			See the output check table.
132	All Indicators ON	Turns on all the indicators on the operation panel.			Press the # key to light all the indicators.
135	SN: 1st Paper Exit	Displays the 1st paper exit sensor voltage.			Unit: Volts

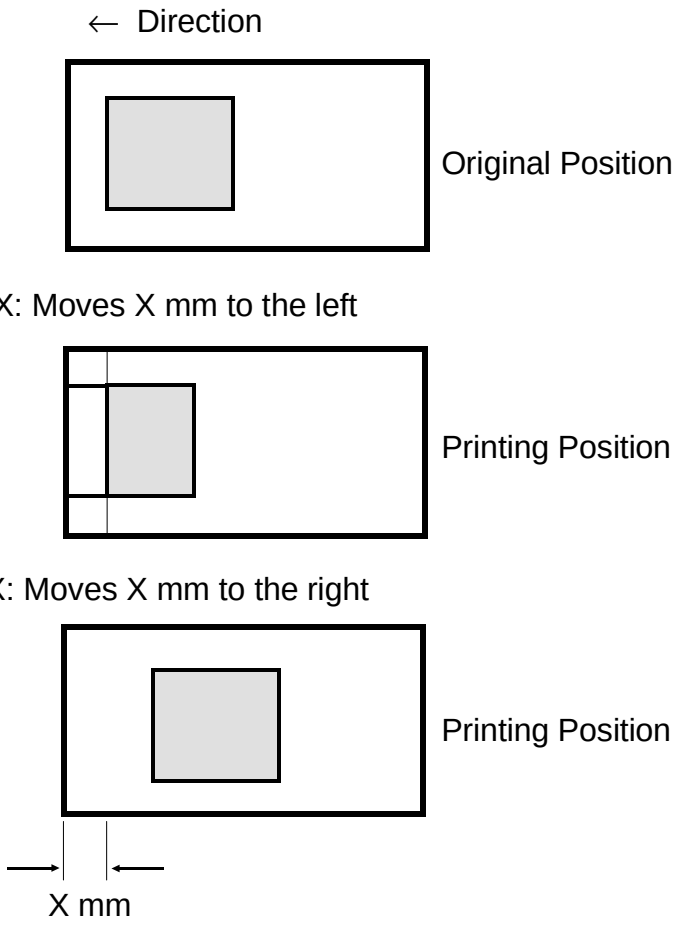
No.	Display	Function	Settings	Factory Setting	Comments
136	SN: 2nd Paper Exit	Displays the 2nd paper exit sensor voltage.			Unit: Volts
137	SN: Master Eject	Displays the master eject sensor voltage.			Unit: Volts
140	Ink Detection	Specifies whether ink detection is done.	0: No 1: Yes	1	
141	Paper Detection	Specifies whether paper end detection is done.	0: No 1: Yes	1	
146	ADF Cover Detection	This mode disables the ADF Cover Switch.	0: Disabled 1: Enabled	1	This function is valid only when SP2 is set at "1".
147	ADF Set Detection	This mode disables the Platen Cover Sensor detection.	0: Disabled 1: Enabled	1	If "0" is selected, "Set the original" is displayed each time at master making.
150	Control ROM No.	Displays the ROM part number and the ROM manufacturing date.		P/No.	YYYY/MM/DD
151	Machine No.	Displays the machine serial number and the installation date.		0	Input the serial number and the installation date.
152	Service Tel. No.	Input the service representative's telephone number, which is displayed with the service call code.		0	• Use the number keys to input the telephone number at installation. • Press the Program Class key if you wish to add a space between the digits.
153	Last Service Code	Displays the last service call.		0	
*160	Side Ers.	Adjusts the default side edge margin width in the Margin Erase mode.	2 to 20 mm or 0.1 to 0.8 inch	5 mm	Use the Program key to input the number after the decimal point.
*161	Center Ers.	Adjusts the default center margin width in the Margin Erase mode.	4 to 60 mm or 0.2 to 2.3 inch	10 mm	Use the Program key to input the number after the decimal point.

No.	Display	Function	Settings	Factory Setting	Comments
*162	Horizontal Ers.	Adjusts the default horizontal edge (top and bottom) margin in the Margin Erase mode.	2 to 20 mm or 0.1 to 0.8 inch	5 mm	Use the Program key to input the number after the decimal point.
*170	ERS. **1	Enter the original size (in "mm") that you want to use with the Margin Erase mode.	(100 to 258) x (100 to 364) mm or (4.0 to 10.0) x (4.0 to 14.3) inch	0 x 0	• The original size entered is displayed by pressing the Select Size And Direction ("<" or ">") keys when in the Margin Erase mode. • Use the Program key to input the number after the decimal point.
*171	ERS. **2	Enter the original size (in "mm") that you want to use with the Margin Erase mode.	(100 to 258) x (100 to 364) mm or (4.0 to 10.0) x (4.0 to 14.3) inch	0 x 0	Same as above.
*172	ERS. **3	Enter the original size (in "mm") that you want to use with the Margin Erase mode.	(100 to 258) x (100 to 364) mm or (4.0 to 10.0) x (4.0 to 14.3) inch	0 x 0	Same as above

Remarks

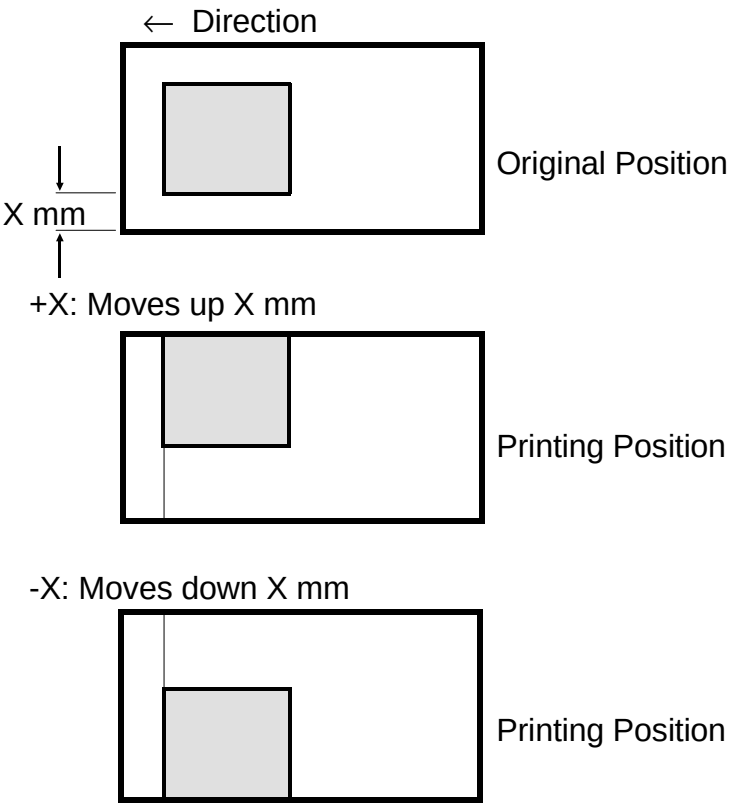
1) SP Mode No. 38 – ADF Scan Line Adjust

The printing position moves as shown below.



2) SP Mode No. 31 and 37 – SCN/ADF Center Adjust

The printing position moves as shown below.



NOTE: When adjusting the scanner image position, input "0" first:
Example) X = 0.9 mm → "0", "9", then press the # key.

3) SP Mode No. 88 – Auto Class Mode

In the One Touch Class mode, the machine normally stops when the first print job is finished if the tape marker is not installed.
If "1" is selected in this mode, the machine stops for a while (this interval is the same as when the tape marker is operating). Then it continues with the next print (or master making) job.

4) SP Mode No. 92 – Thermal Paper Mode

You can use this mode to test the thermal head.

Place some thermal paper in the machine face down and change this SP Mode to 1. Place an original on the exposure glass and carry out the master making. The machine starts printing on the thermal paper without doing the master clamp process.

You can also enable SP Mode No. 90 and carry out the master making to test the thermal head without placing an original on the exposure glass.

5) SP Mode No. 95 – Scanner Free Run

- To start the scanner free run, press the Print Start key after selecting "Lamp On/Off" using the # key.
  The free run is carried out 6 times faster than the normal speed. (This is the same speed as the scanner returning speed.)

- To stop the scanner free run, press the Stop key. The scanner returns to home position, then stops.

- The machine does not exit SP mode until the scanner returns to home position correctly.

6) SP Mode No. 96 – ADF Original Feed

- It is possible to change the original feed speed by changing the magnification ratio:
  65 to 155% (Maximum speed = 65%)

- To start original feed, press the Print Start key after placing originals in the ADF.
  Select a magnification ratio before you press the Start key, if you wish to change the original feed speed. The ADF starts feeding until all originals are fed.

- To stop feeding, press the Stop key. The original stops at this moment.

- If the original feed fails, or if the Stop key is pressed, the "A + Jam" indicator turns on.
  If the jammed originals are removed from the ADF, the jam indicator turns off and the error is reset.

- The machine does not exit SP mode during feeding.

6.1.3 Input/Output Check Mode

This program checks the electrical components. The procedure for accessing the program is as follows:

Input/Output Check Mode Access Procedure

1. Access the SP mode. (See the SP mode access procedure.)
2. Enter 130 (for the Input Check mode) or 131 (for the Output Check mode) with the **number keys**.
3. Press the **Enter (#) key**.
4. Enter the desired number. (See the Input or Output Check Table.)

   NOTE: The number can be shifted up or down by pressing the **Select Size And Direction ("<" or ">") keys**.
5. Press the **Enter (#) key**.

   NOTE: In the input check mode, all printing speed LEDs turn on when a sensor or switch that is being tested is actuated. A beep will also be heard.
6. For the Output Check mode, press the **Start key** to turn on the component.
7. Press the **Enter (#) key** to return the display to the initial input or output check menu.
8. Press the **Clear Modes key** to leave the SP mode.

Input Check Table

Code	LCD Display	Component Checked
1.	SN: ADF Cover In- 1	ADF Cover Switch
2.	SN: 1st Original (ADF) In- 2	Document Sensor
3.	SN: 2nd Original (ADF) In- 3	Scan Line Sensor
18.	SN: Paper End In-18	Paper End Sensor
20.	SN: Paper Table Low Limit In-20	Paper Table Lower Limit Sensor
21.	SN: Paper Table Height In-21	Paper Table Height Sensor
23.	SW: Right Cutter In-23	Right Cutter Switch
24.	SW: Left Cutter In-24	Left Cutter Switch
25.	SN: Master Buckle In-25	Master Buckle Sensor
26.	SN: Master End In-26	Master End Sensor
27.	SIG: Ink In-27	When the Ink Detecting Pin detects ink
28.	SIG: Color Drum In-28	When a color drum is installed
31.	SN: Pressure Plate High Position In-31	Upper Pressure Plate Sensor
32.	SN: Pressure Plate Low Position In-32	Lower Pressure Plate Sensor
33.	SW: Master Eject Box In-33	Master Eject Box Switch
34.	SN: Full Master In-34	Full Master Box Sensor
35.	SN: Printing Pressure In-35	Printing Pressure Sensor
36.	SN: 1st Drum Position In-36	First Drum Position Sensor
37.	SN: 2nd Drum Position In-37	Second Drum Position Sensor
38.	SW: Manual Master Cut In-38	Master Cut Switch
39.	SIG: Key Counter In-39	When a key counter is installed
41.	SN: 1st Paper Exit In-41	First Paper Exit Sensor

Code	LCD Display	Component Checked
42.	SN: 2nd Paper Exit In-42	Second Paper Exit Sensor
43.	SN: Master Eject In-43	Master Eject Sensor
45	SN: Scanner Home Position In-45	Scanner Home Position Sensor
47	SN: Platen Set (Scanner) In-47	Platen Cover Switch
51	SN: Plotter Cover In-51	Plotter Cover Safety Switch

Output Check Table

Code	LCD Display	Description
2	MOTOR: ADF Drive Out- 2	Turns on the ADF motor.
3	MOTOR: Master Eject Out- 3	Turns on the master eject motor.
4	MOTOR: Pressure Plate Up/Down Out- 4	Turns on the pressure plate up/down motor.
5	MC: Master Reverse Roller Out- 5	Turns on the master reverse roller magnetic clutch.
6	MOTOR: Vacuum Out- 6	Turns on the vacuum fan motor.
7	MOTOR: Air Knife Out- 7	Turns on the air knife motor.
8	SIG: Key Counter Out- 8	Increments the key counter.
9	COUNTER: Master Out- 9	Increments the master counter.
10	COUNTER: Paper Out-10	Increments the total counter.
12	SOL: Ink Supply Out-12	Turns on the ink supply solenoid.
13	SOL: Drum Lock Out-13	Turns on the drum lock solenoid.
14	SOL: Paper Feed/Print Pressure Out-14	Turns on the paper feed solenoid and the printing pressure solenoid.
15	SOL: Master Feed Clamper Out-15	Turns on the master feed clamper solenoid.
16	SOL: Master Eject Clamper Out-16	Turns on the master eject clamper solenoid.
17	SOL: Master Eject Out-17	Turns on the master eject solenoid.
18	RELAY: Paper Table Down Out-18	Turns on the paper table drive motor (down).
19	RELAY: Paper Table Up Out-19	Turns on the paper table drive motor (up).
20	RELAY: Main Motor Reverse Out-20	Turns the drum in the direction opposite to the printing direction.
21	SIG: Fluorescent Lamp Out-21	Turns on the exposure lamp if the Start key is pressed. Turns off the lamp if the Start key is pressed again.
22	MOTOR: Cutter + Direction Out-22	Turns on the cutter motor (moves it to the rear of the machine).
23	MOTOR: Cutter – Direction Out-23	Turns on the cutter motor (moves it to the front of the machine).
24	MOTOR: Image Shift + Direction Out-24	Turns the image position motor in the "+" direction.

Code	LCD Display	Description
25	MOTOR: Image Shift – Direction Out-25	Turns the image position motor in the "–" direction.
26	MOTOR: Main (10 rpm) Out-26	Turns on the main motor (10 rpm).
27	MOTOR: Main (20 rpm) Out-27	Turns on the main motor (20 rpm).
28	MOTOR: Main (1st Speed) Out-28	Turns on the main motor (1st speed).
29	MOTOR: Main (2nd Speed) Out-29	Turns on the main motor (2nd speed).
30	MOTOR: Main (3rd Speed) Out-30	Turns on the main motor (3rd speed).
31	MOTOR: Main (4th Speed) Out-31	Turns on the main motor (4th speed).
32	MOTOR: Main (5th Speed) Out-32	Turns on the main motor (5th speed).
33	MOTOR: Original Feed Out-33	Turns on the original transport motor.
34	MOTOR: Master Feed Out-34	Turns on the master feed motor.
36	Turn on drum, feed/ pressure SOLs Out-36	Turns on the main motor (10 rpm), the paper feed solenoid, and the printing pressure solenoid.
37	MOTOR: Scanner	Turns on the scanner motor. The scanner moves to the original scanning position for the ADF mode when the Start key is pressed. It returns to home position when the Start key is pressed again.
41	SIG: VHD on Out-41	Applies thermal head voltage. Power is applied by pressing the Start key. It is stopped by pressing the Start key again.

6.2 C224

How to Access I/O Check Mode

1. Turn on the main switch while holding down the Print Start key, Stop key, and Clear key.
2. Press the Memory/Class key to select either "Input" or "Output".
   Memory indicator "1" Input
   Memory Indicator "0"Output

Input Check Table

Counter Indication	Component to be checked
1-1	ADF Safety Switch
2-2	1st Original Sensor
3-1	2nd Original Sensor
4-1	Original Registration
5-1	Paper End Sensor
6-1	Paper Table Lower Limit Sensor
7-1	Paper Height Sensor
8-1	Right Cutter Switch
9-1	Left Cutter Switch
10-1	Master Buckle Sensor
11-1	Master End Sensor
12-1	Ink Detection
13-1	Color Drum
14-1	Drum Safety Sensor
15-1	Master Eject Sensor
16-1	Upper Pressure Plate Sensor
17-1	Lower Pressure Plate Sensor
18-1	Master Eject Box Switch
19-1	Full Master Box Sensor
20-1	1st Paper Exit Sensor
21-1	2nd Paper Exit Sensor
22-1	Printing Pressure Sensor
23-1	1st Drum Position Sensor
24-1	2nd Drum Position Sensor
25-1	Master Cut Position Sensor
26-1	Key Counter Set
27-1	Not Used

Output Check Table

Counter Indication	Output
1-0	ADF Motor is energized.
2-0	ADF Original Pressure Solenoid is energized.
3-0	Master Eject Motor is energized.
4-0	Pressure Plate Motor is energized.
5-0	Reverse Roller Clutch is energized.
6-0	Vacuum Fan Motor is energized.
7-0	Air Knife Motor is energized.
8-0	Key Counter counts up.
9-0	Master Counter counts up.
10-0	Total Counter counts up.
11-0	Ink Supply Solenoid is energized.
12-0	Drum Lock Solenoid is energized.
13-0	Printing Pressure Solenoid is energized.
14-0	Paper Feed Solenoid is energized.
15-0	Master Feed Clamper Solenoid is energized.
16-0	Master Eject Clamper Solenoid is energized.
17-0	Master Eject Solenoid is energized.
18-0	Paper Table Drive Motor is energized to moves the paper table down.
19-0	Paper Table Drive Motor is energized to moves the paper table up.
20-0	Relay for main motor reversing is energized.
21-0	Lamp is energized.
22-0	Cutter Motor is energized to move the cutter unit from front to rear.
23-0	Cutter Motor is energized to move the cutter unit from rear to front
24-0	Image Shifting Motor rotates in the (+) direction.
25-0	Image Shifting Motor rotates in the (–) direction.
26-0	Drum rotates at 10rpm.
27-0	Drum rotates at 20rpm.
28-0	Drum rotates at 60rpm.
29-0	Drum rotates at 75rpm.
30-0	Drum rotates at 90rpm.
31-0	Drum rotates at 105rpm.
32-0	Drum rotates at 120pm.
33-0	Original Transport Motor is energized.
34-0	Master Feed Motor is energized.
35-0	Thermal Head Energy is applied.
36-0	All the operation panel indicators are turned on.
37-0	Tape Maker (option) feeds out strips of paper.
38-0	Printing operation is done at 10rpm.
39-0	Simulates original transportation in ADF mode.

NOTE: 1) If the drum is rotated using output check mode 26-0 to 32-0, the drum rotation speed (rpm) is displayed in the copy counter.

2) After selecting output check mode 35-0 and pressing the Print Start key, the thermal head voltage is continuously applied until the Stop key or the Clear key is pressed. The beeper sounds while the thermal head energy is applied. Do not apply thermal head voltage for a long time.

6.3 C215/216

How to Access I/O Check Mode

1. **A4 version:**
   Turn on the main switch while holding down the Print Start key, Stop key, Clear key and Full Master Detection switch.
   LT version:
   Turn on the main switch while holding down the Print Start key, Stop key, and Clear key.

2. Press the Memory/Class key to select either "Input" or "Output".
   Memory indicator "1" Input
   Memory Indicator "0"Output

Output Check Table

Counter Indication	Output
0001-0	Turns on the drum (10 rpm).
0002-0	Turns on the drum (30 rpm).
0003-0	Turns on the drum (75 rpm).
0004-0	Turns on the paper table drive motor (up).
0005-0	Turns on the paper table drive motor (down).
0006-0	Turns on the vacuum motor.
0007-0	Turns on the master eject solenoid.
0008-0	Turns on the master eject clamper opening solenoid.
0009-0	Turns on the master feed clamper opening solenoid.
0010-0	Turns on the reverse roller solenoid.
0011-0	Turns on the paper feed solenoid and the printing pressure solenoid.
0012-0	Turns on the ink supply solenoid.
0013-0	Turns on the original transport motor.
0014-0	Turns on the master feed motor.
0015-0	Turns on the fluorescent lamp.
0016-0	Master Process Command (photo LED ON)
0017-0	Reverses the master eject motor (turn the eject rollers).
0018-0	Turns on the master eject motor (pressure plate up/down).
0019-0	Turns on the cutter motor (moves it from front to rear).
0020-0	Turns on the cutter motor (moves it from rear to front).
0021-0	Turns the image shifting motor in the (+) direction.
0022-0	Turns the image shifting motor in the (–) direction.
0023-0	Turns on the magnetic counter for paper.
0024-0	Turns on the magnetic counter for master.
0025-0	Turns on the drum reverse rotation relay.
0026-0	Magnification ratio : 100% (LED ON)
0027-0	Magnification ratio : 93% (LED ON)
0028-0	Magnification ratio : 82% (A4 version)/ 75% (LT version) (LED ON)
0029-0	Magnification ratio : 71% (A4 version)/ 64% (LT version) (LED ON)
0030-0	Turns on the drum (10 rpm), the paper feed solenoid, and the printing pressure solenoid.
0031-0	Tape marker (option) feeds out strips of paper.
0032-0	Turns on the ADF drive motor (Not used).
0033-0	Turns on the ADF original pressure solenoid (not used).
0034-0	Turns on the drum lock solenoid.
0035-0	Outputs the thermal head voltage (VHS).
0036-0	Simulates original transportation in ADF mode. (Fluorescent lamp and CCD do not work.)

NOTE: 0001-0 to 0006-0 and 0030-0 are not activated when the safety cover is open.

Input Check Table

Counter Indication	Input	
0001-1	SW: Master Eject Detection	(Indicator lights when sensor ON)
0002-1	SW: Pressure Plate Position	(Indicator lights when switch ON)
0003-1	SN: 2nd Original Detection	(Indicator lights when sensor ON)
0004-1	SN: Original Registration Detection	(Indicator lights when sensor ON)
0005-1	SN: 1st Drum Position Detection	(Indicator lights when sensor ON)
0006-1	SN: 2nd Drum Position Detection	(Indicator lights when sensor ON)
0007-1	SN: Master Detection	(Indicator lights when master is set)
0008-1	SN: Master Buckle Detection	(Indicator lights when master appears)
0009-1	SW: Left Cutter	(Indicator lights when switch ON)
0010-1	SW: Right Cutter	(Indicator lights when switch ON)
0011-1	SW: Master Eject Box	(Indicator lights when switch ON)
0012-1	SW: Full Master Detection	(Indicator lights when switch ON)
0013-1	SN: Paper End	(Indicator lights when paper is set)
0014-1	SN: Paper Table Low Limit	(Indicator lights when sensor ON)
0015-1	SN: Paper Table Height	(Indicator lights when sensor ON)
0016-1	SN: Pressure	(Indicator lights when sensor ON)
0017-1	SN: 1st Paper Exit (LED103)	(Indicator lights when paper is present)
0018-1	SN: 2nd Paper Exit (LED102)	(Indicator lights when paper is present)
0019-1	SW: Cover Safety/Drum Detection	(Indicator lights when switch ON)
0020-1	SN: Color Drum	(Indicator lights when color drum is set)
0021-1	DIP SW-1 (DIP101-1)	(Indicator lights when switch ON)
0022-1	DIP SW-2 (DIP101-2)	(Indicator lights when switch ON)
0023-1	DIP SW-3 (DIP101-3)	(Indicator lights when switch ON)
0024-1	DIP SW-4 (DIP101-4)	(Indicator lights when switch ON)
0025-1	Not Used	
0026-1	SN: Ink Detection	(Indicator lights when ink appears)
0027-1	SN: Thermistor	(Indicator lights when temp. is standard)
0028-1	Key: Proof	(Indicator lights when key ON)
0029-1	Key: Image Shift +	(Indicator lights when key ON)
0030-1	Key: Image Shift –	(Indicator lights when key ON)
0031-1	SW: Drum Rotation	(Indicator lights when switch ON)
0032-1	SW: Master Manual Cut	(Indicator lights when switch ON)
0033-1	SN: 1st Original Detection (C216)	(Indicator lights when sensor ON)

6.4 C211/C212/C213

6.4.1 How to Access I/O Check Mode

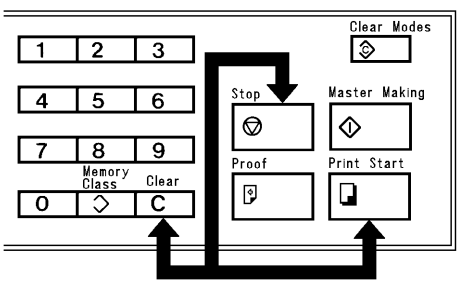
This program checks electrical components. The procedure for accessing the program is as follows:

1. Turn off the power switch.
2. **A4 version:**
   Remove the front cover of the master eject unit to access the Full Master Detecting switch [A]. Turn on the power switch while holding down the Print Start key, Stop key, Clear key and Full Master Detecting Switch [A]. This accesses I/O check mode.

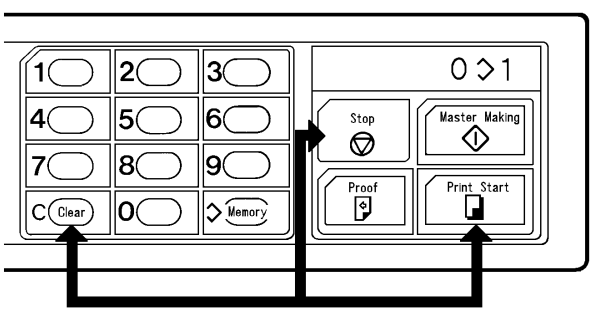
   LT version:
   Turn on the power switch while holding down the Print Start key, Stop key, and Clear key. This accesses I/O check mode.

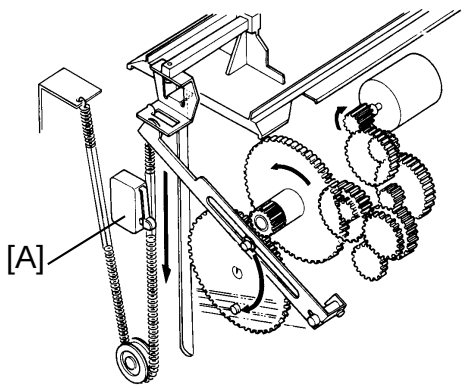
   NOTE: When the I/O check mode is accessed, only the 141% enlargement (C212/C213 model) or the 71% (64%) reduction (C211 model) ratio LED, the left lighter image density LED, and the Line Mode LED light. Also, 1 is displayed in the memory indicator and 0 is displayed in the copy counter.

C212/C213 model:



C211 model:





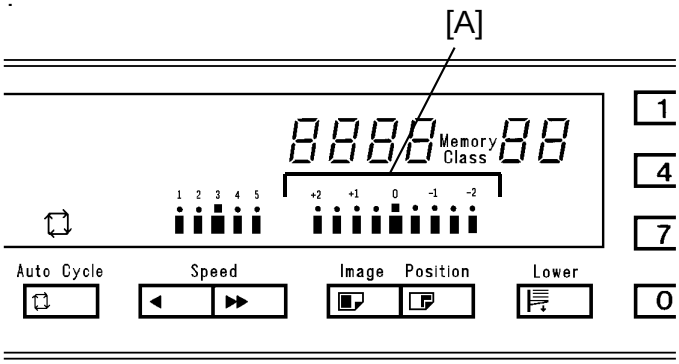
[A4 Version Only]

3. Press the Memory/Class key to select either "Input" or "Output".
   Memory Indicator "1" —— Input
   Memory Indicator "0" —— Output

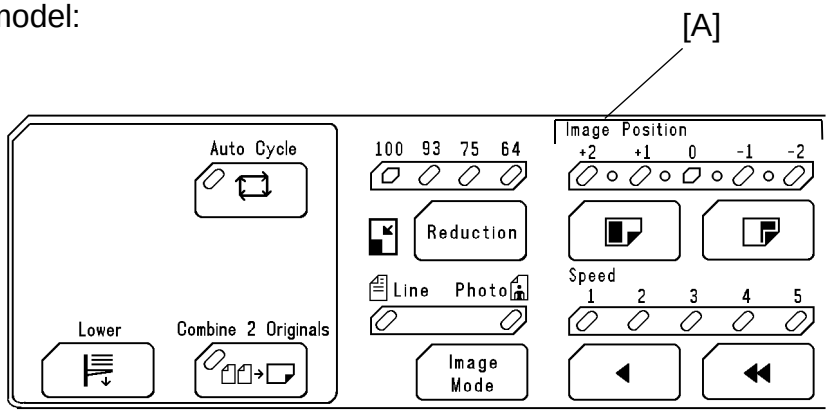
4. Use the Numeral keys to enter the desired input or output number in the copy counter. (See the Service Program Table.)

5. a) In input mode, all Image Shift Position indicators [A] turn on when a switch or sensor that is being tested is actuated.

C212/C213 mc



C211 model:



b) In output mode, the component corresponding to the number entered with the Number keys turns on when the Print Start key is pressed.
   * Press the Clear key to set the counter number in the copy counter.

6. After completion of the Service Program mode, turn off the power switch to clear the I/O check mode.

6.4.2 C212/C213

Output Check Table

Counter Indication	Output
0001-0	Turns on the drum (10 rpm).
0002-0	Turns on the drum (30 rpm).
0003-0	Turns on the drum (60 rpm).
0004-0	Turns on the paper table drive motor (up).
0005-0	Turns on the paper table drive motor (down).
0006-0	Turns on the vacuum motor.
0007-0	Turns on the master eject solenoid.
0008-0	Turns on the master eject clamper opening solenoid.
0009-0	Turns on the master feed clamper opening solenoid.
0010-0	Turns on the reversing roller solenoid.
0011-0	Turns on the paper feed solenoid and the printing pressure solenoid.
0012-0	Turns on the ink supply solenoid.
0013-0	Turns on the original transport motor.
0014-0	Turns on the master feed motor.
0015-0	Turns on the fluorescent lamp.
0016-0	Master Process Command (Photo LED ON)
0017-0	Reverses the master eject motor (Turn the eject rollers).
0018-0	Turns on the master eject motor (Pressure plate up/down).
0019-0	Turns on the cutter motor (Moves it from front to rear).
0020-0	Turns on the cutter motor (Moves it from rear to front).
0021-0	Turns the image shifting motor in (+) direction.
0022-0	Turns the image shifting motor in (–) direction.
0023-0	Turns on the magnetic counter for paper.
0024-0	Turns on the magnetic counter for master.
0025-0	Turns on the drum reverse rotation relay.
0026-0	Magnification ratio : 100% (LED ON)
0027-0	Magnification ratio : 93% (LED ON)
0028-0	Magnification ratio : 82% (A4 version)/ 75% (LT version) (LED ON)
0029-0	Magnification ratio : 71% (A4 version)/ 64% (LT version) (LED ON)
0030-0	Turn on the drum (10 rpm), the paper feed solenoid and the printing pressure solenoid.
0031-0	Tape dispenser (option) feeds out strips of paper.
0032-0	Turns on the ADF drive motor.
0033-0	Turns on the ADF original pressure solenoid.
0034-0	Turns on the drum lock solenoid.
0035-0	Outputs the thermal head voltage (VHD).

NOTE: 0001-0 to 0006-0 and 0030-0 are not activated when the safety cover is open.

Input Check Table

Counter Indication	Input	
0001-1	SN: Master Eject Detection	(Indicator lights when sensor ON)
0002-1	SW: Pressure Plate Position	(Indicator lights when switch ON)
0003-1	SN: 2nd Original Detection	(Indicator lights when sensor ON)
0004-1	SN: Original Registration Detection	(Indicator lights when sensor ON)
0005-1	SN: 1st Drum Position Detection	(Indicator lights when sensor ON)
0006-1	SN: 2nd Drum Position Detection	(Indicator lights when sensor ON)
0007-1	SN: Master Detection	(Indicator lights when master is set)
0008-1	SN: Master Buckle Detection	(Indicator lights when master appears)
0009-1	SW: Left Cutter	(Indicator lights when switch ON)
0010-1	SW: Right Cutter	(Indicator lights when switch ON)
0011-1	SW: Master Eject Box	(Indicator lights when switch ON)
0012-1	SW: Full Master Detection	(Indicator lights when switch ON)
0013-1	SN: Paper End	(Indicator lights when paper is set)
0014-1	SN: Paper Table Low Limit	(Indicator lights when sensor ON)
0015-1	SN: Paper Table Height	(Indicator lights when sensor ON)
0016-1	SN: Pressure	(Indicator lights when sensor ON)
0017-1	SN: 1st Paper Exit	(Indicator lights when paper exists)
0018-1	SN: 2nd Paper Exit	(Indicator lights when paper exists)
0019-1	SW: Cover Safety/Drum Detection	(Indicator lights when switch ON)
0020-1	SN: Color Drum	(Indicator lights when color drum is set)
0021-1	DIP SW-1 (DIP102-1)	(Indicator lights when switch ON)
0022-1	DIP SW-2 (DIP102-2)	(Indicator lights when switch ON)
0023-1	DIP SW-3 (DIP102-3)	(Indicator lights when switch ON)
0024-1	DIP SW-4 (DIP102-4)	(Indicator lights when switch ON)
0026-1	SN: Ink Detecting	(Indicator lights when ink appears)
0027-1	SN: Thermistor	(Indicator lights when temp. is standard)
0028-1	Key: Proof	(Indicator lights when key ON)
0029-1	Key: Image Shift +	(Indicator lights when key ON)
0030-1	Key: Image Shift –	(Indicator lights when key ON)
0031-1	SW: Drum Rotation	(Indicator lights when switch ON)
0032-1	SW: Master Manual cut	(Indicator lights when switch ON)
0033-1	SN: 1st Original Detection	(Indicator lights when sensor ON)
0034-1	SN: Paper Size 1	(Indicator lights when sensor ON)
0035-1	SN: Paper Size 2	(Indicator lights when sensor ON)
0036-1	SN: Paper Size 3	(Indicator lights when sensor ON)
0037-1	SN: Drum Master Detection	(Indicator lights when sensor ON)

6.4.3 C211

Output Check Table

Counter Indication	Output
0001-0	Turns on the drum (10 rpm).
0002-0	Turns on the drum (30 rpm).
0003-0	Turns on the drum (60 rpm).
0004-0	Turns on the paper table drive motor (up).
0005-0	Turns on the paper table drive motor (down).
0006-0	Turns on the vacuum motor.
0007-0	Turns on the master eject solenoid.
0008-0	Turns on the master eject clamper opening solenoid.
0009-0	Turns on the master feed clamper opening solenoid.
0010-0	Turns on the reversing roller solenoid.
0011-0	Turns on the paper feed solenoid and the printing pressure solenoid.
0012-0	Turns on the ink supply solenoid.
0013-0	Turns on the original transport motor.
0014-0	Turns on the master feed motor.
0015-0	Turns on the fluorescent lamp.
0016-0	Master Process Command (Photo LED ON)
0017-0	Reverses the master eject motor (Turn the eject rollers).
0018-0	Turns on the master eject motor (Pressure plate up/down).
0019-0	Turns on the cutter motor (Moves it from front to rear).
0020-0	Turns on the cutter motor (Moves it from rear to front).
0021-0	Turns the image shifting motor in (+) direction.
0022-0	Turns the image shifting motor in (–) direction.
0023-0	Turns on the magnetic counter for paper.
0024-0	Turns on the magnetic counter for master.
0025-0	Turns on the drum reverse rotation relay.
0026-0	Magnification ratio : 100% (LED ON)
0027-0	Magnification ratio : 93% (LED ON)
0028-0	Magnification ratio : 82% (A4 version)/ 75% (LT version) (LED ON)
0029-0	Magnification ratio : 71% (A4 version)/ 64% (LT version) (LED ON)
0030-0	Turn on the drum (10 rpm), the paper feed solenoid and the printing pressure solenoid.
0031-0	Tape dispenser (option) feeds out strips of paper.
0032-0	Turns on the ADF drive motor (Not used).
0033-0	Turns on the ADF original pressure solenoid (Not used).
0034-0	Outputs the thermal head voltage (VHD).

NOTE: 0001-0 to 0006-0 and 0030-0 are not activated when the safety cover is open.

Input Check Table

Counter Indication	Input	
0001-1	SW: Master Eject Detection	(Indicator lights when sensor ON)
0002-1	SW: Pressure Plate Position	(Indicator lights when switch ON)
0003-1	SN: 2nd Original Detection	(Indicator lights when sensor ON)
0004-1	SN: Original Registration Detection	(Indicator lights when sensor ON)
0005-1	SN: 1st Drum Position Detection	(Indicator lights when sensor ON)
0006-1	SN: 2nd Drum Position Detection	(Indicator lights when sensor ON)
0007-1	SN: Master Detection	(Indicator lights when master is set)
0008-1	SN: Master Buckle Detection	(Indicator lights when master appears)
0009-1	SW: Left Cutter	(Indicator lights when switch ON)
0010-1	SW: Right Cutter	(Indicator lights when switch ON)
0011-1	SW: Master Eject Box	(Indicator lights when switch ON)
0012-1	SW: Full Master Detection	(Indicator lights when switch ON)
0013-1	SN: Paper End	(Indicator lights when paper is set)
0014-1	SN: Paper Table Low Limit	(Indicator lights when sensor ON)
0015-1	SN: Paper Table Height	(Indicator lights when sensor ON)
0016-1	SN: Pressure	(Indicator lights when sensor ON)
0017-1	SN: 1st Paper Exit (LED103)	(Indicator lights when paper exists)
0018-1	SN: 2nd Paper Exit (LED101)	(Indicator lights when paper exists)
0019-1	SW: Cover Safety/Drum Detection	(Indicator lights when switch ON)
0020-1	SN: Color Drum	(Indicator lights when color drum is set)
0021-1	DIP SW-1 (DIP100-1)	(Indicator lights when switch ON)
0022-1	DIP SW-2 (DIP100-2)	(Indicator lights when switch ON)
0023-1	DIP SW-3 (DIP100-3)	(Indicator lights when switch ON)
0024-1	DIP SW-4 (DIP100-4)	(Indicator lights when switch ON)
0025-1	DIP SW-5 (DIP100-5)	(Indicator lights when switch ON)
0026-1	SN: Ink Detecting	(Indicator lights when ink appears)
0027-1	SN: Thermistor	(Indicator lights when temp. is standard)
0028-1	Key: Proof	(Indicator lights when key ON)
0029-1	Key: Image Shift +	(Indicator lights when key ON)
0030-1	Key: Image Shift –	(Indicator lights when key ON)
0031-1	SW: Drum Rotation	(Indicator lights when switch ON)
0032-1	SW: Master Manual Cut	(Indicator lights when switch ON)
0033-1	SN: 1st Original Detection	(Indicator lights when sensor ON)

7. TEST PATTERN IMAGE MODE

7.1 C226

This function is used to determine which printer component is causing an image problem on the master.

In this mode, the background pattern that is printed covers the entire sheet of paper.

Procedure

1. Place paper on the paper table.

   NOTE: To reduce thermal head load, use the smallest paper size possible, i.e. the smallest paper width on which the part with the image problem can be printed.

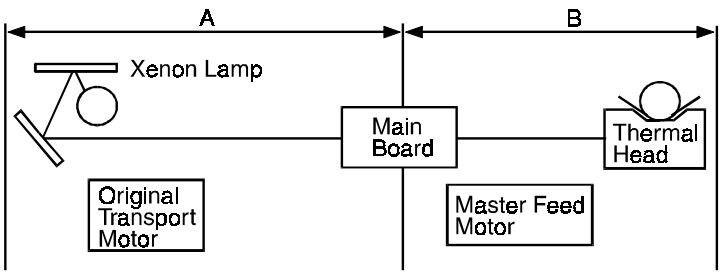
2. Access SP mode.
3. Input No. 90 and enter "1". Then, press the **Enter (#) key**.
4. Press the **Clear Modes key** to leave the SP mode.
5. Carry out the master making process (an original is not necessary).
6. Make some prints and check the image.

NOTE: The SP mode No. 90 setting returns to the default (0) after the above procedure.

Assessment

If the printout is normal, a Part A component is defective.

If the printout is abnormal, a Part B component is defective.



NOTE: This mode can be used in combination with SP mode No. 92, Thermal Paper Mode.

7.2 C224

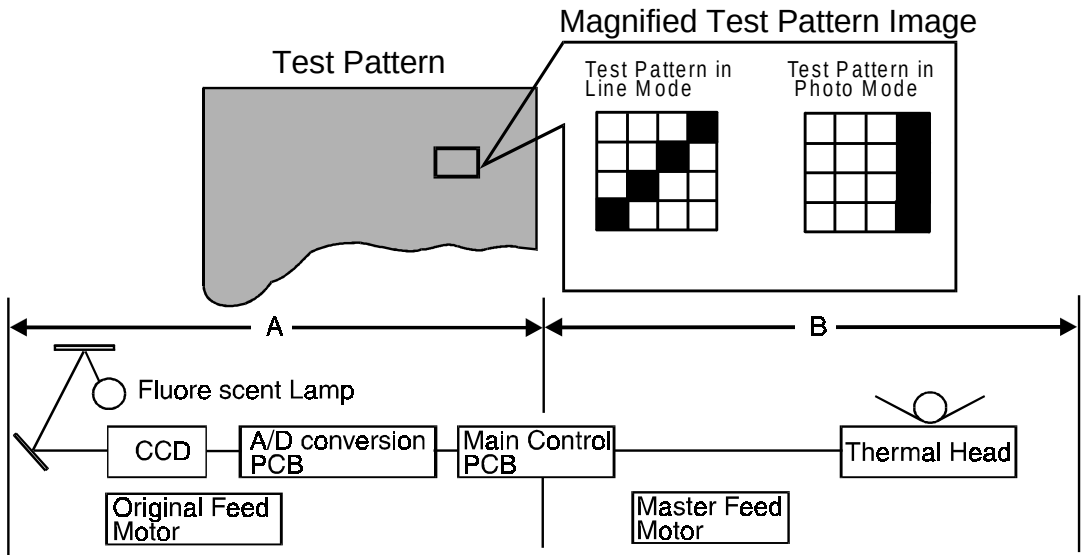
The purpose of this mode is to distinguish whether the cause of the image problem is located before or after image processing.

Output image: The normal output of this test pattern image mode is one of the dither matrix patterns as illustrated below.

Master processing length:

Main scan (Horizontal) direction: Full width of the thermal head

Sub-scan (Vertical) direction: Same as the vertical size of the original set on the original table.



This test pattern is generated by the image processing PCB.

[Example] Problem: Vertical white lines appear on the print.

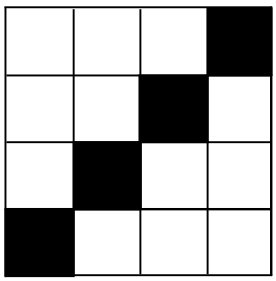
Possible Cause 1 If the same problem appears on the output image from the thermal head in test pattern image mode, the cause should be in area B, as shown above.

Possible Cause 2 If the output image from the thermal head is correct in test pattern mode but the output image in the normal mode is incorrect, the cause should be in area A, as shown above.

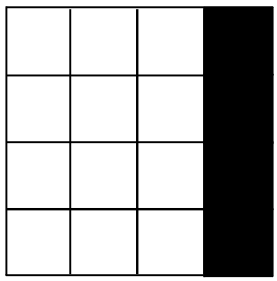
7.2.1 Operation: (to enter test pattern image mode)

1) Remove the front cover.
2) Turn off DIP SW102-1 only when the power switch is off.
3) Turn on the main switch.
4) Press the Image Mode key to select the test pattern image.

Test pattern in line



Test pattern in photo



5) Place an original on the original table.

⚠ CAUTION

To prevent overheating of the thermal head, make the original as short as possible. Any type of original is suitable as the test pattern being used is in the image processing PCB memory.

6) Press the Master Making key and make prints.
7) After completion of the test pattern image mode, turn on DIP SW 102-1.

7.3 C215/C216

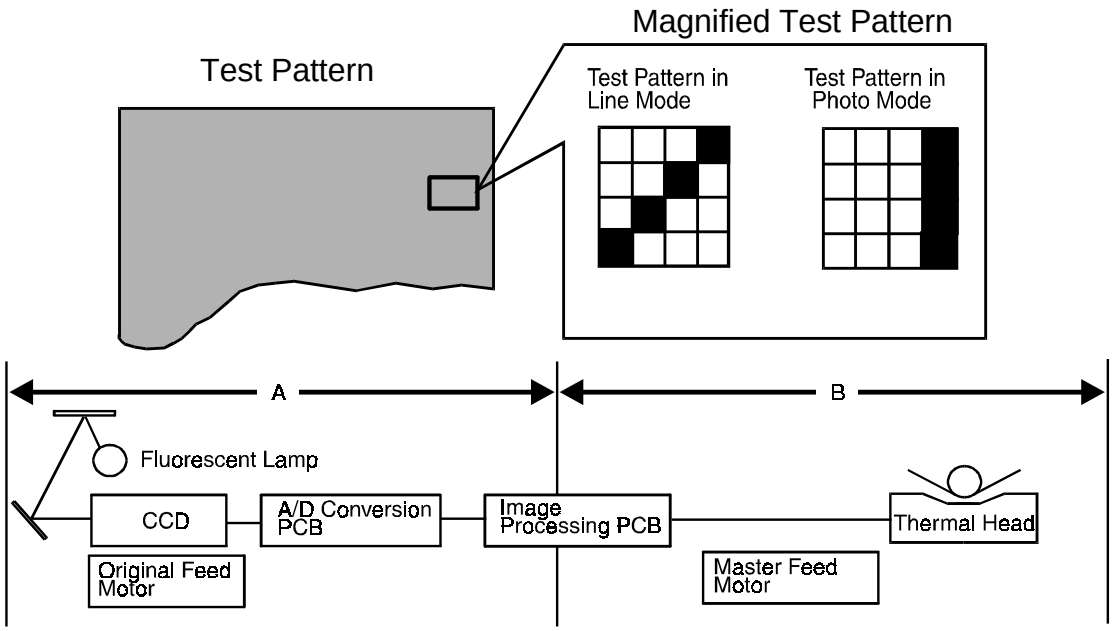
The purpose of this mode is to distinguish whether the cause of the image problem is located before or after image processing.

Output image: The normal output of this test pattern image mode is one of the dither matrix pattern as illustrated below.

Master processing length:

Main scan (Horizontal) direction: Full width of the thermal head

Sub-scan (Vertical) direction: Same as the vertical size of the original set on the original table.



This test pattern is generated by the image processing PCB.

[Example] Problem: Vertical white lines appear on the print.

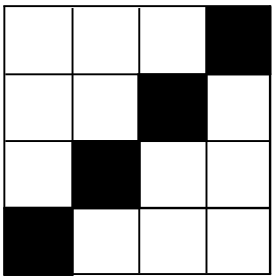
Possible Cause 1 If the same problem appears on the output image from the thermal head in test pattern image mode, the cause should be in area B, as shown above.

Possible Cause 2 If the output image from the thermal head is correct in test pattern mode but the output image in the normal mode is incorrect, the cause should be in area A, as shown above.

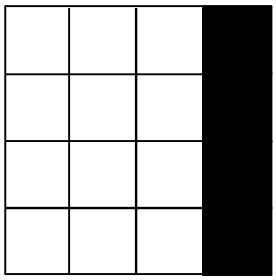
7.3.1 Operation: (to enter test pattern image mode)

1) Remove the front cover.
2) Turn off DIP SW 400-1 on the image processing PCB only when the power switch is off.
3) Turn on the main switch.
4) Press the Image Mode key to select the test pattern image.

Test pattern in line



Test pattern in photo



5) Set the original on the original table.

⚠ CAUTION

To prevent overheating of the thermal head, make the original as short as possible. Any type of original is suitable as the test pattern being used is in the image processing PCB memory.

6) Press the Master Making key and make prints.
7) After completion of the test pattern image mode, turn on DIP SW 400-1.

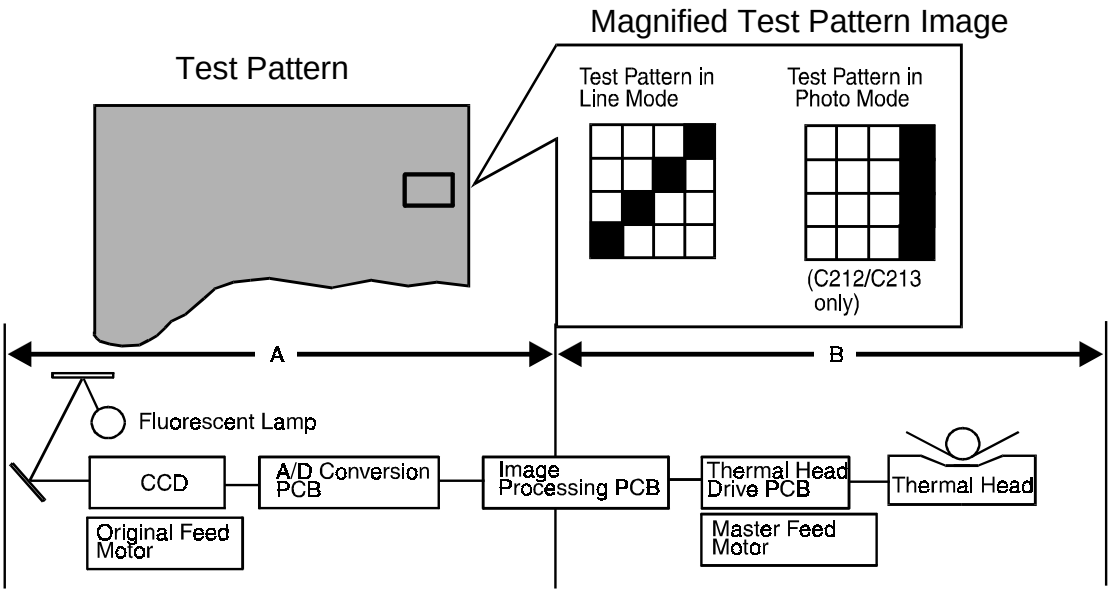
7.4 C211/C212/C213

The purpose of this mode is to distinguish whether the cause of the image problem is located before or after the image processing.

Output image: The normal output of this test pattern image mode is one of the Dither matrix pattern as illustrated below.

Master processing length: Main scan (Horizontal) direction: Full width of the thermal head

Sub scan (Vertical) direction: same as the vertical size of the original set on the original table.



This test pattern is generated by the image processing PCB.

[Example] Problem: Vertical white lines appear on the print.

Possible Cause: If the same problem appears on the output Image from the thermal head in Test Pattern image mode, the cause should exist in area B as shown above.

Possible Cause 2: If the output image from the thermal head is correct in Test Pattern Mode but the output image in the normal mode is incorrect, the cause should exist in area A as shown above.

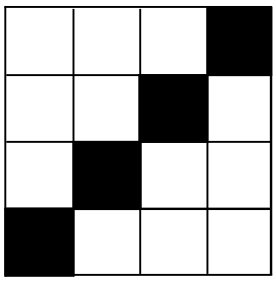
7.4.1 Operation: (to enter test pattern image mode)

1. Remove the front cover.
2. Turn off the DIP SW 400-7 on the image processing PCB only when the power switch is off.
3. Turn on the main switch.

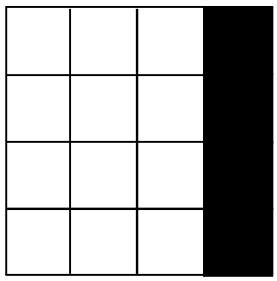
C212/C213 model only:

4. Press the Image Mode key to select the Test Pattern Image.

Test Pattern in Line



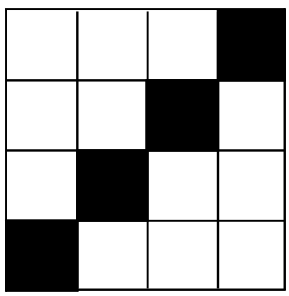
Test Pattern in Photo



C211 model only:

4. The following Test Pattern is made in both Line and Photo mode (i.e. it does not need to be selected).

Test Pattern in Line Mode/Photo



5. Set the original on the original table.

⚠ CAUTION

To prevent overheating of the thermal head, make the original as short as possible. Any type of original is suitable as the test pattern being used is in the image processing PCB memory.

6. Press the Master Making key and make prints.
7. After completion of the Test Pattern Image mode, turn on DIP SW 400-7.

8. USER CODE MODE: C226 ONLY

8.1 USER CODES

With the user code function (SP mode No. 120), operators must input an authorized code before the machine will operate. The machine keeps track of the number of prints made under each code.

There are 20 user codes as follows:

No.	User Code No.
1	382
2	191
3	182
4	173
5	164
6	155
7	146
8	137
9	128
10	119
11	482
12	291
13	282
14	273
15	264
16	255
17	246
18	237
19	228
20	219

8.2 HOW TO USE A USER CODE

1. Enter the user code (3 digits) with the **number keys**.
2. Press the **Enter (#) key**.
3. Press the **Start key** to start printing.

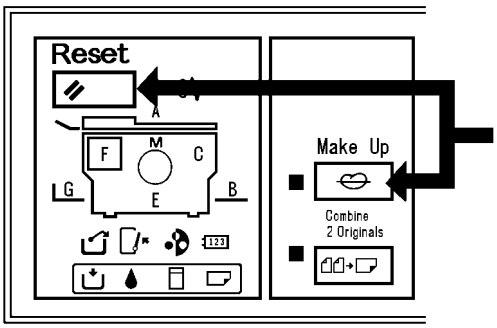
NOTE: The user code mode is reset if the **Clear Modes key** and the **Stop key** are pressed together.

9. DESIGNATED AREA CHECK MODE: C213 ONLY

The command sheet image (designated area) and the original image can be printed at the same time to check the designated area and the positioning of the image within the designated area as follows:

1) Turn off the power switch.

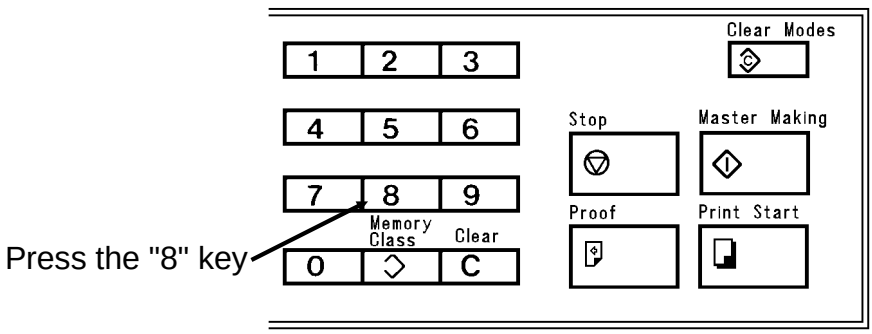
2) Turn on the power switch while pressing the Make-up Key and the Reset Key.



Turn on the power switch while pressing these keys.

3) Press the Make-up Key ([Fn] is displayed in the counter.)

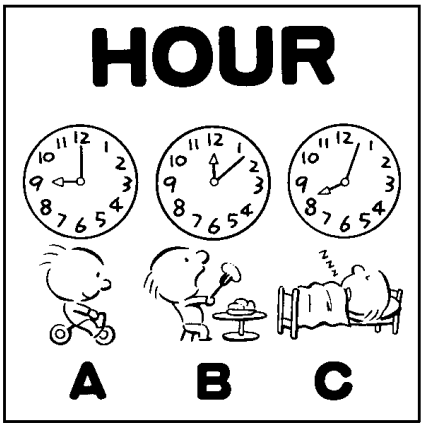
4) Press the "8" key ("8" is displayed in the counter.)



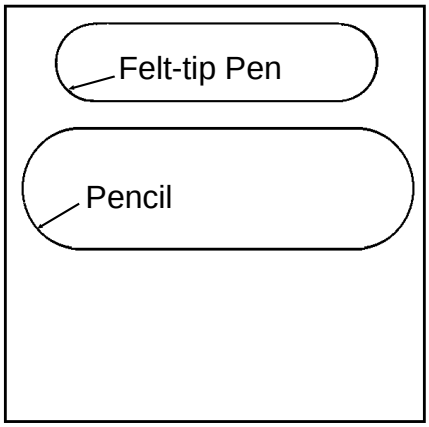
5) Set the command sheet and the original on the original table and press the Print Start key to make copies.

* If white paper is used as an original, only the command sheet (the line showing the designate area) is printed.

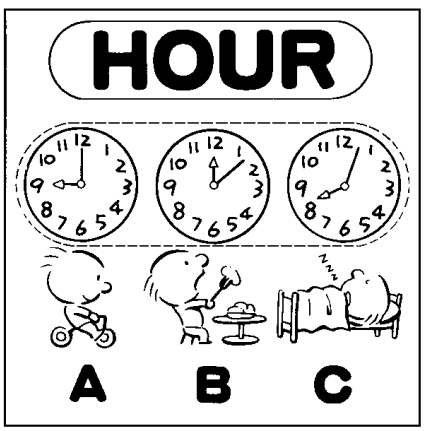
Original



Command Sheet



Printed image using "Fn 8"



1) The designated areas marked using a pencil are depicted by dashed lines. This is because the line marked using a pencil is low density and thin, therefore the designated area is not recognized as a closed loop even if the line on the command sheet is a closed loop.
Therefore, the designated area can not be memorized.

2) The designated area marked using a black felt-tip pen is printed within the closed loop.
As the line of the designated area on the printed paper is a closed loop, the designated area is memorized.

10. AVAILABLE OPTION/SUPPLY TABLE

10.1 C215/C216/C224/C226

O: Standard combination
Δ: Usable under certain conditions
X: Cannot be used

		C215/C216/ C224/C226
Masters	Type 800	X
	Type 900	X
	VT-S	X
	VT-M	X *NOTE1
	VT-L	X
	VT-II-M	O
Inks	Black	O
	Color (rd/bl/gn/br)	O
	VT-Black-1000	X
Color Drums	Color Drum	Δ *NOTE2
	Color Drum Type 905	Δ *NOTE2
	Color Drum VT2000-M	O
	Color Drum VT2000-LG	X *NOTE3
	Color Drum VT2000-S	X *NOTE3
	Color Drum VT3000-L	X
	Color Drum VT3000-S	X
Others	Cassette B4	X
	Cassette VT3000-L	X
	Cassette VT3000-S	X
	Tape Marker Type 20	O
	Priport Table	O
	Priport Table VT3000	X

NOTE: 1) The VT-M master can be installed on the C215/C216/C224/C226, however, a weak image (sometimes image blank) will appear. This is because the VT-II-M master is more sensitive than the VT-M master.
2) The modified master clamper (P/N C2194948) must be installed.
3) The drum can be installed, however, the maximum image area is limited according to the drum screen size.

10.2 C211/C212/C213 AND OTHER MODELS

0: Standard combination
Δ: Usable under certain conditions
X: Cannot be used

		C201	C206	C204	C203	C205	C208	C207
Masters	Type 800	0	0	Δ *1	Δ *1	Δ *2	Δ *2	Δ *2
	Type 900	X	X	0	0	Δ *3	Δ *3	Δ *3
	Type 905	X	X	Δ *4	Δ *4	0	0	0
	VT-S	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
	VT-M	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
	VT-L	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
Inks	Black	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
	Color (rd/bl/gn/br)	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
	VT-Black-1000	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
Color Drums	Color Drum	0	0	0	0	Δ *6	Δ *7	Δ *7
	Color Drum Type 905	Δ *9	Δ *9	Δ *9	Δ *9	0	0	0
	Color Drum VT2000-M	Δ *11	Δ *11	Δ *11	Δ *11	0	0	0
	Color Drum VT2000-LG	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
	Color Drum VT2000-S	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
	Color Drum VT3000-L	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
	Color Drum VT3000-S	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
Others	Cassette B4	X	X	X	X	X	0	0
	Cassette VT3000-L	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
	Cassette VT3000-S	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
	Tape Marker Type 20	0	0	0	0	0	Δ *12	Δ *12
	Priport Table	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
	Priport Table VT3000	X	X	X	X	X	X	X

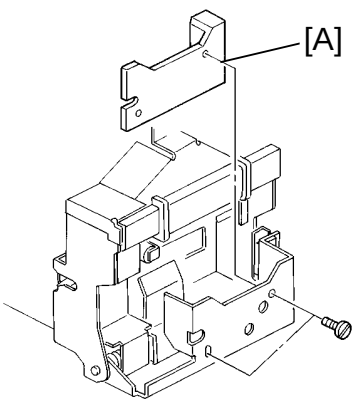
Service Tables

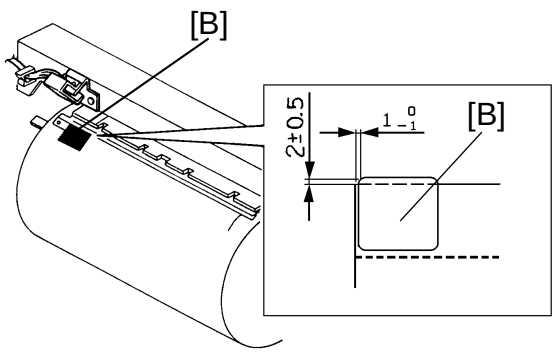
0: Standard combination
Δ: Usable under certain conditions
X: Cannot be used

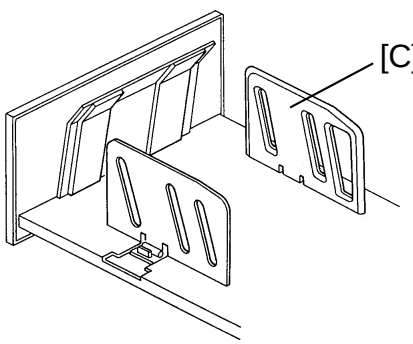
		C211 B4	C211 LG	C211 A4	C212	C213	C210
Masters	Type 800	X	X	X	X	X	X
	Type 900	X	X	X	X	X	X
	Type 905	X	X	X	X	X	X
	VT-S	X	0	0	X	X	X
	VT-M	0	X	X	0	0	X
	VT-L	X	X	X	X	X	0
Inks	Black	0	0	0	0	0	Δ *5
	Color (rd/bl/gn/br)	0	0	0	0	0	0
	VT-Black-1000	X	X	X	X	X	0
Color Drums	Color Drum	Δ *8	X	X	Δ *8	Δ *8	X
	Color Drum Type 905	Δ *10	X	X	Δ *10	Δ *10	X
	Color Drum VT2000-M	0	X	X	0	0	X
	Color Drum VT2000-LG	X	0	X	X	X	X
	Color Drum VT2000-S	X	X	0	X	X	X
	Color Drum VT3000-L	X	X	X	X	X	0
	Color Drum VT3000-S	X	X	X	X	X	0
Others	Cassette B4	X	X	X	0	0	X
	Cassette VT3000-L	X	X	X	X	X	0
	Cassette VT3000-S	X	X	X	X	X	0
	Tape Marker Type 20	0	0	0	0	0	0
	Priport Table	0	0	0	0	0	X
	Priport Table VT3000	X	X	X	X	X	0

NOTES

1) The image density is lower than with a type 900 master; however, the ink set-off on the back side of the following pages is reduced.
2) The image density is lower than with a type 905 master; however, the ink set-off is reduced.
3) The image density is higher than with a type 905 master and the ink set-off is increased.
4). The image density is lower than with a type 900 master; however, the ink set-off is reduced and the image density in solid areas is more even.
5) When the 500 cc ink cartridge is installed, the ink holder spacer [A] (P/N C5264633) must be installed as shown.
6) The image density is slightly higher.
7) The drum cannot be used used unless the black seal [B] (P/N C2074550) is affixed to the screen edge as shown. The drum lock function cannot be used.
8) The drum cannot be used unless the black seal [B] (P/N C2074550) is affixed to the screen edge as shown. The modified master clamper (P/N C2194948) must be installed. The drum lock function cannot be used.
9) The drum lock and the drum master detection functions cannot be used; however, the first few prints made when the Master Making key is pressed will be better than those made on a standard drum.
10) The modified master clamper (P/N C2194948) must be installed.
11) The drum lock and the drum master detection functions cannot be used; however, this drum produces better quality images than a standard drum.
12) The rear paper delivery side plate [C] (P/N C2136119) used on the C211/C212/C213 model must be installed.







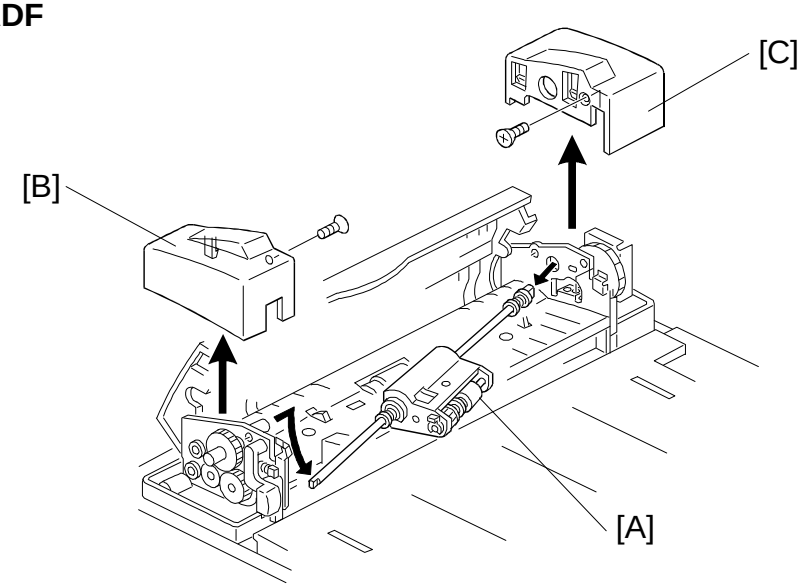
SECTION 5

REPLACEMENT AND ADJUSTMENT

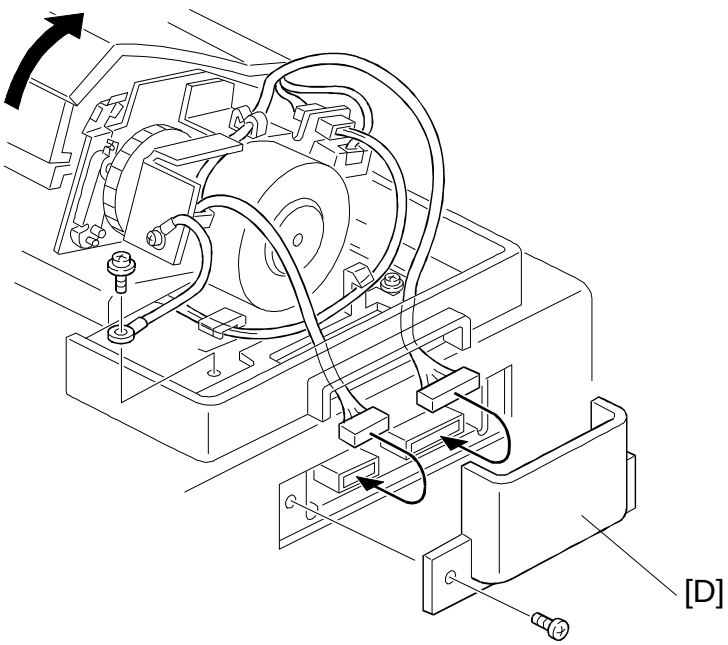
1. EXTERIOR

1.1 C226 ONLY

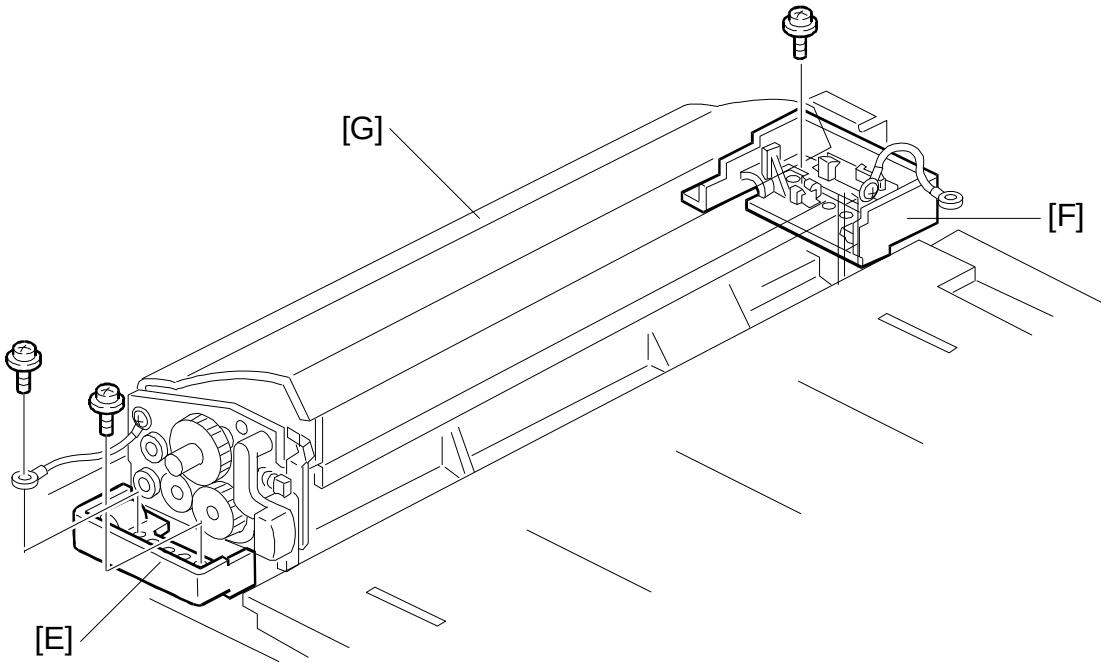
1.1.1 ADF



First, remove the ADF roller assembly [A].
A: ADF Roller Assembly
B: ADF Upper Front Cover (1 screw, 1 hook)
C: ADF Upper Rear Cover (1 screw, 2 hooks)

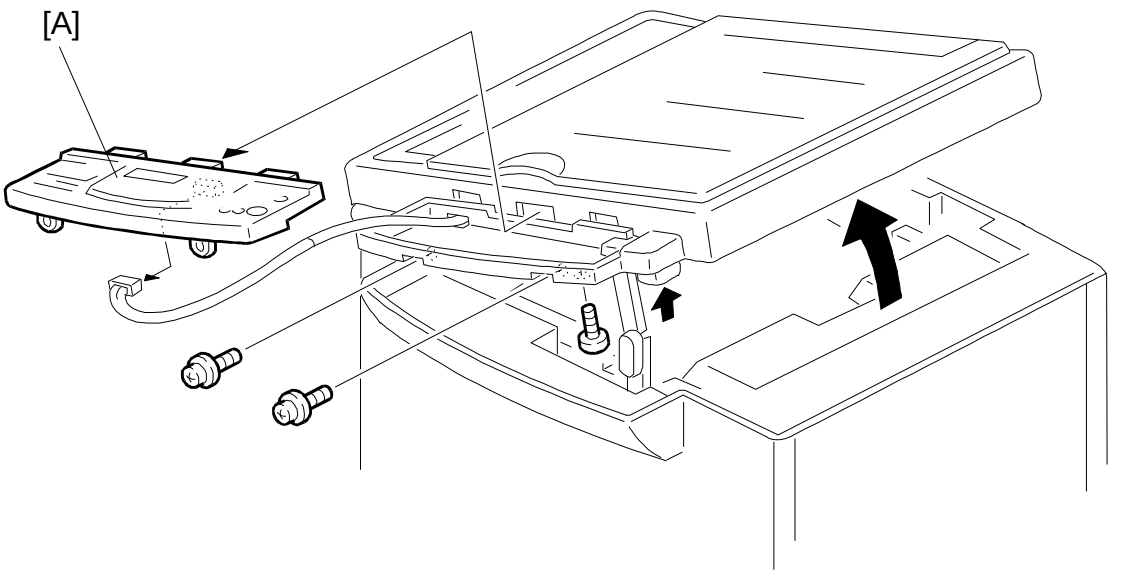


Remove the connector cover, then remove the harness and a ground wire.
D: Connector Cover (1 screw)



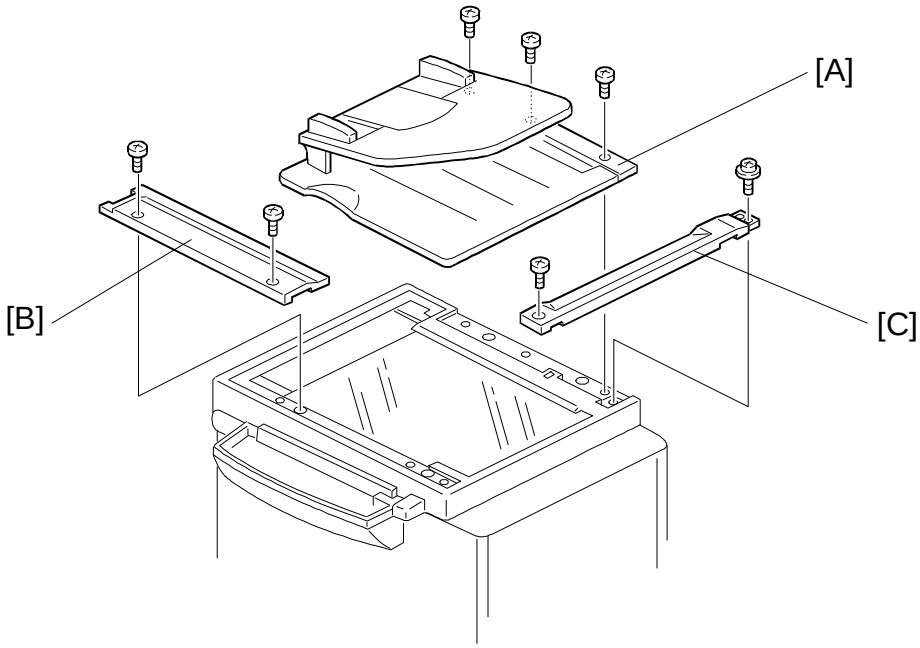
E: ADF Lower Front Cover (2 screws, 1 grounding wire)
F: ADF Lower Rear Cover (2 screws, 1 grounding wire)
G: ADF Unit (2 connectors)

1.1.2 Operation Panel



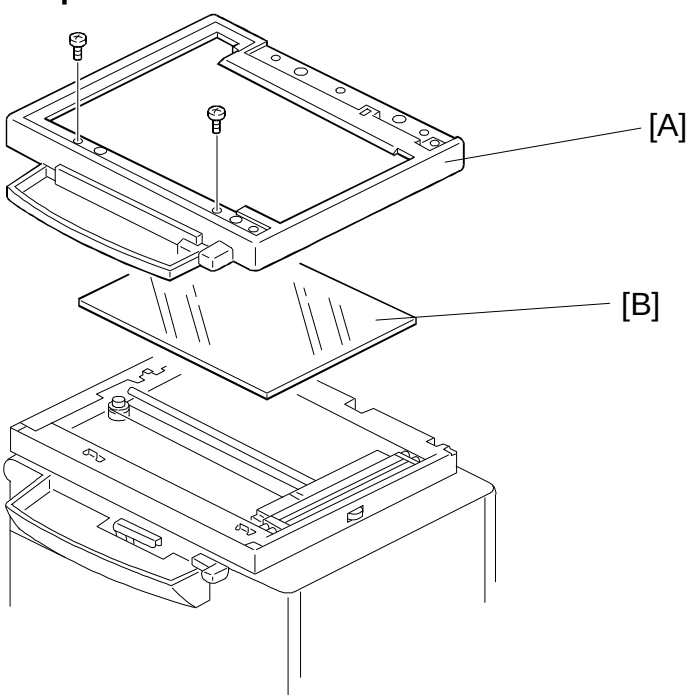
A: Operation Panel Assembly (2 tapping screws)

1.1.3 Platen Cover and Upper Covers



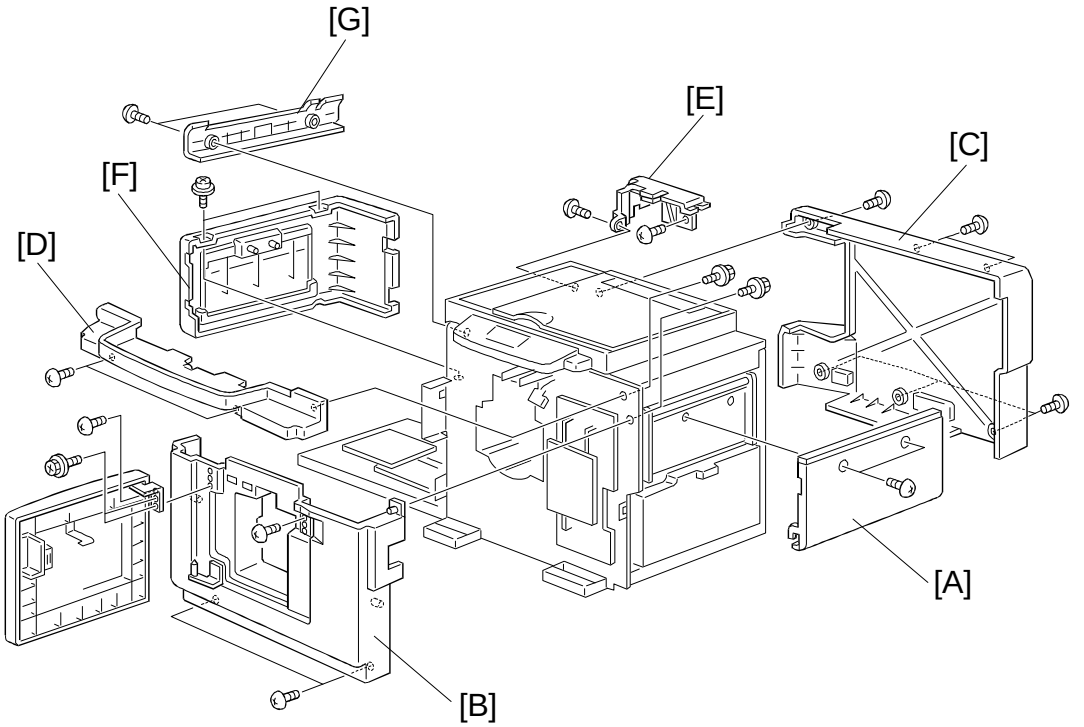
A: Platen Cover (3 tapping screws)
B: Horizontal Upper Cover (2 silver screws)
C: Vertical Upper Cover (1 silver screw, 1 screw)

1.1.4 Top Cover and Exposure Glass



A: Top Cover (2 screws)
B: Exposure Glass

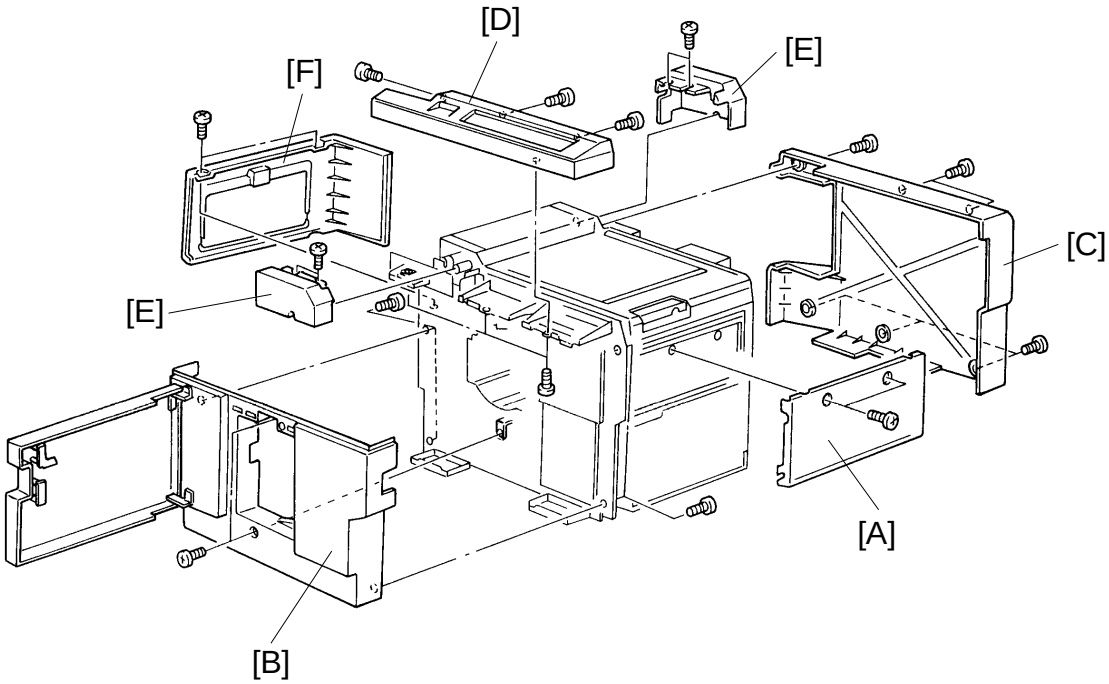
1.1.5 Other Covers



A: Master Feed Unit Cover (2 screws)
B: Front Cover (4 screws)
- **Open the front door to remove the front screws**

C: Rear Cover (6 screws)
D: Operation Panel Under Cover (2 screws)
E: Rear Left Cover (2 screws)
F: Master Eject Cover (2 screws)
G: Left Upper Cover (2 screws)

1.2 OTHER MODELS



When adjusting or disassembling each sections, refer to the following procedure of how to remove the exterior covers.

[A] Master feed unit cover (2 screws). Slide the scanner unit to the left.

[B] Front cover (6 screws).

- Remove master feed unit cover [A] to remove upper right screw. Open the front door to remove the front screws.

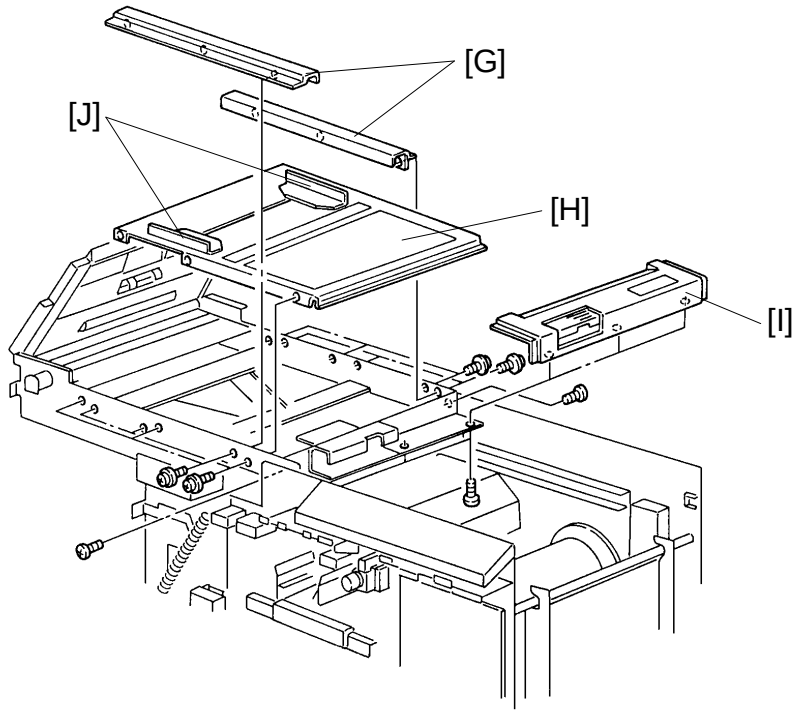
[C] Rear cover (6 screws).

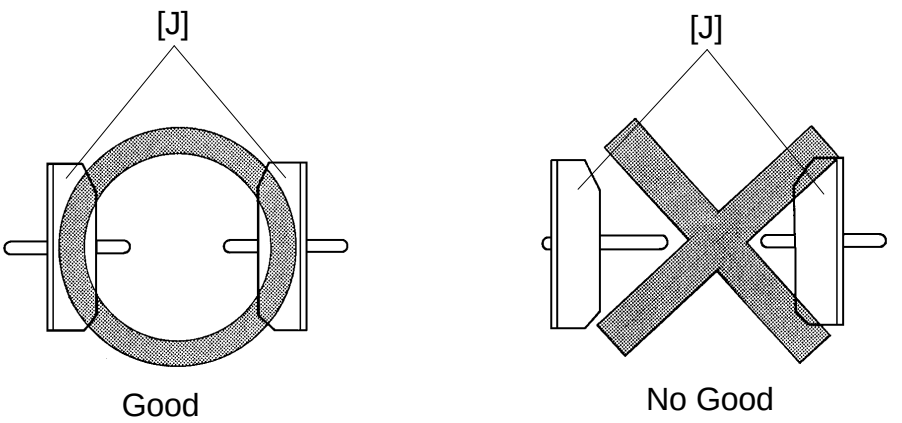
[D] Operation panel cover (6 screws).

- Remove front cover [B] to remove operation panel cover.

[E] Front and rear fluorescent lamp covers (2 screws each).

[F] Master eject cover (2 screws).





[G] Front and rear original table frames (3 screws each).

- Remove the operation panel cover [D] and rear cover [C] to remove the front and rear original table frames (See page 5-1).

[H] Original table (6 screws).

- Remove front and rear original table frames [G] to remove the original table.

NOTE: When installing the original table, make sure both original guides [J] are set in the same position in the grooves (See illustration).

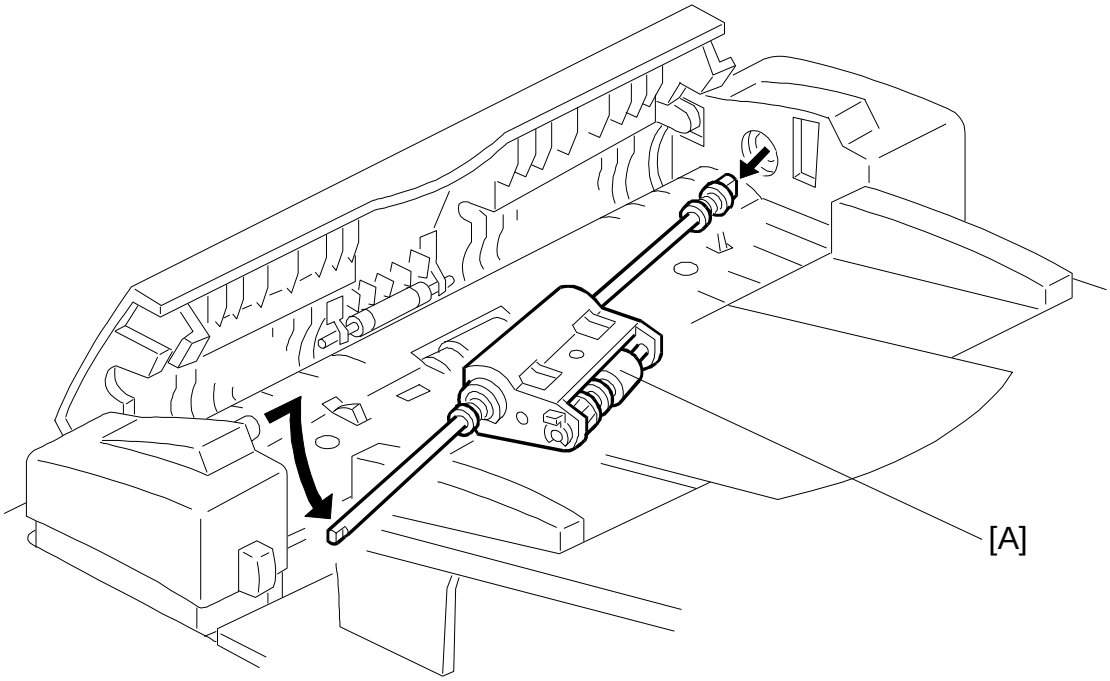
[I] Original table cover (3 screws).

- Slide the scanner unit to the left.

2. ORIGINAL FEED SECTION

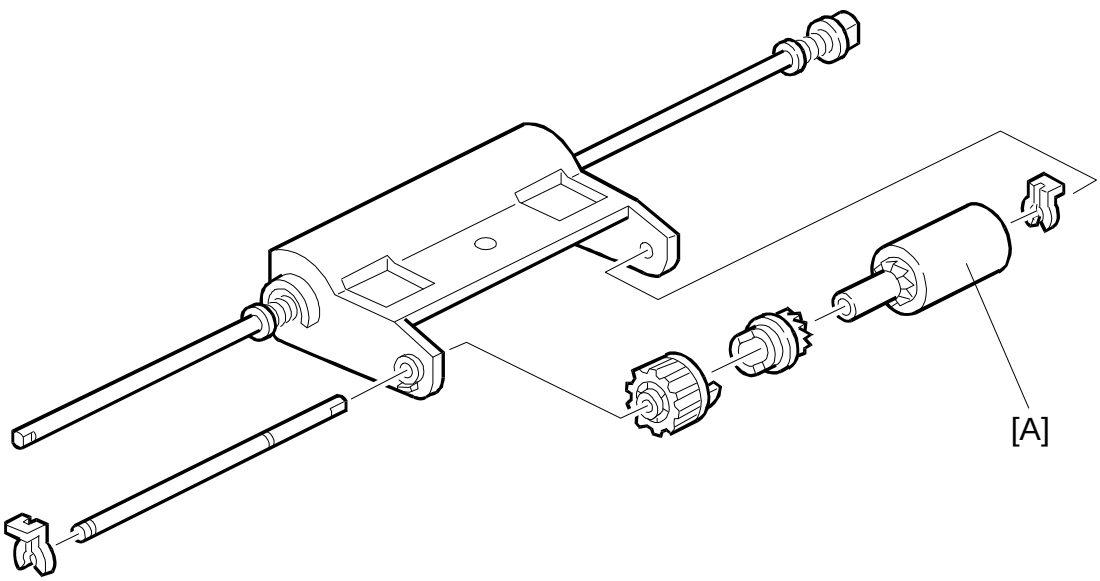
2.1 C226 ONLY

2.1.1 ADF Roller Asssembly and Covers



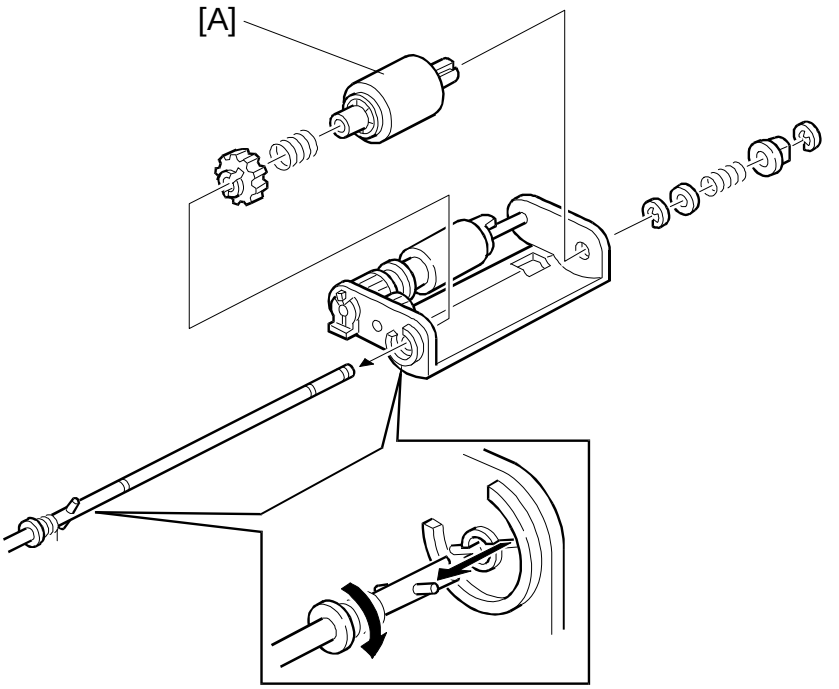
A: ADF Roller Assembly

2.1.2 Pick-up Roller



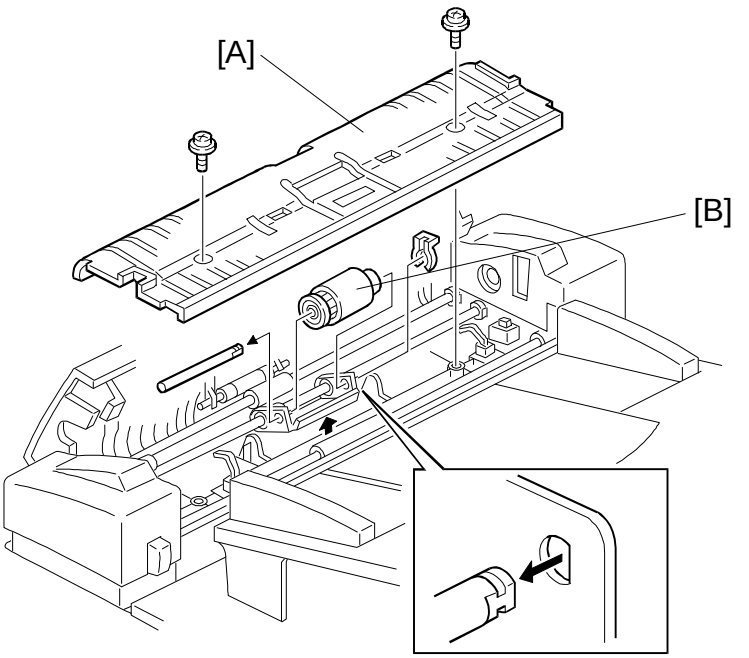
A: Pick-up Roller (2 clips, 2 gears)

2.1.3 Feed Roller



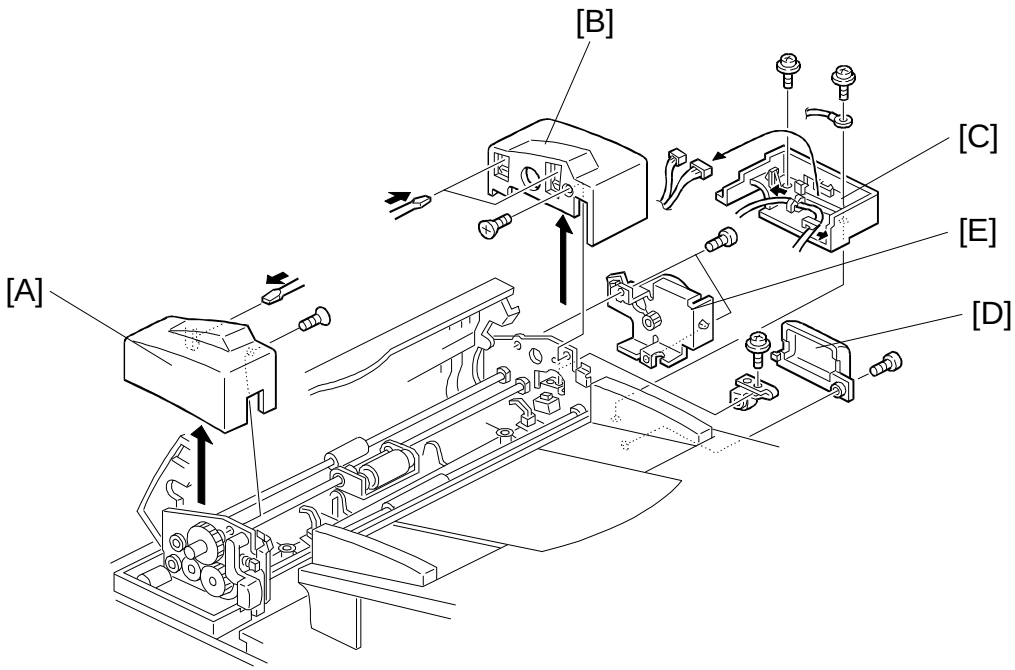
A: Feed Roller (1 clip, 1 gear, 2 springs, 2 E-rings, 1 washer)

2.1.4 Separation Roller



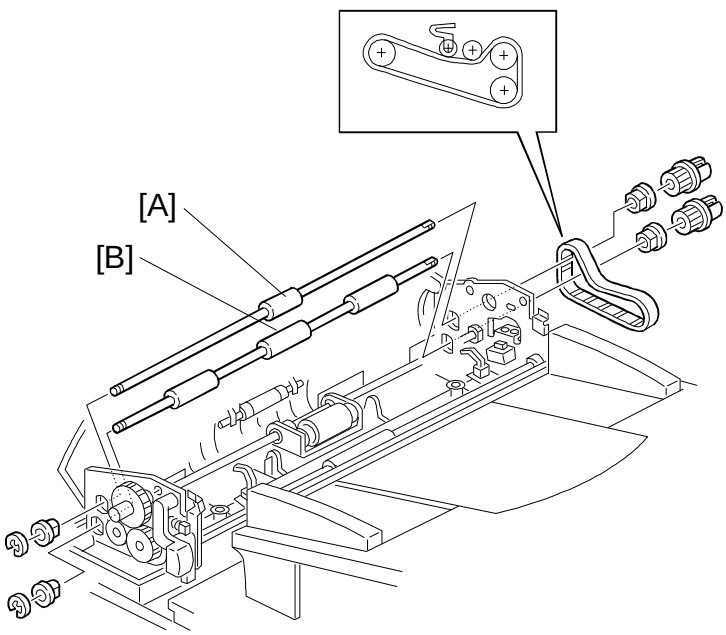
A: Upper Guide Plate (2 tapping screws), B: Separation Roller (1 clip)

2.1.5 ADF Motor and Covers



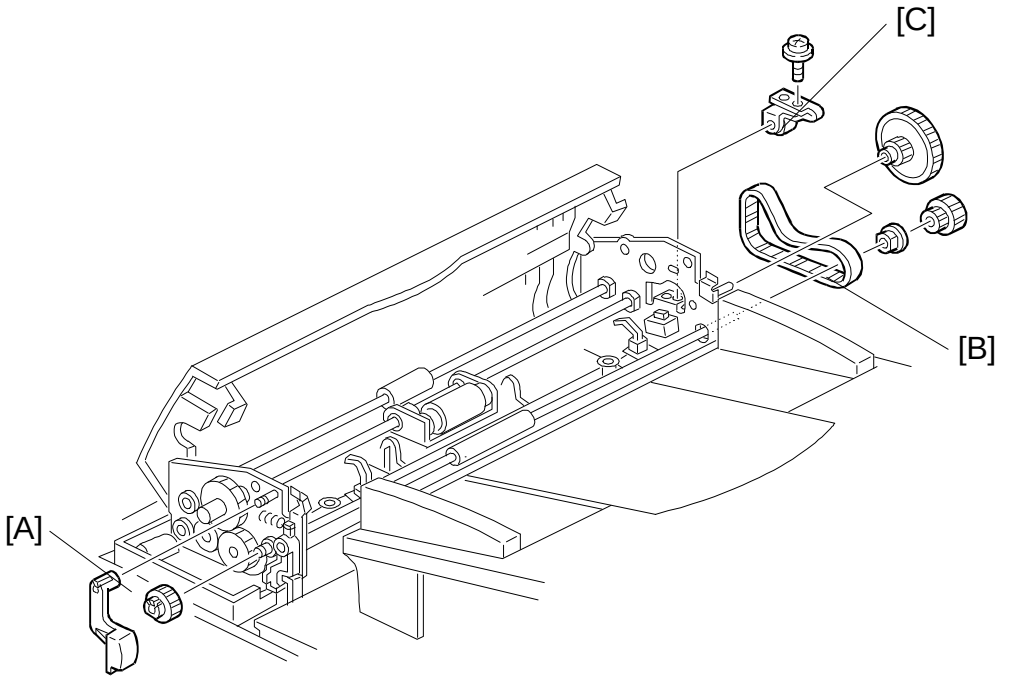
A: ADF Upper Front Cover (1 screw, 1 hook)
B: ADF Upper Rear Cover (1 screw, 2 hooks)
C: ADF Lower Rear Cover (2 screws)
D: Connector Cover (1 screw)
E: ADF Motor (2 screws)

2.1.6 R0 and R1 Rollers

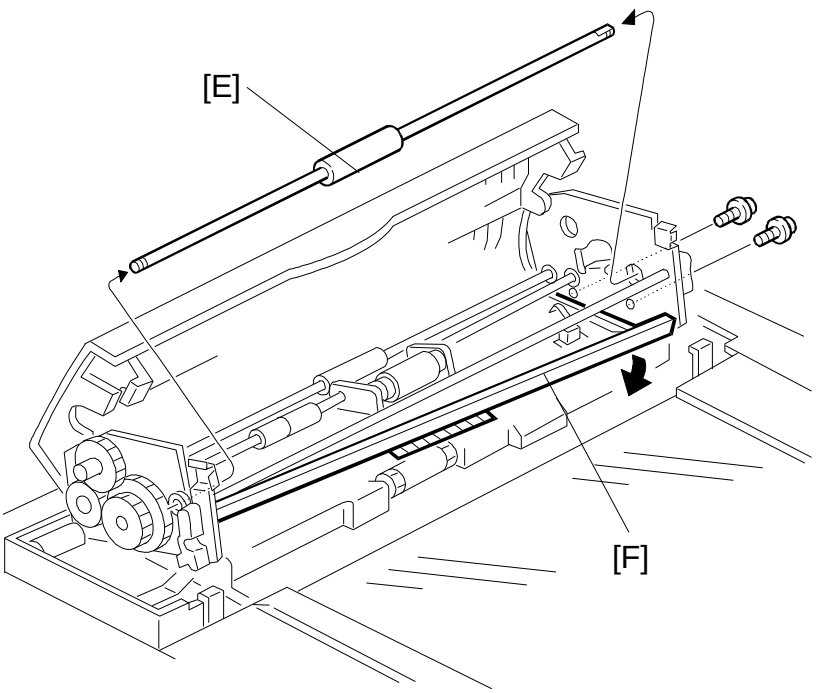


A: R0 Roller (1 E-ring, 1 gear, 2 bushings)
B: R1 Roller (1 E-ring, 1 gear, 2 bushings)

2.1.7 R2 Roller

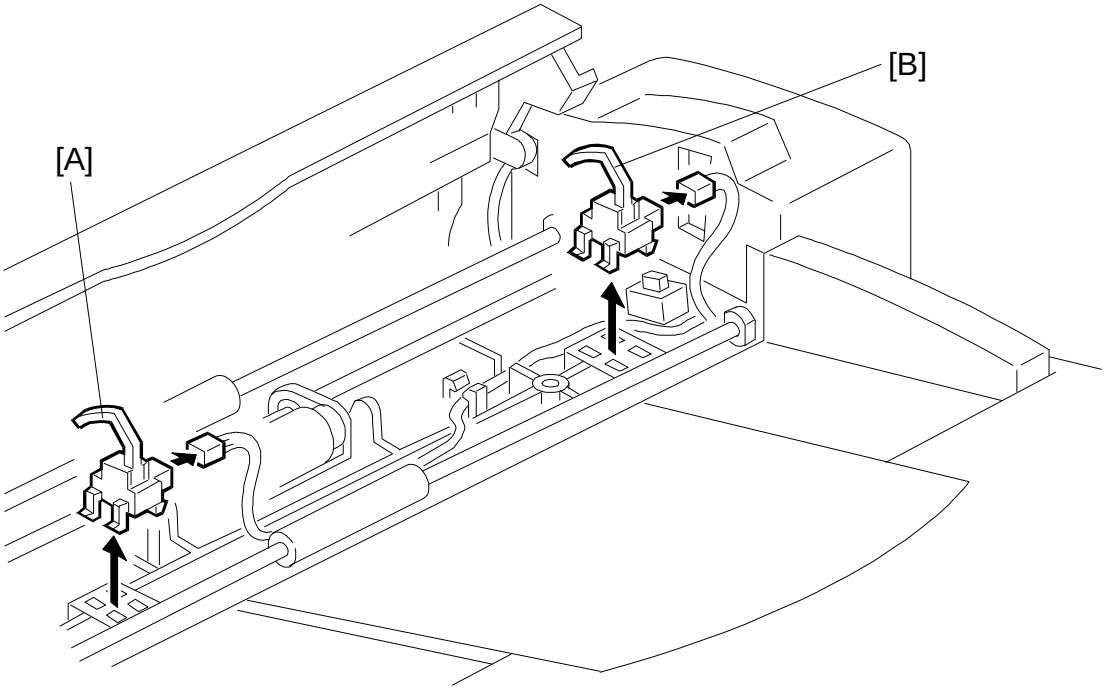


A: ADF Release Lever
B: Timing Belt
C: Tensioning Roller Ass'y (1 screw)



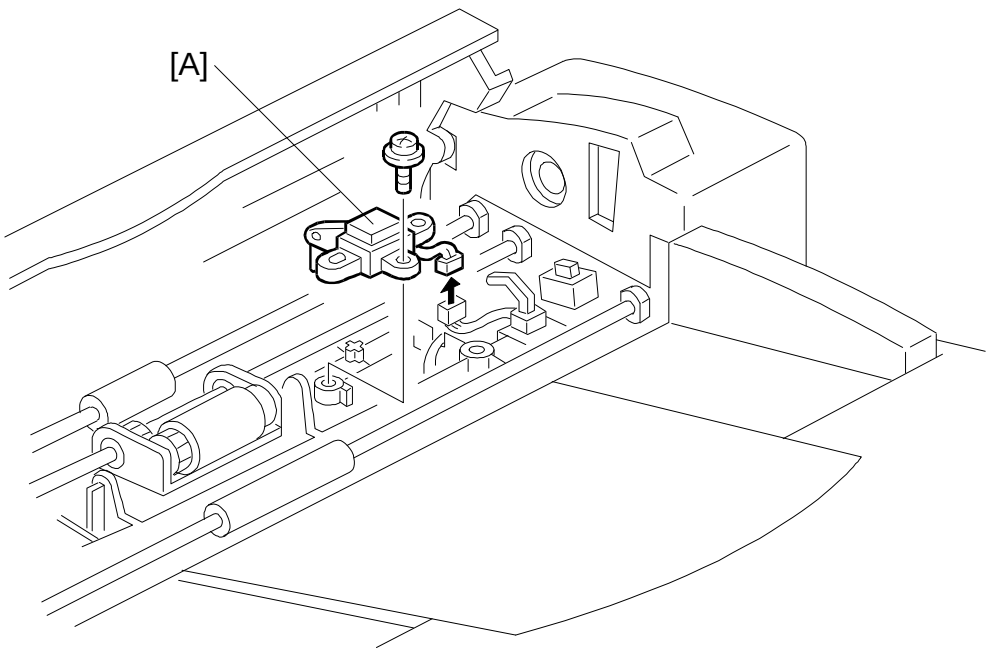
Remove the R2 roller [E] while lowering the guide plate [F].

2.1.8 Document Sensor



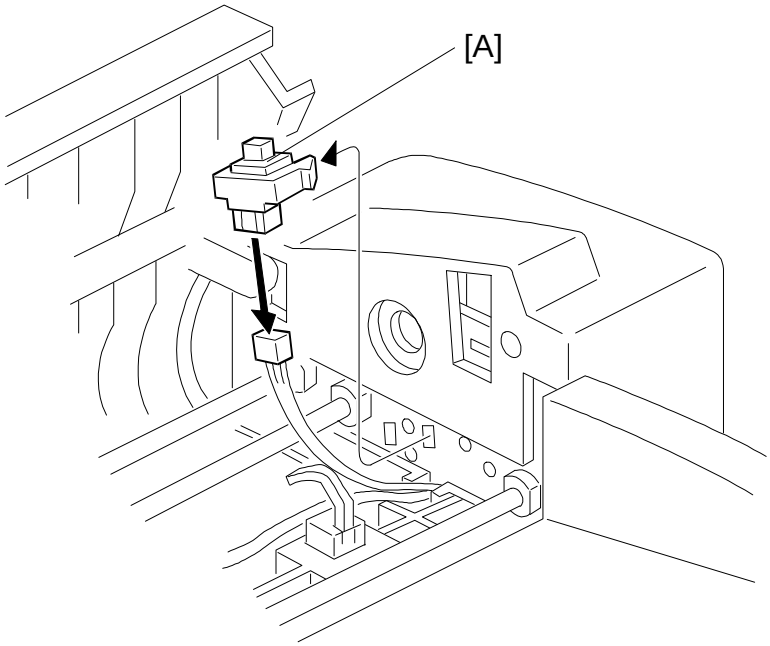
A: Document Sensor
B: This sensor has no function.

2.1.9 Scan Line Sensor

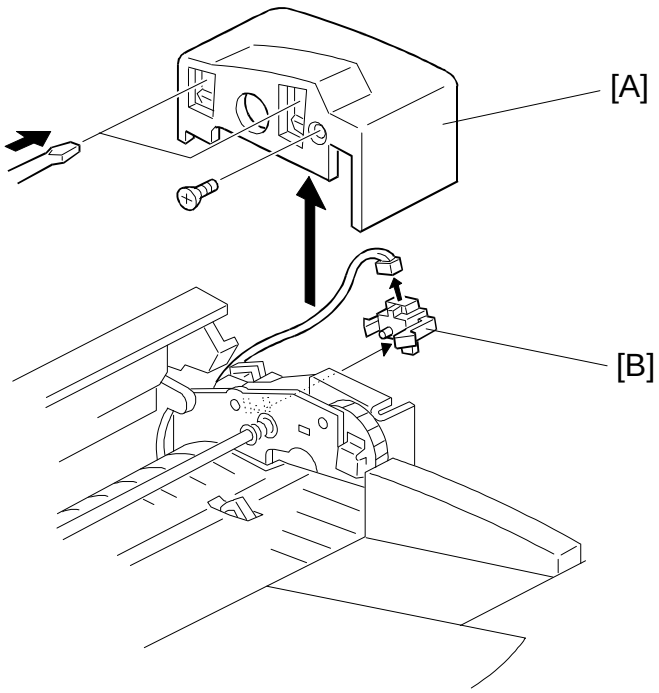


A: Scan Line Sensor (1 screw)

2.1.10 Cover Sensors



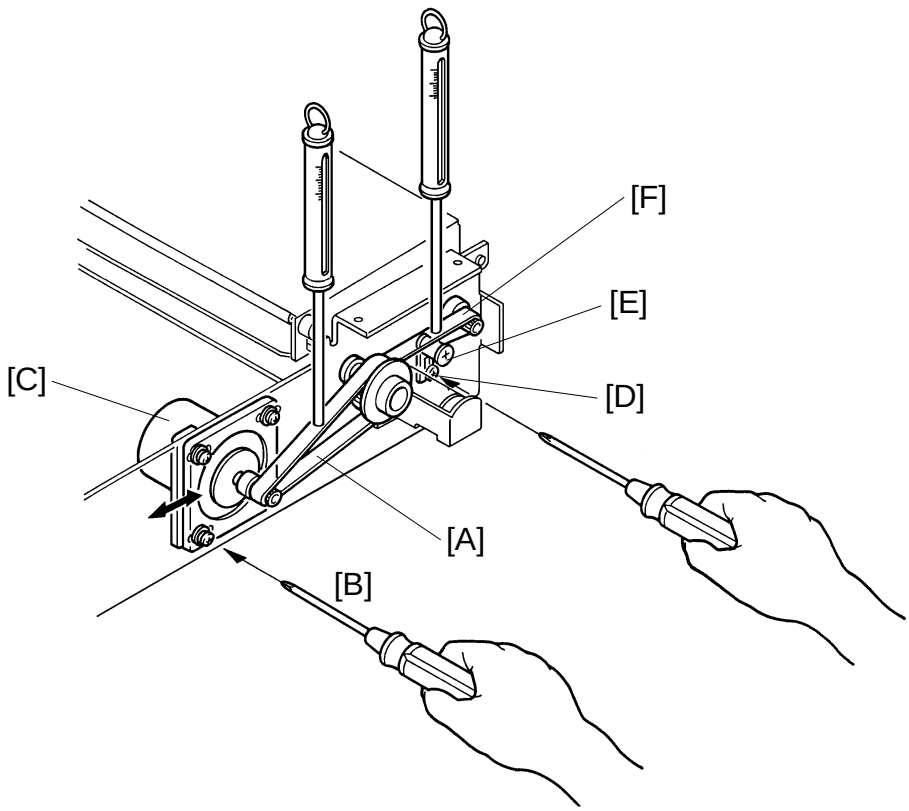
A: ADF Cover Switch



A: Upper Rear Cover (1 screw, 2 hooks)
B: ADF Switch

2.2 OTHER MODELS

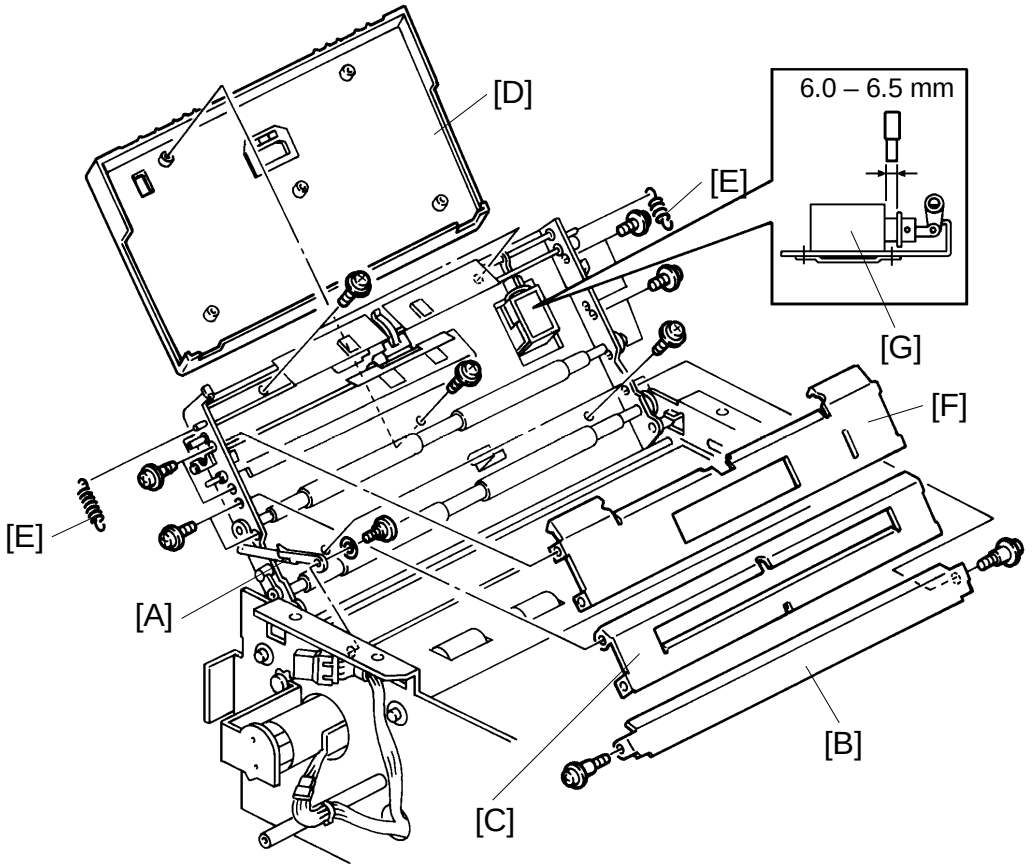
2.2.1 Original Feed Belt Tension Adjustment: C211/C215 Only



Purpose: To ensure proper original feed.

1. Remove the rear cover of the fluorescent lamp (2 screws).
2. Using a tension gauge, apply a 110-gram load at the center of the belt [A]. Make sure that the belt deflects 2 to 3 mm.
3. If not, loosen the mounting screws [B] of the original feed motor [C] and adjust belt tension by moving the original feed motor.
4. Using a tension gauge, apply a 110-gram load at the center of the belt [F]. Make sure that the belt deflects 1.1 $\pm$ 0.2 mm.
5. If incorrect, loosen the mounting screw [D] and adjust belt tension by moving the belt tensioner [E].
6. After adjustment, retighten the mounting screws.

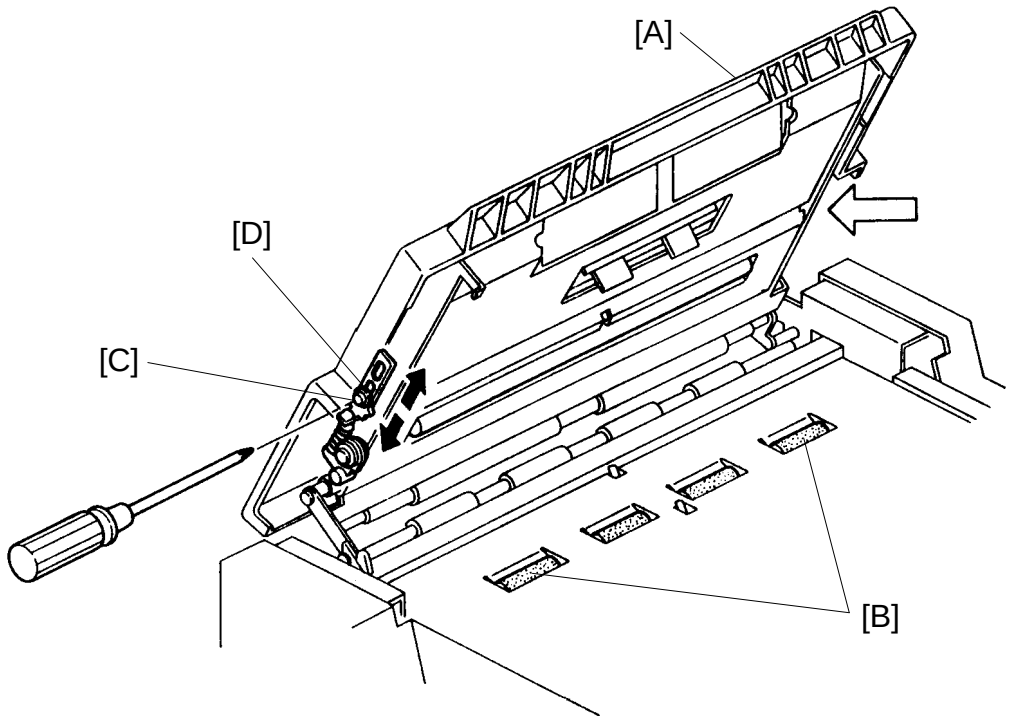
2.2.2 Original Pressure Solenoid Adjustment: C212/C213/C216/C224 Only



Purpose: To ensure that the originals are separated properly.

1. Remove the screw securing the stopper [A].
2. Remove the platen plate [B] (2 screws).
3. Remove the original guide [C] (4 screws).
4. Remove the ADF unit cover [D] (5 screws).
5. Unhook the both hook springs [E].
6. Remove the separation guide plate [F] (4 screws).
7. Adjust the original pressure solenoid [G] position so that the space between the E-ring and the rubber cushion is 6.0 to 6.5 mm when the solenoid is turned off.

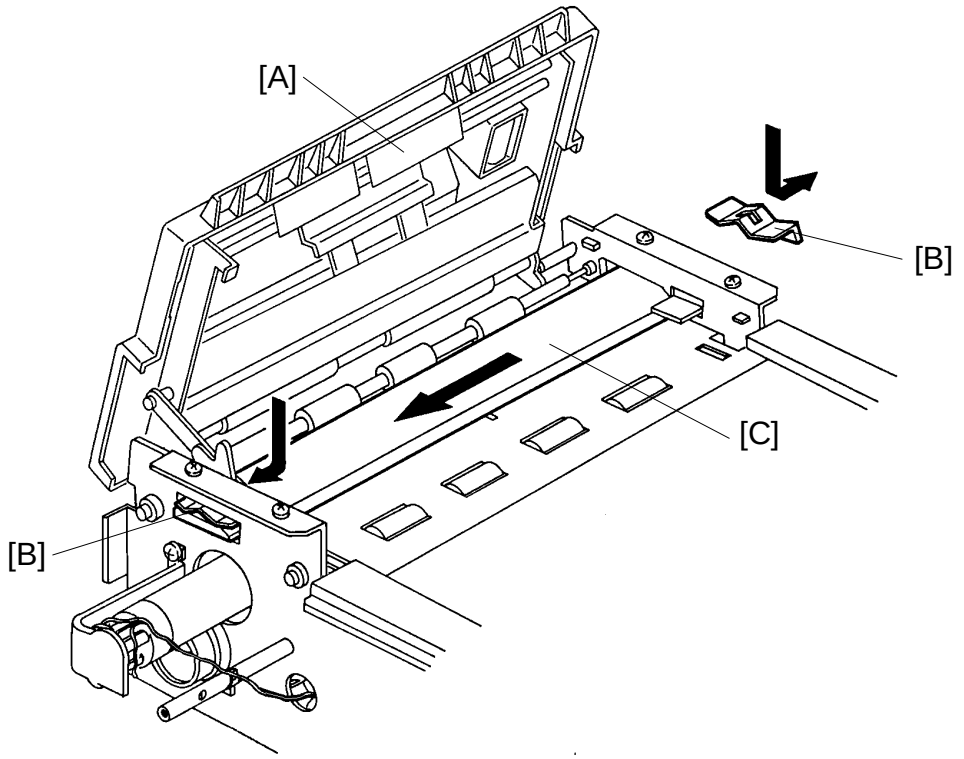
2.2.3 Transport Roller Pressure Adjustment: C212/C213/C216/C224 Only



Purpose: To ensure that the original does not skew

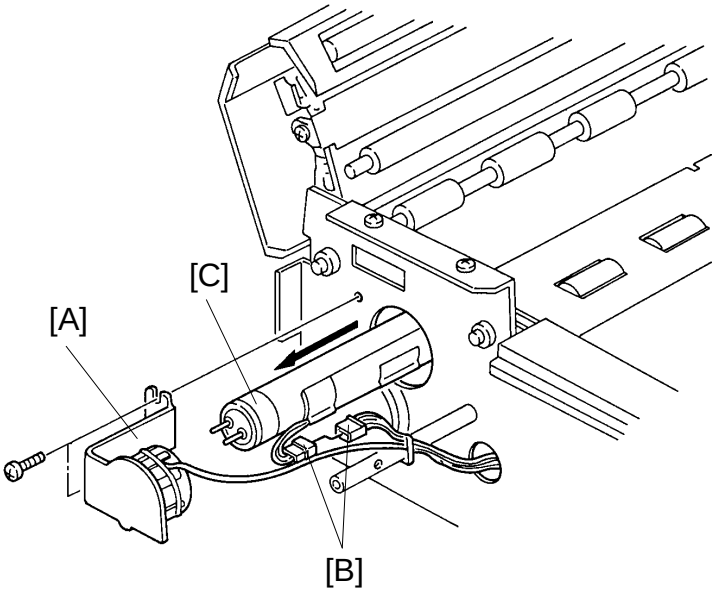
1. Set the ADF ON/OFF switch to OFF.
2. Open the scanner unit [A] and place strips of paper (45 g/m^2) over the front and rear ends of the transport roller [B].
3. Close the scanner unit.
4. Confirm that the strips of paper can be pulled out at both ends of the roller with the same amount of force.
5. If the pressure is not the same at both ends, loosen the mounting screw [C] and adjust the transport roller pressure by sliding the adjustment plate [D] up or down.
6. Tighten the mounting screw after adjusting the roller pressure.

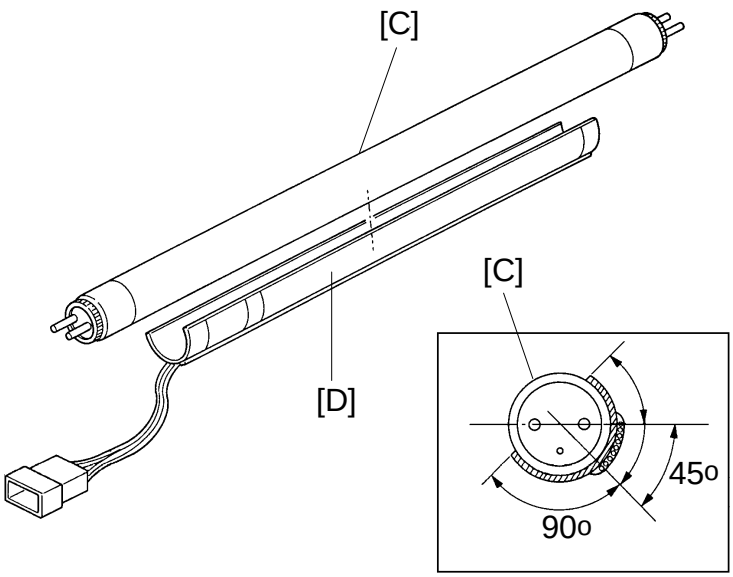
2.2.4 Exposure Glass Replacement



1. Slide the scanner unit to the left.
2. Open the ADF unit [A].
3. Remove the front and rear fluorescent lamp covers (2 screws each).
4. Remove both the exposure glass leaf springs [B].
5. Carefully remove the exposure glass [C].

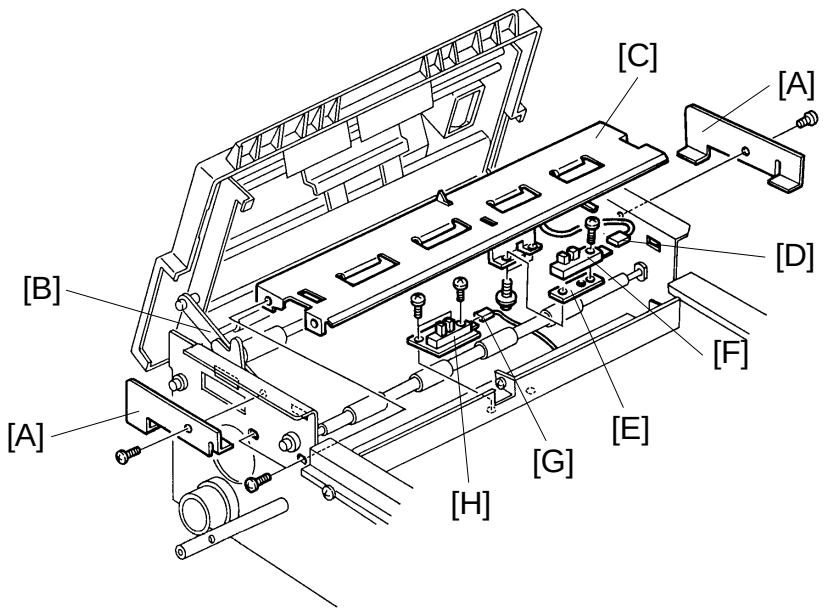
2.2.5 Exposure Lamp/Heater Replacement





1. Slide the scanner unit to the left.
2. Remove the front fluorescent lamp cover (2 screws).
3. Remove the front fluorescent lamp holder [A] (2 screws).
4. Disconnect the 4P heater connector [B].
5. Carefully remove the fluorescent lamp [C] so that it does not contact the exposure glass.
6. Remove the heater [D] from the fluorescent lamp.

2.2.6 Original Registration Sensor/2nd Original Sensor Replacement



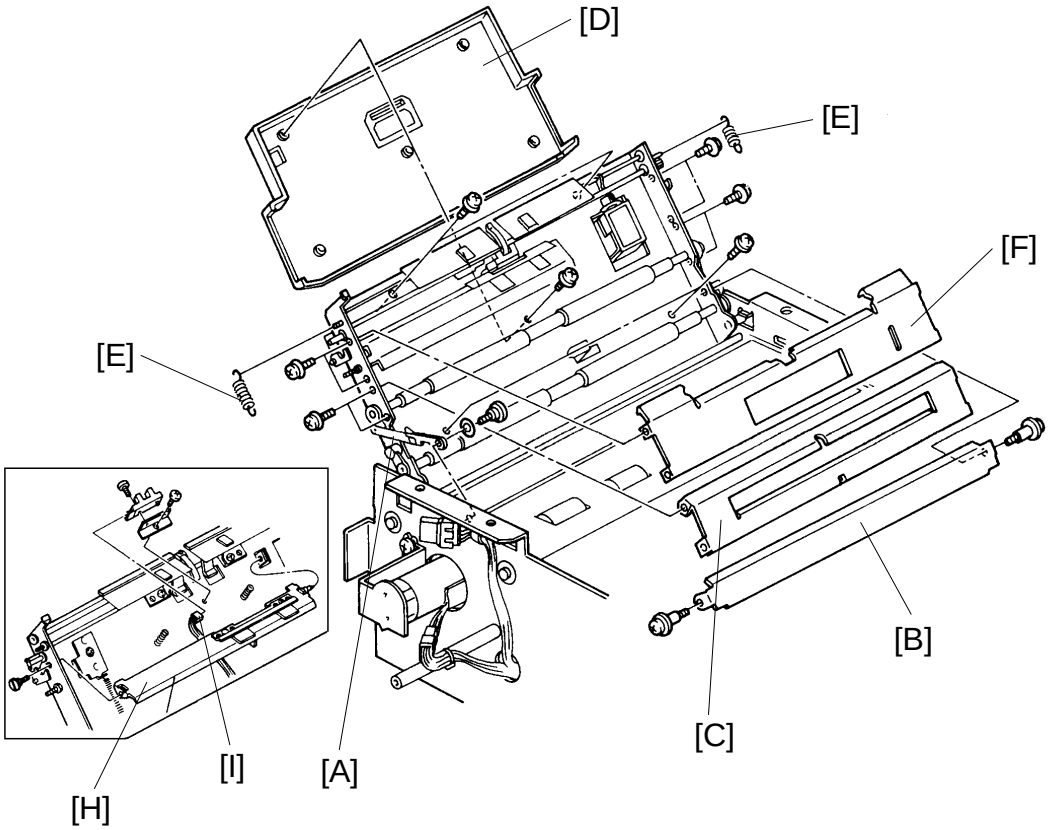
Original Registration Sensor:

1. Remove the DF unit stoppers [A] (C211/C215 only).
2. Remove the exposure glass.
3. Remove the fluorescent lamp.
4. Remove the screw securing the stopper [B] (C212/C213/C216/C224 only).
5. Remove the guide plate [C] (4 screws).
6. Disconnect the original registration sensor connector [D].
7. Remove the sensor with the securing plate [E] (2 screws).
8. Remove the original registration sensor [F] from the securing plate.

2nd Original Sensor:

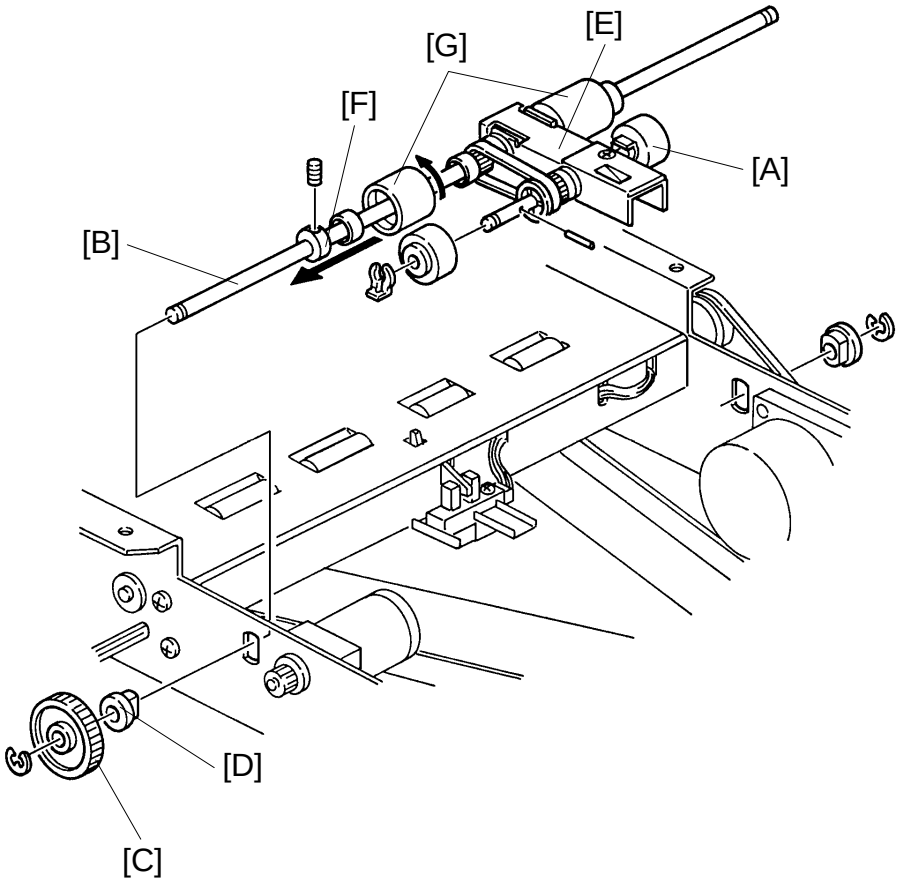
1. ~ 5. procedures are the same as above.
6. Remove the original table.
7. Remove the 2nd original sensor feeler.
8. Disconnect the 2nd original sensor connector [G].
9. Remove the 2nd original sensor [H] (2 screws).

2.2.7 1st Original Sensor Replacement: C212/C213/C216/C224 Only



1. Remove the screw securing the stopper [A] (1 screw).
2. Remove the platen plate [B] (2 screws).
3. Remove the original guide [C] (4 screws).
4. Remove the ADF unit cover [D] (5 screws).
5. Unhook the both hook springs [E].
6. Remove the separation guide plate [F] (4 screws).
7. Remove the separation blade assembly [H] (1 screw).
8. Disconnect the 1st original sensor connector [I].
9. Remove the sensor from the sensor bracket.

2.2.8 Original Feed Rollers/Pull-out Rollers Replacement: C212/C213/ C216/C224 Only



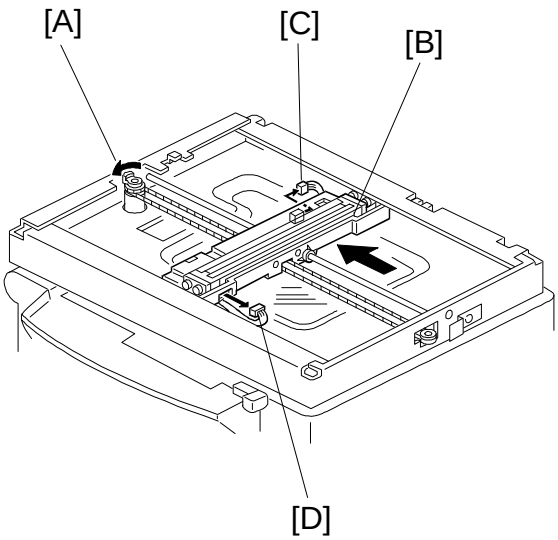
1. Remove the original table.
2. Replace the pull-out rollers [A] (1 snap ring, 1 pin).
3. Remove the E-rings at the both end of the original feed roller shaft [B].
4. Remove the ADF drive gear [C] and bushing [D].
5. Remove the original feed roller assembly [E].
6. Remove the stopper [F] (Allen screw).
7. Replace the original feed rollers [G].

NOTE: A one-way clutch is installed in the feed roller. Confirm that the roller can rotate in the arrow direction as shown in the above illustration.

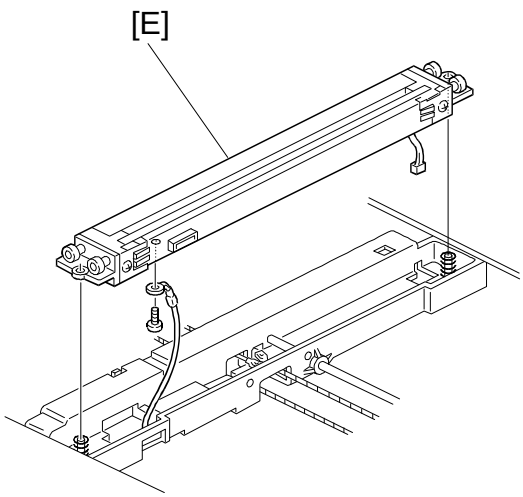
3. SCANNER SECTION

3.1 C226 ONLY

3.1.1 Contact Image Sensor



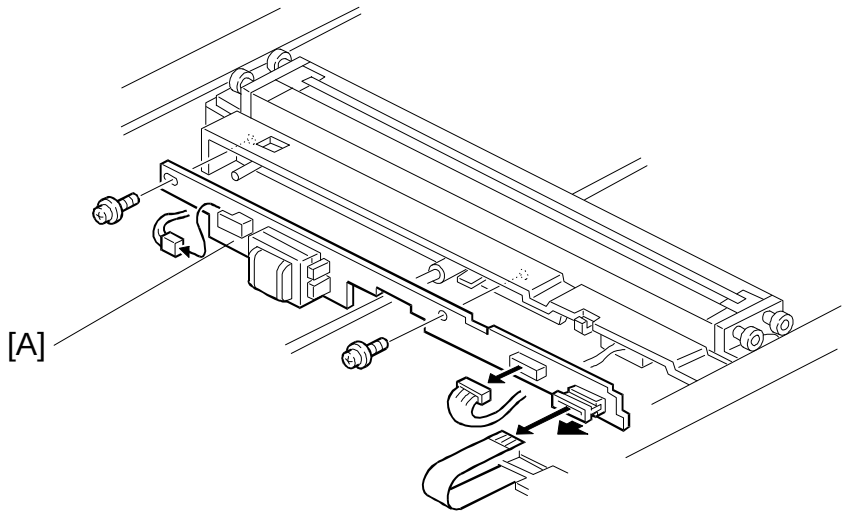
Turn the gear [A] anti-clockwise to move the image sensor [B] to the middle of scanning path.
Then disconnect harnesses [C] and [D].



E: Contact Image Sensor Assembly (1 tapping screw, 1 grounding wire)

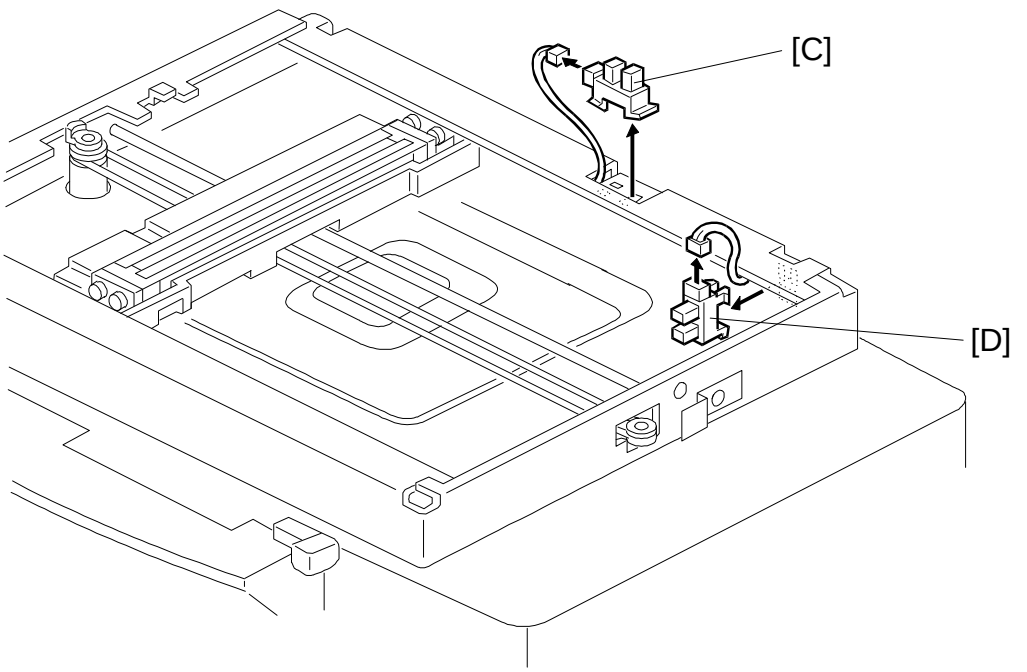
Note for the scanner guide shaft replacement
If you replace the scanner guide shaft, put Launa Oil 40 on all surfaces of the shaft (P/N: 54429103 - Launa Oil 40).

3.1.2 Fluorescent Lamp Stabilizer



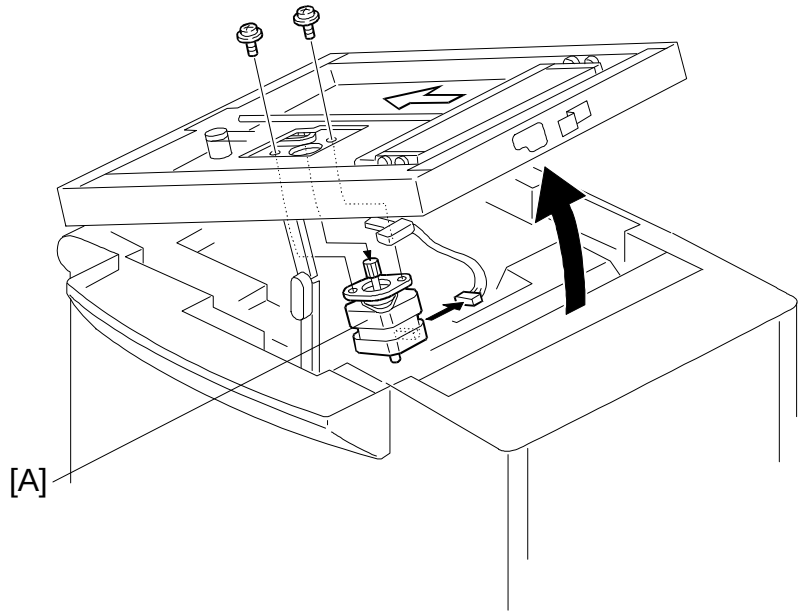
A: Fluorescent Lamp Stabilizer (2 tapping screws, 3 connectors)

3.1.3 Platen Cover and Scanner Home Position Sensors



C: Platen Cover Sensor (1 connector, 3 hooks)
D: Scanner Home Position Sensor (1 connector, 3 hooks)

3.1.4 Scanner Motor



A: Scanner Motor (2 screws, 1 connector, 1 timing belt)

3.2 OPTICAL ADJUSTMENT: C215/C216/C224

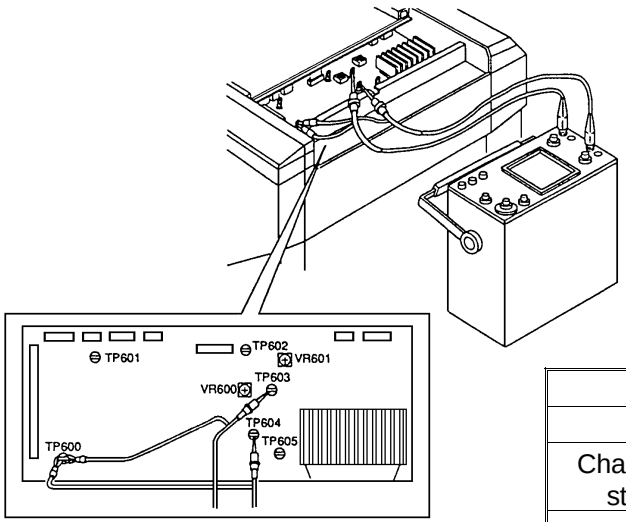
The method of the optics adjustment is the same as the C211/C212/C213 models. However, the wave shape is not exactly same because the pixel density of the C215/C216/C224 models is different from that of the C211/C212/C213 models.

Necessary Tools

1) Facsimile Text Chart R-21 (99992131)
2) Resolution Chart (A0129110)
3) Oscilloscope

3.2.1 Preparation For Adjustment

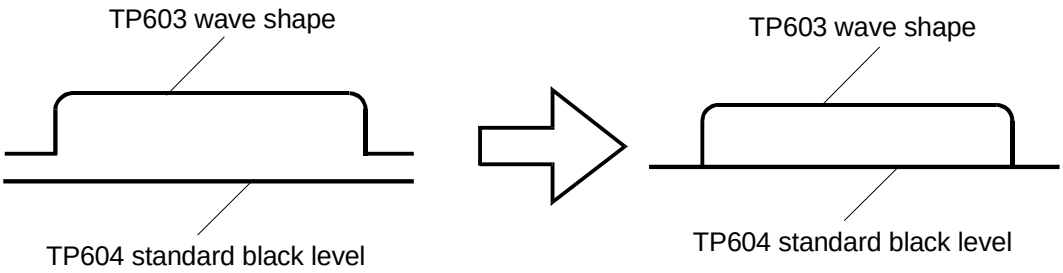
1. Remove the original table and the original table cover.
2. Connect the terminals of the oscilloscope to the following test pins on the A/D conversion board.



Oscilloscope	Text Pin
Channel 1	TP603
Channel 2 (Black level standard voltage)	TP604
GND	TP600

3. Access "I/O Check Mode".
   - Turn on the main switch while holding the Print Start key, Stop key and Clear key on the operation panel. ----- C216 LT version/ C215/C224
   - Turn on the main switch while holding the Print Start key, Stop key, Clear key and the full master detection switch. ----- C216 A4 version
4. Set "15" in the copy counter using the number keys, and set "0" in the memory/class display by pressing the memory/class key
5. Press the Print Start key to turn on the fluorescent lamp.

3.2.2 Black Level Adjustment



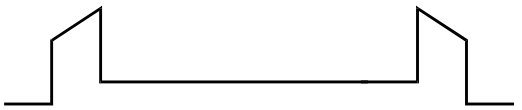
Adjust VR601 so that the black level at TP603 is the same as the standard black level (1.4 V ± 0.03 V).

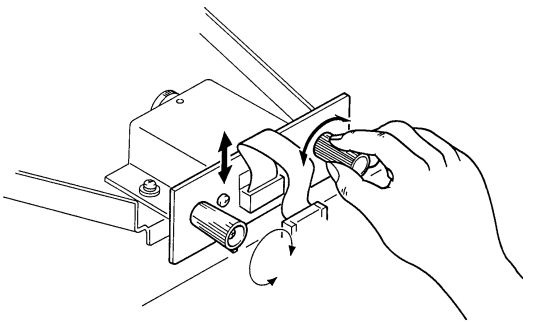
3.2.3 Shading Adjustment

B/A ≥ 60%

Adjust the shading plate position so that the wave is shaped as shown above.

3.2.4 Scan Line Position Adjustment

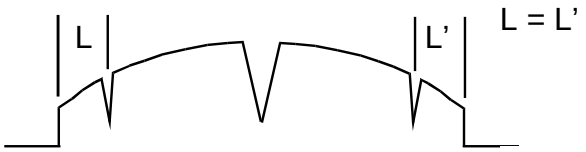


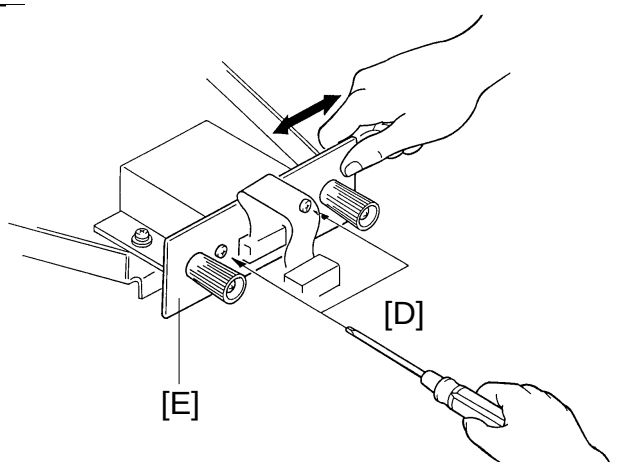


Set the test chart R-21 so that the 1 mm black line is positioned 16 mm away from the edge of the lower original guide plate.

Adjust the CCD board position so that the shape of the wave is similar to the above illustration.

3.2.5 Reading Start Position Adjustment (in The Main Scan Direction)

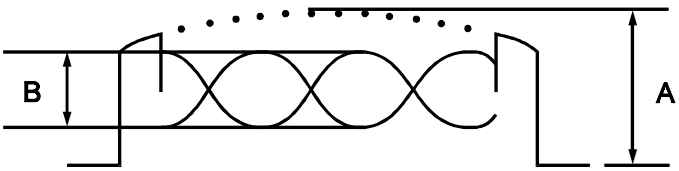


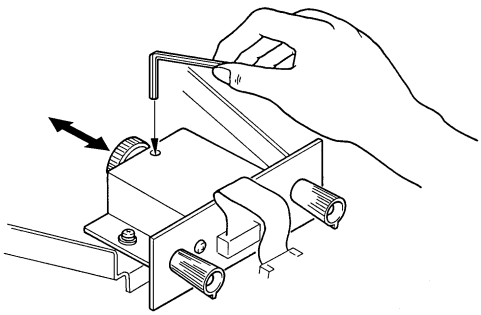


Set the test chart so that the center line, located at the leading edge of the test chart, is positioned above the original leading edge sensor actuator. Then feed the test chart so that the center line can be read.

Adjust the CCD board position so that the above wave is displayed.

3.2.6 Focus Adjustment

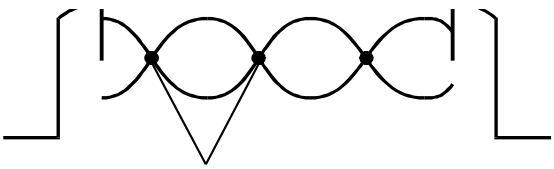


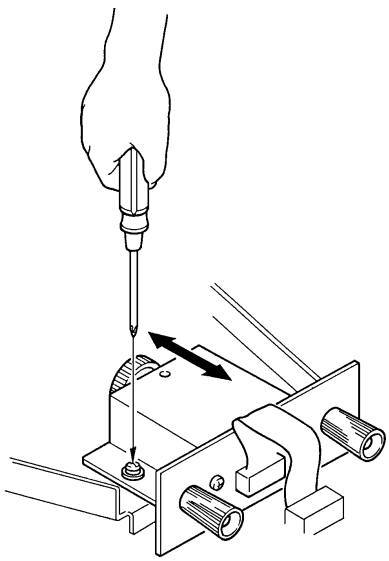


- $\frac{B}{A} \times 100 \geq 20\%$
- Amplitude "B" (difference between white and black levels) must be a maximum.

Position the resolution chart so that the 300 DPI section can be read. Adjust the lens position so that the above wave appears.

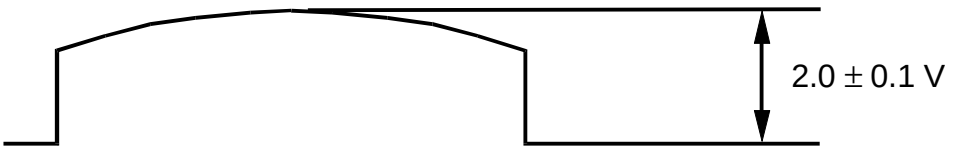
3.2.7 Reduction Ratio Adjustment





Position the resolution chart so that the 300 DPI section can be read. Adjust the lens block position so that the cross points are less than 8.

3.2.8 White Level Adjustment



Adjust the VR600 on the AD conversion board so that the maximum level is 2.0 ± 0.1 V.

3.3 OPTICAL ADJUSTMENT: C211/C212/C213

The only change in the optical adjustment procedure is that black level adjustment should be done first.

The following table shows the reciprocal relationship between adjustment procedures. When the items listed in the left column are adjusted, the items listed in the top row must also be adjusted.

Adjustment Items	Black Level (C212/ C213)	White Level	Shading	Scan Line Position	Reading Start Position of Main Scan	Focus (MTF)	Reduction Ratio (Moire)
Black Level (C212/C213)		O	O			O	O
White Level							
Shading	O	O					
Scan Line Position		O	O		O		
Reading Start Position of Main Scan		O	O	O			
Focus (MTF)							O
Reduction Ratio (Moire)	O	O	O	O	O	O	

The facsimile test chart R-21 (P/N 99992131) and an oscilloscope are required for this adjustment.

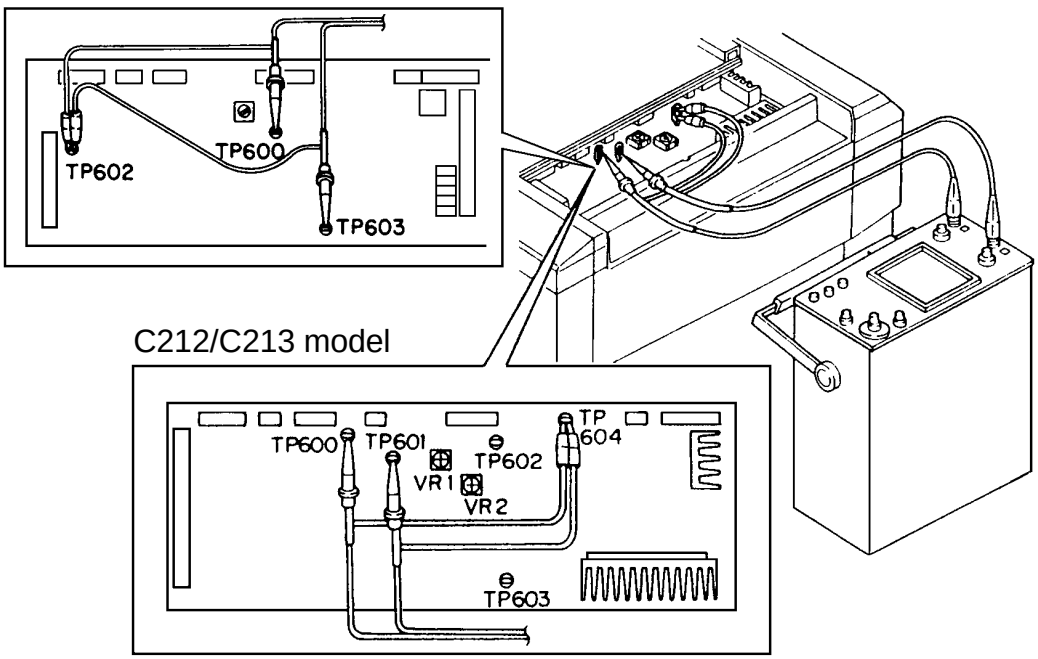
3.3.1 Preparation for Adjustment

1. Remove the original table cover.
2. Connect the terminals of the oscilloscope to the following test pins on the A/D Conversion PCB.

C211 Model		C212/C213 Model	
Terminal	**Test Pin**	**Terminal**	**Test Pin**
Channel 1	TP 600	Channel 1	TP 601
Channel 2	TP 603	Channel 2 (Black Level Standard Voltage)	TP 600
GND	TP 602	GND	TP 604

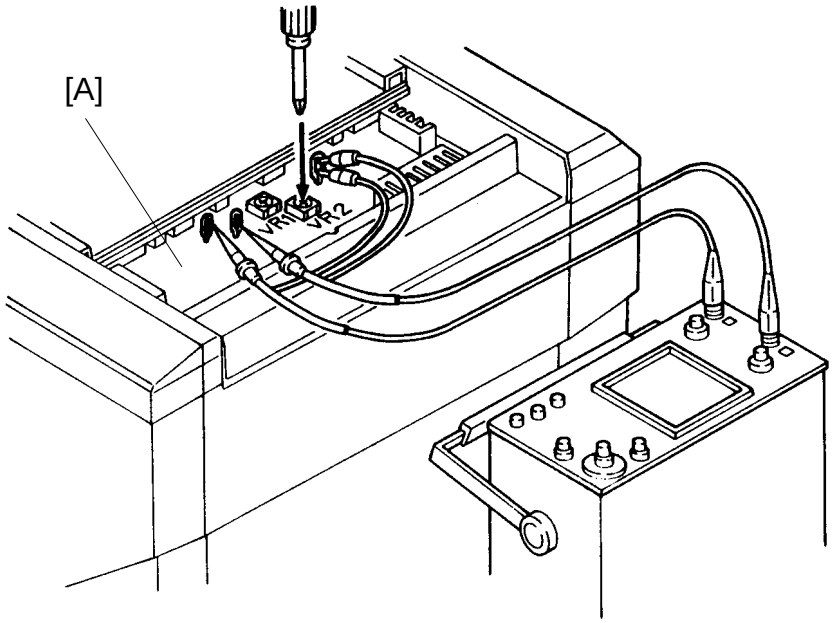
* The trigger terminal is TP 603.

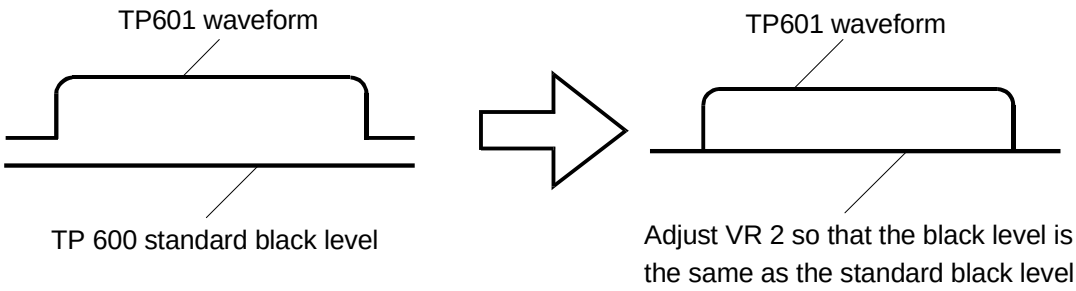
C211 model



3. Turn on the power switch while holding down the Print Start key, Stop key and Clear key on the operation panel. ----- **LT version only**
   Turn on the power switch while holding down the Print Start key, Stop key, Clear key and the Full Master Detecting switch. ----- **A4 version only**
4. Set "15" in the copy counter and set "0" in the memory/class display to turn on only the fluorescent lamp.

3.3.2 Black Level Adjustment: C212/C213

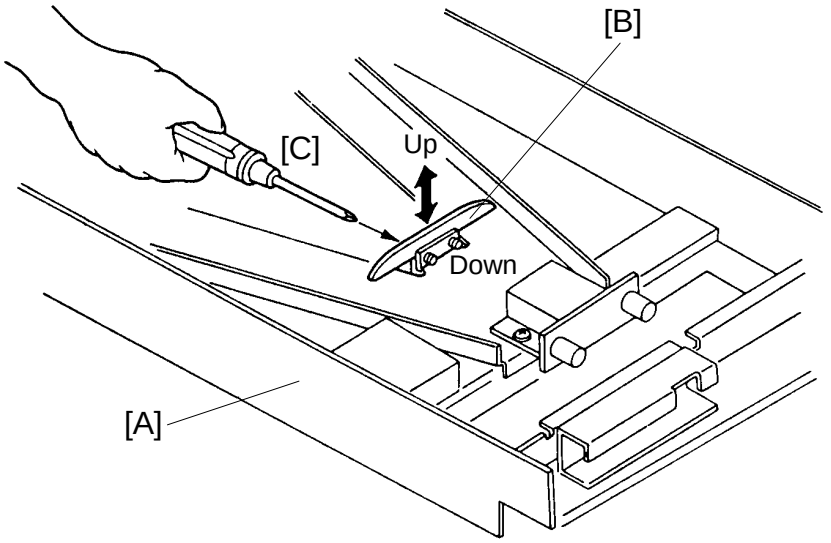




Purpose: To ensure that the black level from the CCD output conversion/amplificationboard is the same as the standard black level (1.4 V).

1. Close the scanner unit.
2. Press the Print Start key to turn on the fluorescent lamp.
3. Confirm that the black level at TP 601 is the same as the standard black level (1.4 V) at TP600 on the A/D conversion board [A].
4. If the black levels are not the same, adjust VR2 to set the black level at TP601 to the standard black level (1.4 $\pm$ 0.03 V).

3.3.3 Shading Adjustment



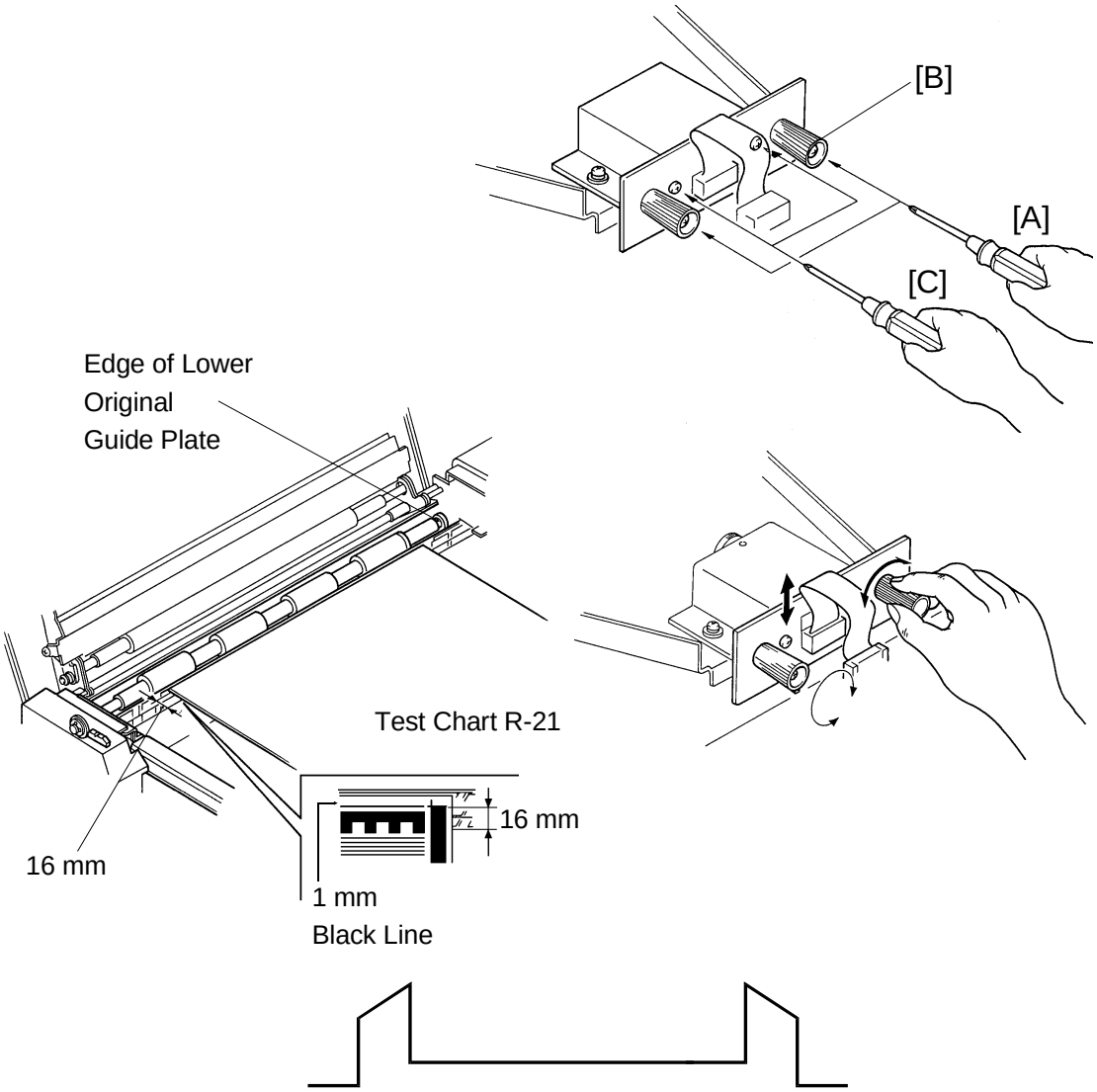
The middle of the wavefrom should be higher than the ends.

$B \geq 0.6A$

Purpose: To flatten the white level waveform. This also, corrects for distortion to the light intensity due to the output characteristics at both lamp ends and aberrations within the lens section.

1. Close the scanner unit [A].
2. Press the Print Start key to turn on the fluorescent lamp.
3. Confirm that the above white level waveform is displayed.
4. If incorrect, move the shading plate [B] position vertically (up or down), so that the waveform is similar to the one above.
5. After adjustment, retighten the mounting screws [C] of the shading plate [B].

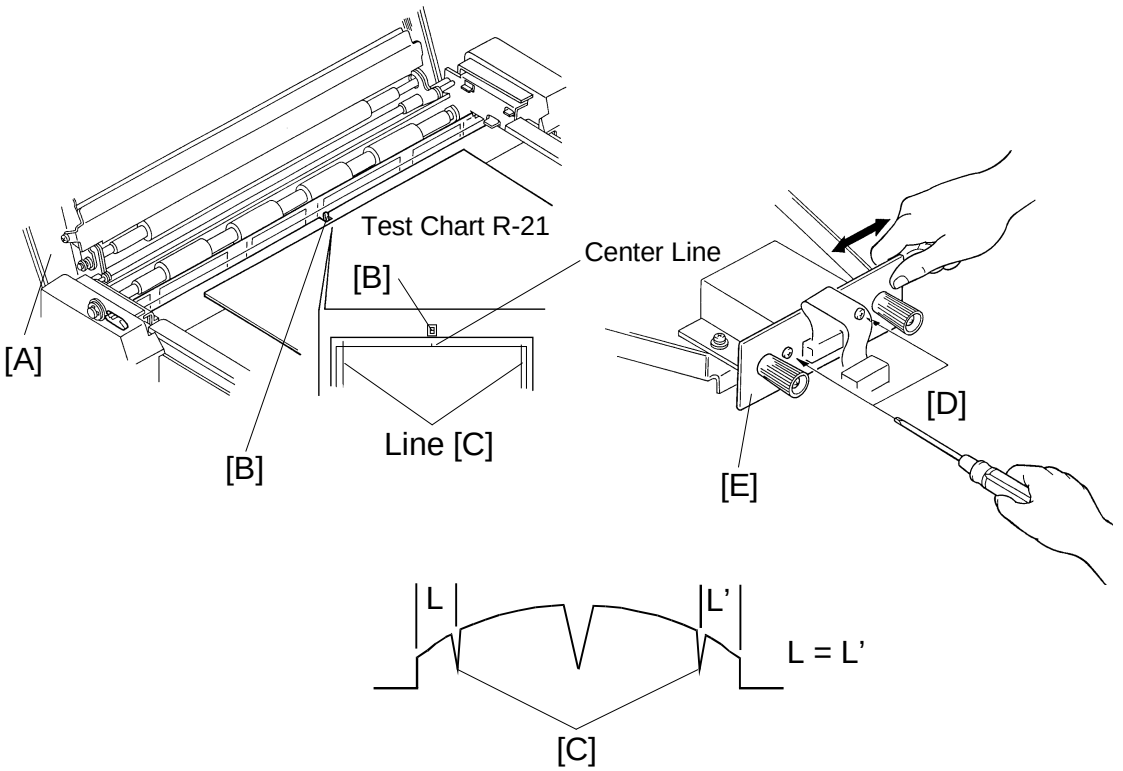
3.3.4 Scan Line Position Adjustment



Purpose: To ensure that CCD alignment is perpendicular to the original feed direction.

1. Set the test chart so that the black line is positioned 16 mm away from the edge of the lower original guide plate as shown.
2. Press the Print Start key to turn on the fluorescent lamp and confirm that the waveform is similar to the above illustration.
3. If incorrect, loosen the mounting screws [A] fixing adjusting knob [B] and the mounting screws [C] of the CCD board and adjust the CCD position by turning the adjusting knob.
4. Tighten the mounting screws [B] and [C]. Then reconfirm the waveform.

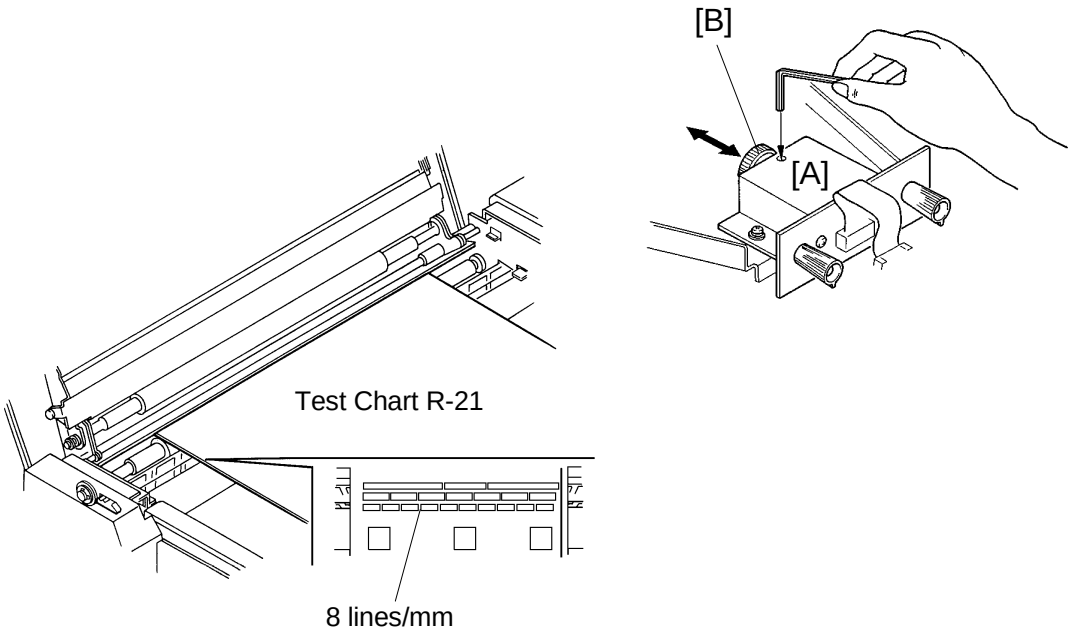
3.3.5 Reading Start Position Adjustment (In The Main Scan Direction)

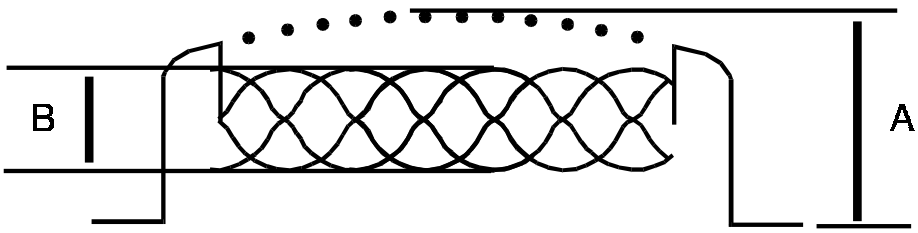


Purpose: To align the center of the original with the center of the CCD so that the center of original image is positioned in the center on the master.

1. Open the scanner unit [A].
2. Set the test chart so that the center line, located at the leading edge of the test chart, is positioned above the original leading edge sensor actuator [B].
3. Close the scanner unit [B].
4. Press the Print Start key to turn on the fluorescent lamp and feed the test chart.
5. Stop feeding the test chart when it is possible to read both lines [C], and confirm that the above waveform is displayed (The distance "L" is the same as "L'").
6. If incorrect, loosen the mounting screws [D] of the CCD board [E] and adjust the CCD horizontal position.
7. After adjustment, retighten the mounting screws.

3.3.6 Focus Adjustment (MTF Adjustment)



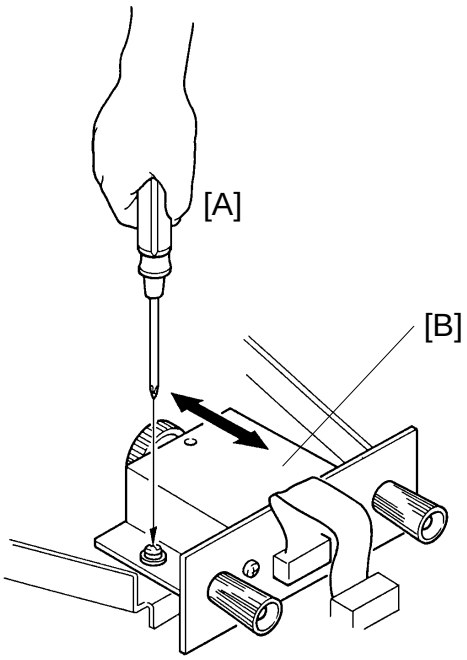


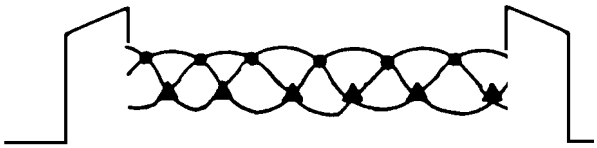
- $\frac{B}{A} \times 100 \geq 48\%$
- Amplitude "B" (difference between white and black levels) must be a maximum

Purpose: To focus the lens (focus distance between the CCD and the lens).

1. Position the test chart so that the 8 lines/mm section on the test chart can be read.
2. Press the Print Start key to turn on the fluorescent lamp.
3. Confirm that the wave form is similar to the above illustration.
4. If incorrect, loosen the allen screw [A] and adjust the lens position [B] by moving it as shown by the arrow.
5. After adjustment, retighten the allen screw.

3.3.7 Reduction Ratio Adjustment (Moire Adjustment)





Cross points must be less than 6.

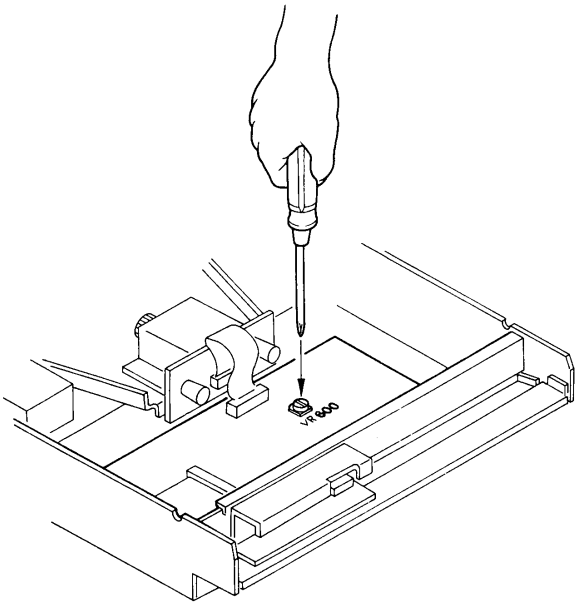
: Upper cross points ≤ 6

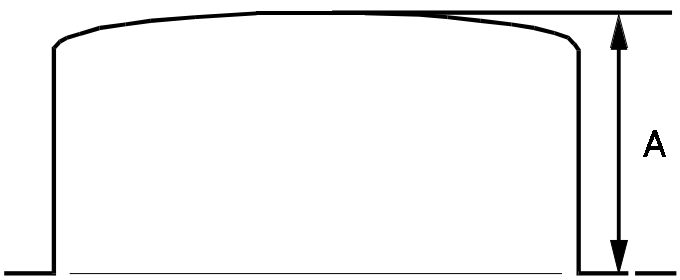
: Lower cross points ≤ 6

Purpose: To adjust the focus (to set distance between the lens and the original)

1. Position the test chart so that the area containing 8 lines/mm on the test chart can be read.
2. Press the Print Start key to turn on the fluorescent lamp.
3. At the same time, confirm that the waveform is similar to the above illustration.
4. If incorrect, loosen the mounting screws [A] and adjust the lens block [B] position as indicated by the arrows.
5. After adjustment, retighten the mounting screw [A].

3.3.8 White Level Adjustment





A: 2.0 ± 0.1V

Purpose: To set the white level so that the background of the test chart is not copied.

1. Position the test chart so that the background area (white area) of the test chart can be read.
2. Press the Print Start key to turn on the fluorescent lamp.
3. Adjust VR 600 for the C211 model (VR-1 for the C212/C213 model) on the A/D conversion PCB so that the maximum level is 2.0 ± 0.1 V.

3.4 IMAGE MAGNIFICATION ADJUSTMENT (IN THE SUB-SCAN DIRECTION)

3.4.1 C226

Adjust the magnification ratio in the sub-scan direction using SP mode No. 30 so that the printed image length is 100% ± 0.5% compared with the original image length. If the optional ADF is installed, use SP mode No. 36 for the ADF mode, also.

Platen Mode Sub-scan Magnification Adjustment	SP mode No. 30
ADF Mode Sub-scan Magnification Adjustment	SP mode No. 36

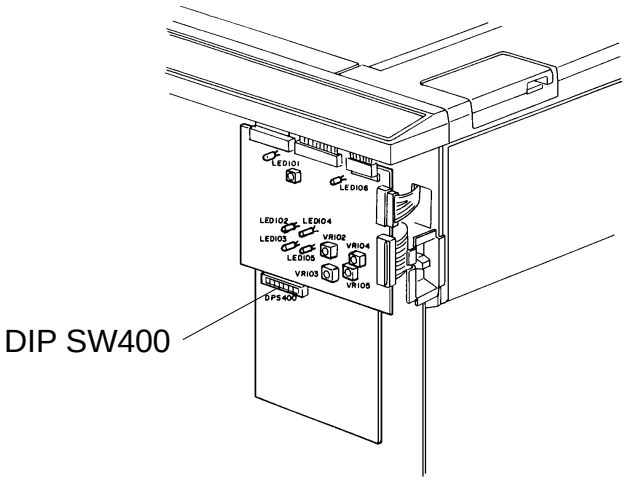
3.4.2 C215/C216/C224

Adjust the magnification ratio in the sub-scan direction using DIP103-1, 2, 3 on the main board, so that the printed image length is 100% ± 0.5% compared with the original image length.

–DIP SW/Correction Ratio–

DPS 103			$\frac{\text{Original Length}}{\text{Print Image Length}} \times 100$
1	2	3	
OFF	OFF	OFF	100%
OFF	ON	OFF	99.25%
OFF	OFF	ON	98.75%
OFF	ON	ON	98.25%
ON	OFF	OFF	100%
ON	ON	OFF	100.75%
ON	OFF	ON	101.25%
ON	ON	ON	101.75%

3.4.3 C211/C212/C213



Purpose: To ensure that the image magnification lengthwise is 100% ± 0.5% when using the full size mode.

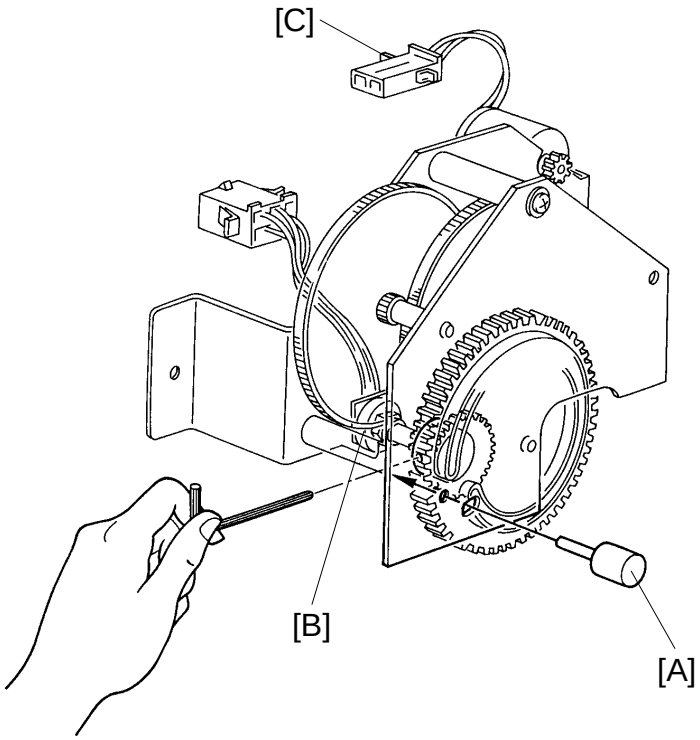
1. Press the Full Size (100%) key.
2. Make prints of the test chart.
3. Make sure that the image length is 100% ± 0.5% by comparing the prints with the test chart.
4. If the prints are not within specification, open the front cover of the machine and adjust the magnification ratio using DIP SW400 on the image processing board.

<DIP SW/Correction Ratio>

	DIP 400-1	DIP 400-2	DIP 400-3	$\frac{\text{Zoom}}{\text{Ratio}} = \frac{\text{(Length of Test Chart)}}{\text{(Length of Print Image)}} \times 100$
Red:	OFF	OFF	OFF	100%
	OFF	ON	OFF	99.25%
	OFF	OFF	ON	98.77%
	OFF	ON	ON	98.25%
Enl:	ON	OFF	OFF	100%
	ON	ON	OFF	100.75%
	ON	OFF	ON	101.23%
	ON	ON	ON	101.75%

4. IMAGE SHIFTING SECTION

4.1 ENCODER MOUNTING POSITION ADJUSTMENT

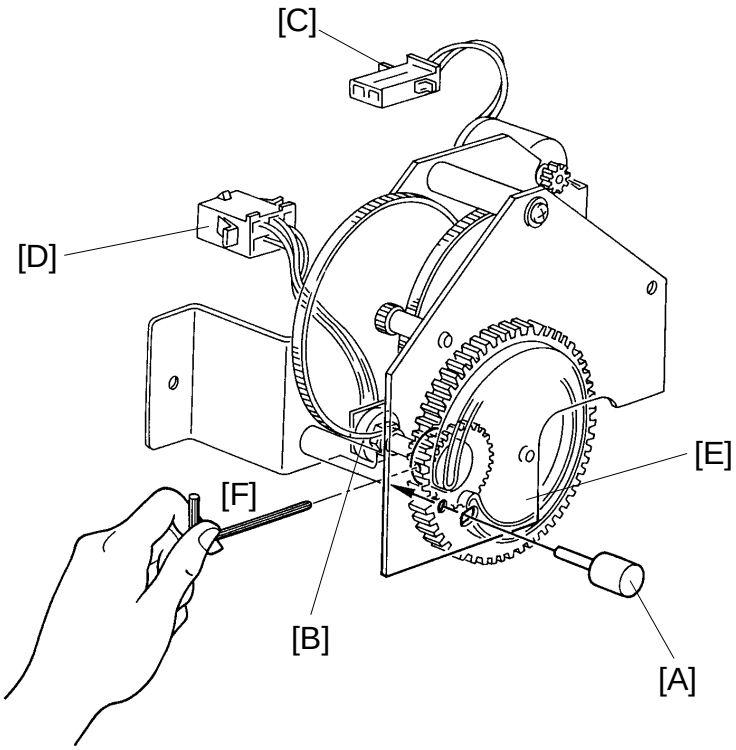


Purpose: To ensure that the image is positioned in the middle when the Image Shifting key is set at the center "0".

1. Remove the rear cover of the machine.
2. Turn on the power switch and press the "–" Image Shifting key to shift the position to the maximum backward position ("–2" position). After that, press "+" Image Shifting key to shift the position to the center (when the "0" position LED lights).
3. Make sure that it is possible to insert the image shifting position gauge [A] to confirm gear alignment and, therefore, the image shifting position.
4. If incorrect, adjust the gear alignment as follows after removing the encoder [B].

⚠ CAUTION

Adjust the encoder position after removing the connector [C] of the image shift motor.



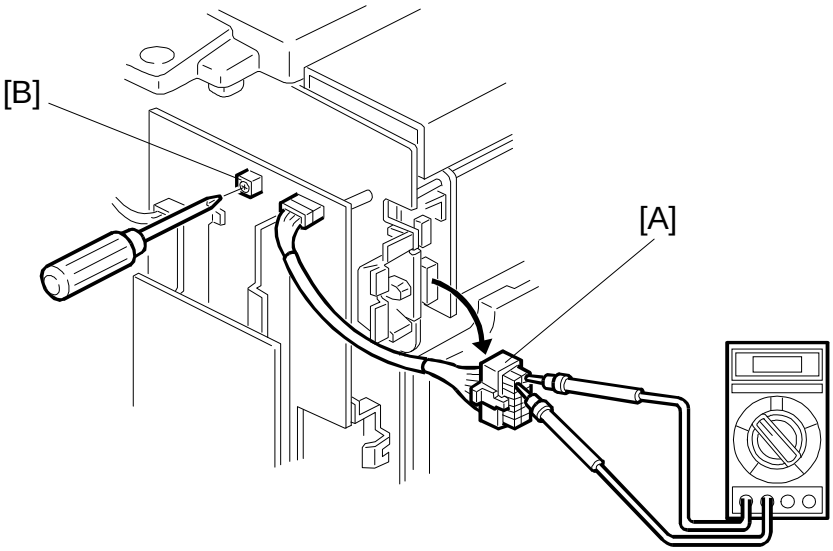
5. Disconnect the connector [D] of the encoder.
6. Insert the gauge [A] into the hole of the gear [E].
7. Turn on the LED "–2" of the Image shift indicator on the operation panel. Then gradually turn the shaft of the encoder [B] in the "0" position direction and stop it as soon as the "0" position LED lights.
8. In the above condition, set the encoder and tighten the allen screw [F] to mount the shaft of the encoder with the gear [E]. Then remove the gauge [A] and connect the connector [C] of the image shift motor.
9. After adjustment, make prints to confirm the image position.

5. MASTER FEED SECTION

5.1 THERMAL HEAD VOLTAGE ADJUSTMENT: C226

Purpose: To maintain master making quality and extend the lifetime of the thermal head.

NOTE: This adjustment is always required when the thermal head or power supply board is replaced.



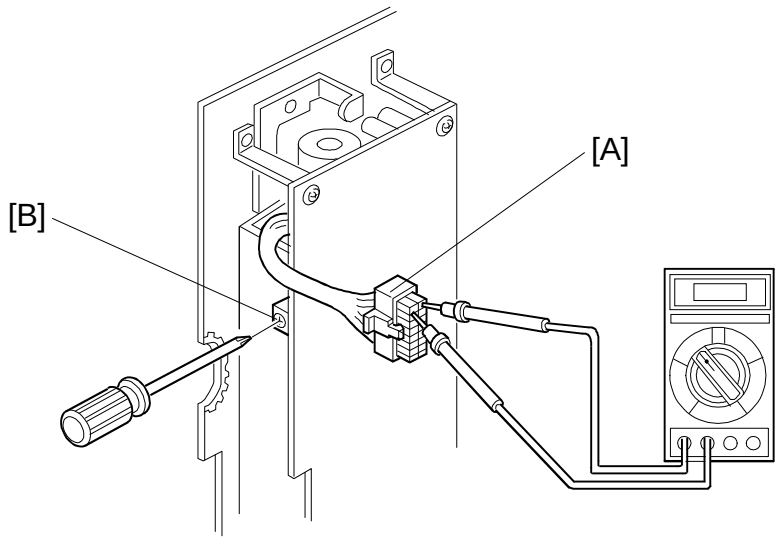
1. Remove the rear cover and the right cover of the machine.
2. Disconnect the connector [A] from the plotter unit.
3. Check the voltage noted on the decal located on the thermal head. (The voltage is different for each thermal head.)
4. Access "I/O Check Mode".
   - SP mode No. 131, then Output Check mode 41.
5. Press the Start key to apply the thermal head voltage.
6. Confirm that the voltage between one of the VHD terminals and one of the ground terminals of CN503 is at the level specified on the decal (Within + 0 V, – 0.1 V).
7. If it is not, adjust VR1 [B] on the power supply board.

   NOTE: Press the Stop key to stop applying the thermal head voltage. Do not keep the thermal head voltage on for a long period.

5.2 THERMAL HEAD VOLTAGE ADJUSTMENT: C224

Purpose: To maintain master making quality and extend the lifetime of the thermal head.

NOTE: This adjustment is always required when the thermal head or power supply board is replaced.



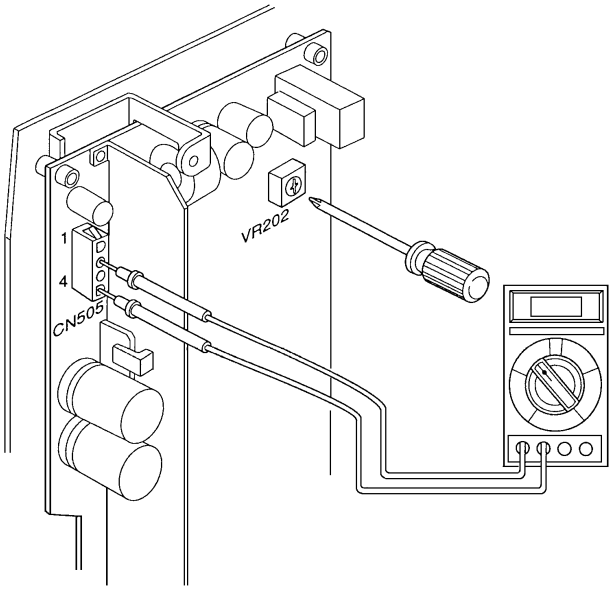
1. Remove the rear cover and the right cover and right cover of the machine.
2. Disconnect the connector [A] from the plotter unit.
3. Check the voltage noted on the decal, located on the thermal head. (The voltage varies with each thermal head.)
4. Access "I/O Check Mode".
   - Turn on the main switch while holding the Print Start, Sop and Clear keys
5. Input 35 in the copy counter using the number keys, and set "0" in the Memory/Class display by pressing the Memory/Class key.
6. Press the Print Start key to apply the thermal head voltage.
7. Confirm that the voltage between one of the VHD terminals and one of the ground terminals of CN503 is at the level specified on the decal (Within + 0 V, – 0.1 V).
8. If it is not, adjust VR3 on the power supply board.

   NOTE: Press the Stop key to stop applying the thermal head voltage. Do not keep the thermal head voltage on for a long period.

5.3 THERMAL HEAD VOLTAGE ADJUSTMENT: C215/C216

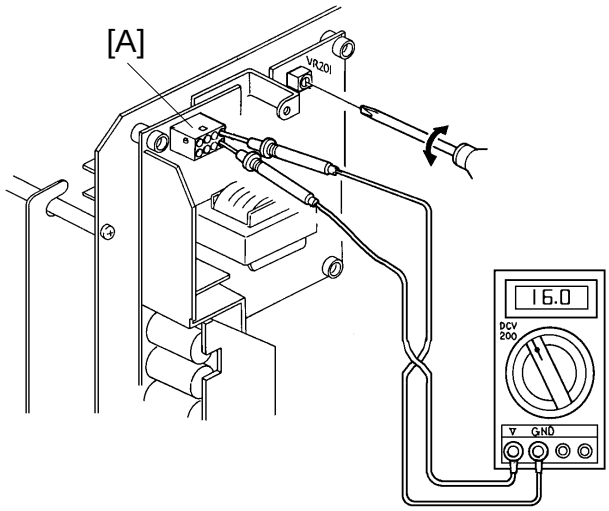
Purpose: To maintain master making quality and extend the lifetime of the thermal head.

NOTE: This adjustment is always required when the thermal head or power supply board is replaced.



1. Remove the rear cover of the machine.
2. Check the voltage noted on the decal, located on the thermal head. (The voltage varies according to each thermal head.)
3. Access "I/O Check Mode".
   - Turn on the main switch while holding the Print Start, Stop and Clear keys. ----- LT version
   - Turn on the main switch while holding the Print Start, Stop, Clear keys and the full master detection switch. ----- A4 version
4. Input 35 in the copy counter using the number keys, and set "0" in the Memory/Class display by pressing the Memory/Class key.
5. Press the Print Start key to apply the thermal head voltage.
6. While holding down the Print Start key , confirm that the voltage between pins 2(VHD) and 4(GMD) on CN505 is at the level specified on the decal (Within + 0 V, – 0.1 V).
7. If it is not, adjust VR202 on the power supply board.

5.4 THERMAL HEAD VOLTAGE ADJUSTMENT: C211/C212/ C213

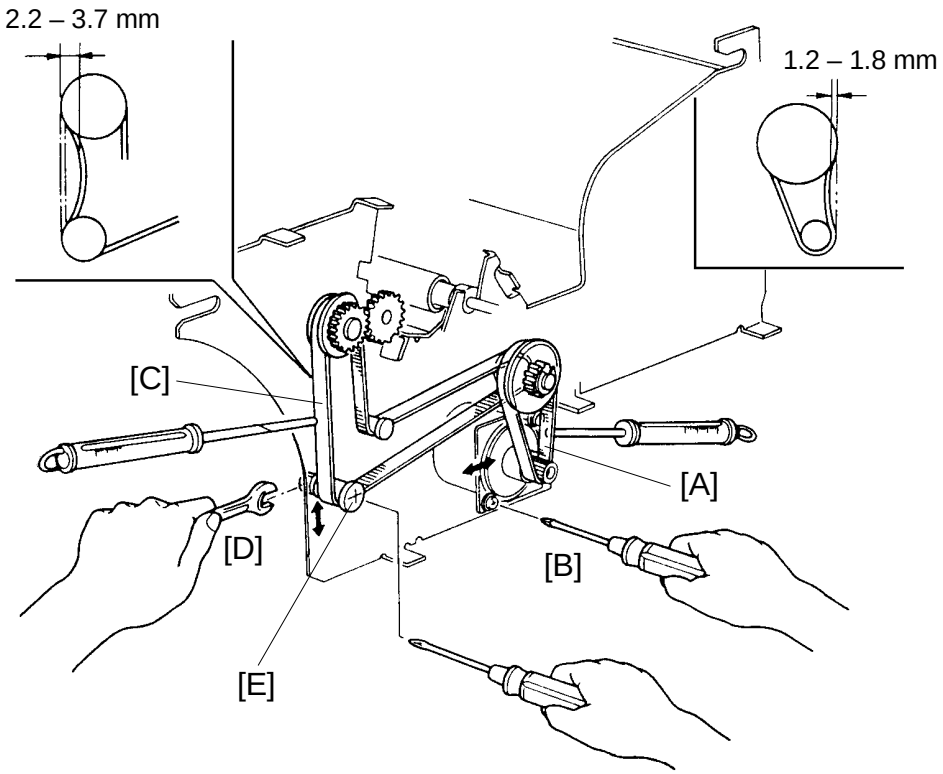


Purpose: To maintain master making quality and extend the lifetime of the thermal head.

NOTE: This adjustment is always required when the thermal head or power supply PCB is replaced.

1. Remove the rear cover of the machine.
2. Check the voltage noted on the decal, located on the thermal head. (The voltage varies according to the individual thermal head.)
3. Disconnect CN-504 [A] of the power supply PCB.
4. Place the master between the platen roller and the thermal head to protect the thermal head.
5. Access "I/O Check Mode".
   - Enter "0" in the memory display and "35" in the copy counter ----- C212/C213 model only
   - Enter "0" in the memory display and "34" in the copy counter ----- C211 model only
6. Press the Print Start key to apply the thermal head voltage.
7. While holding down the Print Start key, Confirm that the voltage between pins 3 and 6 on CN504 is at the level specified on the decal (Within +0V, –0.1V).
8. If it is not, adjust VR201 on the power supply board.

5.5 BELT TENSION ADJUSTMENT



Purpose: To ensure that correct master feed motor rotation is transmitted to each roller.

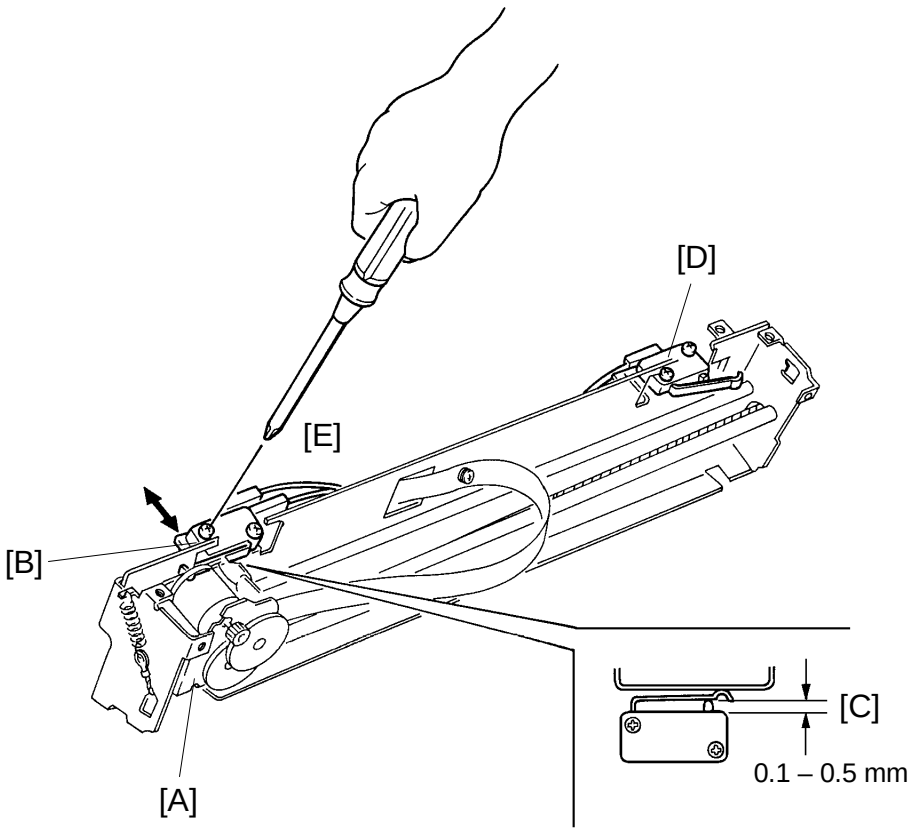
Platen Roller Drive Belt:

1. Turn off the main switch.
2. Remove the master feed unit from the machine.
3. Using a tension gauge, apply a 110-gram load to the center of the belt [A]. Make sure that the belt deflects 1.2 to 1.8 mm.
4. If incorrect, adjust the belt tension by raising or lowering the master feed motor [B].

Feed Roller Drive Belt:

5. Using a tension gauge, apply a 110-gram load to the center of the belt [C]. Make sure that the belt deflects 2.2 to 3.7 mm.
6. If incorrect, loosen the nut [D] and adjust the belt tension by raising or lowering the tensioner [E].

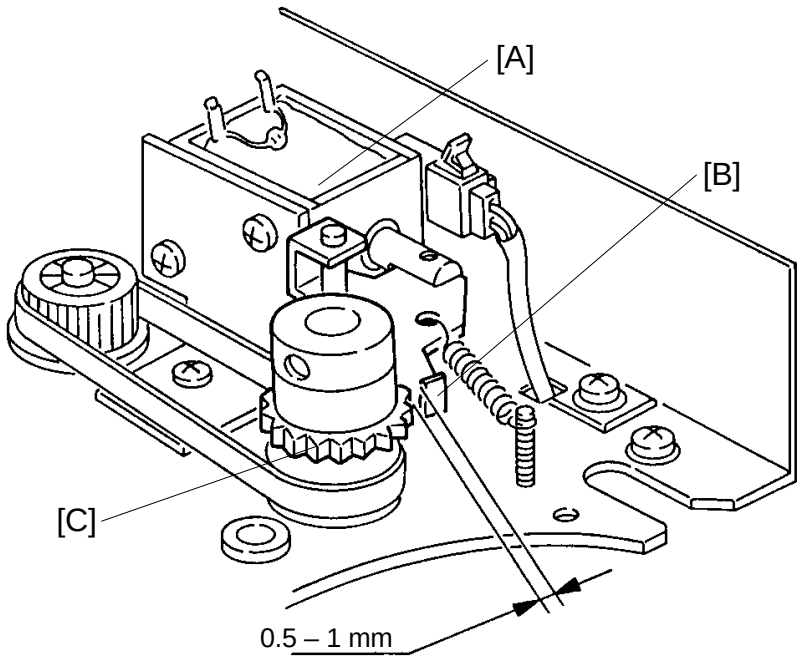
5.6 RIGHT AND LEFT CUTTER SWITCH ADJUSTMENT: C211/ C212/C213/C215/C216 ONLY



Purpose: To ensure that the cutter slider stops properly.

1. Turn off the main switch.
2. Remove the cutter unit (2 screws).
2. Remove the cutter unit cover (4 screws).
4. After moving the cutter slider [A] fully to the left, make sure that the left cutter switch [B] is turned on and that the switch stroke [C] is 0.1 to 0.5 mm. Also, make sure that the right cutter switch [D] is actuated in the same fashion.
5. If incorrect, loosen the mounting screws [E] and adjust the switch position.

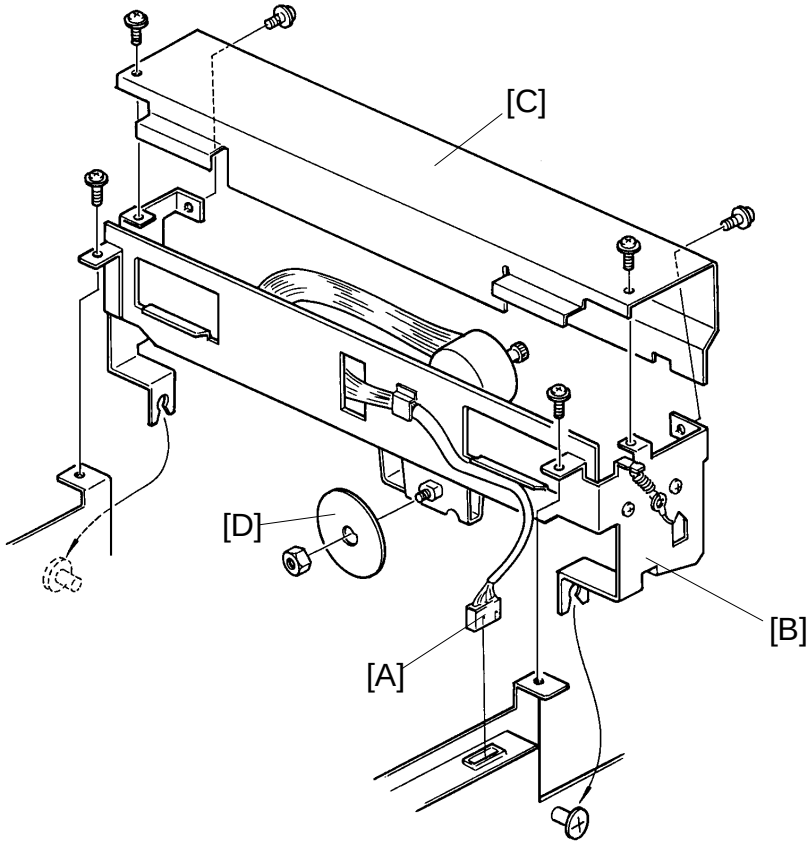
5.7 REVERSE ROLLER SOLENOID ADJUSTMENT: C211/C212/ C213/C215/C216 ONLY



Purpose: To ensure proper operation of the reverse roller clutch.

1. Turn off the main switch.
2. Remove the master feed unit.
3. Adjust the solenoid [A] position so that there is 0.5 to 1 mm clearance between the stopper [B] and the gear [C] when the solenoid is energized.

5.8 CUTTER REPLACEMENT: C211/C212/C213/C215/C216 ONLY



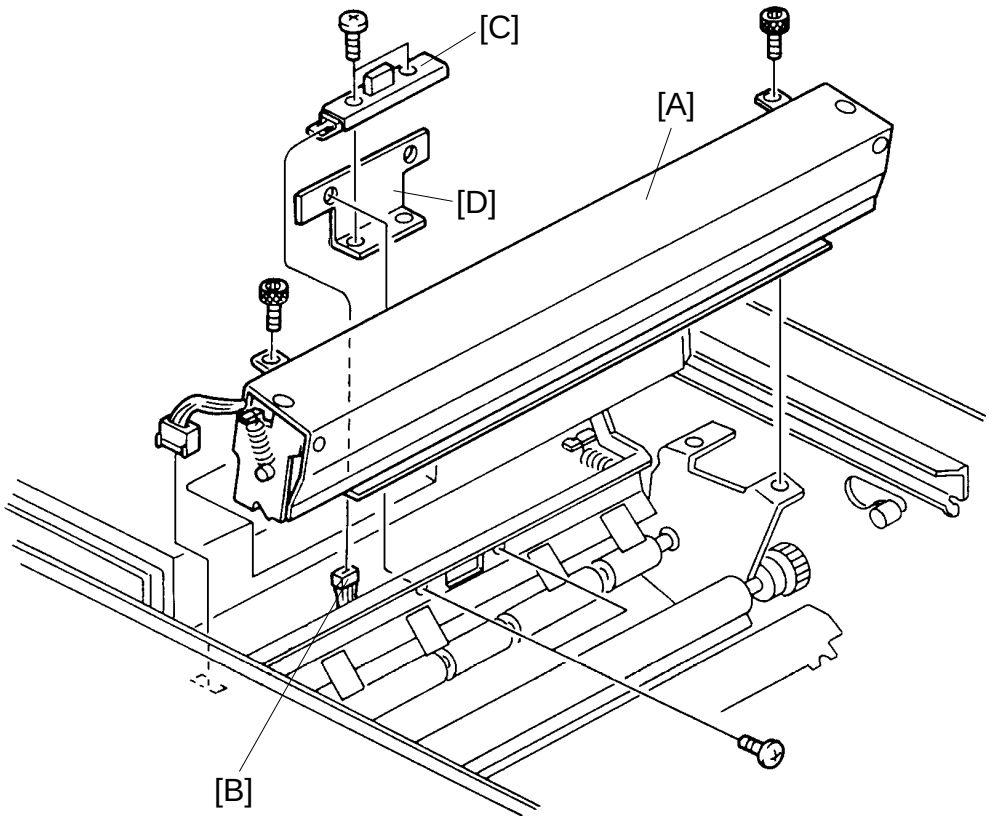
1. Turn off the main switch.
2. Slide the scanner unit to the left.
3. Disconnect the 6P connector [A].
4. Remove the cutter unit [B] (2 screws).
5. Remove the cutter unit cover [C] (4 screws).
6. Remove the lower cutter cover (2 screws).
7. Remove the cutter [D] (1 nut).

NOTE: When reassembling, move the cutter motor to the home position (operation side end) before the lower cutter cover is installed.

⚠ CAUTION

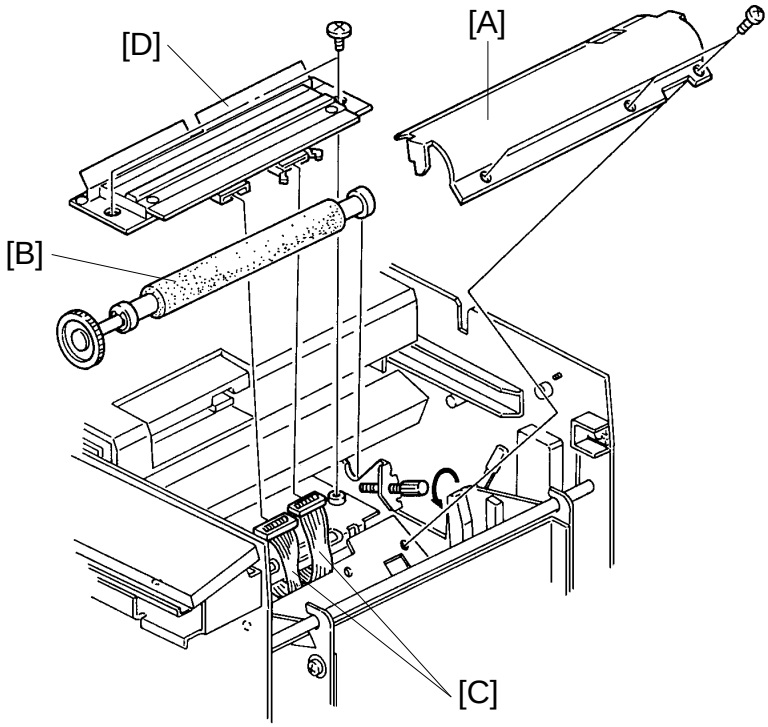
The edge of the cutter is very sharp.

5.9 MASTER BUCKLE SENSOR REPLACEMENT



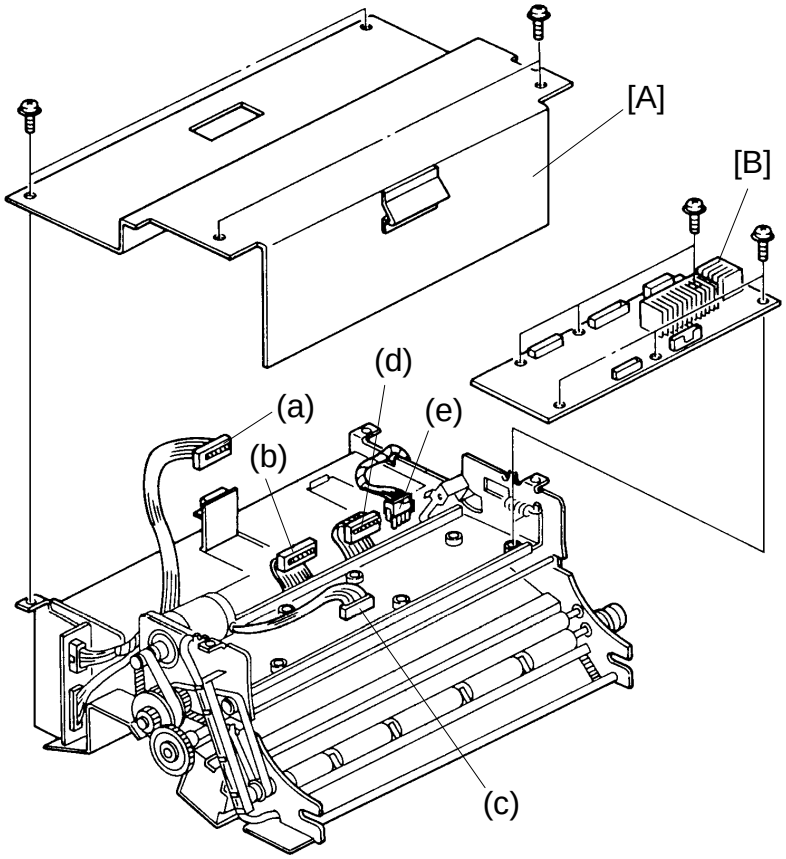
1. Turn off the main switch.
2. Slide the scanner unit to the left.
3. Remove the master roll.
4. Remove the cutter unit [A] (2 screws).
5. Disconnect the buckle sensor connector [B].
6. Remove the buckle sensor [C] together with the bracket [D] (2 screws).
7. Remove the buckle sensor from the bracket (2 screws).

5.10 THERMAL HEAD REPLACEMENT



1. Turn off the main switch.
2. Slide the scanner unit to the left.
3. Remove the master roll.
4. Remove the thermal head cover [A] (3 screws).
5. Remove the platen roller [B] (2 knob screws).
6. Disconnect the thermal head connectors [C].
7. Remove the thermal head [D] (2 screws).
8. After installing the thermal head, adjust the thermal head voltage.

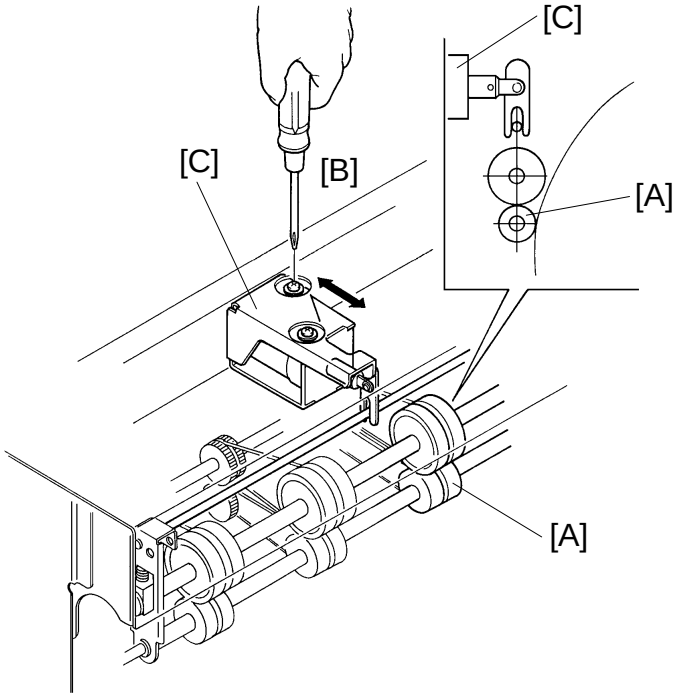
5.11 THERMAL HEAD DRIVE BOARD REPLACEMENT



1. Turn off the main switch.
2. Remove the master feed unit from the machine.
3. Remove the bottom plate [A] of the master feed unit.
4. Disconnect the 5 connectors (a to e).
5. Remove the thermal head drive board [B] (6 screws).

6. MASTER EJECT SECTION

6.1 MASTER EJECT SOLENOID ADJUSTMENT

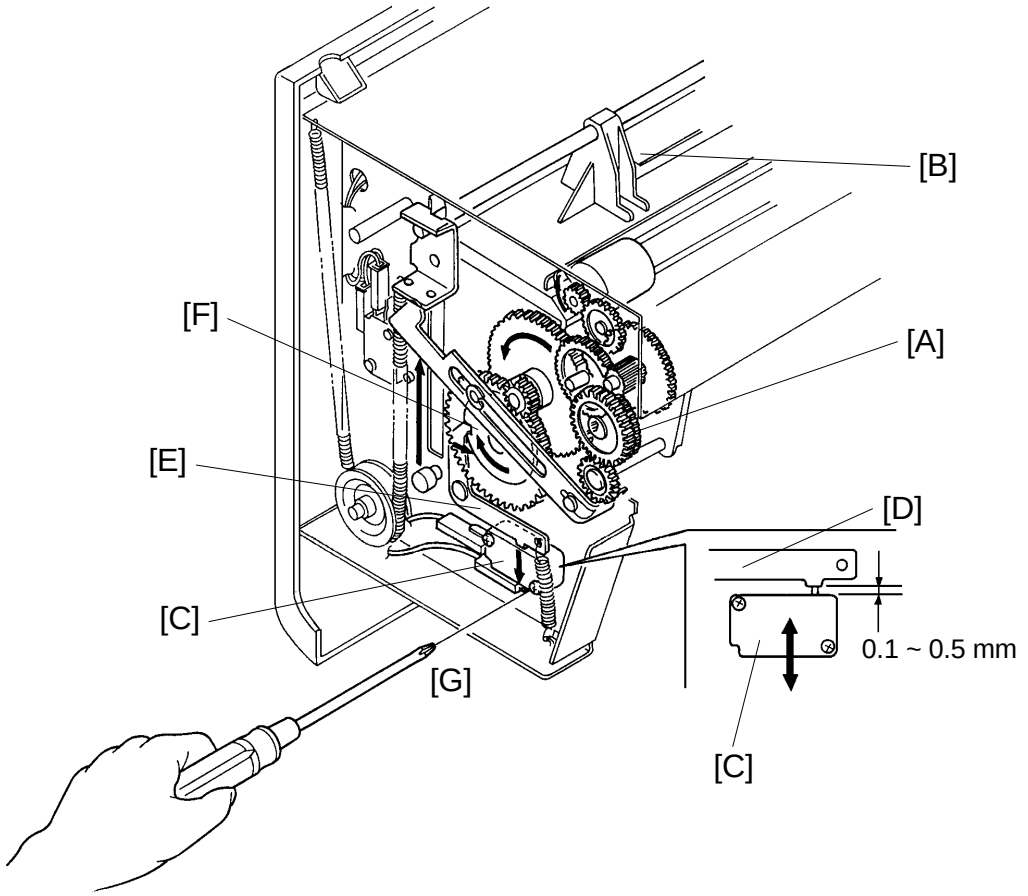


Purpose: To ensure that master is ejected.

1. Open the master eject unit and remove the upper cover of the master eject unit (4 screws).
2. Access "I/O Check Mode".
   - Enter "0" in the memory display and "7" in the copy counter. Use Output Check mode (SP131) No. 17 for the C226 model.
3. Press the Print Start key to turn on the master eject solenoid.
4. Confirm that the lower first eject rollers [A] are touched to the drum surface and also confirm that they are separated from the drum when the master eject solenoid turns off.
5. If it is out of adjustment, loosen the screws [B] and adjust the mounting position of the master eject solenoid [C].
6. After adjustment, retighten the screws [B].

NOTE: To easily confirm whether the lower roller touches to the drum surface. Wrap the drum with the blank paper. Check the paper for roller marks.

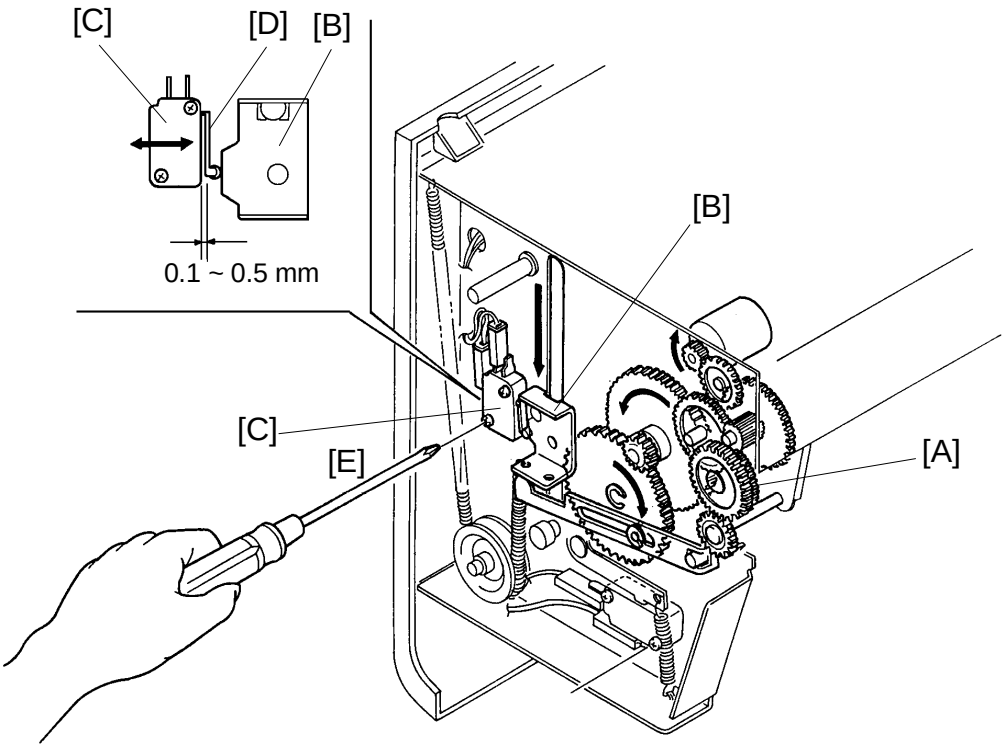
6.2 PRESSURE PLATE POSITION SWITCH ADJUSTMENT: C211/C212/C213/C215/C216 ONLY



Purpose: To ensure that the pressure plate stops at the proper position.

1. Open the master eject unit and remove the front cover of the master eject unit (3 screws).
2. Turn the gear [A] and position the pressure plate [B] at the maximum height.
3. Confirm that the distance between the switch [C] and lever [D] is 0.1 to 0.5 mm when the lever edge [E] is positioned in the ditch on the cam [F] bottom.
   Also, confirm that the switch turns off when the lever edge [E] is not positioned in the ditch on the cam [F] bottom.
4. If it is out of adjustment, loosen the screws [G] and adjust the mounting position of the pressure plate position switch.

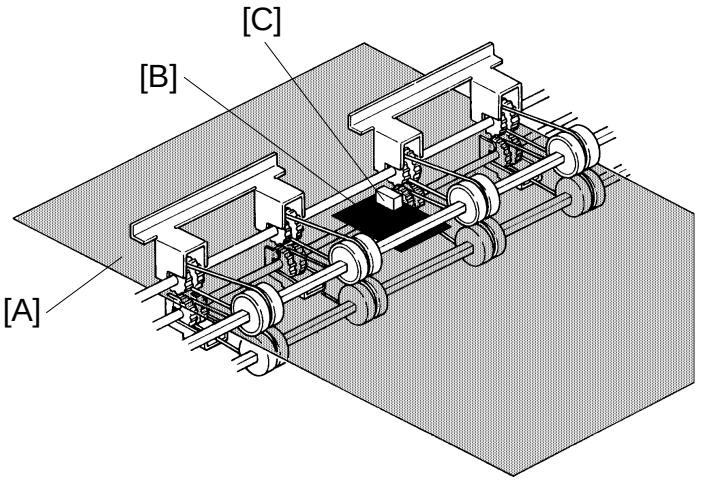
6.3 FULL MASTER SWITCH ADJUSTMENT: C211/C212/C213/ C215/C216 ONLY



Purpose: To ensure that the full master detecting switch turns on when the master eject box is filled to capacity with ejected masters.

1. Open the master eject unit and remove the front cover of the master eject unit (3 screws).
2. Turn the gear [A] and position the pressure plate at its lowest position. Then, turn the gear further so that the arm [B] turns on the full master detecting switch [C].
3. Confirm that the distance between the full master detecting switch and the switch actuator [D] is 0.1 to 0.5 mm when the full master detecting switch turns on.
4. If it is out of adjustment, loosen the screws [E] and adjust the position of the full master detecting switch.
5. Tighten the mounting screws [E].

6.4 MASTER EJECT SENSOR ADJUSTMENT: C212/C213/ C224/C226 ONLY

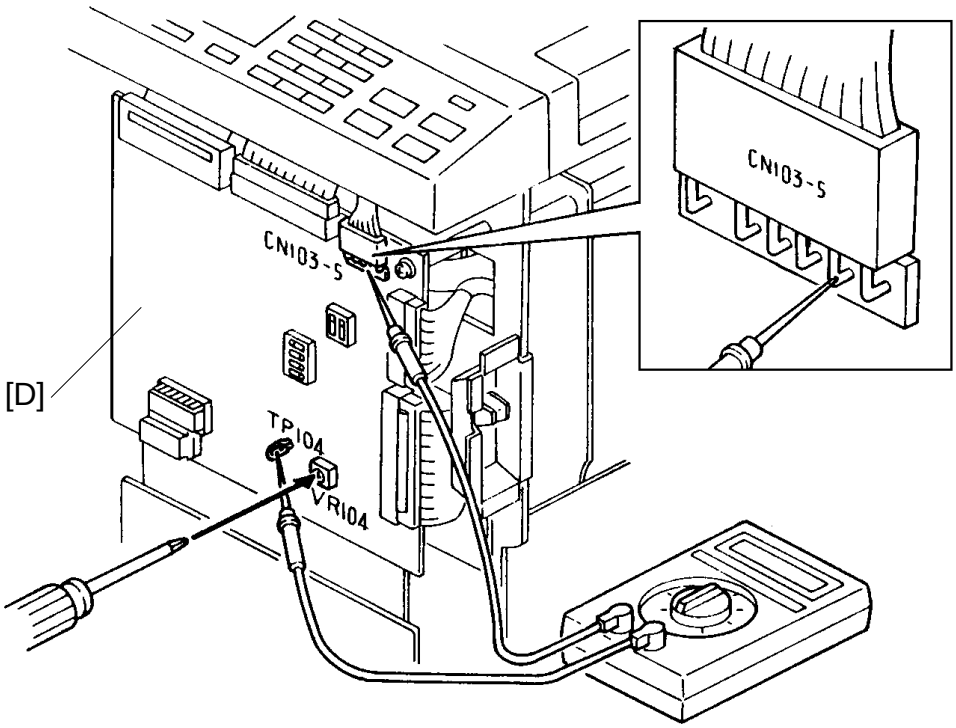


Purpose: To ensure that the sensor detects the ejected master.

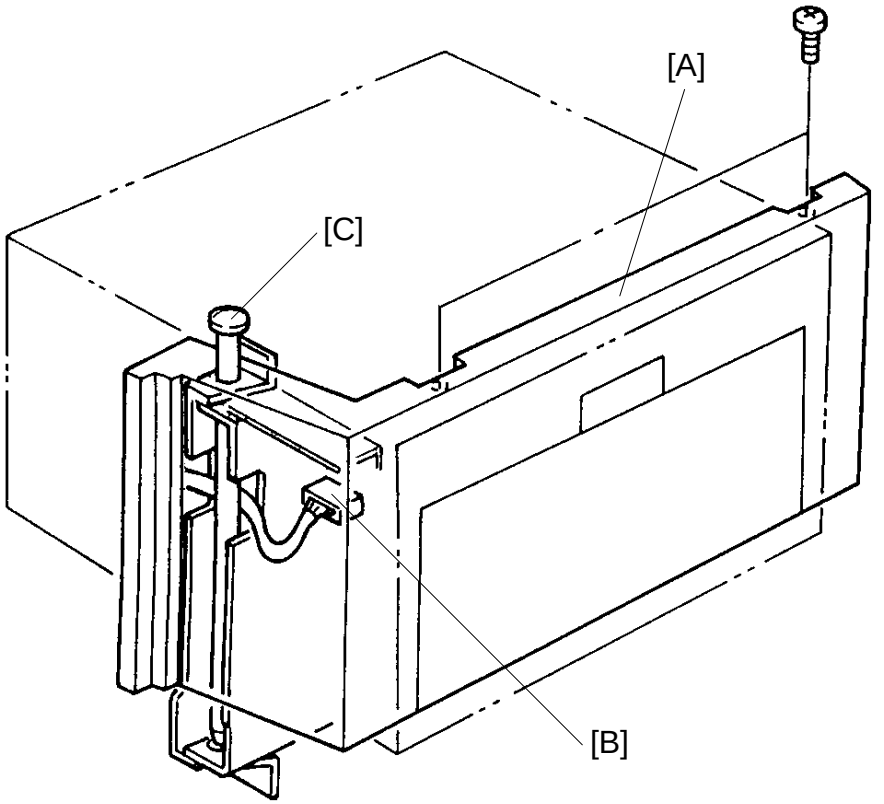
1. Make a master that has a solid black area. The solid black area should be approx. A7 size (74 x 105 mm/3" x 4")
   a. Set the original with the solid black area on the original table.
   b. Press the Master Making key to make copies.
   c. Stop printing when the image density of the solid black area on the copies stabilizes.
   d. Remove the master from the drum.

   NOTE: To prevent the thermal head from overheating, do not use a large solid black original.
2. Insert the above master [A] between the upper and the lower rollers with the master film side up and position the solid lack area under the sensor.
3. Confirm that the voltage between TP104 (MDLV) and the GND line (CN103-5) on the main control board [D] (see next page) is correct (4.0 V ± 0.5 V).]
   - SP137 can be used to see the voltage for the C226 model.
4. If the voltage is outside the acceptable range, adjust it by turning VR104 on the main control board.

   NOTE: Light reflected from an unused master has the highest intensity. Light reflected from that part of a used solid black master where the film layer has been burned away has the lowest intensity. Therefore, use a used solid black master for this adjustment so that the sensor can detect the ejected master under the worst conditions.

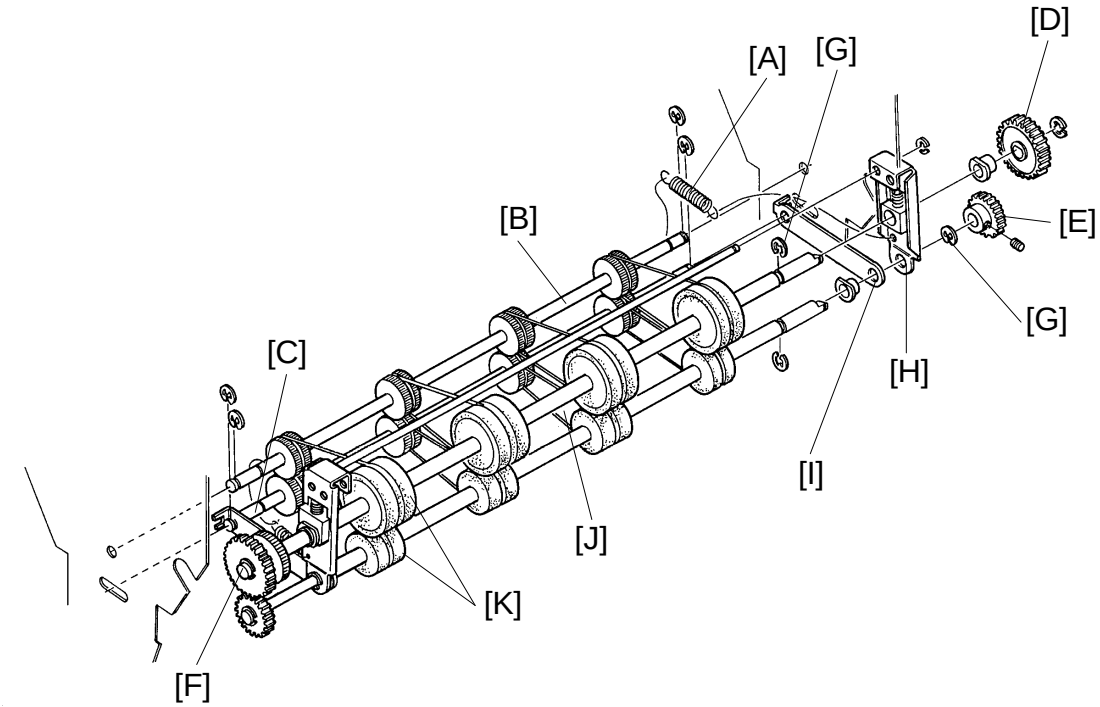

CN103-5
CN103-5
[D]
TP104
VR104

6.5 MASTER EJECT UNIT REPLACEMENT



1. Turn off the main switch.
2. Remove the master eject unit cover [A] (2 screws).
3. Disconnect the connector [B].
4. Pull out the shaft [C].
5. Carefully remove the master eject unit.

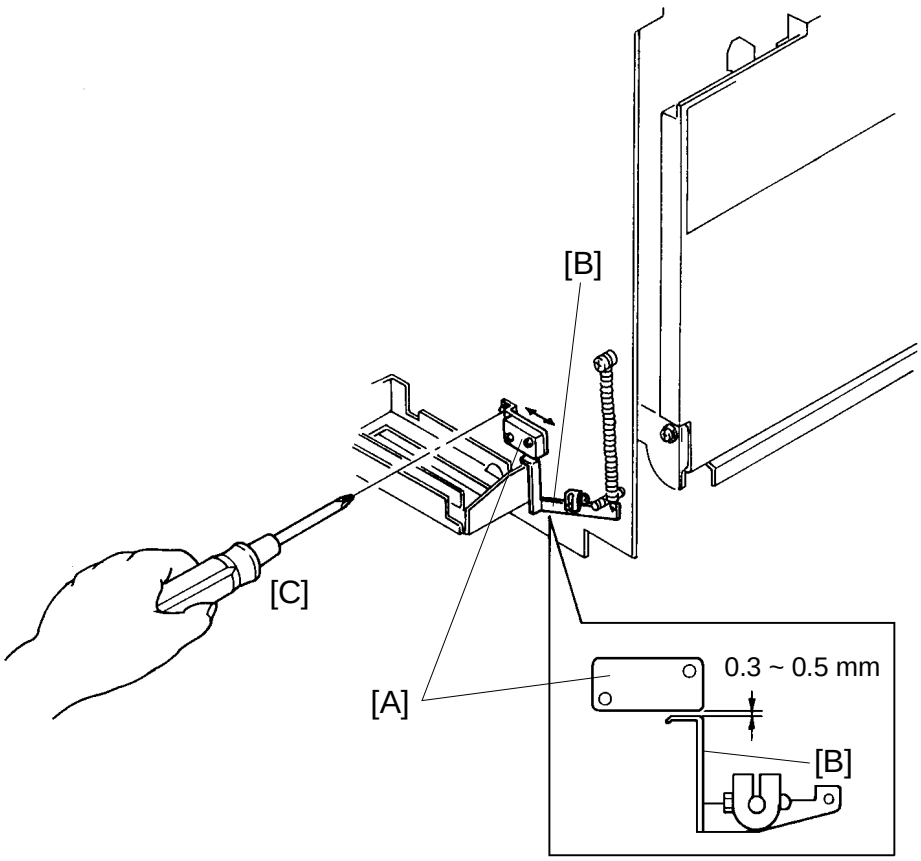
6.6 MASTER EJECT BELT/ROLLER REPLACEMENT



1. Remove the master eject unit.
2. Remove the 2 springs [A] on both sides.
3. Remove the upper shaft [B] (2 E-rings).
4. Remove the lower shaft [C] (2 E-rings).
5. Remove the gear [D] (1 E-ring).
6. Remove the gear [E] (1 Allen Screw).
7. Remove the gear [F] (1 E-ring).
8. Remove the E-rings [G] to pull out both upper (30ϕ) and lower rollers (20ϕ) as a set.
9. Remove the Angle [H].
10. Remove the Plate [I].
11. Remove the Belts [J].
12. Remove the Rubber Rollers (30ϕ, 20ϕ) [K].

7. PAPER FEED SECTION

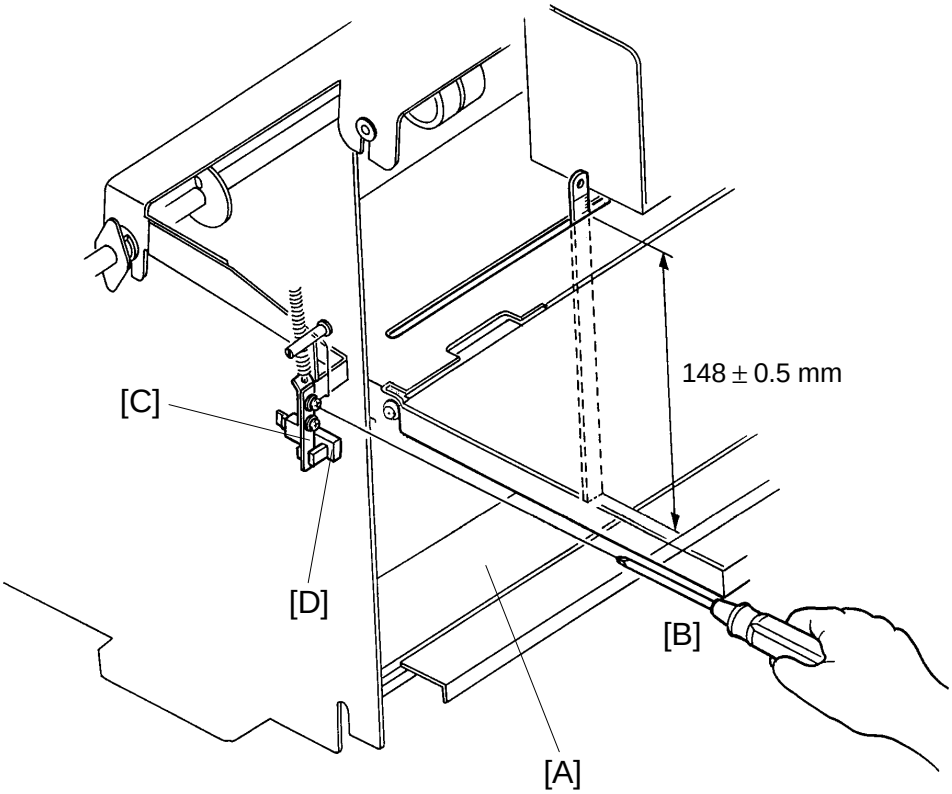
7.1 PAPER TABLE SAFETY SWITCH ADJUSTMENT



Purpose: To ensure that the paper table safety switch turns on to prevent the paper table from going up when the paper table is closed.

1. Make sure that the safety switch [A] turns off when the paper table is opened and that the safety switch turns on when the paper table is closed. Also, make sure that the distance between the actuator [B] and the safety switch [A] is 0.3 mm to 0.5 mm when the switch turns on.
2. If incorrect, loosen the screw [C] and adjust the switch bracket position.
3. After adjustment, repeat step 1 again.
4. Also, make sure that the safety switch does not turn on when 1,000 sheets of standard weight paper are placed on the paper table.

7.2 PAPER TABLE HEIGHT ADJUSTMENT

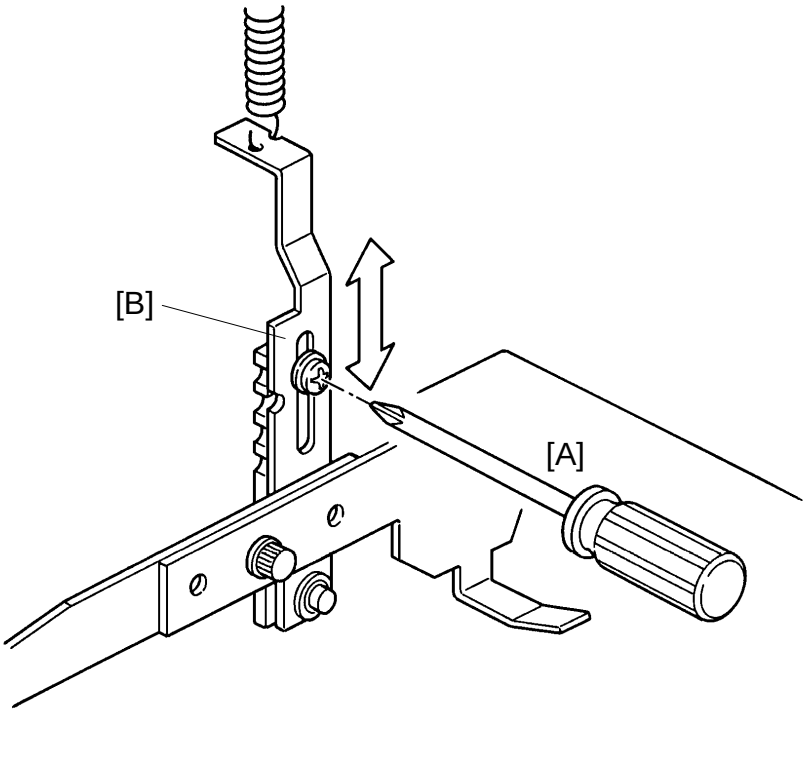


Purpose: To ensure smooth paper feed.

1. Set the paper feed pressure adjusting lever to the upper position.
2. Remove the front cover of the machine.
3. Access "I/O Check Mode".
   - Enter "0" in the memory display and "4" in the copy counter. Use Output Check mode (SP131) No. 19 for the C226 model.
4. Press the Print Start key to raise the paper table.
5. After the paper table stops, insert a scale into the slot at the end of the paper table. Make sure that the distance between the lower stay [A] and the upper face of the table is 147.5 to 148.5 mm.
6. If not, loosen the screw [B] and adjust the position of the actuator [C].
7. After adjustment, repeat step 5 again by lowering and raising the paper table several times.

   NOTE: When mounting the actuator, make sure that the actuator does not contact the paper table height sensor [D].

7.3 PAPER FEED ROLLER PRESSURE ADJUSTMENT



Purpose: To ensure that the paper feed roller exerts sufficient pressure for smooth printing paper feed (weight range 50 g/m^2 to 215 g/m^2).

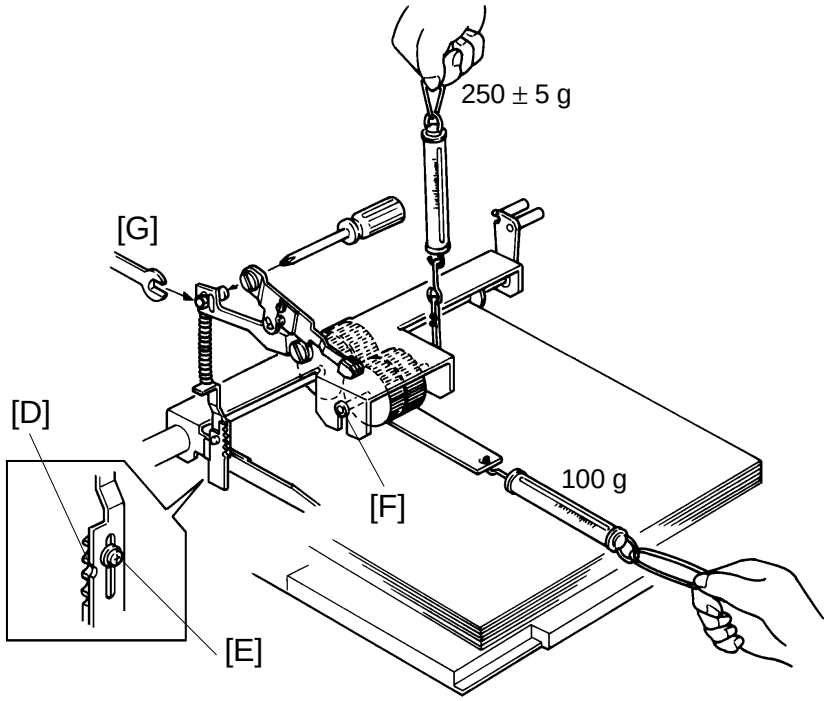
<Step 1>

1. Loosen the screw [A] securing the lower adjusting plate [B].

   NOTE: When loosing the screw, hold the lower adjusting plate in the original position for fine adjustment.

2. Adjust the paper feed roller pressure by moving the lower adjusting plate [B] up/down.

   Up : Increase the pressure
   Down : Reduce the pressure

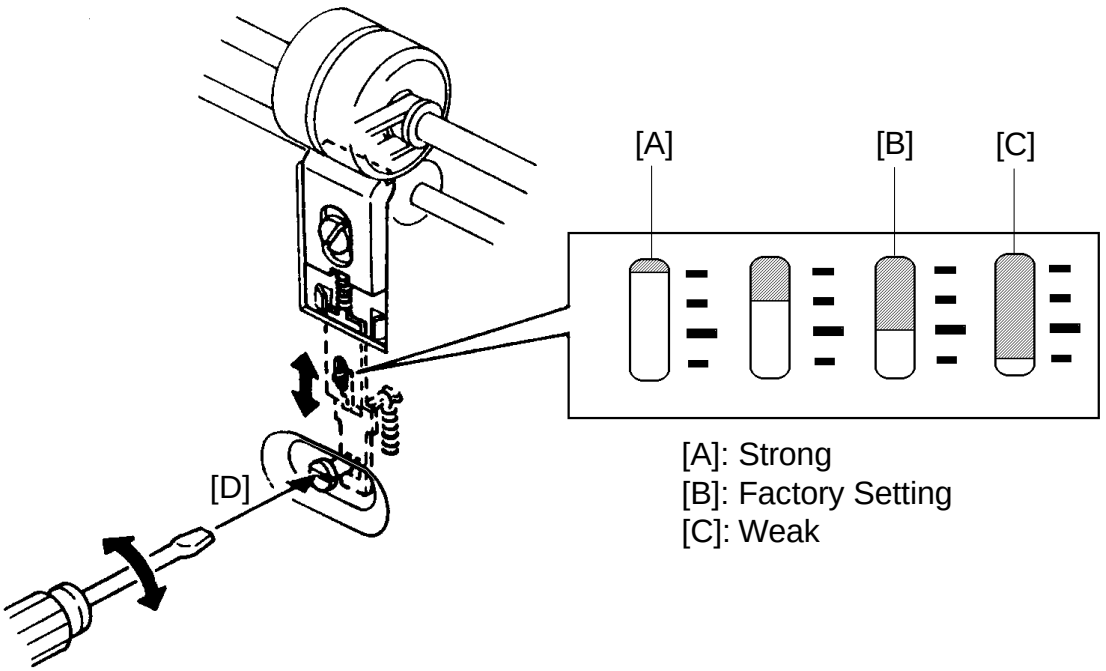


<Step 2>

This procedure should only be used when the proper pressure cannot be achieved in step 1.

1. Stack about 100 sheets of 65 g/m^2 paper on the paper table. Lift up the paper table until it stops automatically.
2. Set the paper feed roller pressure adjusting lever to the upper position.
3. Remove the front cover, the main board, the image processing board.
4. Remove the master feed unit.
5. Align the lower adjusting plate notch with the center notch of the link [D] and tighten the screw [E].
6. Hook a tension gauge (500-gram range) to the paper feed roller shaft [F] and insert a test sheet between the paper feed roller and the sheets of paper. Then hook a tension gauge (100-gram range) to the test sheet and apply a 100-gram load. In the above condition, gradually pull up the tension gauge hooked to the shaft and make sure that the test sheet can be pulled out when the tension gauge shows 250 ± 5 grams.
7. If not, adjust the pressure by moving the mounting position of the shaft [G].

7.4 SEPARATION PLATE PRESSURE ADJUSTMENT: C212/ C213 ONLY



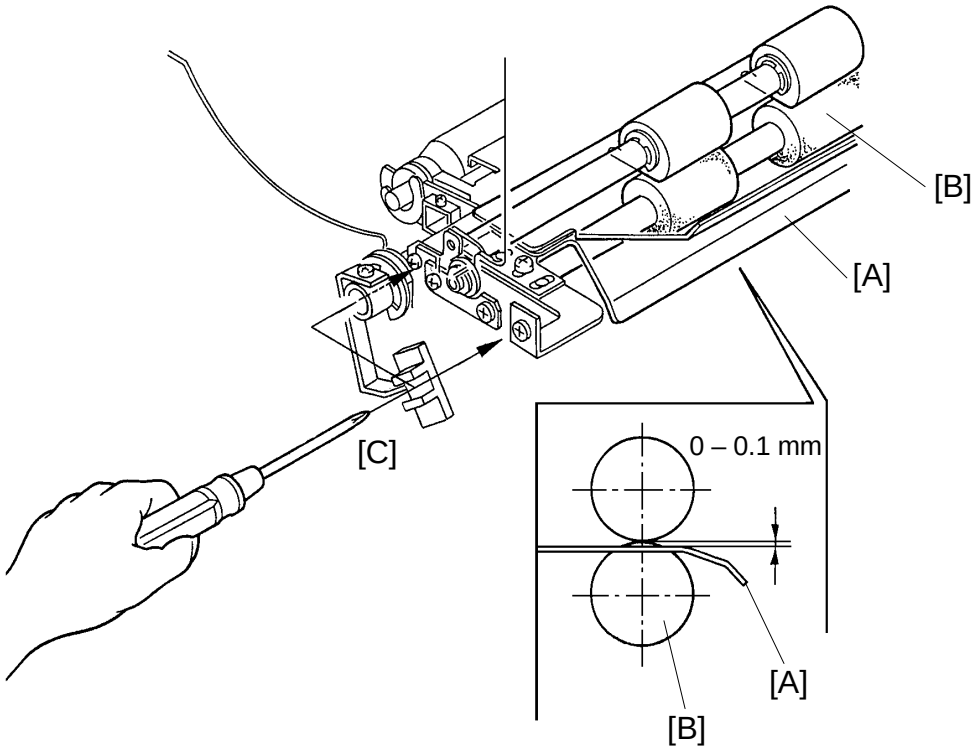
Purpose: To adjust the separation plate pressure for the type of paper being used by the customer

1. Adjust the separation plate pressure by turning the adjusting screw [D].

   NOTE: Position the minus groove on the screw head vertically ⨁ or horizontally ⊜. Otherwise, vibration may cause the screw to turn.

2. After adjustment, make copies to confirm that the paper feeds smoothly without jamming, folding, or wrinkling Use all the types of paper that the customer uses.

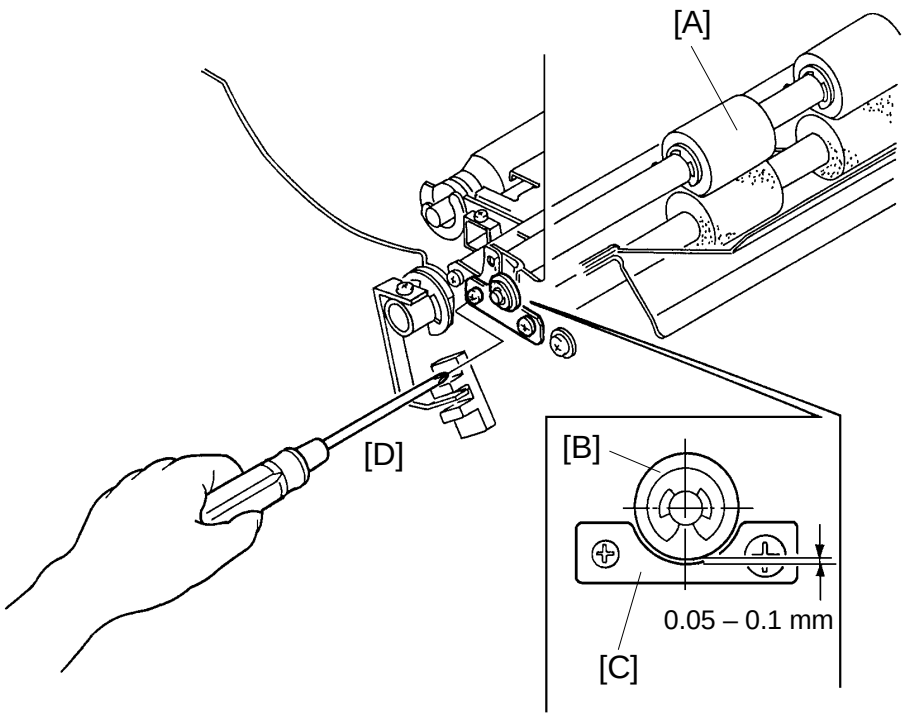
7.5 LOWER GUIDE PLATE ADJUSTMENT



Purpose: To ensure a smooth paper feed excluding paper jams, folds, or wrinkles.

1. Make sure that the distance between the lower guide plate [A] and the lower second feed roller [B] is 0 to 0.1 mm as shown.
2. If incorrect, remove both front and rear covers and loosen the screws [C]on both sides. Then, adjust the distance by lowering and raising the lower guide plate.
3. After adjustment, retighten the screws [C].

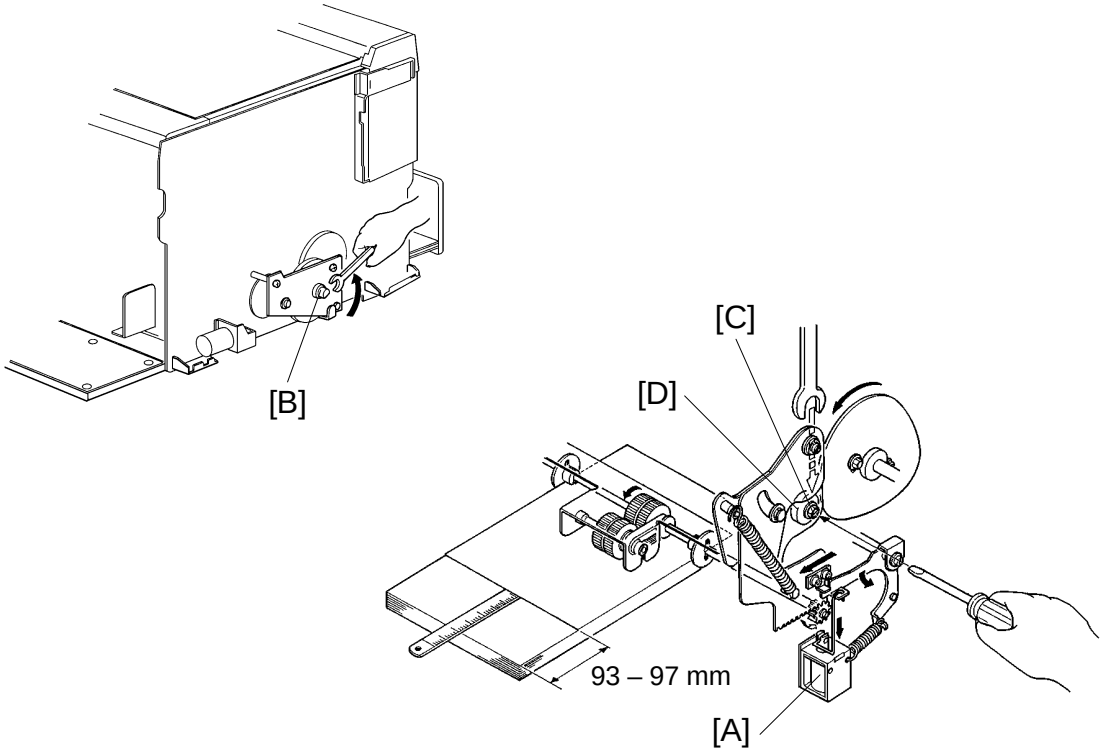
7.6 UPPER SECOND FEED ROLLER ADJUSTING



Purpose: To ensure that paper is fed between the drum and the pressure roller without skewing.

1. Remove both front and rear covers.
2. Move the second feed roller sector gear fully clockwise, so that the upper second feed roller [A] contacts the lower second feed roller.
3. Make sure that the clearance between the bushing [B] and the bushing supporter [C] is 0.05 to 0.1 mm as shown.
4. If incorrect, loosen the screw [D] and adjust the clearance by moving the bushing supporter.
5. After adjustment, make sure that the feed length of the second feed roller is correct. (The feed length varies with the position of the bushing supporter.)

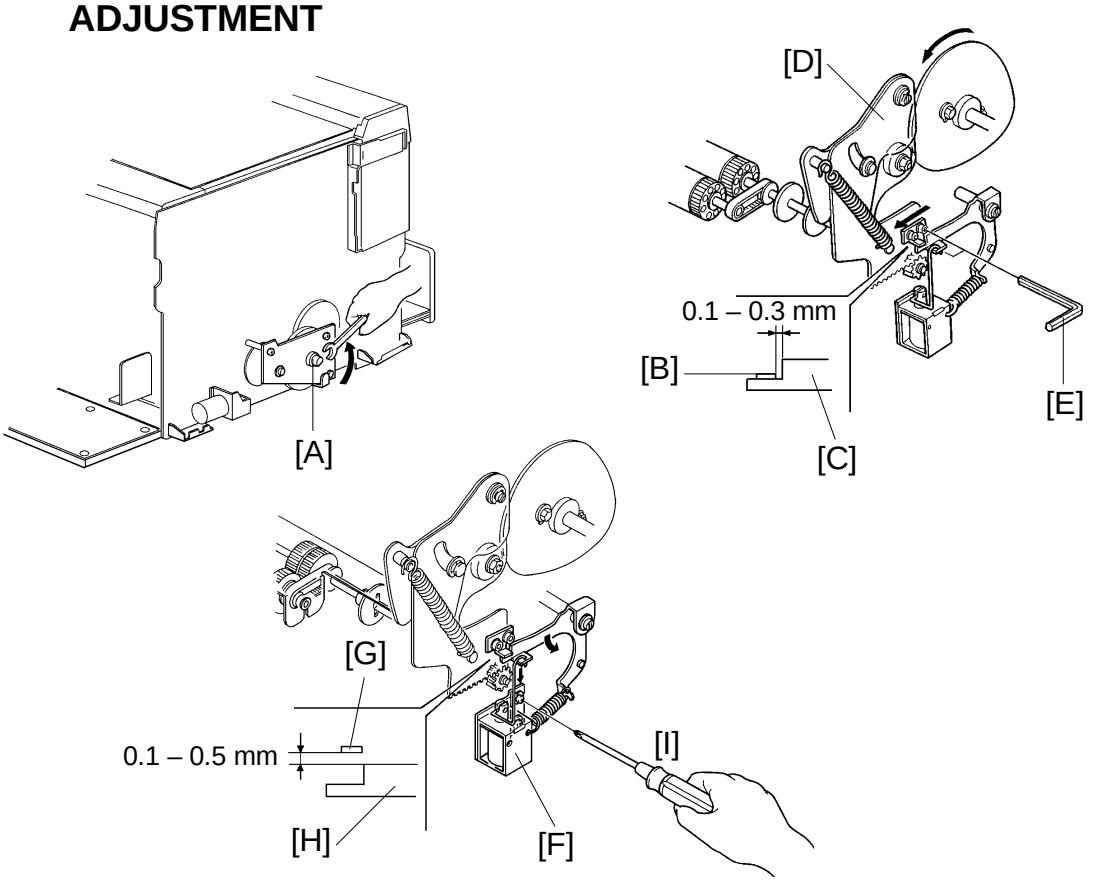
7.7 PAPER FEED ROLLER FEED-LENGTH ADJUSTMENT



Purpose: To ensure paper feed to the second paper feed roller.

1. Stack about 100 sheets of 65 g/m^2 paper on the paper table.
2. Set the paper feed roller pressure adjusting lever in the upper position.
3. Remove both front and rear covers.
4. Access "I/O Check Mode".
   - Enter "0" in the memory display and "4" in the copy counter. Use Output Check mode (SP131) No. 19 for the C226 model.
5. Press the Print Start key to raise the paper table to the correct position.
6. Turn on the paper feed solenoid [A] manually. Then, turn the rollers counterclockwise by rotating the shaft [B] with a spanner (10 mm).
7. Measure the length of paper fed from the time the paper feed roller starts rotating until it stops rotating. This feed-length should be 93 to 97 mm.
8. If the feed-length is incorrect, adjust the feed-length by loosening the hexagon nut [C] mounted on the sector gear. Then, shift the bearing [D] up or down.
9. After adjustment, repeat steps 5 and 6 again.

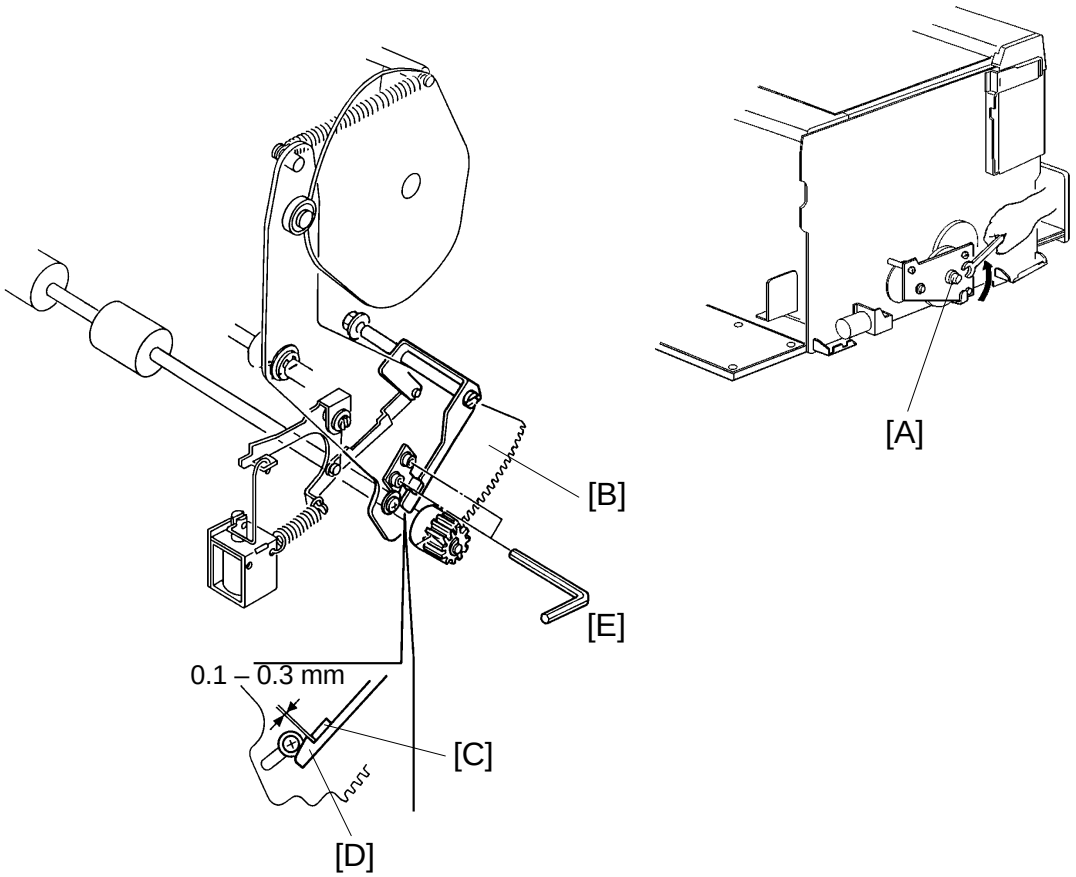
7.8 PAPER FEED SECTOR GEAR STOPPER CLEARANCE ADJUSTMENT



Purpose: To ensure that the paper feed roller starts rotating when the paper feed solenoid turns on and stops rotating when the paper feed solenoid turns off.

1. Remove the rear cover.
2. With a spanner (10 mm), gradually turn the shaft [A] counterclockwise.
3. Make sure that the clearance between the sector pin [B] and the sector stopper [C] is 0.1 to 0.3 mm after turning the sector gear [D] fully clockwise.
4. If the clearance is incorrect, loosen the Allen screws [E] and adjust the clearance by shifting the sector pin [B].
5. Manually depress the plunger of the paper feed solenoid [F], and make sure that the clearance between the sector pin [G] and the sector stopper [H] is 0.1 to 0.5 mm.
6. If the clearance is incorrect, loosen the screws [I] and adjust it by shifting the paper feed solenoid bracket up or down.

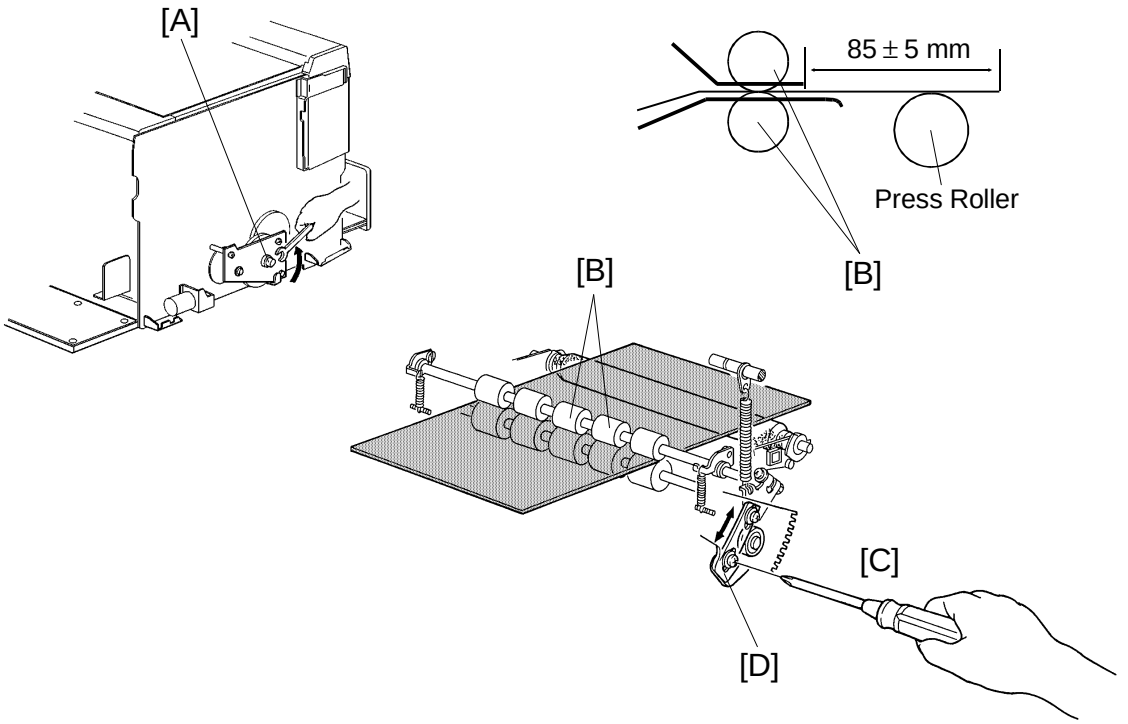
7.9 SECOND FEED ROLLER SECTOR STOPPER CLEARANCE ADJUSTMENT



Purpose: To ensure that the second feed roller starts rotating when the paper feed solenoid turns on and stops rotating when the paper feed solenoid turns off.

1. Remove the rear cover of the machine.
2. Gradually turn the drum rotating shaft [A] counterclockwise with a spanner (10 mm).
3. After turning the sector gear [B] fully counterclockwise, make sure that the clearance between the sector pin [C] and the sector stopper [D] is 0.1 to 0.3 mm.
4. If the clearance is incorrect, loosen the Allen screws [E] and adjust the clearance between the sector pin and the sector stopper.

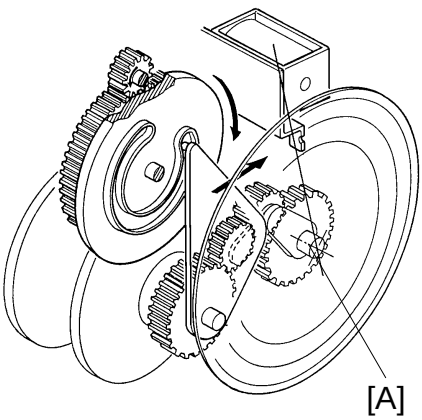
7.10 SECOND FEED ROLLER FEED LENGTH ADJUSTMENT

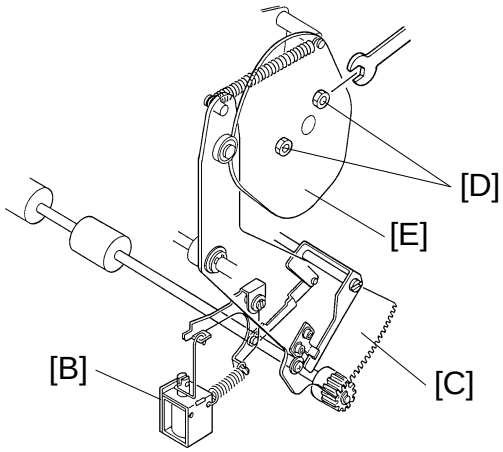


Purpose: To ensure paper feed between the drum and the pressure roller.

1. Remove the drum unit and the rear cover from the machine.
2. Stack about 100 sheets of 65 g/m^2 paper on the paper table.
3. Access "I/O Check Mode".
   - Enter "0" in the memory display and "4" in the copy counter. Use Output Check mode (SP131) No. 19 for the C226 model.
4. Press the Print Start key to raise the paper table to the correct position.
5. Turn on the paper feed solenoid and gradually turn the drum rotation shaft to feed paper by rotating the drum rotation shaft [A] with a spanner (10 mm).
6. Measure the paper feed length from the time the second feed roller [B] starts rotating until it stops rotating. This feed length should be 85 ± 5 mm.
7. If it is not, loosen the screws [C] and adjust the feed length by shifting the second feed roller cam [D] up or down.
8. Check adjustment by repeating steps 5 and 6.
9. After adjustment, retighten the screws [C].

7.11 SECOND FEED ROLLER FEED TIMING ADJUSTMENT

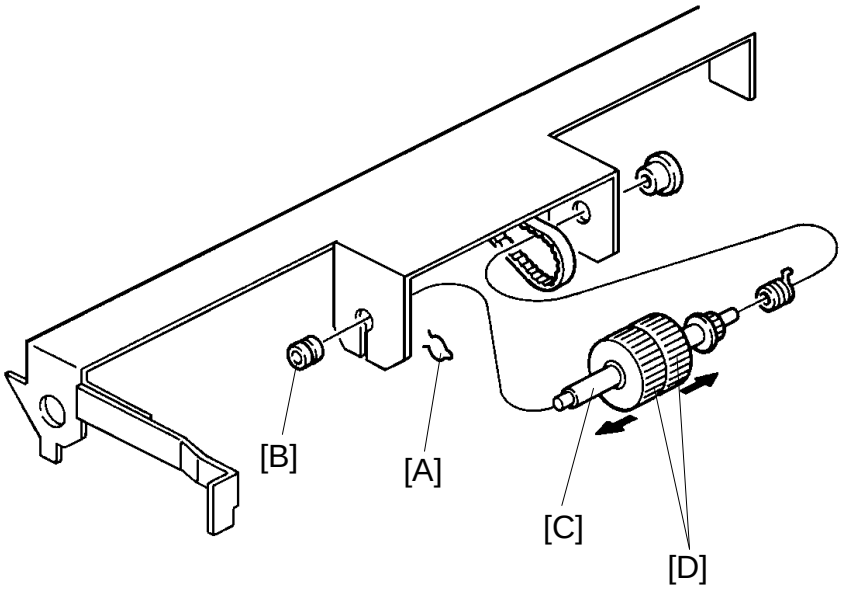




Purpose: To ensure paper feed by regulating the start timing of the second feed roller.

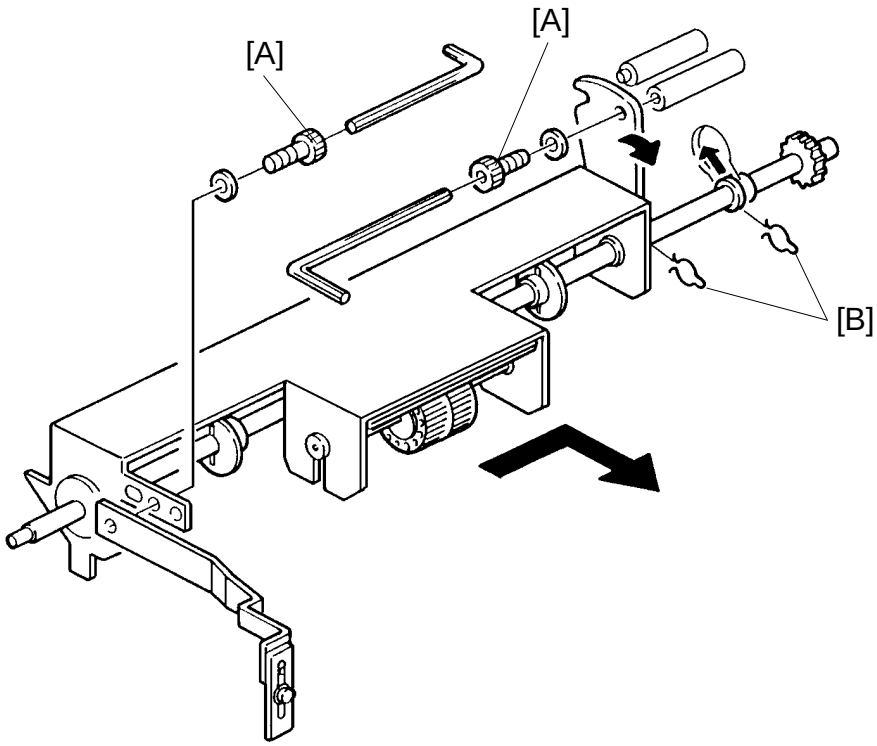
1. Stack about 100 sheets of 65 g/m^2 paper on the table.
2. Set the paper feed roller pressure lever in the upper position.
3. Remove both front and rear covers of the machine.
4. Access "I/O Check Mode".
   - Enter "0" in the memory display and "4" in the copy counter. Use Output Check mode (SP131) No. 19 for the C226 model.
5. Press the Print Start key to raise the paper table to the correct position.
6. Set the Image Shifting indicator at "0" position, and turn the drum to the home position for drum replacement.
7. Set a protractor on the image shifting shaft [A].
   - Position the origin of the protractor at the bracket of the master feed clamper solenoid.
8. Turn on the paper feed solenoid [B] and, using a spanner (10 mm), gradually turn the drum rotation shaft to feed the paper.
9. Measure the degrees turned when the second feed roller sector gear [C] starts returning counterclockwise.
   This should be 157°.
10. If incorrect, loosen the 2 hexagon bolts [D] located behind the second feed roller cam [E] and adjust by turning the cam.

7.12 PAPER FEED ROLLER REPLACEMENT



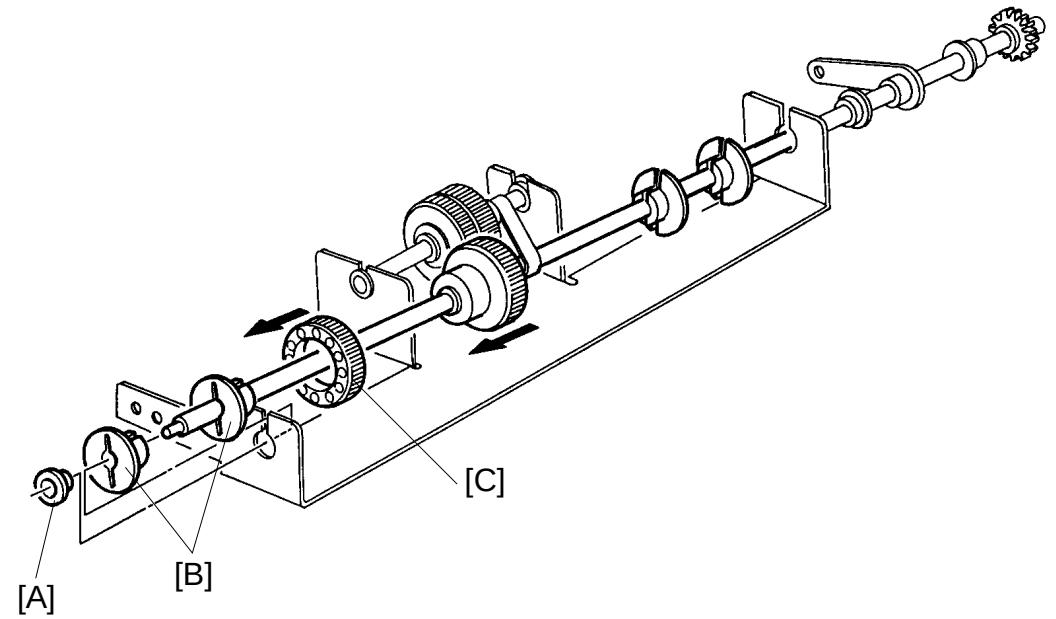
1. Remove the left clamper [A].
2. Remove the left bushing [B].
3. Remove the paper feed roller shaft [C].
4. Remove the 2 paper feed rollers [D].

7.13 PAPER FEED ROLLER UNIT REPLACEMENT



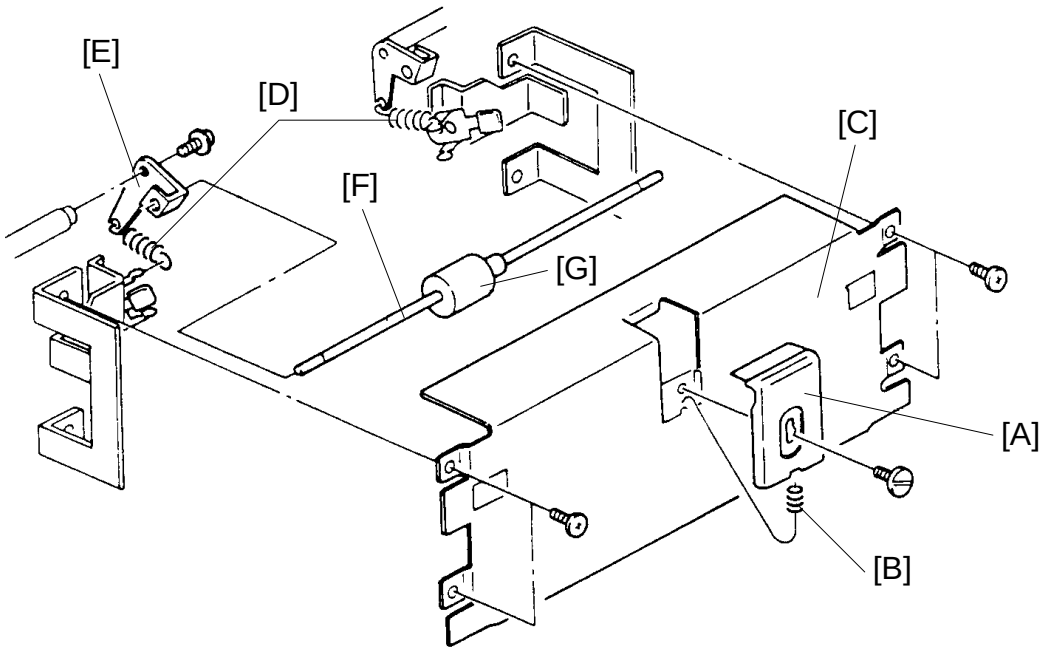
1. Remove 2 hexagon screws [A].
2. Remove the clampers [B].
3. Remove the upper paper feed roller unit from the machine by sliding the shaft to rear.

7.14 UPPER SEPARATION ROLLER REPLACEMENT



1. Remove the paper feed roller unit from the machine.
2. Remove the bushing [A].
3. Remove the paper guide disks [B].
4. Remove the upper separation roller [C].

7.15 SEPARATION PLATE/LOWER SEPARATION ROLLER REPLACEMENT



Separation Plate:

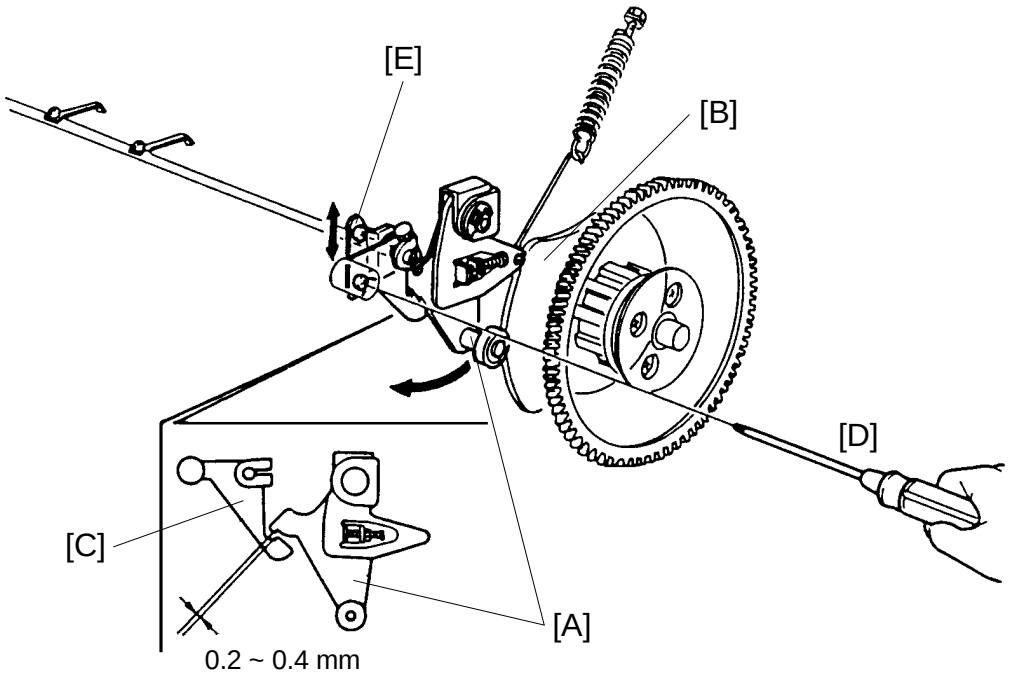
1. Remove the separation plate [A] with the spring [B] located under the separation plate (1 screw).

Lower Separation Roller:

1. Remove the paper feed roller unit from the machine.
2. Remove the front plate [C] of the paper feed section (4 screws). Lift up then pull out horizontally.
3. Remove the springs [D] on both sides.
4. Remove the separation levers [E] on both sides (1 screw each).
5. Remove the lower separation roller shaft [F].
6. Remove the lower separation roller [G] (Allen screw).

8. PRINTING SECTION

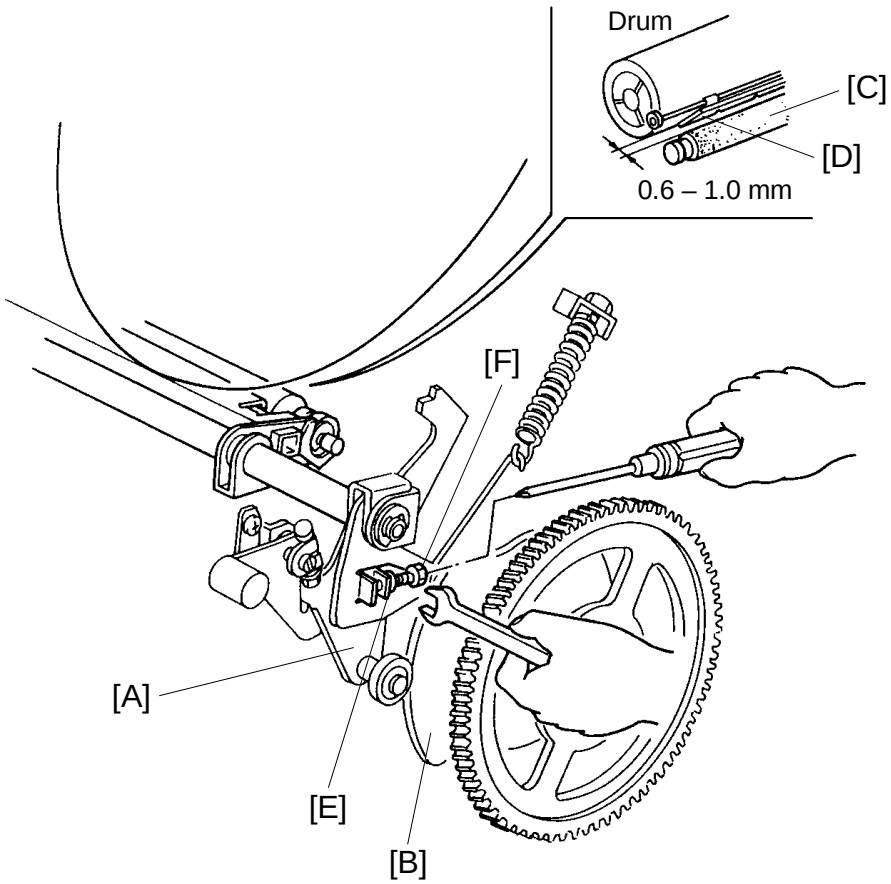
8.1 PAPER DETECTING ARM CLEARANCE ADJUSTMENT



Purpose: To ensure that printing pressure is applied during paper feed, and is released correctly afterwards.

1. Remove the rear cover of the machine.
2. Using a spanner (10 mm), gradually turn the drum rotation shaft counterclockwise to position the bearing of the pressure release arm [A] on the top of the pressure cam [B].
3. Make sure that the clearance between the paper detecting arm [C] and the pressure release arm is 0.2 to 0.4 mm.
4. If incorrect, loosen the screws [D] and adjust the clearance by shifting the paper detecting bracket [E] up or down.
5. After adjustment, confirm the printing pressure ON/OFF mechanism by monitoring a print run.

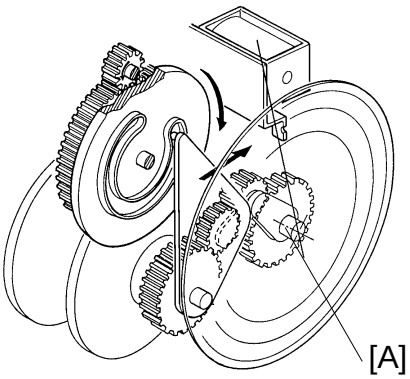
8.2 PRESSURE ROLLER POSITION ADJUSTMENT

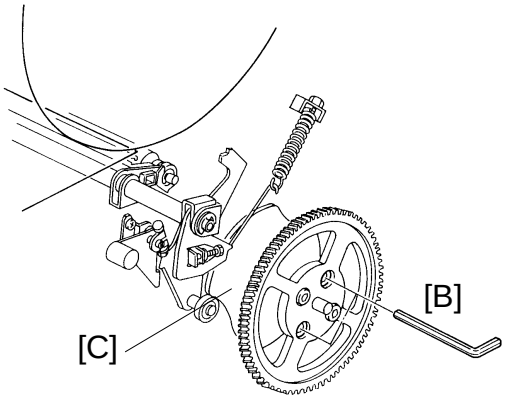


Purpose: To ensure that the pressure roller does not contact the clamper section of the drum.

1. Remove the rear cover of the machine.
2. Using a spanner (10 mm), turn the drum rotation shaft counterclockwise and position the bearing of the pressure release arm [A] on top of the pressure cam [B].
3. While holding this condition, make sure that the distance between the pressure roller [C] and the tip of the clamper [D] is 0.6 to 1.0 mm.
4. If incorrect, loosen the hexagon nut [E] and adjust the clearance by turning the screw [F].

8.3 PRESSURE TIMING ADJUSTMENT

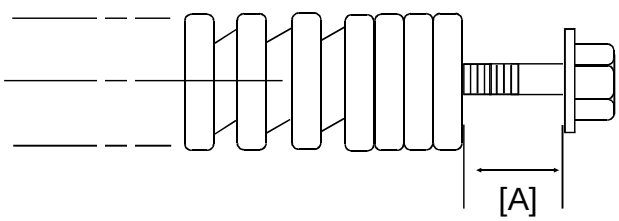




Purpose: To ensure that the maximum printing area is within specifications, and that the ink does not stain the trailing edge.

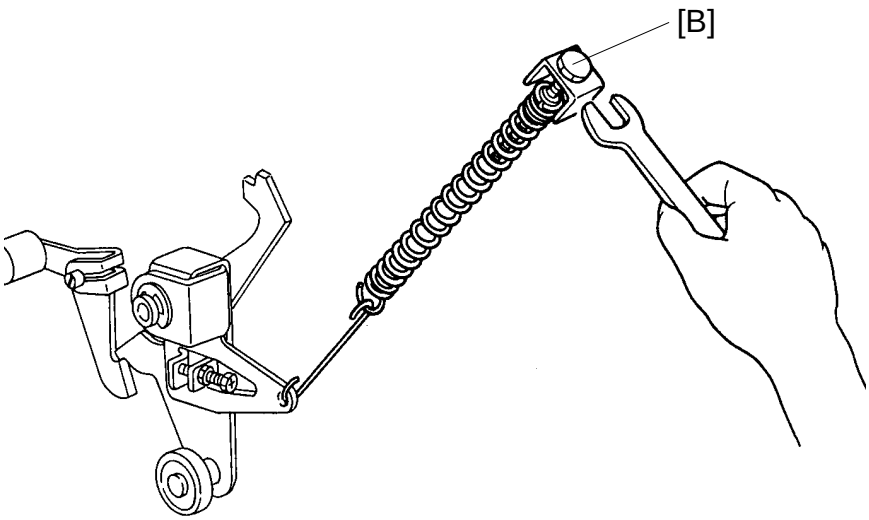
1. Stack about 100 sheets of 65 g/m^2 paper on the table.
2. Set the paper feed roller pressure lever to the upper position.
3. Remove both front and rear covers of the machine.
4. Access "I/O Check Mode".
   - Enter "0" in the memory display and "4" in the copy counter. Use Output Check mode (SP131) No. 19 for the C226 model.
5. Press the Print Start key to raise the paper table to the correct position.
6. Set the Image Shifting indicator at "0" position, and turn the drum to the home position for drum replacement.
7. Set a protractor on the image shifting shaft [A].
   - Position the origin of the protractor at the bracket of the master feed clamper solenoid.
8. Using a spanner (10 mm), turn the drum rotation shaft counterclockwise while pressing in the plunger of the paper feed solenoid and the printing pressure solenoid.
9. Turn the drum rotation shaft a little further, and stop it when the pressure roller begins to contact the drum surface.
10. In the above condition, measure the degrees turned, this should be 225 ± 1 degrees.
11. If incorrect, loosen the screws [B] of the pressure cam [C] and adjust by turning the pressure cam.

8.4 PRINTING PRESSURE ADJUSTMENT



Standard Setting:

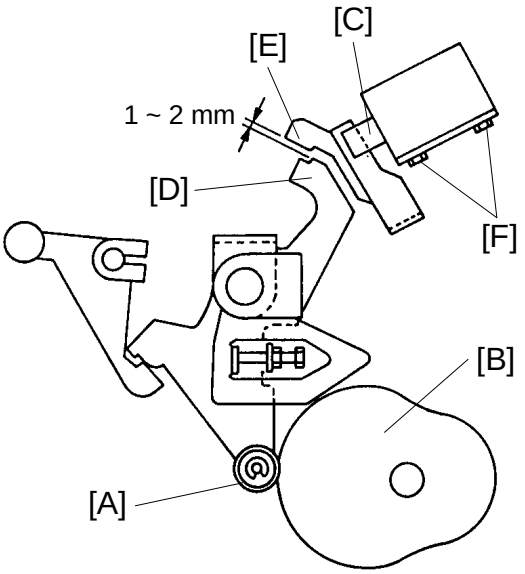
5 mm for C211 B4/C212/C213
10 mm for C211 LG/C211 A4
14 ± 0.5 mm for C215/C216/C224/C226



Purpose: To make better print results without decreasing the run length.

1. Remove the rear cover of the machine.
2. Adjust the clearance [A] to be 5 mm for the C211 B4/C212/C213 model (10 mm for the C211 LG/C211 A4 model, 14 ± 0.5 mm for the C215/C216/C224/C226 model) by turning the adjusting bolt [B].

8.5 PRINTING PRESSURE STOPPER CLEARANCE ADJUSTMENT

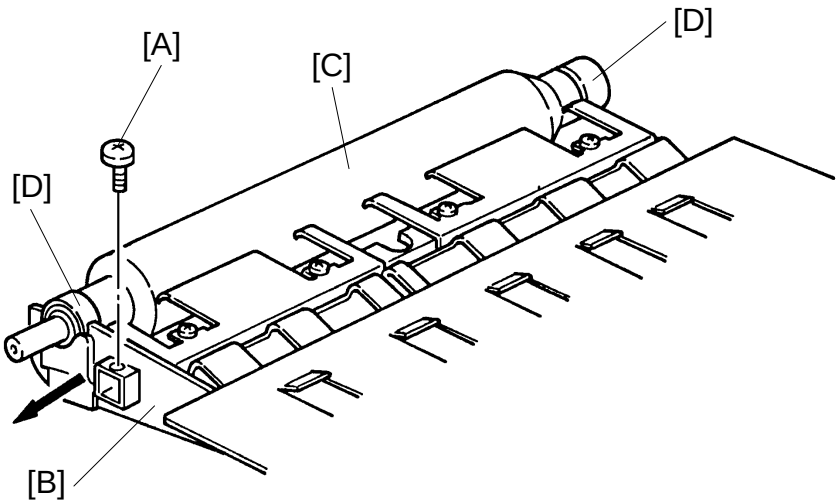


Purpose: To ensure that printing pressure stopper is released when paper feed start, and is locked within one drum rotation when a paper jam occurs.

NOTE: Perform this adjustment after adjusting the clearance of the paper detecting arm.

1. Using a spanner (10 mm), gradually turn the drum rotation shaft counter-clockwise to position the bearing [A] of the pressure release arm on the top of the pressure cam [B].
2. Manually press in the plunger [C] of the printing pressure solenoid and confirm that the clearance between the printing pressure ON/OFF lever [D] and the printing pressure stopper [E] is 1 to 2 mm.
3. If incorrect, loosen the hexagon head screws [F] and adjust the clearance by moving the printing pressure solenoid.

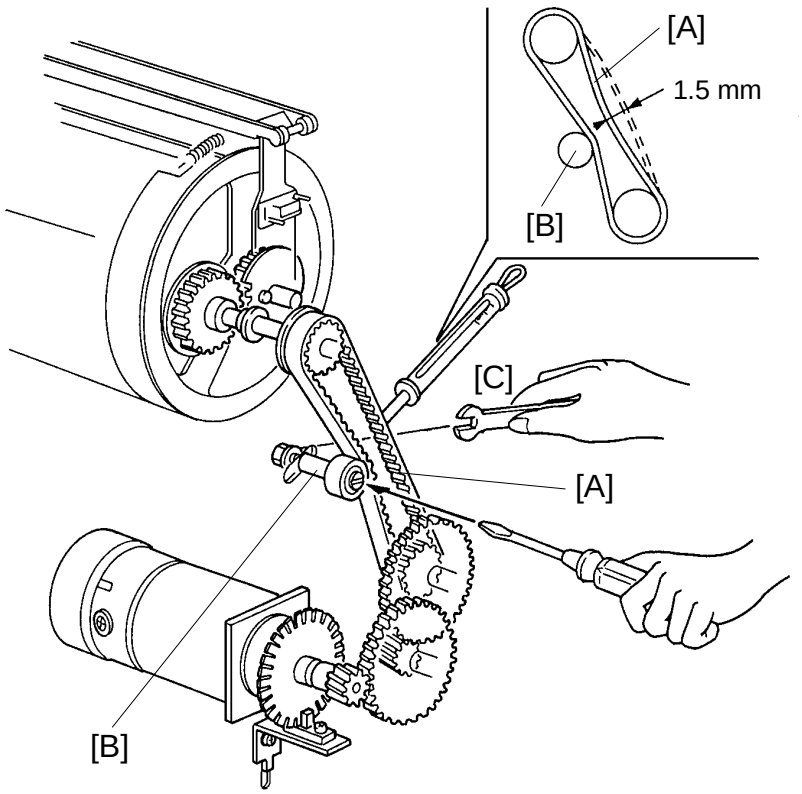
8.6 PRESSURE ROLLER REPLACEMENT



1. Remove a screw [A].
2. Remove the holding plate [B].
3. Remove the pressure roller [C].
4. Remove both right and left bearings [D] (2 E-rings).

9. DRUM SECTION

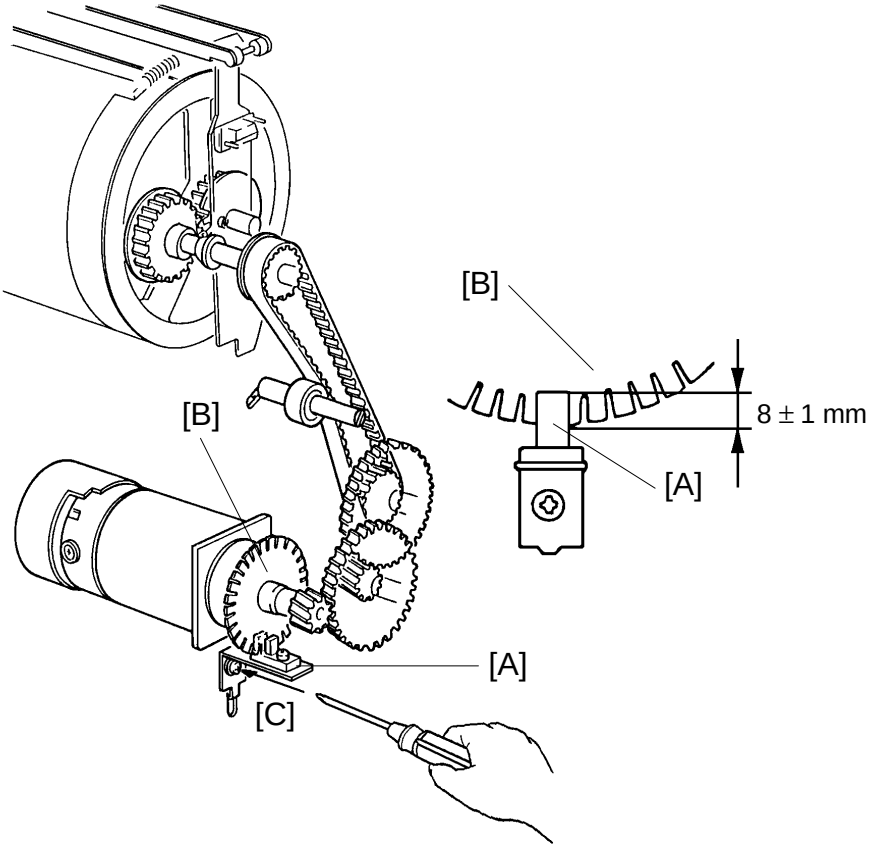
9.1 MAIN DRIVE BELT TENSION ADJUSTMENT



Purpose: To ensure that correct main motor rotation is transmitted to the drum.

1. Remove the rear cover of the machine.
2. Apply a 1000-gram load using a tension gauge to the center of the main drive belt [A]. Make sure that the belt deflects 1.5 mm.
3. If incorrect, remove the drum unit and adjust the belt tension by moving the tensioner shaft [B] after loosening the nut [C].
4. After adjustment, tighten the nut completely.

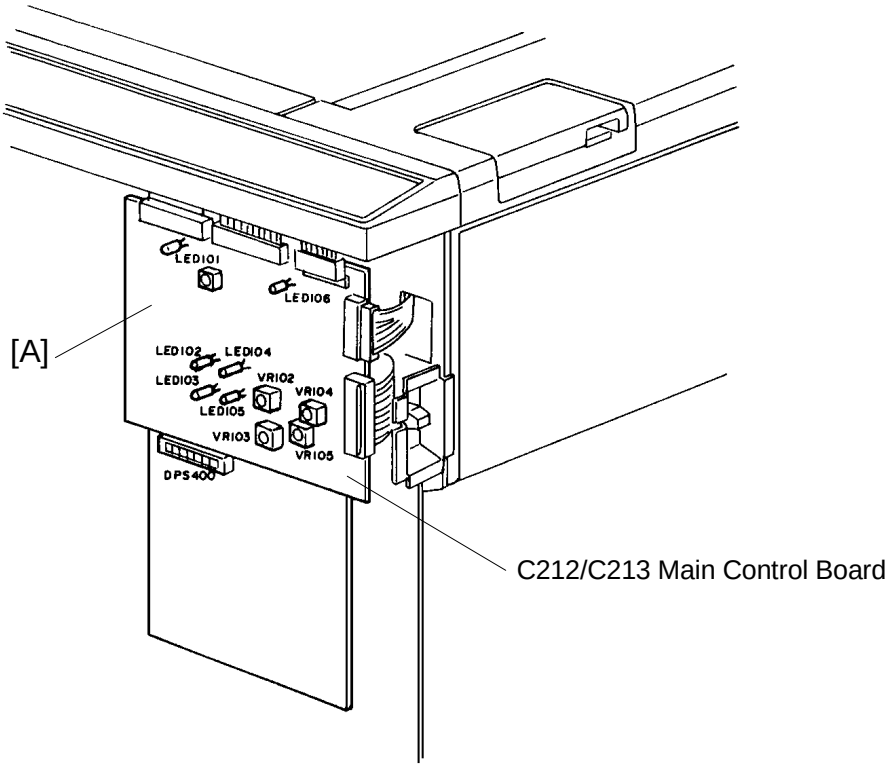
9.2 DRUM ROTATION SENSOR ADJUSTMENT



Purpose: To ensure correct main motor speed detection.

1. Remove the rear cover of the machine.
2. Make sure that the drum rotation sensor [A] is positioned so that the pulse disk [B] is inserted into the sensor by 8 ± 1 mm as shown above.
3. If not, loosen the screw [C] securing the sensor bracket and adjust the sensor bracket position.
4. After adjustment, set a spanner (10 mm) into the drum shaft and rotate the drum to make sure that the pulse disk does not contact the sensor during a rotation.

9.3 PRINTING SPEED ADJUSTMENT



Purpose: To set the maximum speed at 120 ± 10 rotations/minute.

1. Press the Speed Change key to set the speed at the maximum level.
2. Press the reset key while pressing the "0" key and make sure that the drum rotation speed is 120 ± 10 rotations/minute.

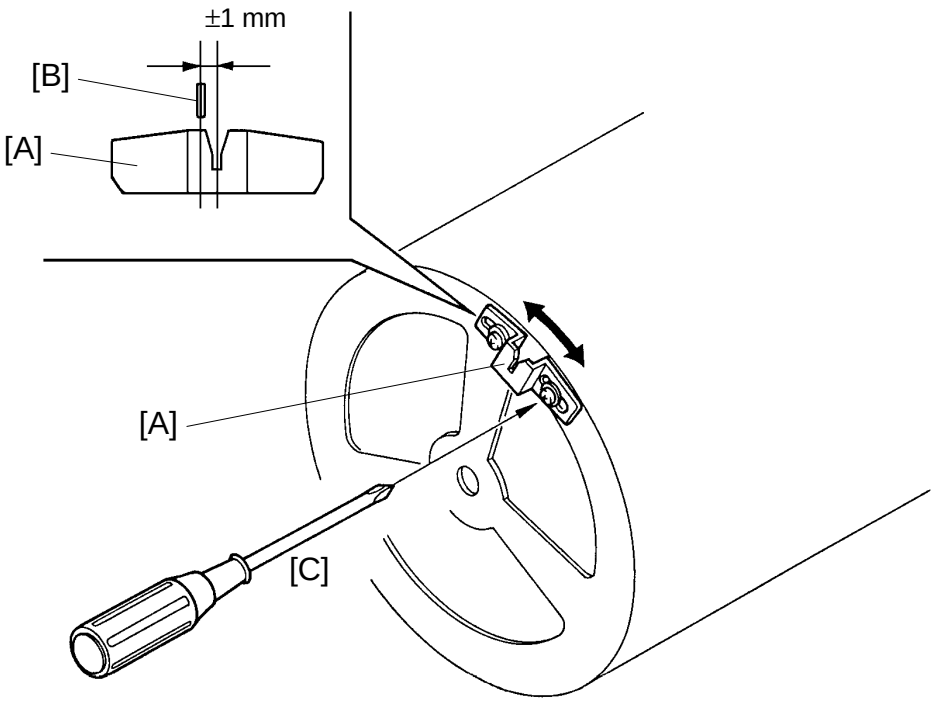
C211 Model Only:

3. If not, remove the front cover of the machine and turn on DIP SW 100-6 on the Main Control PCB [A]. Then adjust the speed by turning VR100.

The Other Models:

3. If not, remove the front cover of the machine and then adjust the speed by turning VR101 on the Main Control PCB [A].

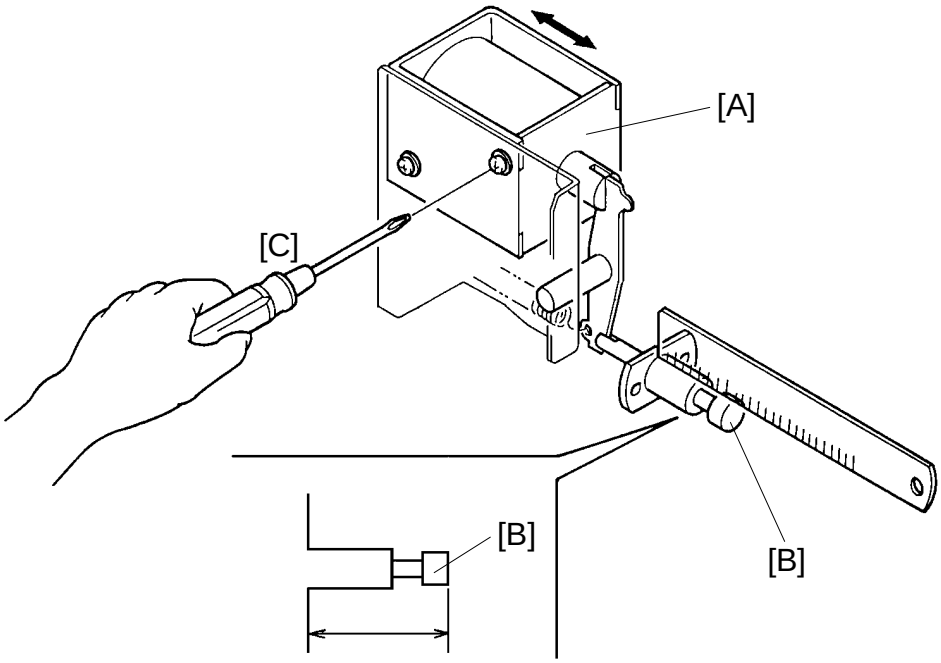
9.4 DRUM STOPPER ADJUSTMENT



Purpose: To ensure that the drum is securely locked when the drum unit is pulled out.

1. Press the Drum Rotation button to stop the drum at the home position for drum replacement.
2. Make sure that the distance between the center of the drum lock [A] and the center of the drum stopper [B] is less than ± 1 mm.
3. If incorrect, loosen the screws [C] and adjust by moving the drum lock [A].

9.5 MASTER FEED CLAMPER CAM ADJUSTMENT



ON= 29 ± 0.5 mm OFF= less than 25 mm

Purpose: To ensure that the master feed clamper is opened during the master feed process and is closed during other processes.

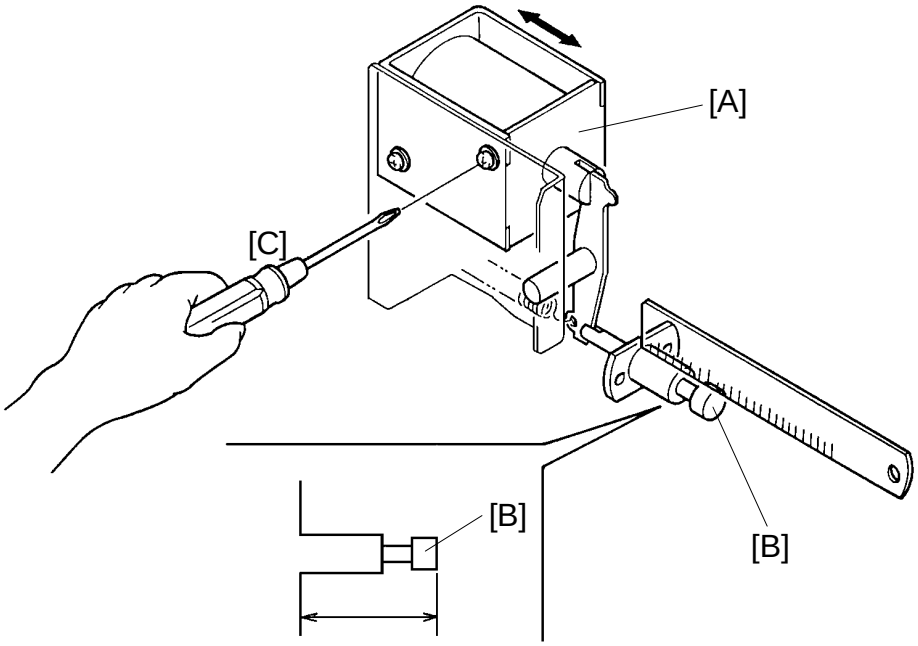
1. Remove the drum unit from the machine and open the master eject unit.
2. Remove the rear cover of the machine
3. Access "I/O Check Mode".
   - Enter "0" in the memory display and "9" in the copy counter. Use Output Check mode (SP131) No. 15 for the C226 model.
4. Press the Print Start key to turn on the master feed clamper solenoid [A].
5. Make sure that the distance between the busing and the edge of the opening cam [B] is 29 ± 0.5 mm when the master feed clamper solenoid turns on.
6. If not, loosen the mounting screws [C] and adjust the solenoid position.

⚠ CAUTION

Do not turn on the solenoid any longer than 10 seconds.

7. After adjustment, retighten the mounting screws.

9.6 MASTER EJECT CLAMPER CAM ADJUSTMENT



ON= 29 ± 0.5 mm OFF= less than 25 mm

Purpose: To position the master eject clamper cam so that the master clamper opens correctly during the master eject process and closes correctly for all other processes.

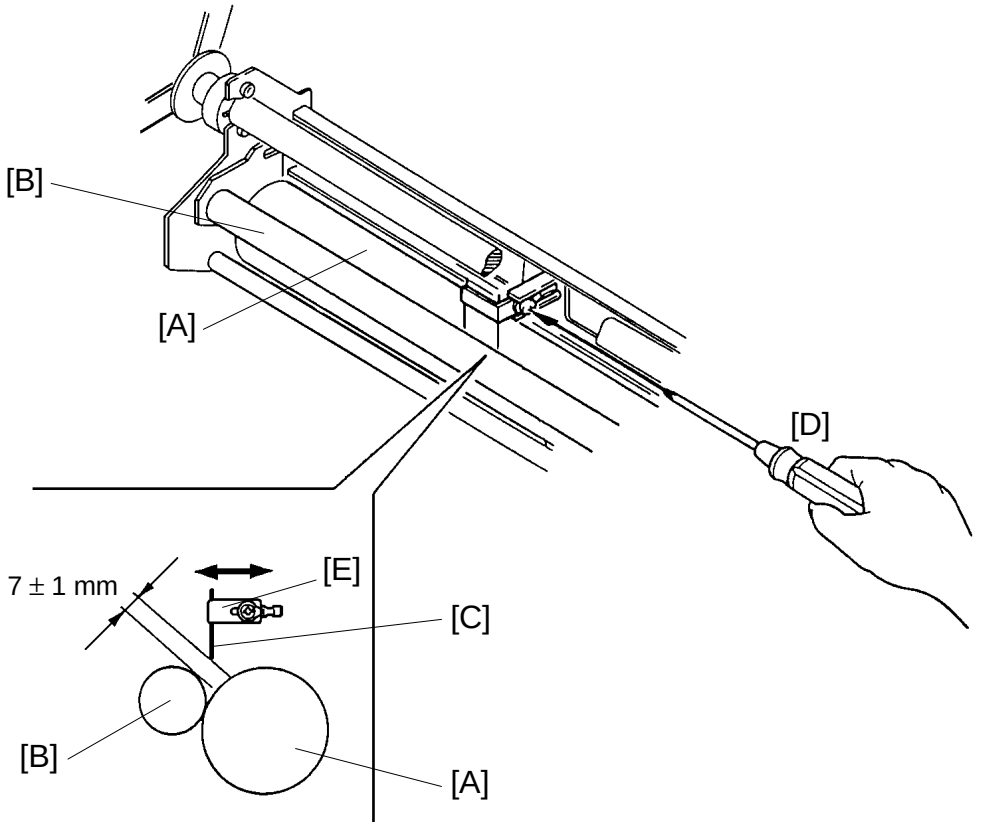
1. Remove the drum unit from the machine and open the master eject unit.
2. Remove the rear cover of the machine.
3. Access "I/O Check Mode".
   - Enter "0" in the memory display and "8" in the copy counter. Use Output Check mode (SP131) No.16 for the C226 model.
4. Press the Print Start key to turn on the master eject clamper solenoid [A].
5. Make sure that the distance between the bushing and the edge of the opening cam [B] is 29 ± 0.5 mm when the master eject clamper solenoid turns on.
6. If not, loosen the mounting screws [C] and adjust the position of the master eject clamper solenoid.

⚠ CAUTION

Do not turn on the solenoid any longer than 10 seconds.

7. After adjustment, retighten the mounting screws.

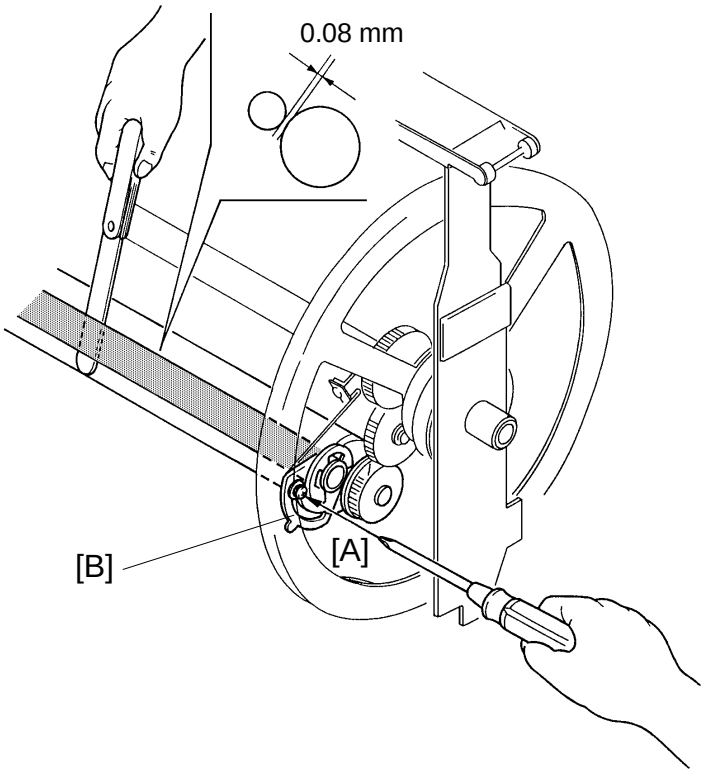
9.7 INK DETECTING PIN POSITION ADJUSTMENT



Purpose: To ensure detection of ink built-up between the ink roller and the doctor roller.

1. Remove the drum unit.
2. Remove the master clamper.
3. Remove the tetron screen and the metal screens from the drum unit.
4. Remove the ink around the ink roller [A] and the doctor roller [B].
5. Make sure that the distance between the end of detecting pin [C] and the doctor roller surface is 7 ± 1 mm.
6. If incorrect, loosen the screw [D] and adjust the distance by moving the ink detecting pin bracket [E].
7. After adjustment, retighten the screw [D].

9.8 DOCTOR ROLLER CLEARANCE ADJUSTMENT



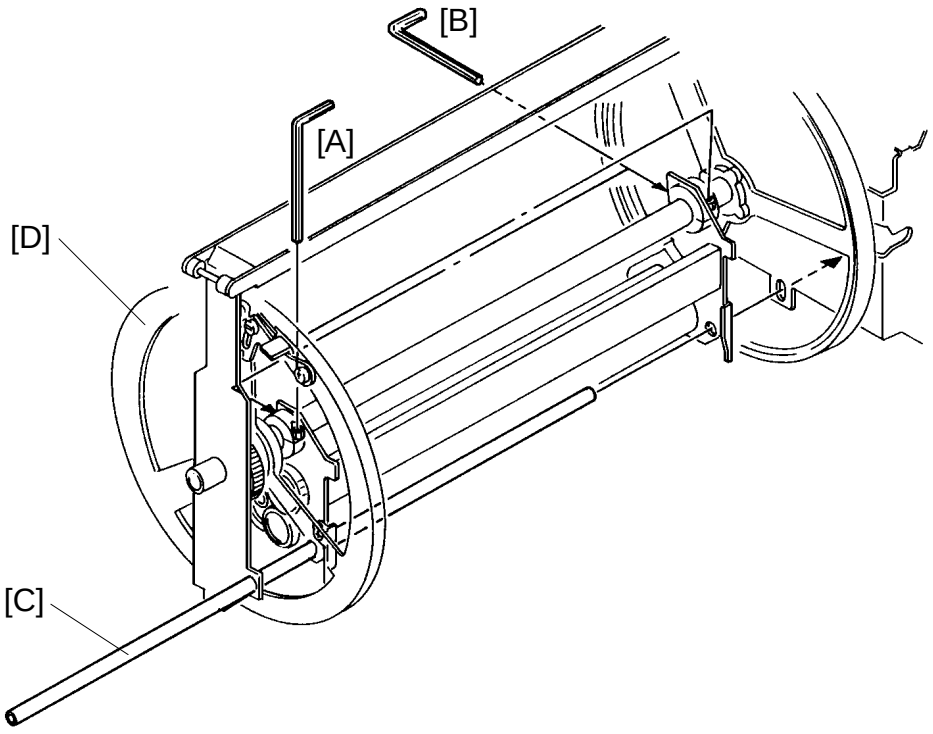
Purpose: To equalize the ink thickness around the ink roller and prevent uneven image.

1. Remove the drum unit.
2. Remove the master clamper.
3. Remove tetron screen and the metal screens from the drum unit.
4. Wipe off the ink around the ink roller and the doctor roller.
5. Insert a 0.08-mm gap gauge between the doctor roller and the ink roller. Then make sure that a 0.1-mm gauge can not penetrate the gap.

   NOTE: Check the gap at the right, center, and left positions.
6. If the gap is not within specifications, loosen the screws [A] on both sides and adjust the gap by turning the eccentric bushings [B] on both sides.

   NOTE: Before adjustment, remove the drive gear located on the operation side of the doctor roller as the drive gear restricts the adjustment.

9.9 INK ROLLER UNIT POSITION ADJUSTMENT

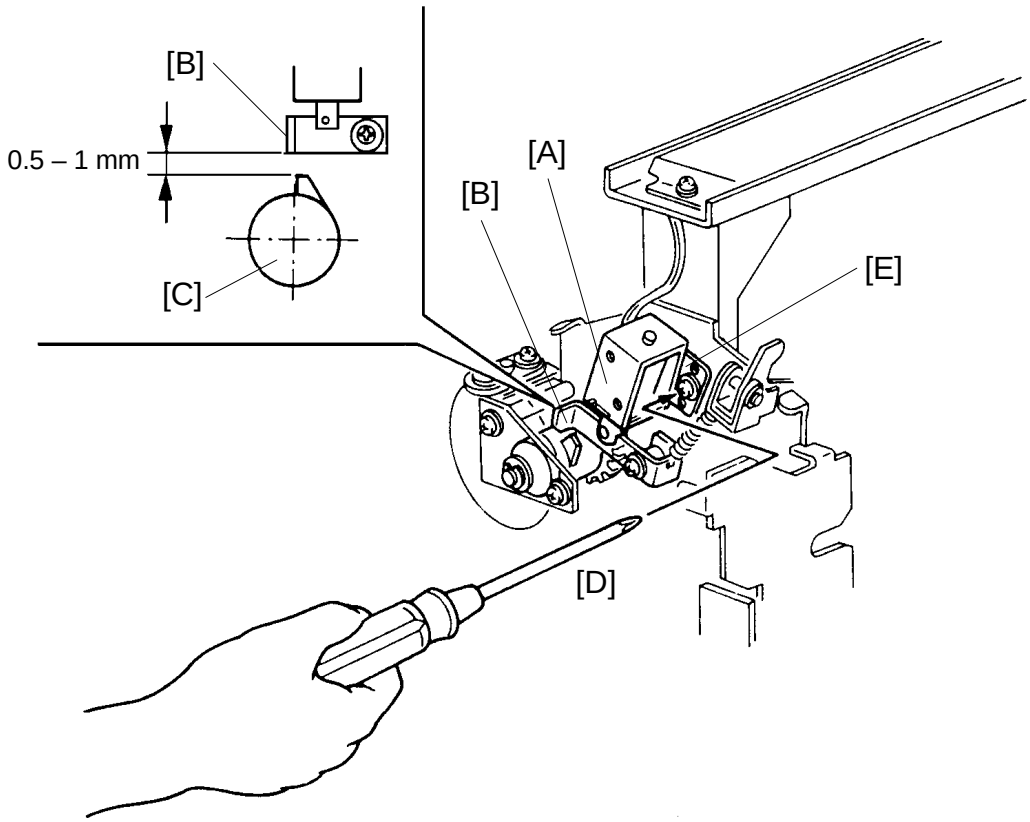


Purpose: To ensure that the pressure of the pressure roller is applied evenly to the ink roller (the difference in distance from the center to either end should be less ± 0.5 mm).

1. Remove the drum unit from the machine.
2. Remove the tetron and the metal screens from the drum unit.
3. Loosen the bolts [A] and the screws [B] that secure the ink roller unit to the drum shaft.
4. Insert the drum gauge [C] in the holes in both side plates of the drum unit and the ink roller unit.

   NOTE: The part number of the drum gauge is C2009001.
5. In the above condition, tighten the bolts [A] and the screws [B] so that the thrust play of the flange [D] is 0.05 to 0.2 mm.

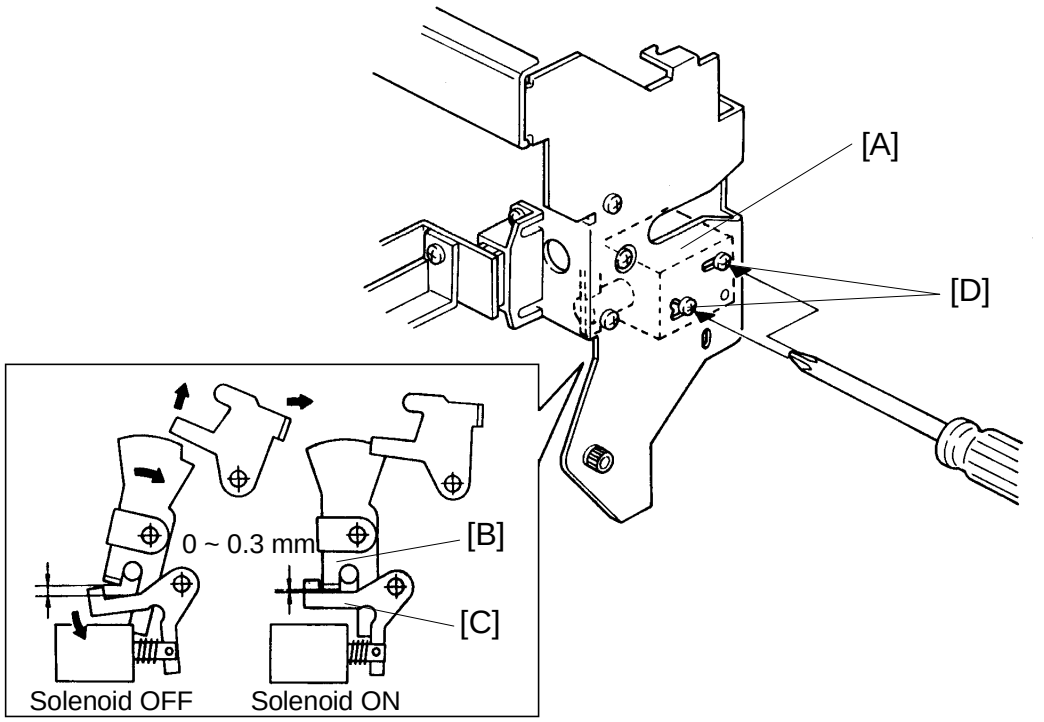
9.10 INK SUPPLY SOLENOID POSITION ADJUSTMENT



Purpose: To ensure that the clutch sleeve is released by the stopper when the ink supply solenoid [A] turns on.

1. Remove the drum unit from the machine.
2. Remove the front cover of the drum unit.
3. Press in the solenoid plunger by hand and make sure that the distance between the stopper [B] and the clutch sleeve [C] is 0.5 mm to 1.0 mm as shown.
4. If incorrect, loosen the screw [D] and adjust the distance by moving the solenoid bracket [E].
5. After adjustment, retighten the screw [D].

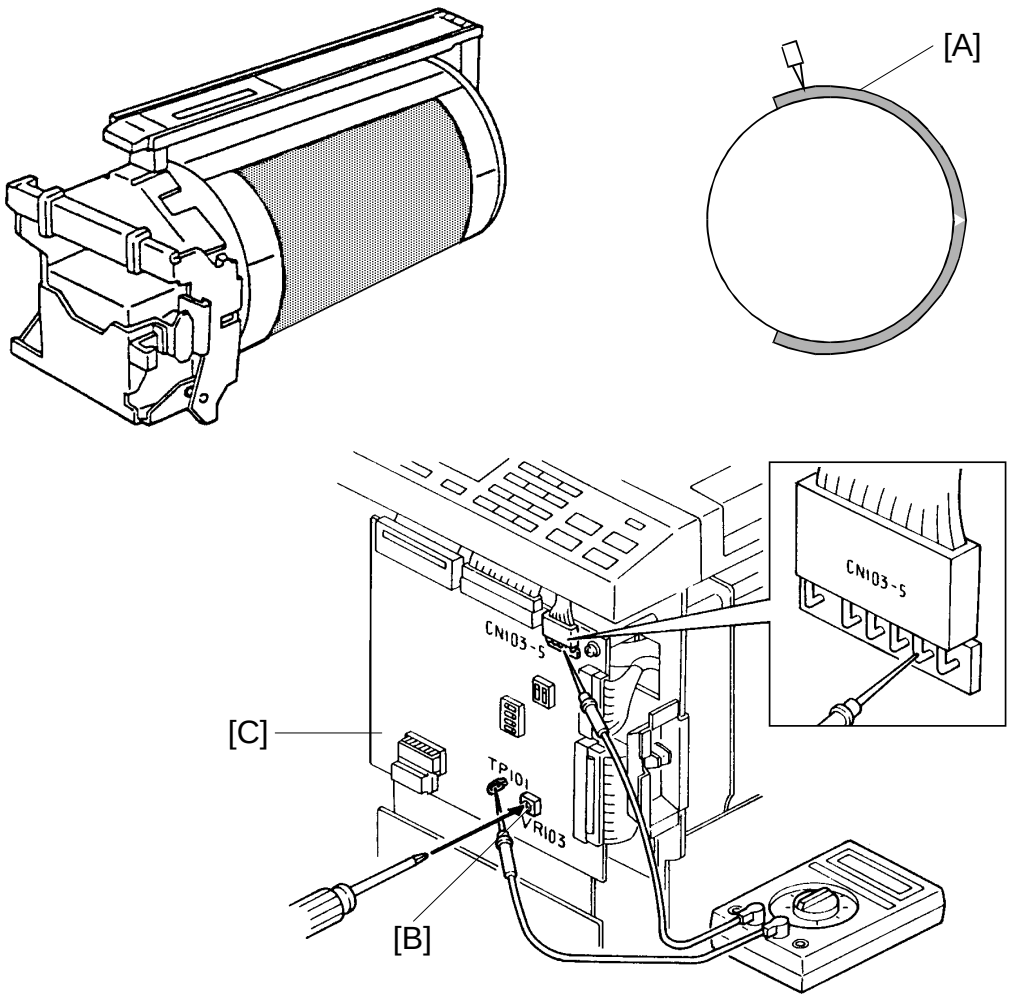
9.11 DRUM LOCK SOLENOID ADJUSTMENT: C212/C213 ONLY



Purpose: To prevent the drum unit from being removed when it is not at the original drum position.

1. Install the drum unit in the machine.
2. Access "I/O Check Mode".
   - Enter "0" in the memory display and "34" in the copy counter.
3. Press the Print Start key to turn on the drum lock solenoid [A].
4. Make sure that the drum lock arm [B] and the stopper [C] are no further than 0.3 mm apart when the solenoid turns on.
5. If the drum and the stopper are too far apart, loosen the 2 screws [D] and adjust the drum lock solenoid position.

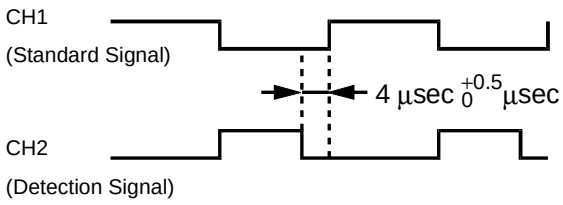
9.12 MASTER DETECTING SENSOR ADJUSTMENT: C212/ C213 ONLY

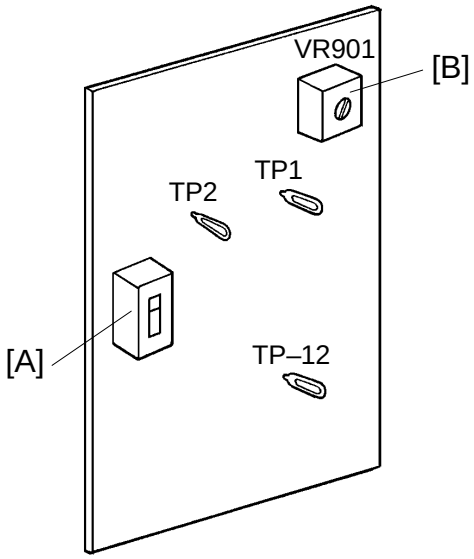


1. Remove the front cover.
2. Remove the master [A] from the drum. Then, confirm that the voltage between TP101 and GND (CN103-5) is 0.9 ± 0.1V when no master is on the drum.
3. If the voltage is outside the specified range, adjust VR103 [B] on the main control board [C].
4. Place a master on the drum.

   NOTE: Make sure the master leading edge is clamped to the drum clamper and that the master [A] is wrapped correctly on the drum.
5. Make sure that the voltage between TP101 and GND (CN103-5) on the main control board is 3.0V or higher.

9.13 INK DETECTION ADJUSTMENT



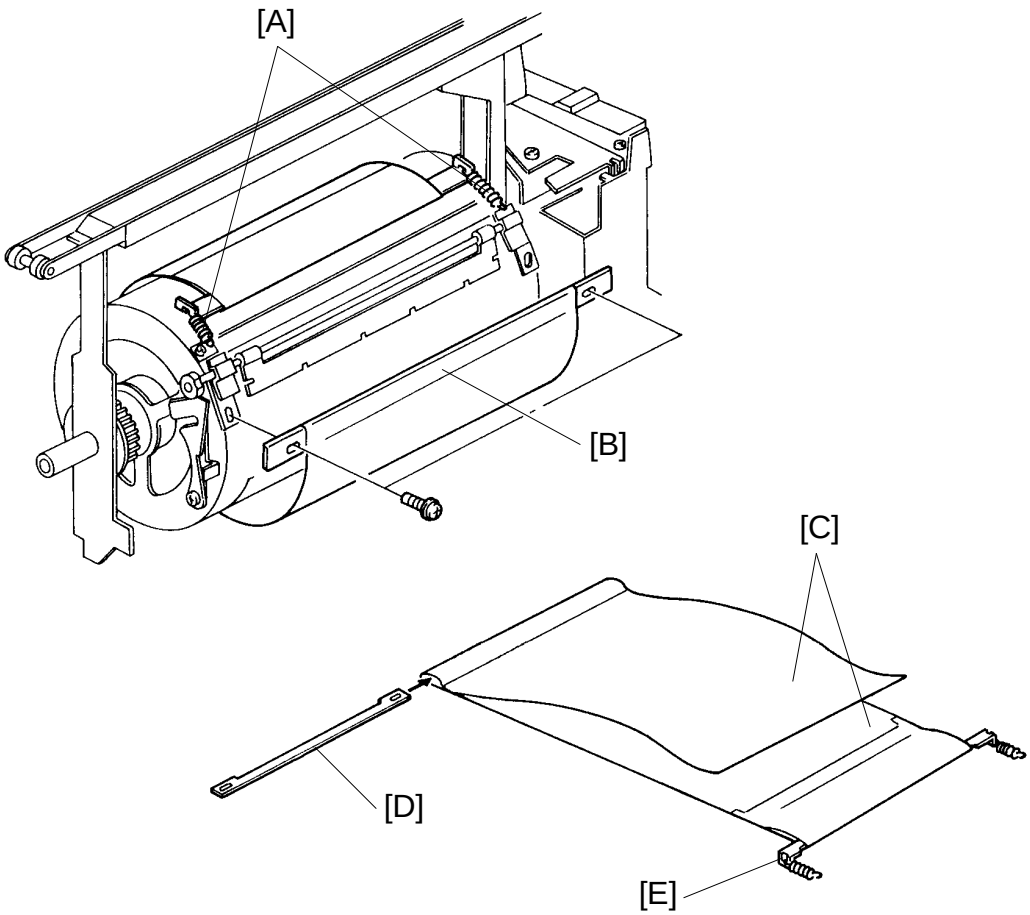


Purpose: To ensure correct detection of a no ink condition when all the ink has been consumed.

1. Remove the rear cover of the machine.
2. Position SW901 [A] on the ink detecting board to the oil type (upper) position.
3. Connect the CH1 probe of an oscilloscope to TP1, the CH2 probe to TP2 and the GND lead to TP-12V. Select the 5 microsecond range.
4. Install a drum with no ink or remove the ink cartridge and make prints until the Add Ink is displayed (the ink detecting pin is not in contact with the ink).
5. Make sure that the waveform is as shown above when the ink detecting pin is not in contact with the ink.
   - This adjustment should be made under normal conditions (20°C/65% RH).

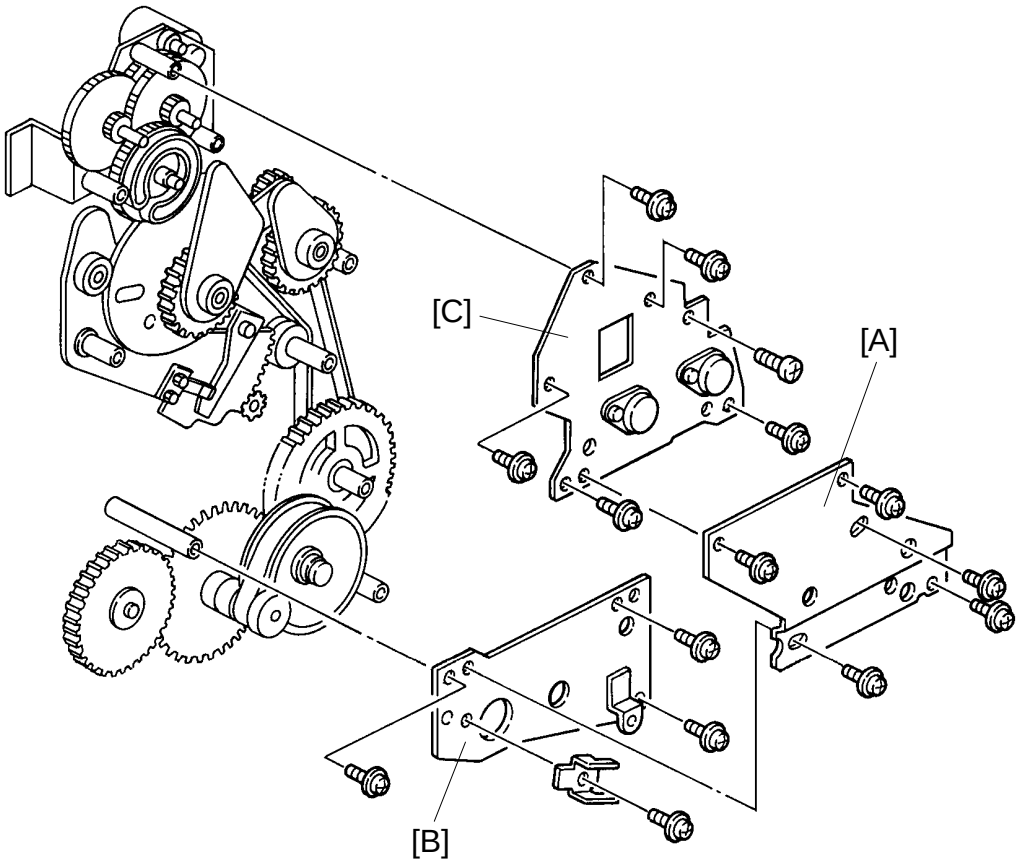
   NOTE: The period of the waveform varies inversely with temperature. (High temp. → reduced period. Low temp. → increased period)
6. If incorrect, adjust the ON timing of the detection signal using VR901 [B] on the ink detecting board.

9.14 SCREEN REPLACEMENT



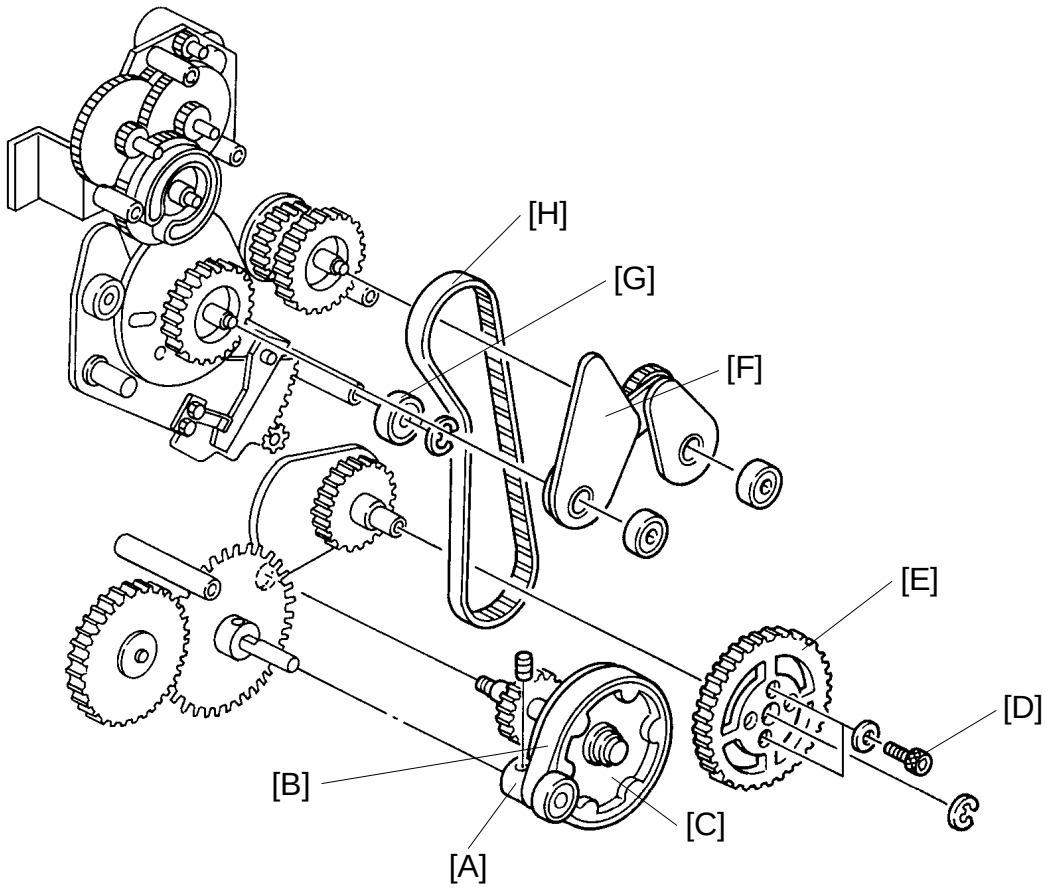
1. Remove the drum unit from the machine.
2. Remove the 2 springs [A].
3. Remove the front screen plate [B] (2 screws).
4. Remove the tetron screens [C] from the drum.
5. Remove the front screen plate [D] and the rear screen plate [E].

9.15 DRUM DRIVE BELT REPLACEMENT



Removal:

1. Set the image position to "0" by turning off and on the main switch.
2. Turn off the main switch and unplug the power supply cord.
3. Remove the drum unit.
4. Remove the rear cover.
5. Remove the center support side plate [A] (5 screws).
6. Remove the lower support side plate [B] (4 screws).
7. Remove the upper support side plate [C] (6 screws).



C211 Model Only:

8. Remove the drive gear [A] and the bearing (2 Allen screws).

   NOTE: It is not necessary to remove the drive gear on the C212/C213 models because these models use a timing relay belt [B].

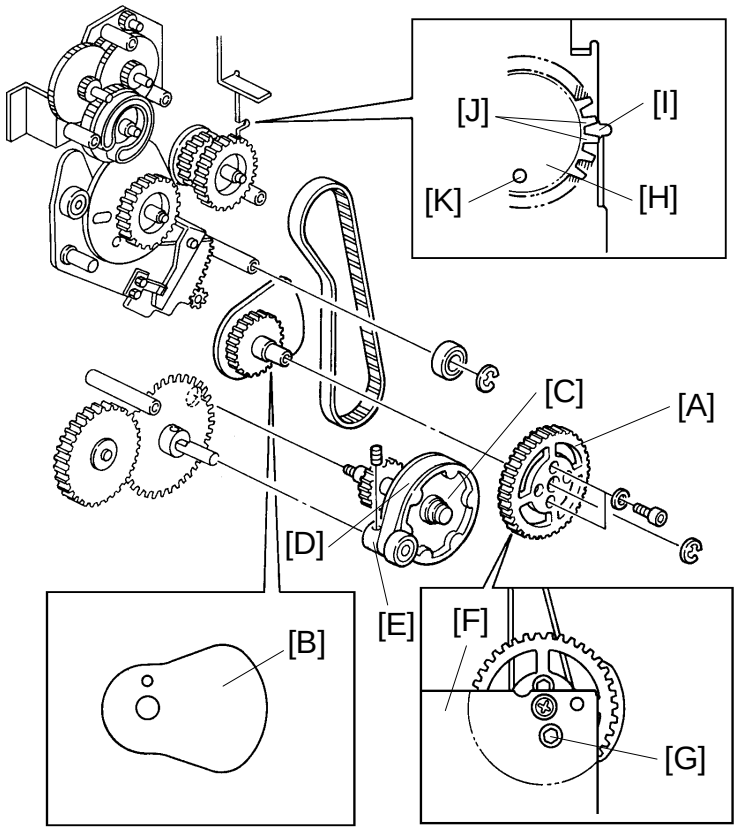
9. Remove the relay gear assembly [C].

10. Loosen the 2 hexagon bolts [D] and remove the pressure cam drive gear [E].

11. Remove the timing gear assembly [F].

12. Remove the belt tension bearings [G] (1 E-ring).

13. Replace the drum drive belt [H].



Assembly:

1. Install the pressure cam drive gear [A].

   NOTE: Make sure that the top part of the pressure cam points to the right [B].

2. Install the relay gear assembly [C].

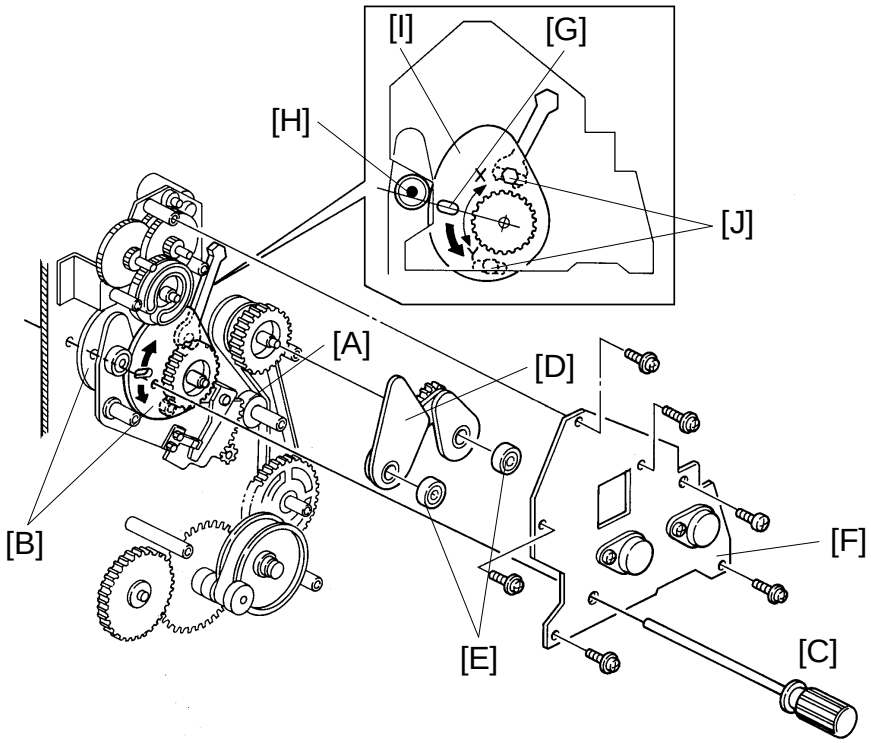
3. Install the relay belt [D] (C212/C213 only).

4. Install the drive gear [E] (C211 only).

5. Install the lower support side plate [F].

6. Adjust the drum drive belt position so that the hexagon bolt [G] can be seen through the hole in the lower support side plate when the drum drive gear [H] is at drum home position. (The notch cut in the plate [I] lines up with the gap between the two teeth [J] on the drum drive gear. Also, the hole [K] in the drum drive gear lines up with a hole in the rear side plate → Check by inserting a long screwdriver.)

   NOTE: These are the only teeth on the drum drive gear that are not backed by the metal plate on the rear side of the drum drive gear.

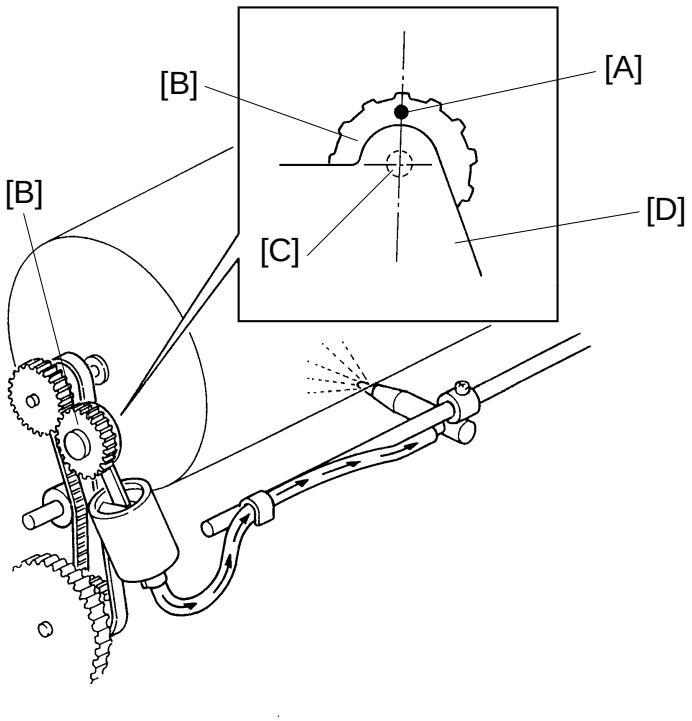


7. Install the belt tension bearings [A] (1 E-ring).
8. Adjust the position of both feed cams [B] by inserting a long screwdriver [C] as shown through the holes in the feed cams and the rear side plate.
9. Install the timing gear assembly [D] with the two bearings [E].
10. Install the upper support side plate [F].
11. Confirm the position of the cams by inserting a long screwdriver as shown through the holes in the upper support side plate, the feed cams, and the rear side plate.
12. Confirm that the center of the slot [G] in the second feed cam is aligned with the lower side of the bearing shaft [H].

    NOTE: Push down lightly on the second feed cam to remove any play in the cam gear.
13. Make prints to check the registration.
14. It the registration is off by more than 9 mm, repeat steps 8 to 13. If the registration is only off by a few millimeters, loosen the two bolts [J] with a spanner (8 mm) and adjust the second feed cam position.
    X direction: Image on the prints is shifted up.
    Y direction: Image on the prints is shifted down
15. Install the center support side plate.

10. PAPER DELIVERY

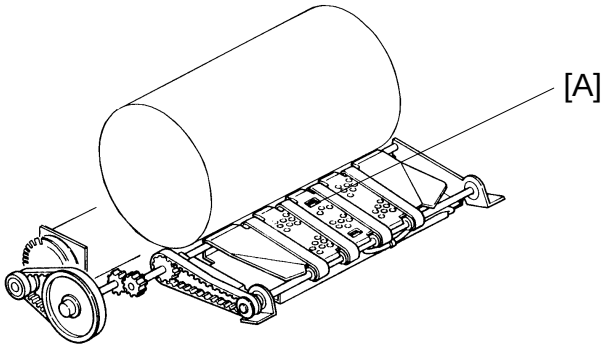
10.1 AIR PUMP TIMING ADJUSTMENT: C215/C216/C224/C226 ONLY

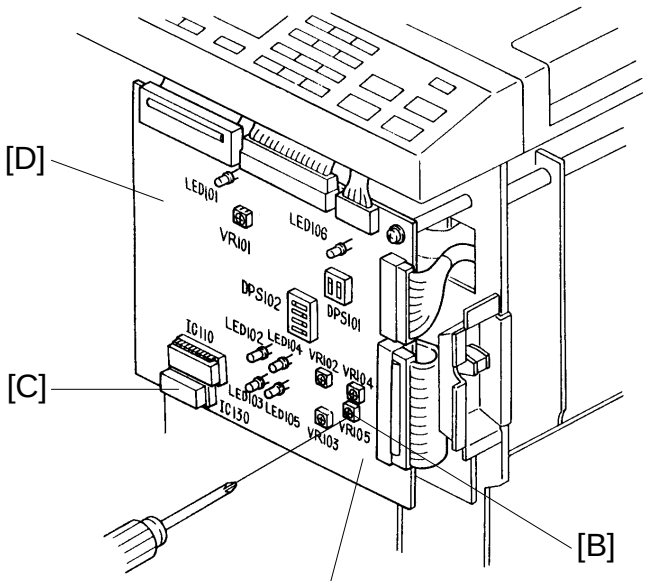


Purpose: To ensure that the paper exit pawl air pump produces a jet of air at the proper timing

1. Remove the rear cover.
2. Set the drum in the home position.
3. Confirm that the mark [A] on the pump drive gear [B] is right over the gear shaft [C].
4. If incorrect, remove the support plate [D] (5 screws) and reposition the gear.
5. Rotate the drum to the home position and confirm step 3 again.

10.2 FIRST PAPER EXIT SENSOR ADJUSTMENT



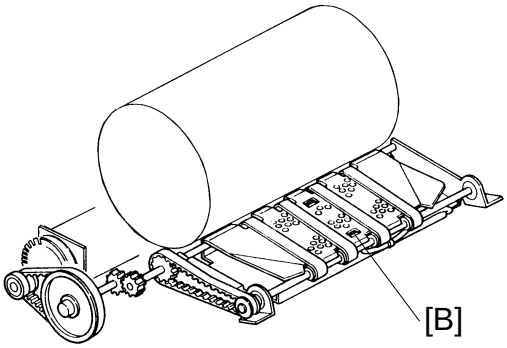


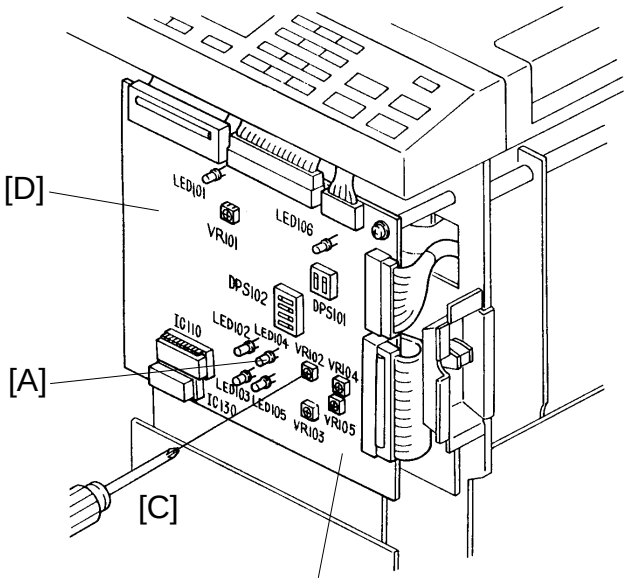
C212/C213 Main Control Board

Purpose: To ensure that the sensor detects correct paper delivery and that the jam indicator blinks after an exit misfeed or a paper wrap occurs.

1. Remove the front cover from the machine.
2. Place a sheet of 65 g/m^2 paper 30 mm above the first paper exit sensor [A] and make sure that VR105 [B] for the C212/C213 model (VR102 for the C211 model, VR103 for the other models) on the main control board [D] is set to the ON/OFF threshold of LED 103 [C].
3. If incorrect, adjust the sensor sensitivity by turning the VR.

10.3 SECOND PAPER EXIT SENSOR ADJUSTMENT



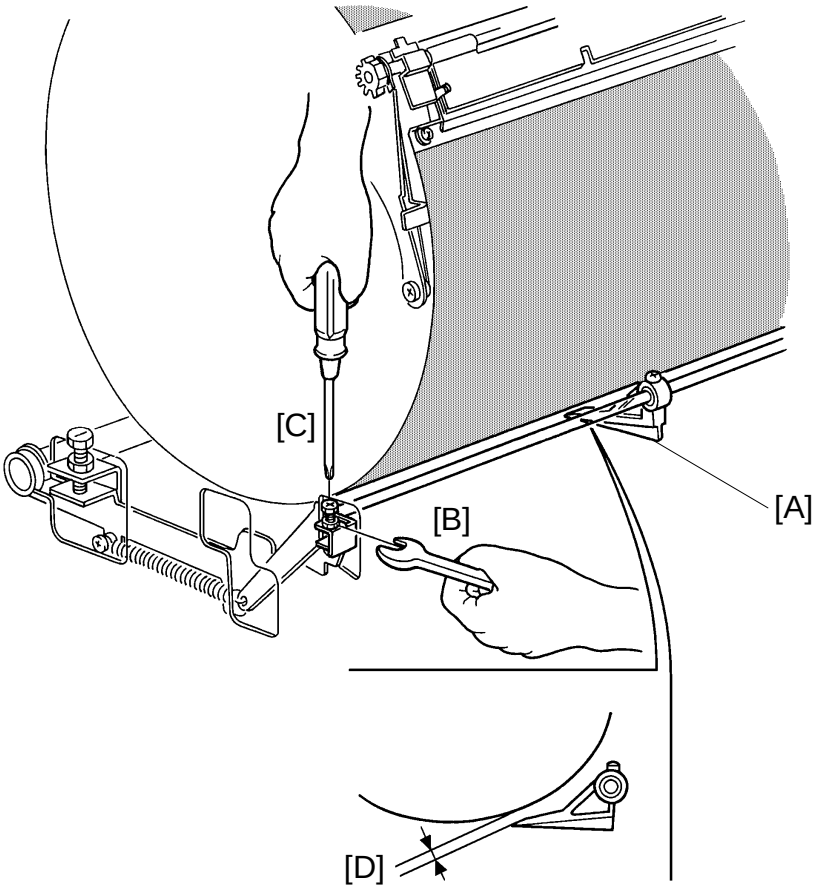


C212/C213 Main Control Board

Purpose: To ensure that the sensor detects correct paper delivery and that the jam indicator blinks and the machine stops when a paper wrap or exit misfeed occurs

1. Remove the front cover from the machine.
2. Confirm the following items:
   a. When the shelter plate is removed and the master eject unit is closed, LED104 [A] for C212/C213 model (LED101 for the C211 model, LED102 for the C215/C216/C224/C226 model) is OFF.
   b. When the shelter plate is installed and the master eject unit is closed, LED104 [A] for C212/C213 model (LED101 for the C211 model, LED102 for the C215/C216/C224/C226 model) is OFF.
   c. When a sheet of paper is positioned over the second paper exit sensor [B] and is in contact with the shelter plate, LED104 for C212/C213 model (LED101 for the C211 model, LED102 for the C215/C216/C224/C226 model) is ON.
3. If any of the above items is incorrect, adjust the sensor by turning VR102 [C] (VR101 only for the C211 model) on the main control board [D].

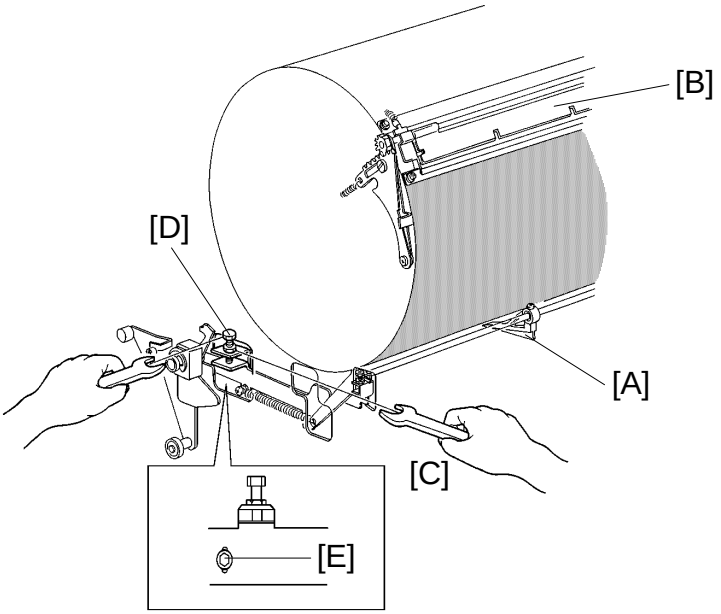
10.4 EXIT PAWL CLEARANCE ADJUSTMENT



Purpose: To ensure that the printing paper is delivered without paper wrap or damage to the screen.

1. Remove the rear cover of the machine.
2. Manually turn on the paper feed and the printing pressure solenoids. Using a spanner (10 mm), gradually rotate the drum rotation shaft counterclockwise to move the exit pawl [A] to the drum.
3. Make sure that the clearance between the drum and the exit pawl [D] is 0.5 to 0.7 mm (0.3 to 0.5 mm for the C211/C212/C213 models) when the exit pawl is at the position closest to the drum.
4. If incorrect, open the master eject box and loosen the hexagon nut [B] of the exit pawl drive arm. Then adjust the clearance by turning the screw [C].
5. Check adjustment by repeating steps 2 and 3.

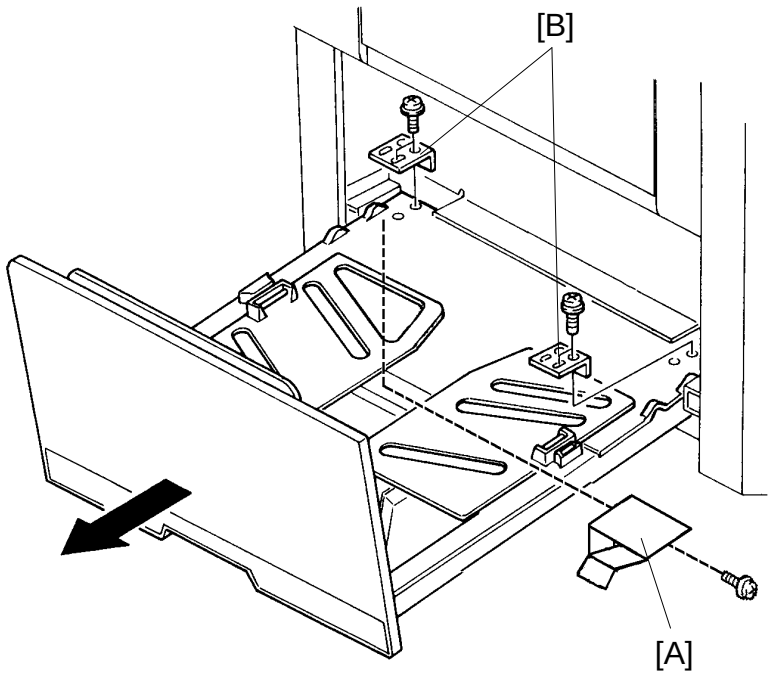
10.5 EXIT PAWL TIMING ADJUSTMENT



Purpose: To ensure that the exit pawl does not contact the master clamper.

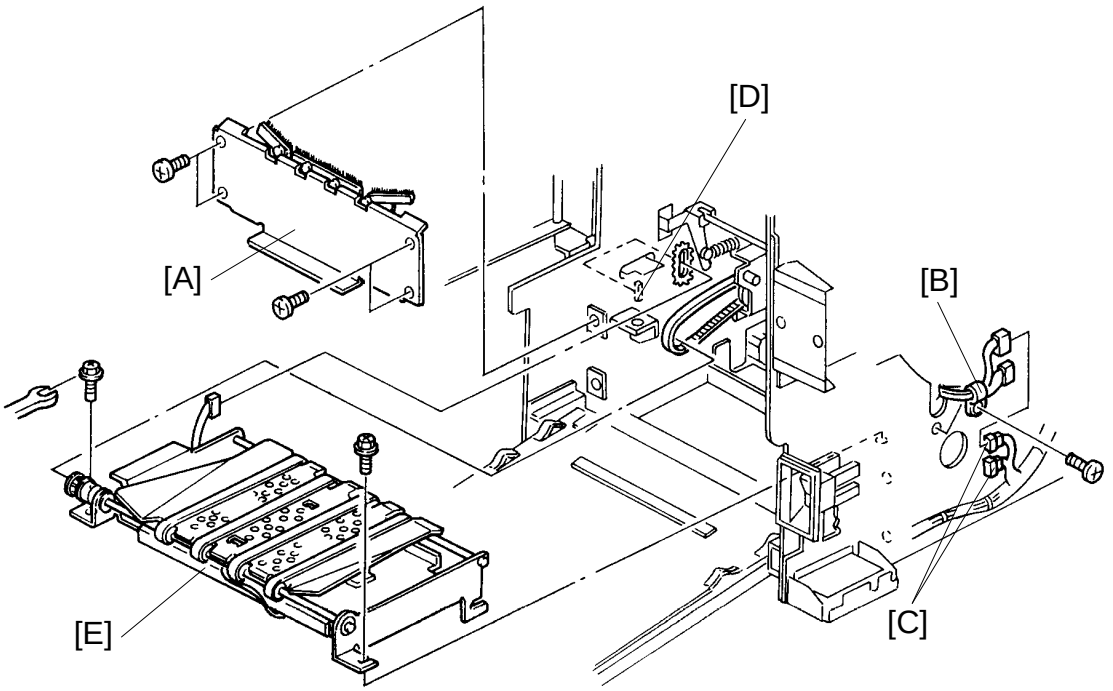
1. Remove the rear cover of the machine.
2. Press the Image Shifting key to give a maximum white area at the paper leading edge (image shift position set to "–2").
3. Stack 65 g/m^2 paper on the paper table.
4. Access "I/O Check Mode".
   - Enter "0" in the memory display and "4" in the copy counter. Use Output Check mode (SP131) No. 19 for the C226 model.
5. Press the Print Start key to raise the paper table to the correct position.
6. Manually turn on the paper feed and the printing pressure solenoids. Using a spanner (10 mm), gradually rotate the drum rotation shaft counterclockwise at a constant speed.
7. While rotating, make sure that the exit pawl [A] does not contact the master clamper [B] and that the exit pawl approaches the drum before the leading edge of the printing paper exits.
8. If incorrect, loosen the hexagon nut [C] and hexagon bolt [E] and adjust the exit pawl position by turning the hexagon bolt [D].
9. Check adjustment by repeating step 7 with the image position shifted to both maximum forward and maximum backward directions.

10.6 DELIVERY TABLE REPLACEMENT: C211/C212/C213/ C215/C216/C224 ONLY



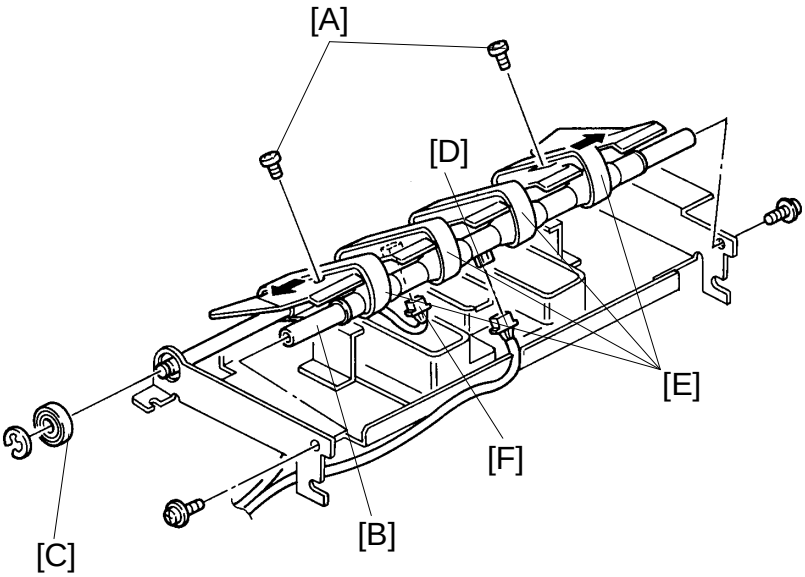
1. Open the delivery table.
2. Remove the leaf spring [A] for GND located under the table (1 screw)
3. Remove the stoppers [B] (2 screws each).
4. Remove the delivery table.

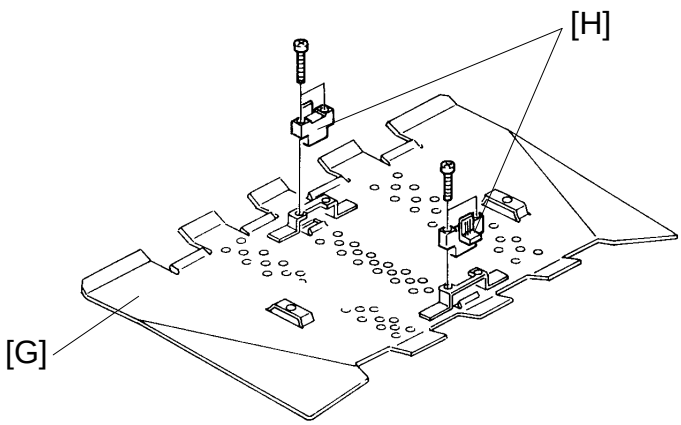
10.7 VACUUM UNIT REPLACEMENT



1. Remove both front and rear covers of the machine.
2. Remove the antistatic brush bracket [A] (4 screws).
3. Remove the harness clamp [B] (1 screw).
4. Disconnect the sensor connectors [C].
5. Disconnect the vacuum motor connector [D].
6. Remove the vacuum unit [E] (2 screws).

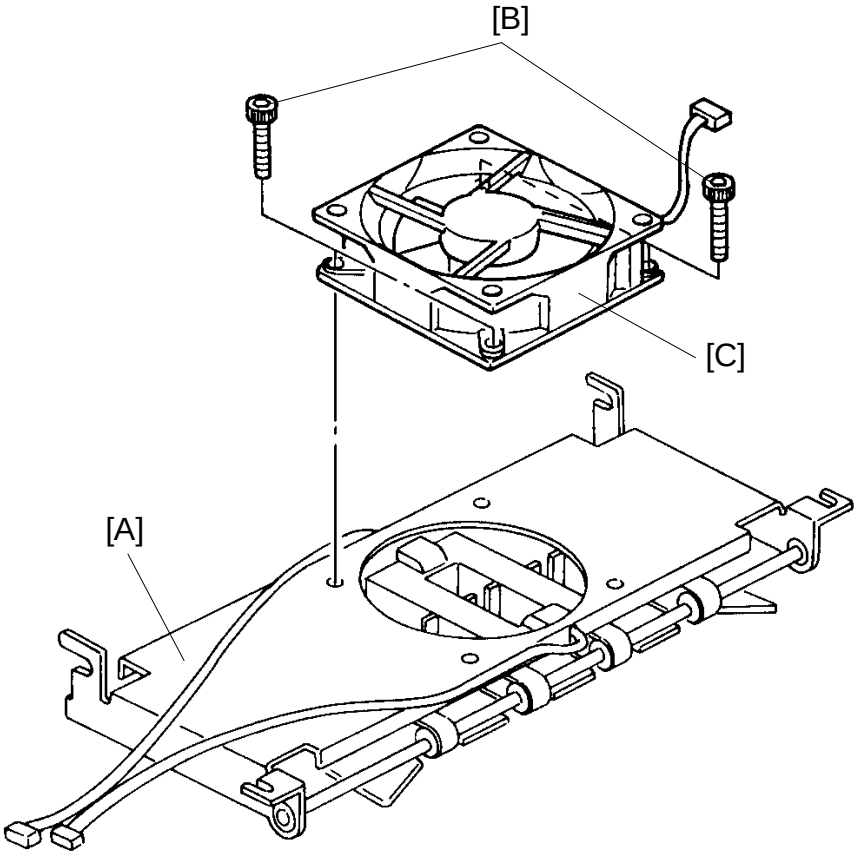
10.8 DELIVERY BELT/PAPER EXIT SENSORS REPLACEMENT





1. Remove the vacuum unit.
2. Remove the 2 screws [A] securing the vacuum guide plate.
3. Remove the tension roller [B] (2 screws).
4. Remove the bearing [C] (1 E-ring).
5. Disconnect the first paper exit sensor connector [D].
6. Remove the delivery belts [E].
7. Disconnect the second paper exit sensor connector [F].
8. Turn the vacuum guide plate [G] over.
9. Replace the paper exit sensors [H] (2 screws each).

10.9 VACUUM MOTOR REPLACEMENT



1. Remove the vacuum unit.
2. Turn the vacuum unit [A] over.
3. Loosen the 4 hexagon bolts [B].
4. Remove the vacuum motor [C].

SECTION 6

TROUBLESHOOTING

1. ELECTRICAL COMPONENT TROUBLE

Component	Condition	Phenomenon	
10 A Fuse (Power Supply PCB)	Open	Machine does not work. (No indicators on the operation panel turn on.)	
2.5 A Fuse (AC Drive PCB)	Open	Cover open indicator blinks when the main switch is turned on.	
+24 V (CN510-1 on Power Supply PCB)	No output	Buzzer sounds and the machine does not work.	
+24 V (CN504-1 on Power Supply PCB)	No output	Nothing happens when the main switch is turned on; when the Master Making key is pressed, the master feed motor fails to turn on and the "C" and jam indicators blink.	
+24 V (CN504-2 on Power Supply PCB)	No output	Nothing happens when the main switch is turned on; when the Master Making key is pressed, the master feed motor fails to turn on and the "C" and jam indicators blink.	
SEOH (CN503-1 on Power Supply PCB)	No output	When the main switch is turned on, E04 is displayed.	
+12 V (CN503-2 on Power Supply PCB)	No output	Machine functions are correct, but the image is almost completely black.	
+12 V (CN503-3 on Power Supply PCB)	No output	Counter indicator is not displayed. (Only the reduction and image mode indicators are displayed.)	
–12 V (CN503-4 on Power Supply PCB)	No output	Machine functions are correct, but the image is almost completely black. When the Print Start key is pressed, the add ink indicators and "D" blink after 20 rotations even though ink is present.	
+5 V (CN503-5 on Power Supply PCB)	No output	Nothing happens	There is no output at Pins 5 and 6, and the drum rotates at high speed after the main switch is turned on.
+5 V (CN503-6 on Power Supply PCB)	No output	Nothing happens	
+12 V (CN103-2 on Main PCB)	No input	Counter indicator is not displayed (Only the reduction and image mode indicators are displayed.)	
+5 V (CN103-3 on Main PCB)	No input	No indicators turn on.	
–12 V (CN103-6 on Main PCB)	No input	Machine functions are correct, but when the Print Start key is pressed, the add ink indicators and "D" blink after 20 rotations even though ink is present.	

Component	Condition	Phenomenon
1st Original Sensor **(C212/C213 Only)**	ON condition (Not interrupted)	First original can be printed correctly, but the jam indicators "A" and blink during the next master process when the ADF drive motor turns on.
	OFF condition (Interrupted)	When the Master Making key is pressed, the jam indicators "A" and blink.
2nd Original Sensor	ON condition (Not interrupted)	When the main switch is turned on, the jam indicators "A" and blink and reset is impossible.
	OFF condition (Interrupted)	The original is not inserted automatically, and the jam indicators "A" and blink when the Master Making key is pressed (C211 model). The original is fed when the Master Making key is pressed, but the leading edge of the original is damaged because the original transport motor fails to turn on. The "A" and jam indicators blink (C212/C213 model).
Original Registration Sensor	ON condition (Not interrupted)	After the master making process is finished, the Jam indicators "A" and blink.
	OFF condition (Interrupted)	The original is fed until the leading edge of the original goes 5 cm past the exposure glass, then jam indicators "A" and blink.
Master Eject Switch (Sensor)	ON condition (Not interrupted)	After the master is ejected and one sheet of paper (trial print) is delivered, the jam indicators "F" and blink and reset is impossible.
	OFF condition (Interrupted)	When the master is being ejected, the jam indicators "F" and blink.
Pressure Plate Position Switch	ON condition (Feeler is actuated)	The pressure plate does not go up. After one sheet of paper (trial print) is delivered, the indicators "F" and blink.
	OFF condition (Feeler is not actuated)	When the main switch is turned on, the pressure plate keeps moving up and down.
Full Master Detecting Switch	ON condition (Feeler is actuated)	When the master eject box is full, the indicators "F" and do not blink.
	OFF condition (Feeler is not actuated)	After master ejecting is finished, the indicators "F" and blink.
Paper Table Lower Limit Sensor	ON condition (Interrupted)	The paper table does not go down.
	OFF condition (Not interrupted)	When the paper feed table goes down and stops, the cover open indicator blinks.

Component	Condition	Phenomenon
Paper Table Safety Switch	ON condition (Feeler is actuated)	When the main switch is turned on, the cover open indicator blinks.
	OFF condition (Feeler is not actuated)	If paper table lower limit sensor is faulty, the paper table moves all the way down and locks.
Paper Table Height Sensor	ON condition (Interrupted)	When the paper feed table goes up, it does not stop at the proper position and E-02 lights.
	OFF condition (Not interrupted)	The paper feed table does not go up. When printing starts, jam indicators "B" and ⚠ blink.
Paper End Sensor	ON condition (Not interrupted)	When there is no paper on the paper feed table, the Print Start key can be activated, but jam indicators "B" and ⚠ blink.
	OFF condition (Not interrupted)	Though there is paper on the paper table, paper end indicators "B" and ⬇ blink.
Pressure Sensor	ON condition (Interrupted)	After one sheet of paper is printed, the machine stops. At that time, the counter does not count down and jam indicators "B" and ⚠ blink.
	OFF condition (Not interrupted)	When the main switch is turned on, jam indicators "B" and ⚠ blink and cannot be reset.
First Paper Exit Sensor	ON condition (Paper exists)	When the main switch is turned on, the machine stops and jam indicators "G" and ⚠ blink.
	OFF condition (Paper does not exist)	After one sheet of paper is printed, the machine stops and jam indicators "B", "E", and ⚠ blink.
Second Paper Exit Sensor	ON condition (Paper exists)	When the main switch is turned on, jam indicators "G" and ⚠ blink.
	OFF condition (Paper does not exist)	After one sheet of paper is printed, the machine stops and jam indicators "E" and ⚠ blink.
Paper Feed Solenoid	OFF condition	The paper is not fed and jam indicators "B" and ⚠ blink.
Drum Rotation Sensor	ON condition (Interrupted)	The drum begins to rotate when the main switch is turned on. E06 lights when the Master Making key is pressed or when the Print Start key is pressed.
	OFF condition (Not interrupted)	The drum begins to rotate when the main switch is turned on. E06 lights when the Master Making key is pressed or when the Print Start key is pressed.
Master End Sensor	ON condition (Actuated)	Normal operation when master is present. Master end is not detected; Master End indicators "C" and ⬇ do not blink and jam indicators "C" and ⚠ blink.
	OFF condition (Not actuated)	Even if the master is present, the Master End indicators "C" and ⬇ blink.

Component	Condition	Phenomenon
Right Cutter Switch (Rear)	ON condition (Feeler is actuated)	Master is not cut. (Cutter unit does not move at all.)
	OFF condition (Feeler is not actuated)	When the master is cut, indicator "E-01" lights. At that time the cutter does not return to the front.
Left Cutter Switch (Front)	ON condition (Feeler is actuated)	Master is not cut. (Cutter unit does not return from the rear.)
	OFF condition (Feeler is not actuated)	When the main switch is turned on, indicator "E-01" lights.
First Drum Position Sensor	OFF condition (Not interrupted)	When the main switch is turned on, the drum starts rotating and it cannot be stopped.
	ON condition (Interrupted)	*** Print** (When the Print Start key is pressed) 1. After one sheet of paper is fed, the drum continues to rotate and paper feed stops. 2. The machine does not stop when the Stop key is pressed. 3. Paper feed and delivery jams are not detected. * **Master making** (When the Master Making key is pressed) 1. After the new master is wrapped around the drum and one sheet of paper (trial print) is delivered, the drum does not stop rotating. The Stop key does not work.
Second Drum Position Sensor	OFF condition (Not interrupted)	* **Print** (When the Print Start key is pressed) 1. The paper feed solenoid does not work and the Stop key does not work. * **Master making** (When the Master Making key is pressed) 1. When the Master Making key is pressed, the drum starts rotating and cannot be stopped.
	ON condition (Interrupted)	* **Print** (When the Print Start key is pressed.) 1. Paper feed solenoid does not work and drum continues to rotate. * **Idling time** (Reset key + 0 key) 1. Drum does not stop rotating. * **Master eject** 1. When the Master Making key is pressed, master eject indicators "F" and ⚠ blink and the master is not ejected.
Master Buckle Sensor	ON condition	When the main switch is turned on, jam indicators "C" and ⚠ blink and cannot be reset.
	OFF condition	Original feeding and master feeding stops halfway, and jam indicators "C" and ⚠ blink.

C212/C213 only:

Component	Condition	Phenomenon
Paper Size Detection Sensor 1	Always ON (Paper detected)	* A4 : Master making length is 247mm (B5 lengthwise). * LT : Master making length is 10.6" (LT lengthwise).
	OFF (Paper not detected)	* A4 : Master making length is 172mm (B5 sideways). * LT : Master making length is 8.1" (HLT lengthwise).
Paper Size Detection Sensor 2	Always ON (Paper exists)	* A4 : Master making length is 172mm (B5 sideways). * LT : Master making length is 8.1" (HLT lengthwise).
	OFF (Paper not detected)	* A4 : Master making length is 247mm (B5 lengthwise). * LT : Master making length is 10.6" (LT lengthwise).
Paper Size Detection Sensor 3	Always ON (Paper detected)	* A4 : Master making length is 172mm (B5 sideways). * LT: Master making length is 8.1" (HLT lengthwise).
	OFF (Paper not detected)	* A4 : Master making length is 287mm (A4 lengthwise). * LT : Master making length is 13.6" (LG lengthwise).
Drum Master Detection Sensor	Always ON (Sensor always detects white)	**Master is on the drum:** machine works correctly. **Master is not on the drum:** indicators F and ⚠ blink during the master eject process. Printing starts when the Print Start key is pressed, but indicators "E", "B", and ⚠ soon turn on and the machine stops.
	OFF (Sensor always detects black)	**Master is on the drum:** two masters are wrapped on the drum. **Master is not on the drum:** master is wrapped correctly on the drum, but the "M" indicator blinks when the Print Start key is pressed.

*** Refer to the next page.**

A4 version:

Paper Size Detection Sensor			Image Length (Master Making Length)			
SN1	SN2	SN3	172 mm	247 mm	287 mm	354 mm
OFF	OFF	OFF	O			
ON	OFF	OFF		O		
OFF	ON	OFF	O			
ON	ON	OFF			O	
OFF	OFF	ON	O			
ON	OFF	ON		O		
OFF	ON	ON	O			
ON	ON	ON				O

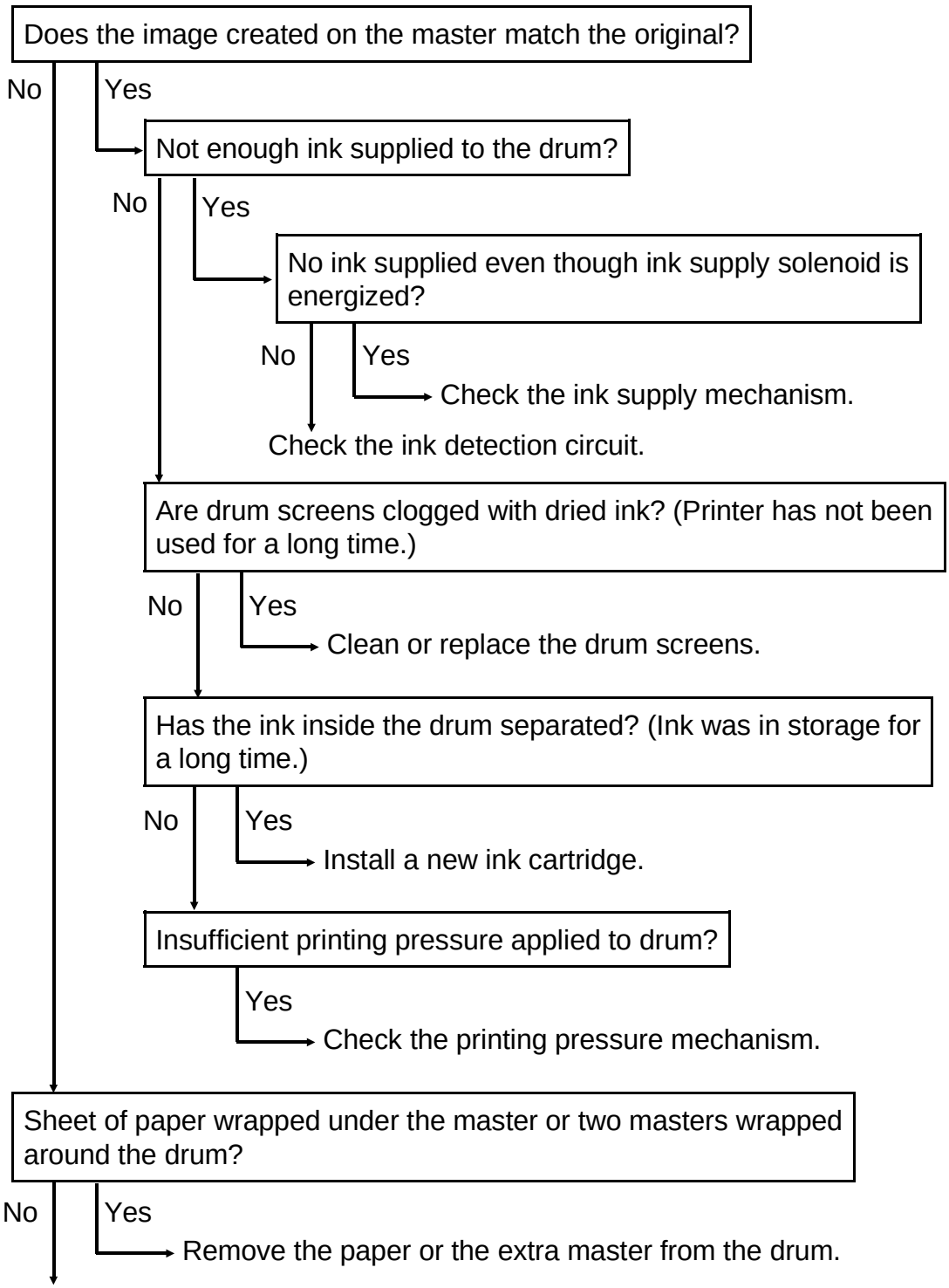
LT version:

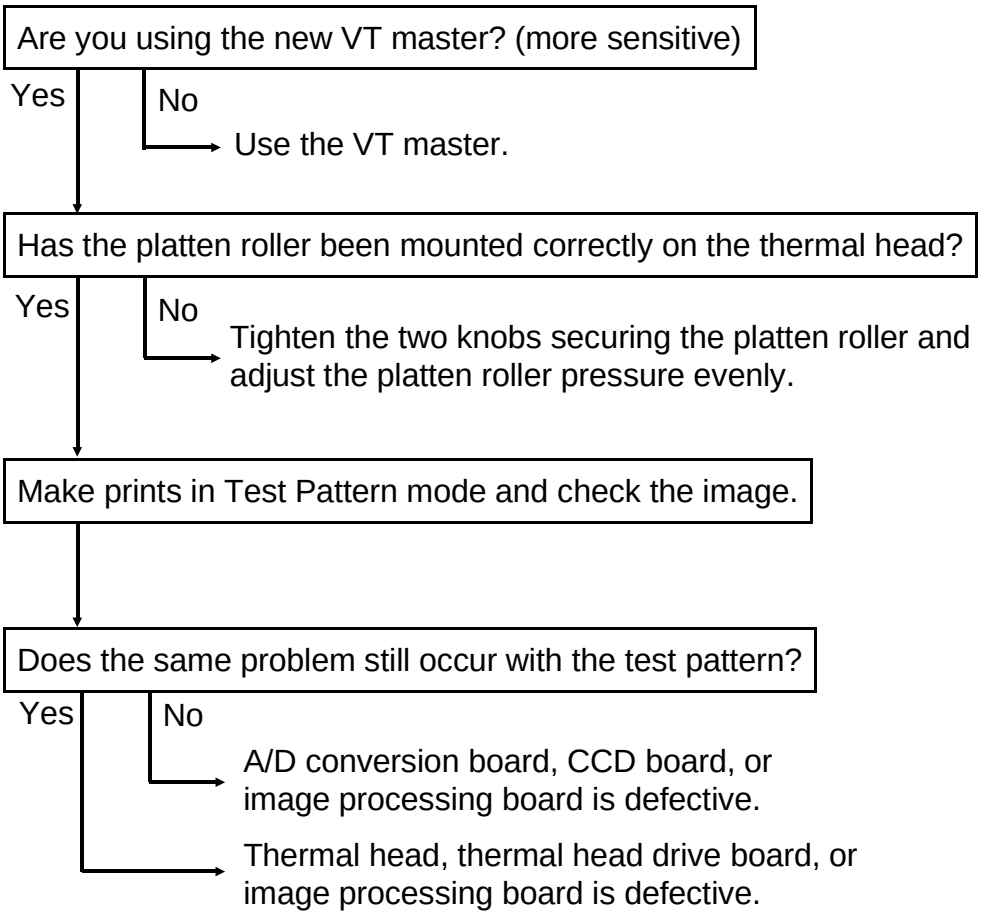
Paper Size Detection Sensor			Image Length (Master Making Length)			
SN1	SN2	SN3	8.1" (205.9 mm)	10.6" (269.4 mm)	13.6" (345.6 mm)	13.9" (354 mm)
OFF	OFF	OFF	O			
ON	OFF	OFF		O		
OFF	ON	OFF	O			
ON	ON	OFF			O	
OFF	OFF	ON	O			
ON	OFF	ON		O		
OFF	ON	ON	O			
ON	ON	ON				O

2. TROUBLESHOOTING

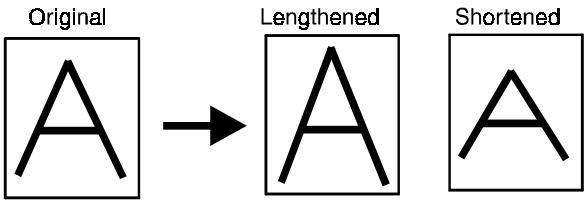
2.1 IMAGE TROUBLE

1. No image, white lines, uneven image on copy




Are you using the new VT master? (more sensitive)
Yes
No
Use the VT master.
Has the platten roller been mounted correctly on the thermal head?
Yes
No
Tighten the two knobs securing the platten roller and adjust the platten roller pressure evenly.
Make prints in Test Pattern mode and check the image.
Does the same problem still occur with the test pattern?
Yes
No
A/D conversion board, CCD board, or image processing board is defective.
Thermal head, thermal head drive board, or image processing board is defective.

2. Print image is enlarged or reduced in the paper feed direction



Is the print image larger than the original in the paper feed direction?

No

Yes

Is the original transport motor functioning normally?

Yes

No

Check the original transport motor.

Are the drive belts in the original feed section adjusted to the correct tension?

Yes

No

Adjust the belt tension.

Are any of the pulleys and/or gears in the original feed section loose?

No

Tighten the screws securing the pulleys and/or gears.

Is the print image smaller than the original in the paper feed direction?

Yes

Is the master feed motor functioning normally?

Yes

No

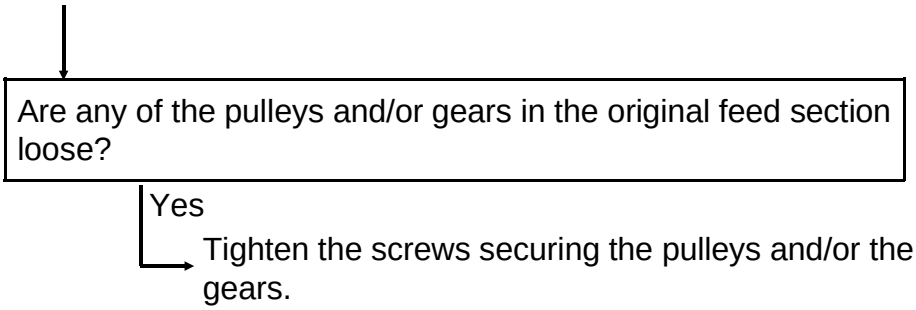
Check the master feed motor.

Are the drive belts in the master feed section adjusted to the correct tension?

Yes

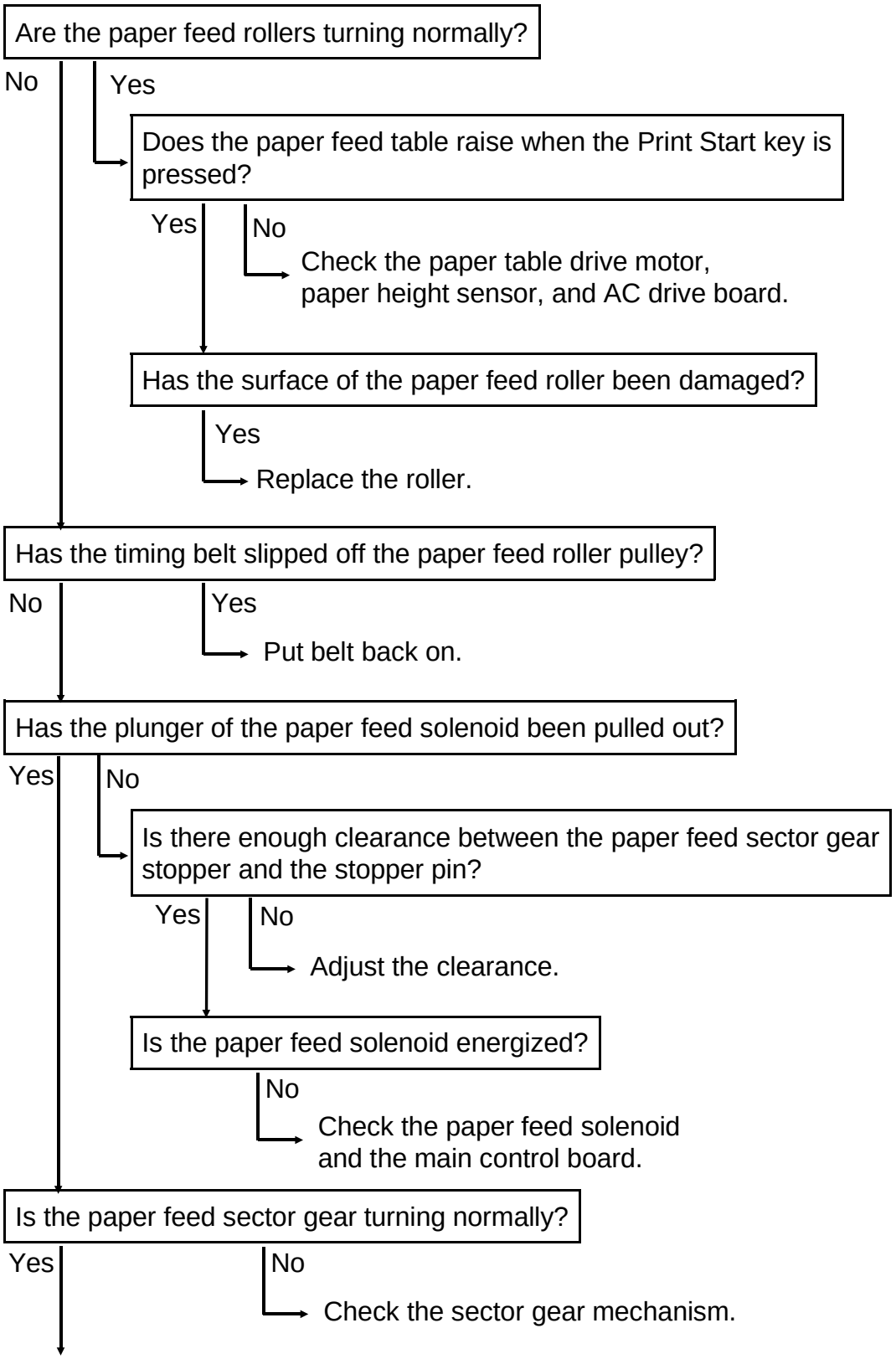
No

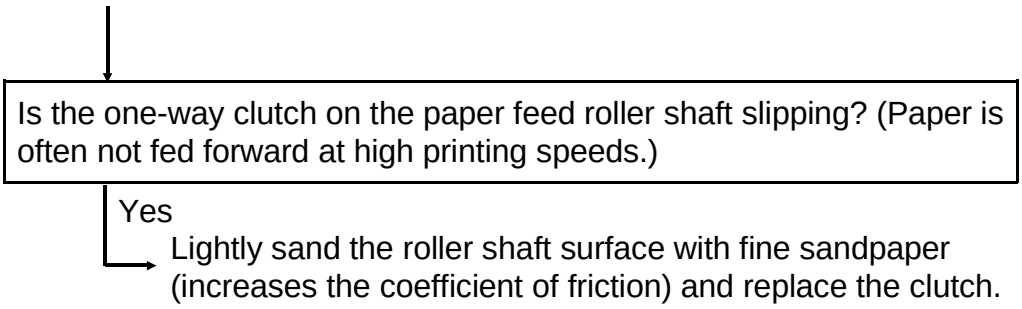
Adjust the belt tension.


Are any of the pulleys and/or gears in the original feed section loose?
Yes
Tighten the screws securing the pulleys and/or the gears.

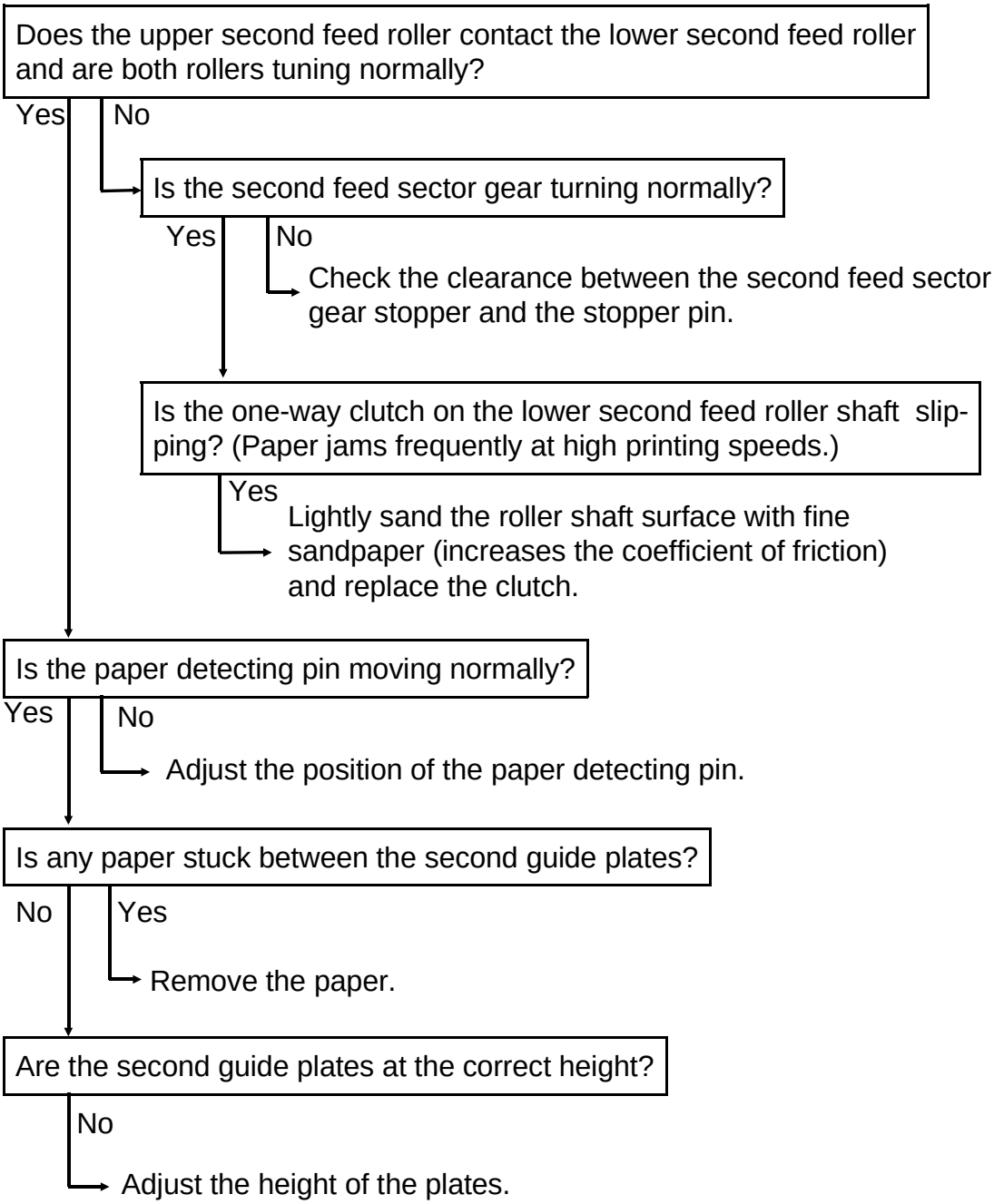
2.2 PAPER FEED TROUBLE

1. No paper is fed from the paper table.

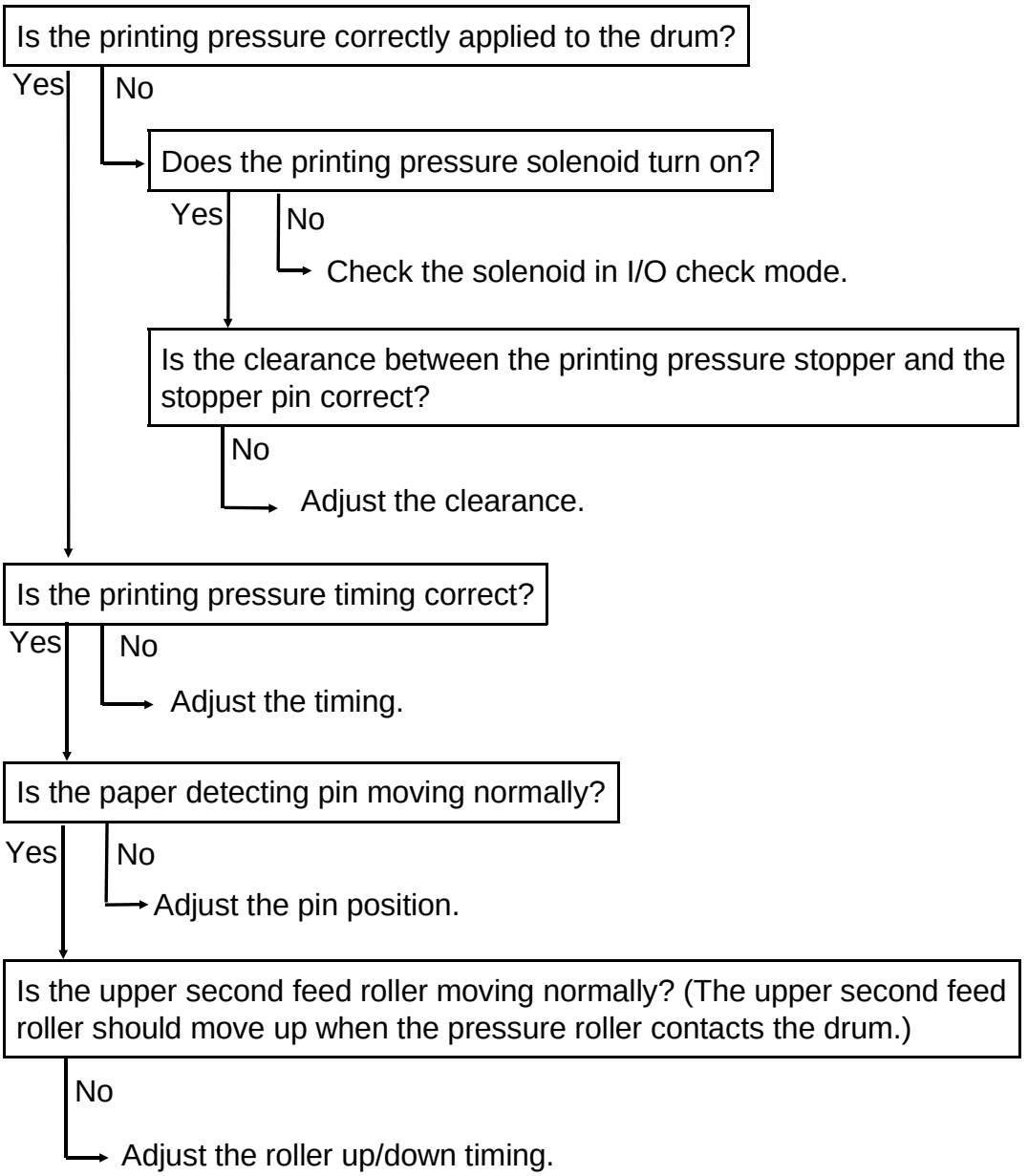



Is the one-way clutch on the paper feed roller shaft slipping? (Paper is often not fed forward at high printing speeds.)
Yes
Lightly sand the roller shaft surface with fine sandpaper (increases the coefficient of friction) and replace the clutch.

2. Paper leading edge jams under the second feed roller.



3. Paper leading edge jams under the drum.



4. Paper frequently jams or is not fed during high speed printing. (Does not occur at low printing speeds.).

Is the surface of the paper feed roller damaged or defective?

No

Yes → Replace the roller.

Is the timing belt of the paper feed roller slipping?

No

Yes → Adjust the belt tension.

Is the one-way clutch installed on the paper feed roller shaft slipping?

No

Yes → Lightly sand the paper feed roller shaft with fine sandpaper and replace the one-way clutch.

Is there enough clearance between the paper detecting arm and the pressure release arm?

Yes

No → Adjust the clearance.

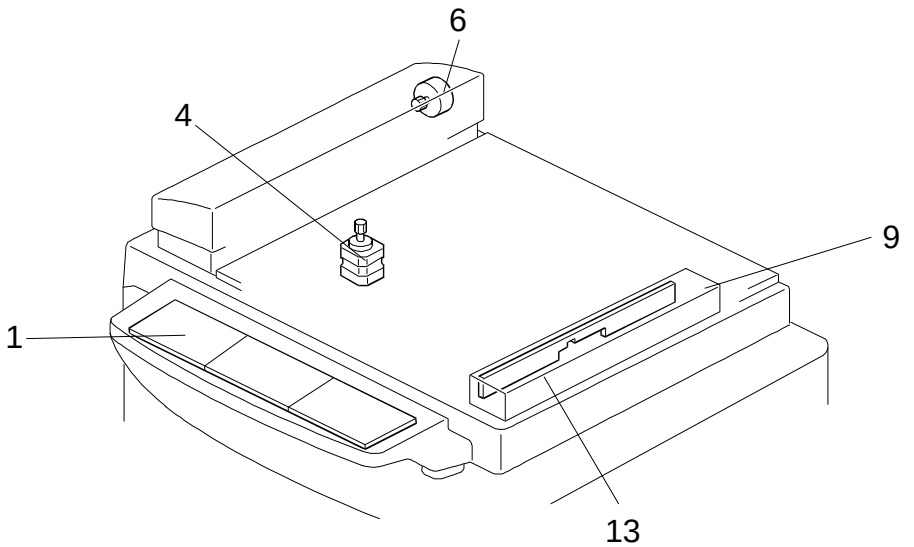
Is the printing pressure cam timing correct? (Otherwise, the maximum printing area cannot be created.)

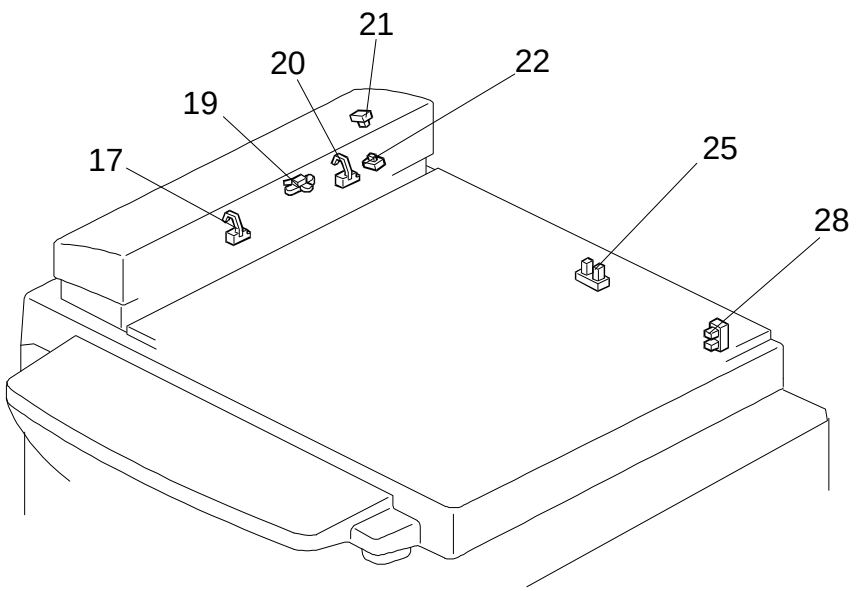
No → Adjust the cam timing.

ELECTRICAL COMPONENTS LAYOUT

C226

ADF and Scanner

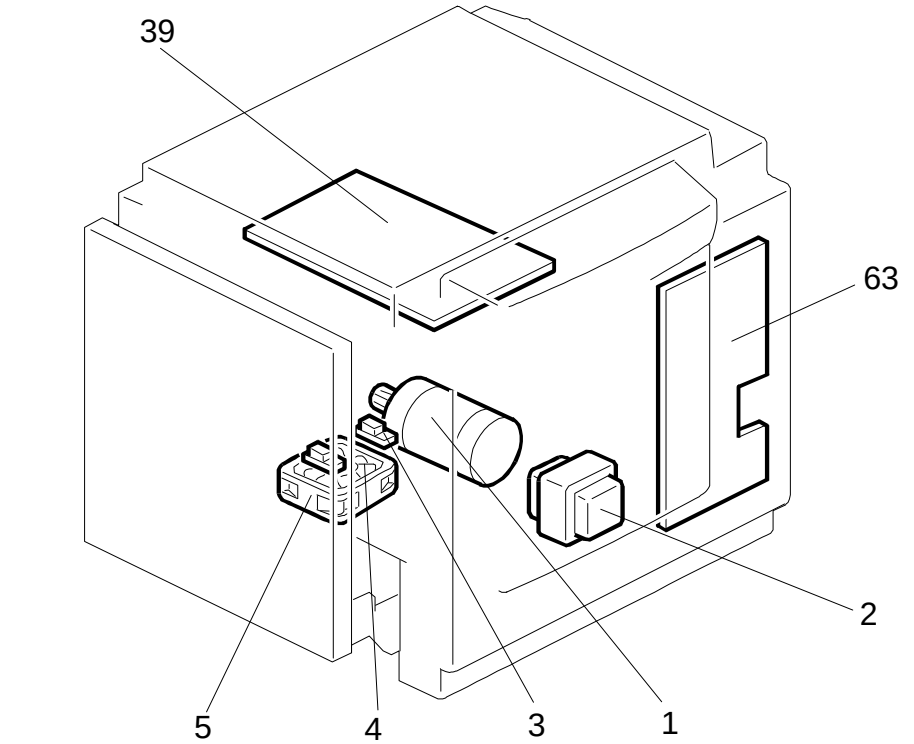


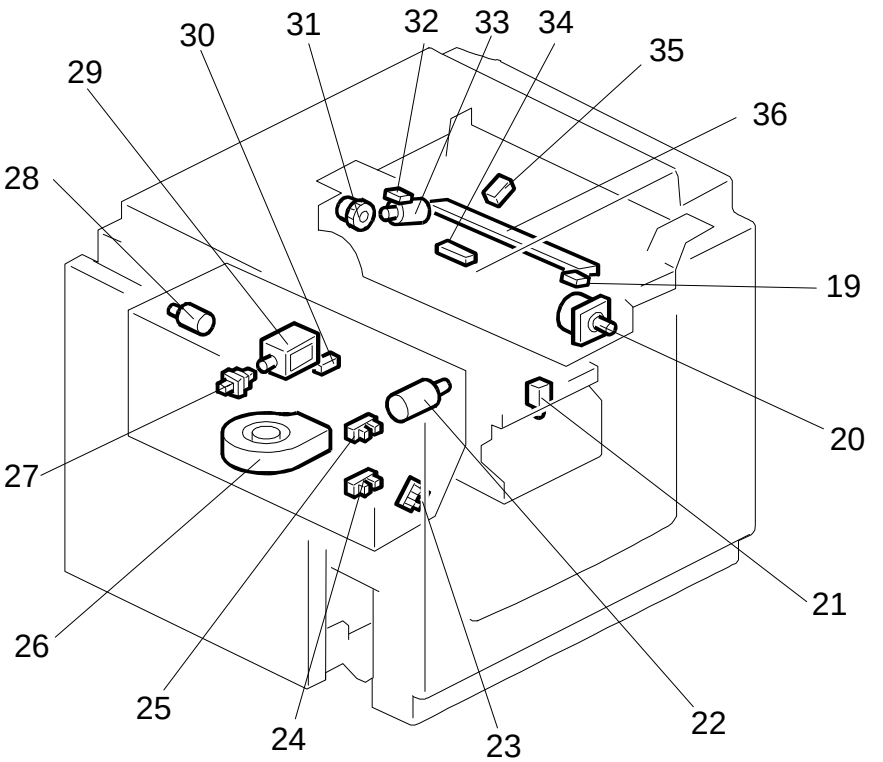


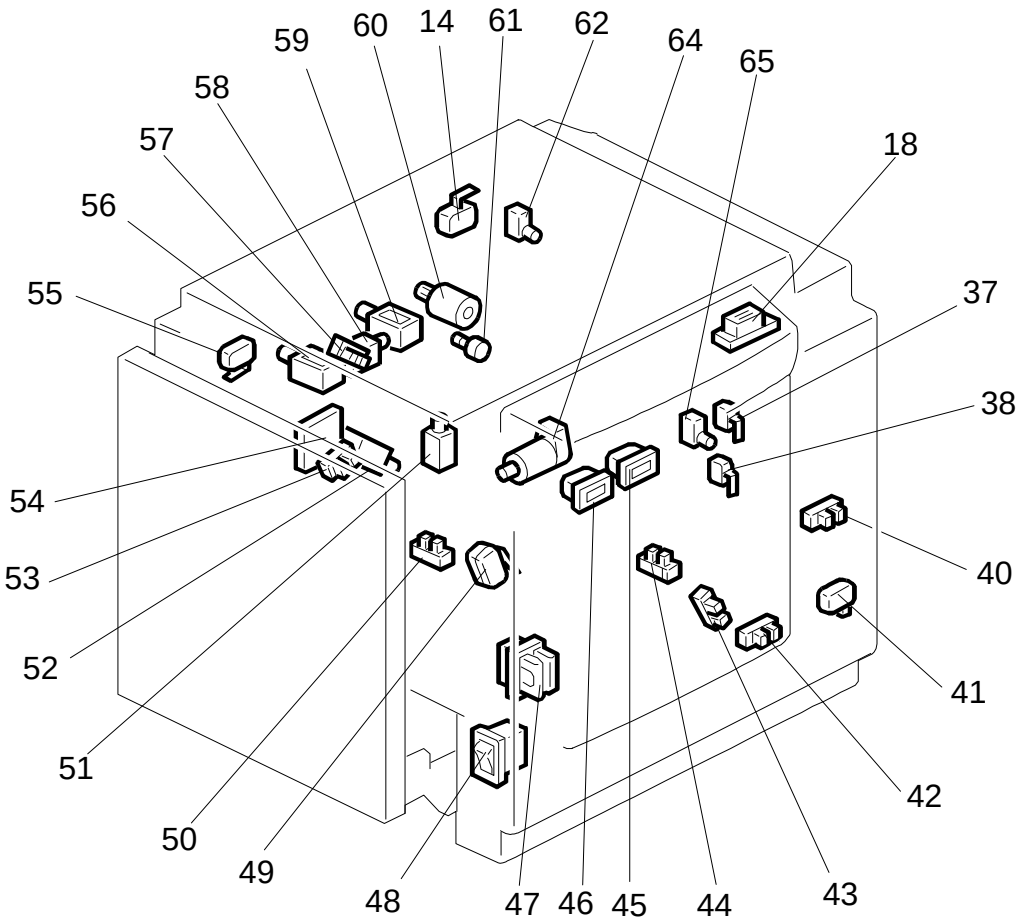
Table

INDEX NO.	NAME	FUNCTION
Printed Circuit Board		
1	OPU (Operation Panel Unit)	This board controls the operation panel.
9	Contact Image Sensor and Xenon Lamp	This sensor reads and converts the light reflected from the document into an analog video signal. It uses an RMLA (Roof Mirror Lens Array) sensor unit. The xenon lamp which illuminates the document is contained in this unit.
Motors		
6	ADF Motor	This stepper motor drives the scanner.
4	Scanner Motor	This stepper motor drives the book scanner.
Sensors and Switches		
17	Document Sensor	This detects the presence of a document in the feeder.
19	Scan Line Sensor	This detects when a page is approaching the auto shading position.
20	Not used	
21	ADF Cover Switch	This detects whether the ADF cover is open or closed.
28	Scanner Home Position Sensor	This detects when the image sensor is at home position.
25	Platen Cover Sensor	This detects whether the platen cover is open or closed.
22	ADF Switch	This detects whether the ADF unit is open or closed.
Others		
13	Lamp Stabilizer	This supplies power to the xenon lamp.

Main Body






59
60
14
61
62
64
65
58
57
18
56
55
37
38
54
53
40
52
41
51
42
50
49
48
47
46
45
44
43

Table

INDEX No.	NAME	FUNCTION
Motors		
1	Main Motor	Drives paper feed, drum, printing and paper delivery unit components.
4	Vacuum Motor	Provides suction so that paper is held firmly on the transport belt.
20	Master Feed Motor	Feeds the master to the drum.
22	Pressure Plate Motor	Raises and lowers the pressure plate.
26	Air Knife Motor	Rotates the fan to provide air to separate the paper leading edge from the drum.
28	Master Eject Motor	Sends used masters into the master eject box.
33	Cutter Motor	Cuts the master.
60	Image Shift Motor	Changes the timing between the paper feed roller and the drum to adjust the vertical image position.
64	Paper Table Drive Motor	Raises and lowers the paper table.
Solenoids		
21	Ink Supply Solenoid	Releases the spring clutch to activate the ink supply pump.
29	Master Eject Solenoid	Opens the master clamp to eject the master.
51	Paper Feed Solenoid	Releases the paper feed sector gear to rotate the paper feed roller.
52	Printing Pressure Solenoid	Moves the press roller against the drum.
56	Master Eject Clamper Solenoid	Opens the master clamp to eject the master.
58	Drum Lock Solenoid	Prevents removal of the drum unit when the drum is not at the home position.
59	Master Feed Clamper Solenoid	Opens the master clamp to eject the master.
Switches		
14	Scanner Unit Safety Switch	Check whether the scanner unit is set correctly or not.
18	Plotter Cover Safety Switch	Check whether the cover on the plotter unit is closed correctly or not.
19	Left Cutter Switch	Detects when the cutter position is at the far left.
27	Master Eject Box Switch	Checks whether the master eject box is installed correctly or not.
32	Right Cutter Switch	Detects when the cutter position is at the far right.
37	Front Door Safety Switch	Checks whether the front door is set correctly or not.
38	Drum Safety Switch	Checks whether the drum unit is set correctly or not.
41	Paper Table Safety Switch	Checks whether the paper table is opened or not.

INDEX No.	NAME	FUNCTION
47	Test Switch	Releases the cover safety functions. (NOTE:)
48	Main Switch	Turns the power on or off.
49	Master Eject Unit Safety Switch (220V machines only)	Checks whether the master eject unit is closed correctly or not. Cuts the ac power.
55	Master Eject Unit Safety Switch (115V machines only)	
62	Master Cutter Switch	Informs the CPU to cut the master paper leading edge.
65	Drum Rotation Switch	Informs the CPU to rotate the main motor at 10 rpm.
Sensors		
3	1st Paper Exit Sensor	Detects misfeeds.
5	2nd Paper Exit Sensor	Detects misfeeds.
23	Lower Pressure Plate Sensor	Informs the CPU if the pressure plate is at the lower limit position.
24	Full Master Box Sensor	Informs the CPU if the master eject box is full of used masters.
25	Upper Pressure Plate Sensor	Informs the CPU if the pressure plate is at the upper limit position.
30	Master Eject Sensor	Detects master eject jams.
34	Master Buckle Sensor	Detects master buckling.
35	Master End Sensor	Informs the CPU when the plotter unit runs out of master roll.
40	Paper Table Height Sensor	Detects when the paper table reaches the paper feed position.
42	Paper Table Lower Limit Sensor	Detects when the paper table reaches the lowest position.
43	Printing Pressure Sensor	Informs the CPU when printing pressure is applied.
44	Paper End Sensor	Informs the CPU when the paper table runs out of paper.
50	Drum Rotation Sensor	Supplies timing pulses to the main board.
53	2nd Drum Position Sensor	Checks the position of the drum.
57	1st Drum Position Sensor	Checks the position of the drum.
Printed Circuit Board		
39	Main Control PCB	Controls all machine functions both directly and through other boards.

INDEX No.	NAME	FUNCTION
54	Ink Detection PCB	Checks if the ink is present in the drum.
63	Power Supply PCB	Rectifies 100 V ac input and supplies dc voltage.
Counters		
45	Copy Counter	Keeps track of the total number of copies made.
46	Master Counter	Keeps track of the total number of masters made.
Others		
2	Transformer	Steps down the wall voltage.
31	Reverse Roller Clutch	Transfers master feed motor rotation to the reverse roller at proper timing.
36	Thermal Head	Burns the image onto the master.
61	Encoder	Converts 16 image positions to 4 bit data.

NOTE: 1) The Master Eject Unit Safety Switch in the 220 V machines cannot be disabled by this test switch.

2) When you use this test switch, be sure to return it to home position after servicing in order to recover the cover safety functions.

<< POINT-TO-POINT DIAGRAM (C226) >>